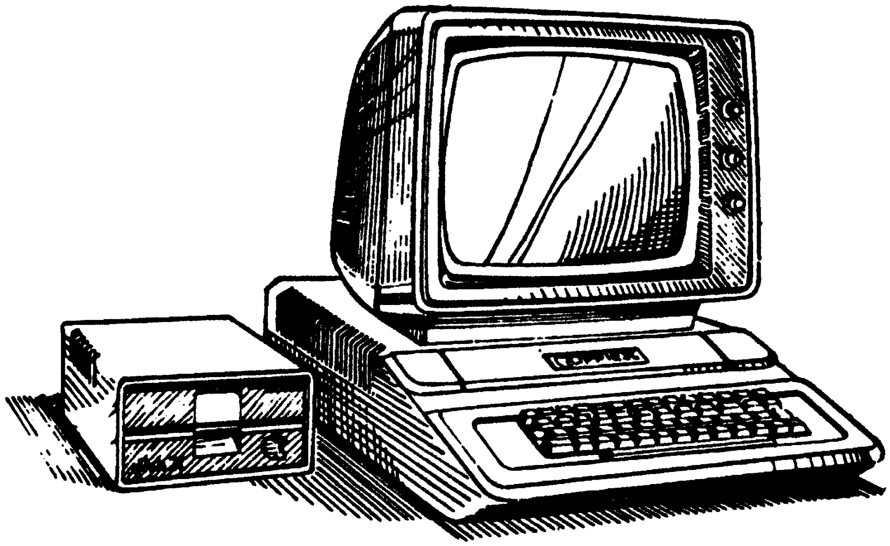


Apple II and Apple II-Plus Level II Service Reference Manual

Pre-Release Version

A compendium of notes, diagrams and instructions for diagnosing and repairing the Apple II and Apple II-Plus computer systems.

AUTHOR
Apple Computer Inc.

DOCUMENT DATES OF RECORD
1981

(This page is not part of the original document)

INTRODUCTION

What is this manual?

The Apple II / Apple II-Plus Level II Service Reference Manual is a compendium of notes, diagrams and instructions for diagnosing and repairing the Apple II and Apple II-Plus computer systems. This is an internal document written by Apple Computer's service department for use by Apple's internal Level II service personel.

Facts about this manual

Author:

Apple Computer Inc

Document dates of record:

1981

Owner:

Organization:	DigiBarn Computer Museum	(www.digibarn.com)
Curator:	Bruce Damer	(http://www.damer.com/)

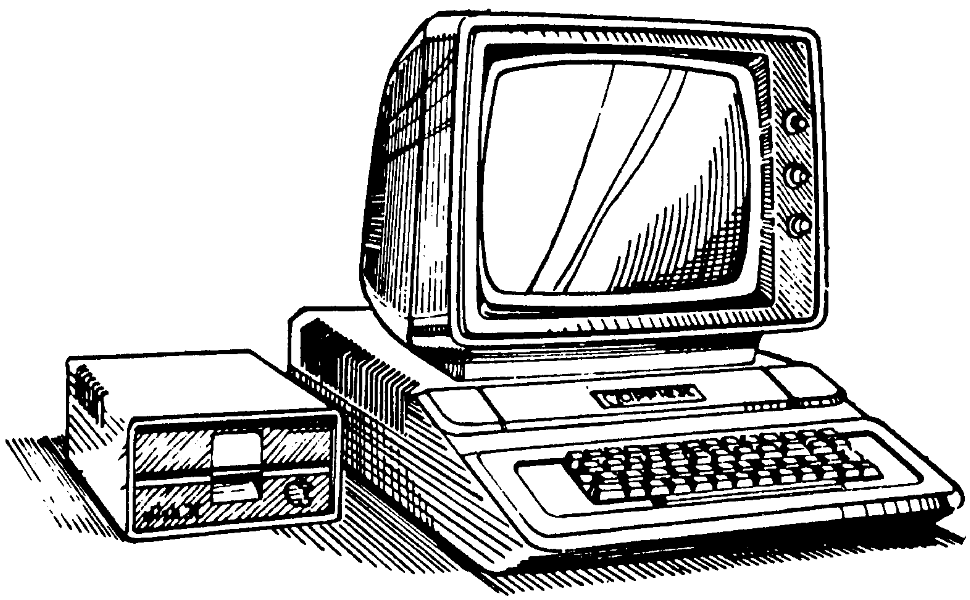
(This page is not part of the original document)

PROPERTY STATEMENT

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS
LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

APPLE II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

This is a Service Reference Manual which describes the Apple II and Apple II Plus Computers, manufactured by Apple Computer Inc. This manual contains a general description of the Apple II followed by theory of operation, troubleshooting guides and spare parts information which will enable the techician at a Level II Service Center to repair these computers. This Manual is aim at component level maintenance.

This Manual only covers the Computers. It does not include videos, disk drives, peripheral devices, or interface cards. At the end of this manual is an appendix containing IC maps and specifications, ROM listings, spare part information, and removal and replacement procedures. There are sections on the System Monitor, the input/output devices and their operation, the internal organization of memory and input/output devices, and the actual electronic design of the Apple itself.

The real secret to this manual is using a scope, as signals are described they can be observed as well, thus speeding up learning. It is suggested that an "open Apple II" be created using a logic board, keyboard, power supply and monitor. I hope you will enjoy and learn from this manual as I have.

THE IS A ROUGH DRAFT PRE-RELEASE VERSION OF THE MANUAL. WE FELT THAT THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS MANUAL WAS VITAL TO THE LEVEL II SERVICE CENTERS. THAT IS THE REASON FOR THE EARLY RELEASE. I AM WORKING ON IMPROVEMENTS TO THE MANUAL, MORE FIGURES, BLOCK DIAGRAMS, AND UP-TO-DATE INFORMATION INCLUDING A RFI SECTION. I WOULD LIKE TO ENCOURAGE COMMENTS, OR IF YOU HAVE INFORMATION WHICH YOU FEEL WOULD BE VITAL TO THIS MANUAL PLEASE SEND THEM TO CAROL JINKS 10260 BANDLEY DR. MAIL STOP 4I CUPERTINO, CALIFORNIA OR PHONE 408-973-2850.

THANK YOU IN ADVANCE FOR YOUR COOPERATION.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Appendix A

IC Chip Maps
IC Specifications
Rom Listings

Appendix B

Bill of Materials

Appendix C

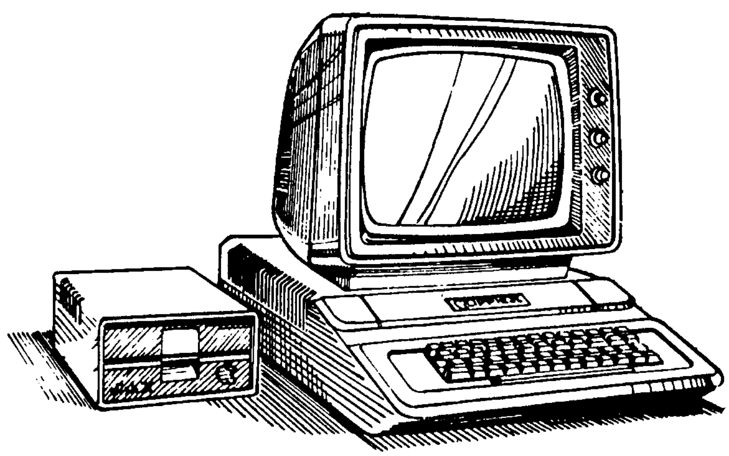
Removal and Replacement Procedures

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS
LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 1
GENERAL DESCRIPTION



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

APPLE II (PLUS)

PERSONAL COMPUTER SYSTEMS

General Description:

The Apple II and Apple II Plus systems, are composed of a CPU or central processing unit, RAM or random access memory, power supply, keyboard, video display and auxiliary I/O (input/output). This last category is made up of the game I/O, with the game paddles, buttons and annunciators. Sound output is generated by a built-in speaker. Programs and data may be saved and retrieved by means of the disk and cassette interface. Here a standard audio cassette tape recorder or Apple Disk II can be used. The Apple communicates with the outside world through 8 (50 pin) plugs or slots located along the rear edge of the system. This forms the nucleus of a Microcomputer system.

```
***************      ***************      ***************
*             *      *             *      *             *
*    INPUT    ********     CPU     ********    OUTPUT   *
*             *      *             *      *             *
***************      ***************      ***************
                            *
                            *
***************      ***************      ***************
*             *      *             *      *             *
*  AUXILIARY  *      *    MEMORY   *      * POWER SUPPLY*
*     I/O     *      *             *      *             *
*             *      ***************      ***************
***************
```

The Apple CPU or central processing unit is the 6502 Microprocessor. This LSI (Large-Scale Integration) Circuit gives the system control and processing ability. It moves character and numberic data around within the system and performs mathematic computations at microsecond speeds.

The instructions or software that controls the 6502 are located in the system memory. This memory is actually made up of small ICs of two distinct types, ROM and RAM. The RAM or random access memory contains the variable instructions and information. These memory locations can be changed at will by the 6502 and may be constantly updated. Another form of memory contained in the Apple is ROM. This memory is permanently recorded and may not be altered. It is read only memory, thus the designation ROM. When we are dealing with the Apple II or Apple II Plus, we can tell the two models apart by checking to see if the Integer Basic ROMs are present (making it an Apple II) or the Applesoft II Basic ROMs are present (making it an Apple II Plus).

The whole system is powered by a Switching Power Supply. This module supplies the 4 voltages necessary to run the Apple. They are:

Input
- 107 to 132 VAC or
- 214 to 264 VAC

PRE-RELEAS VERSION

Line frequency is not important.

Output

+5 Volts at 2.5 amps
-5 Volts at 500 ma
+12 Volts at 1.5 amps (~2.5 amps intermittent)
-12 Volts at 500 ma

In order to get information into the Apple we need the keyboard. This device is composed of 52 keys (switches) that generate all of the ASCII Characters. ASCII is the character code that the Apple understands. It stands for American Standard Code for Information Interchange. Any device that might be attached to the Apple must use this code. The Keyboard allows the user to talk to the Apple and issue commands to it. There are other forms of Input devices, that will be covered later.

Now that we have a means of getting information into the Apple, we need a way to get information and responses out. This output is generally in the form of video information sent to a video monitor or TV set. In the video mode we can present data in three different formats:

A. Text (40 characters by 24 lines)

B. Low Resolution Graphics (40 by 40 or 40 by 48 cell matrix)

C. High Resolution Graphics (280 by 162 or 280 by 192 cell matrix)

When the Apple wishes to output data to the user, it presents that data in a video format. The video signal generated by the Apple is similar, but not quite the same as NTSC. It has a horizontal scan rate of 15 KHZ with 262 horizontal scan lines. It is non-interlaced with 1 field per frame and 192 active horizontal scan lines verticle. The total screen time is 65 microseconds horizontal time with 40 miicroseconds active. It will work with almost every NTSC type video monitor or TV set.

The Apple has some additional I/O devices, such as the Game Paddles, Annunciators, Speaker, and Tape Cassette Jacks. The Game Paddles allow the user to provide a form of analog input to programs running on the Apple. Buttons are provided on the paddles for momentary contact switches that can be read by the Apple. The Apple may indicate to the user electrically that a condition is on or off, by turning the Annunciators on or off. If the Apple wishes to signal or interact audibly with the user, it can use it's built in miniature speaker. Music and voice can be generated here. Lastly programs and data may be recorded and played back, by means of the Tape Cassette Ports. Data in a binary form is recorded on the tape using audio tones to represent 1s and 0s.

All of these are built in and included with the Apple II or Apple II Plus systems. The user need only add a video monitor and cassette recorder or disk drive to have a complete basic system. Other flexabilities are available by adding additional modules to the 8 (50 pin) plugs or slots on the rear edge of the Apple II system.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ROM CARD APPLESOFT BASIC	F8	F0	E8	E0	D8	D0
Part number	341-0020	341-0015	341-0014	341-0013	341-0012	341-0011
Address	F800	F000	E800	E000	D800	D000
	AUTO BOOT ROM	APPLESOFT II BASIC ROM SET				

ROM CARD INTEGER BASIC	F8	F0	E8	E0	D8	D0
Part number	341-0004	341-0003	341-0002	341-0001	empty	341-0016
Address	F800	F000	E800	E000	D800	D000
	OLD F8 ROM	INTEGER BASIC ROM SET			EMPTY POSITION	PROGRAMMER'S AID ROM

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

THE APPLE VIDEO DISPLAY

The Apple Video Display

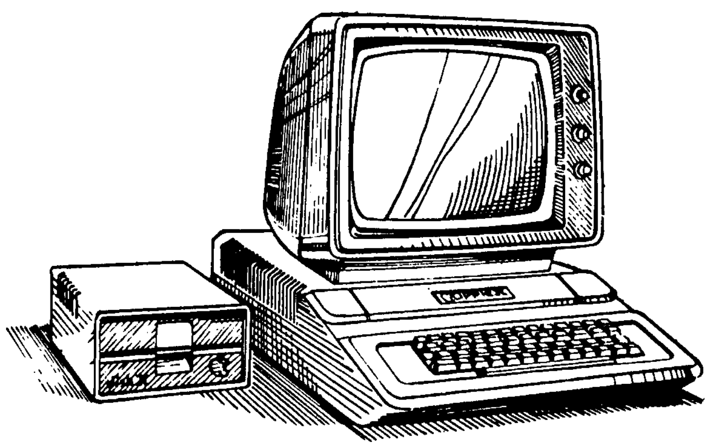
Display type:	Memory mapped into system RAM
Display modes:	Text, Low-Resolution Graphics, High-Resolution Graphics
Text capacity:	960 characters (24 lines, 40 columns)
Character type:	5 × 7 dot matrix
Character set:	Upper case ASCII, 64 characters
Character modes:	Normal, Inverse, Flashing
Graphics capacity:	1,920 blocks (Low-Resolution) in a 40 by 48 array 53,760 dots (High-Resolution) in a 280 by 192 array
Number of colors:	16 (Low-Resolution Graphics) 6 (High-Resolution Graphics)

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 2
VIDEO DISPLAY



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

SCREEN FORMAT

Three different kinds of information can be shown on the video display to which your Apple is connected:

1). Text. The Apple can display 24 lines of numbers, special symbols, and upper case letters with 40 of these characters on each line. These characters are formed in a dot matrix 7 dots high and 5 dots wide. There is a one-dot wide space on either side of the character and a one-dot high space above each line.

2). Low-Resolution Graphics. The Apple can present 1,920 colored squares in an array 40 blocks wide and 48 blocks high. The color of each block can be selected from a set of sixteen different colors. There is no space between blocks, so that any two adjacent blocks of the same color look like a single, larger block.

3). High-Resolution Graphics. The Apple can also display colored dots on a matric 280 dots wide and 192 dots high. The dots are the same size as the dots which make up the Text characters. There are six colors available in the High-Resolution Graphics mode: black, white, red, blue, green, and violet. For Apples with Revision 0 boards, there are four colors: black, white, green and violet. Each dot on the screen can be either black, white, or a color, although not all colors are available for every dot.

When the Apple is displaying a particular type of information on the screen, it is said to be in that paricular "mode". Thus, if you see words and numbers on the screen, you can reasonably be assured that your Apple is in Text mode. Similarly, if you see a screen full of multicolored blocks, your computer is probably in Low-Resolution Graphics mode. You can also have a fourline "caption" of text at the bottom of either type of graphics screen. These four lines replace the lower 8 rows of blocks in Low-Resolution Graphics, leaving a 40 by 40 array. In High-Resolution Graphics, they replace the bottom 32 rows of dots, leaving a 280 by 160 matrix. You can use these "mixed modes" to display text and graphics simultaneously, but there is no way to display both graphics modes at the same time.

SCREEN MEMORY

The video display uses information in the system's RAM memory to generate its display. The value of a single memory location controls the appearence of a certain, fixed object on the screen. This object can be a character, two stacked colored blocks or a line of seven dots. In Text and Low-Resolution Graphics mode, an area of memory containing 1,024 locations is used as the source of the screen information. Test and Low-Resolution Graphics share this memory area. High-Resolution Graphics mode, a seperate, larger area (8,192 locations) is needed because of the greater amount of information which is being displayed. These areas of memory are usually called "pages". The area reserved for High-Resolution Graphics is sometimes called the "picture buffer" because it is commonly used to store a picture or drawing.

PRE-RELEASE
VERSION

SCREEN PAGES

There are actually two areas from which each mode can draw its information. The first area is called the "primary pages" or "Page 1". The second area is called the "secondary page" or "page 2" and is an area of the same size immediately following the first area. The secondary page is useful for storing pictures or text which you want to be able to display instantly. A program can use the two pages too perform animation by drawing on one page while displaying the other and suddenly flipping pages.

Text and Low-Resolution Graphics share the same memory range for the secondary page, just as they share the same range for the primary page. Both mixed modes which were described above are also available on the secondary page, but there is no way to mix the two pages on the same screen.

SCREEN SWITCHES

The devices which decide between the various modes, pages, and mixes are called "soft switches". They are switches because they have two positions (for example: on or off, text or graphics) and they are called "soft" because they are controlled by the software of the computer. A program can "throw" a switch by referencing the special memory location for that switch. The data which are read from or written to the location are irrelevant; it is the reference to the address of the location which throws the switch.

There are eight special memory locations which control the setting of the soft switches for the screen. They are set up in pairs; when you reference one location of the pair you turn its corresponding mode "on" and its companion mode "off". The pairs are:

Table 5: Screen Soft Switches

Location: Hex	Decimal		Description:
$C050	49232	-16304	Display a GRAPHICS mode.
$C051	49233	-16303	Display TEXT mode.
$C052	49234	-16302	Display all TEXT or GRAPHICS.
$C053	49235	-16301	Mix TEXT and a GRAPHICS mode.*
$C054	49236	-16300	Display the Primary page (Page 1).
$C055	49237	-16299	Display the Secondary page (Page 2).
$C056	49238	-16298	Display LO-RES GRAPHICS mode.*
$C057	49239	-16297	Display HI-RES GRAPHICS mode.*

There are ten distinct combinations of these switches:

Table 6: Screen Mode Combinations

Primary Page			Secondary Page		
Screen	Switches		Screen	Switches	
All Text	$C054	$C051	All Text	$C055	$C051
All Lo-Res Graphics	$C054 $C052	$C056 $C050	All Lo-Res Graphics	$C055 $C052	$C056 $C050
All Hi-Res Graphics	$C054 $C052	$C057 $C050	All Hi-Res Graphics	$C055 $C052	$C057 $C050
Mixed Text and Lo-Res	$C054 $C053	$C056 $C050	Mixed Text and Lo-Res	$C055 $C053	$C056 $C050
Mixed Text and Hi-Res	$C054 $C053	$C057 $C050	Mixed Text and Hi-Res	$C055 $C053	$C057 $C050

TEXT MODE

In the Text mode, the Apple can display 24 lines of characters with up to 40 characters on each line. Each character on the screen represents the contents of one memory location from the memory range of the page being displayed. The character set includes the 26 upper-case letters, the 10 digits, and 28 special characters for a total of 64 characters. The characters are formed on a dot matrix 5 dots wide and 7 dots high. There is a one-dot wide space on both sides of each character to seperate adjacent lines. The characters are normally formed with white dots on a dark background; however, each character on the screen can also be displayed using dark dots on a white background or alternating between the two to produce a flashing character. When the Video Display is in Text mode, the video circuitry in the Apple turns off the color burst signal to the television monitor, giving you a clearer black-and-white display. (This feature is not present on the Revision 0 board).

The area of memory which is used for the primary text page starts at location number 1024 and extends to location number 2047. The secondary screen begins at location number 2048 and extends up to location 3071. In machine language, the primary page is from hexadecimal address $400 to address $7FF; the secondary page is from $800 to $BFF. Each of these pages is 1,024 bytes long. Those of you intrepid enough to do the multiplication will realize that there are only 960 characters displayed on the screen. The remaining 64 bytes in each page which are not displaced on the screen are used as temporary storage locations by programs stored on PROM on Apple Intelligent Interface peripheral boards.

Photo 6 shows the sixty-four characters available on the Apple's screen.

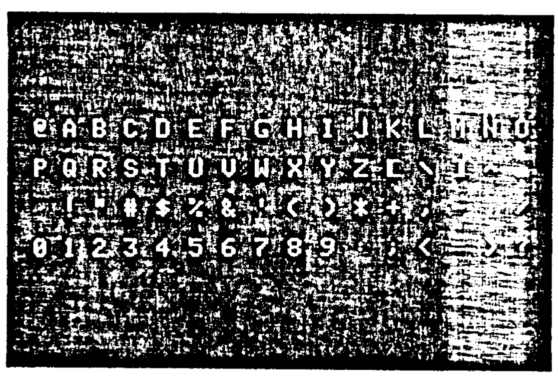


Photo 6. The Apple Character Set.

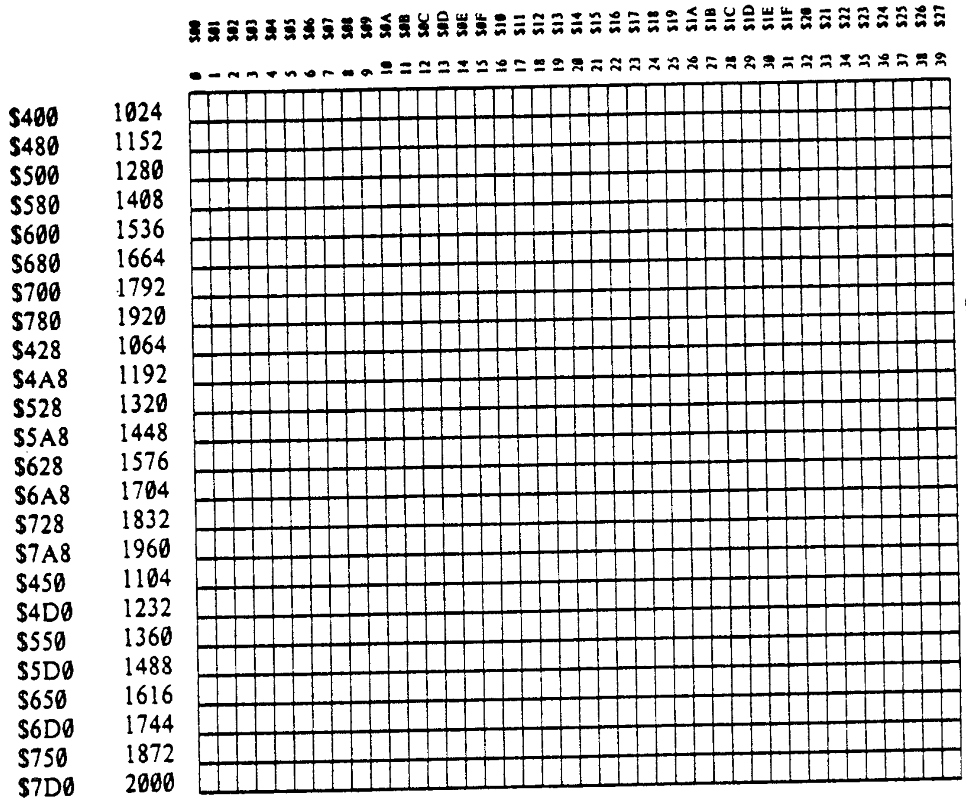


Figure 1. Map of the Text Screen

Table 7: ASCII Screen Characters

	Inverse				Flashing				Normal							
									(Control)						(Lowercase)	
Decimal	0	16	32	48	64	80	96	112	128	144	160	176	192	208	224	240
Hex	$00	$10	$20	$30	$40	$50	$60	$70	$80	$90	$A0	$B0	$C0	$D0	$E0	$F0
0 $0	@	P		0	@	P		0	@	P		0	@	P		0
1 $1	A	Q	!	1	A	Q	!	1	A	Q	!	1	A	Q	!	1
2 $2	B	R	"	2	B	R	"	2	B	R	"	2	B	R	"	2
3 $3	C	S	#	3	C	S	#	3	C	S	#	3	C	S	#	3
4 $4	D	T	$	4	D	T	$	4	D	T	$	4	D	T	$	4
5 $5	E	U	%	5	E	U	%	5	E	U	%	5	E	U	%	5
6 $6	F	V	&	6	F	V	&	6	F	V	&	6	F	V	&	6
7 $7	G	W	'	7	G	W	'	7	G	W	'	7	G	W	'	7
8 $8	H	X	(	8	H	X	(	8	H	X	(	8	H	X	(	8
9 $9	I	Y	)	9	I	Y	)	9	I	Y	)	9	I	Y	)	9
10 $A	J	Z	*	:	J	Z	*	:	J	Z	*	:	J	Z	*	:
11 $B	K	[	+	;	K	[	+	;	K	[	+	;	K	[	+	;
12 $C	L	\	,	<	L	\	,	<	L	\	,	<	L	\	,	<
13 $D	M	]	-	=	M	]	-	=	M	]	-	=	M	]	-	=
14 $E	N	^	.	>	N	^	.	>	N	^	.	>	N	^	.	>
15 $F	O	_	/	?	O	_	/	?	O	_	/	?	O	_	/	?

Table 7. ASCII Screen Character Set

THE LOW-RESOLUTION GRAPHICS (LO-RES) MODE

In the Low-Resolution Graphics mode, the Apple presents the contents of the same 1,024 locations of memory as is on the Text mode, but in a different format. In this mode, each byte of memory is displayed not as an ASCII character, but as two colored blocks, stacked one atop the other. The screen can show an array of blocks 40 wide and 48 high. Each block can be any of sixteen colors. On a black-and-white television set, The colors appear as patterns of grey and white dots.

Since each byte in the page of memory for Low-Resolution Graphics represents two blocks on the screen, stacked vertically, each byte is divided into two equal sections, called (appropriately enough) "nybbles". Each nybble can hold a value from zero to 15. The value which is in the lower nybble of the byte determines the color for the upper block of that byte on the screen, and the value which is in the upper nybble determines the color for the lower block on the screen, and the value which is in the upper nybble determines the color for the lower block on the screen. The colors are numbered zero to 15, see table 8.

Colors may vary from television to television, particularly on those without hue controls. You can adjust the tint of the colors by adjusting the COLOR TRIM control on the right edge of the apple board.

So, a byte containing the hexadecimal value $D8 would appear on the screen as a brown block on top of a yellow block. Using decimal arithmetic, the color of the lower block is determined by the remainder.

Figure 2 is a map of the Apple's display in Low-Resolution Graphics mode, with the memory location addresses for each block on the screen.

Since the Low-Resolution Graphics screen displays the same area in memory as is used for the Text screen, interesting things happen if you switch between the Text and Low-Resolution Graphics modes. For example, if the screen is in the Low-Resolution Graphics mode and is full of colored blocks, and then the TEXT/GRAPHICS screen switch is thrown to the Text mode, the screen will be filled with seemingly random text characters, sometimes inverse or flashing. Similarly, a screen full of test when viewed in Low-Resolution Graphics mode appears as long horizontal grey, pink, green or yellow bars separated by randomly colored blocks.

Table 8: Low-Resolution Graphics Colors

Decimal	Hex	Color	Decimal	Hex	Color
0	$0	Black	8	$8	Brown
1	$1	Magenta	9	$9	Orange
2	$2	Dark Blue	10	$A	Grey 2
3	$3	Purple	11	$B	Pink
4	$4	Dark Green	12	$C	Light Green
5	$5	Grey 1	13	$D	Yellow
6	$6	Medium Blue	14	$E	Aquamarine
7	$7	Light Blue	15	$F	White

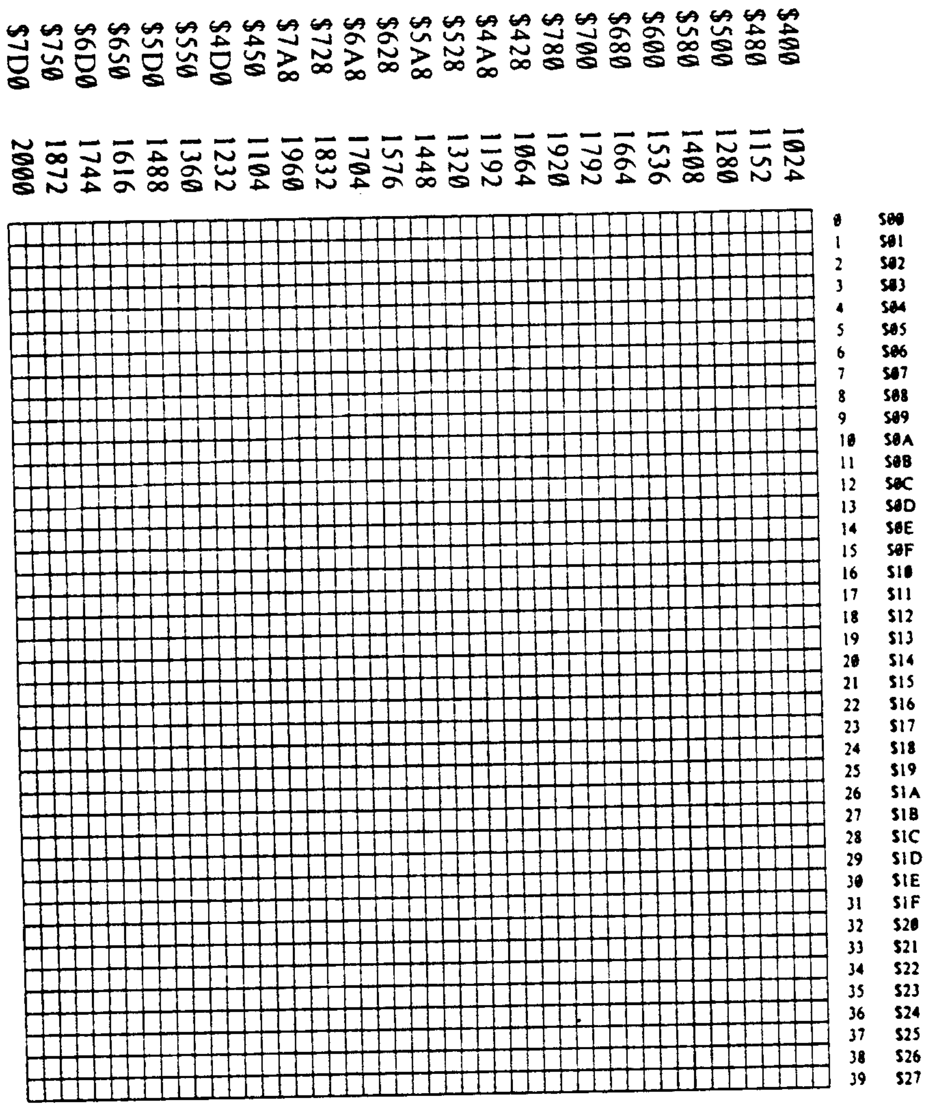


Figure 2. Map of the Low-Resolution Graphics Mode

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

THE HIGH-RESOLUTION GRAPHICS (HI-RES) MODE

The Apple has a second type of graphics display, called High-Resolution Graphics ("HIRES"). When your Apple is in the High-Resolution Graphics mode, it can display 53,760 dots in a matrix 280 dots wide and 192 dots high. The screen can display black, white, violet, green, red, and blue dots, although there are some limitations concerning the color of individual dots.

The High-Resolution Graphics mode takes its data from an 8,192-byte area of memory , usually called a "picture buffer". There are two separate picture buffers: one for the primary page and one for the secondary page. Both of these buffers are independent of and separate from the memory areas used for Text and Low-Resolution Graphics. The primary page picture buffer for the High-Resolution Graphics mode begins at memory location number 8192 and extends up to location number 16383; the secondary page picture buffer follows on the heels of the first at memory location number 16384, extending up to location number 24575. For those of you with sixteen fingers, the primary page resides from $2000 to $3FFF and the secondary page follows in succession at $4000 to $5FFF. If your Apple is equipped with 16k (16,384 bytes) or less of memory, then the secondary page is inaccessible to you; if its memory size is less than 16k, then the entire High-Resolution Graphics mode is unavailable to you.

Each dot on the screen represents one bit from the picture buffer. Seven of the eight bits in each byte are displayed on the screen, with the remaining bit used to select the colors of the dots in that byte. Forty bytes are displayed on each line of the screen. The least significant bit (first bit) of the first byte in the line is displayed on the left edge of the screen, followed by the second bit, then the third, etc. The most significant (eight) bit is not displayed. Then follows the first bit of the next byte, and so on. A total of 280 dots are displayed on each of the 192 lines of the screen.

On a blank-and white-monitor or TV set, the dots whose corresponding bits are "On" (or equal to 1) appear white; the dots whose corresponding bits are "off" or (equal to 0) appear black. On a color monitor or TV, it is not so simple. If a bit is "OFF", its corresponding dot will always be black. If a bit is "ON" however, its color will depend upon the position of that dot on the screen. If the dot is in the leftmost column on the screen, called "column 0", or in any even-numbered column, then it will appear violet. If the dot is in the rightmost column (column 279) or any odd-numbered column then it will appear green. If two dots are placed side-by-side, they will both appear white. If the undisplayed bit of a byte is turned on, then the colors blue and red are substituted for violet and green, respectively. Thus, there are six colors available in the High-Resoltion Graphics mode, subject to the following limitations:

1) Dots in even columns must be black, violet, or blue.

2) Dots in odd columns must be black, green, or red.

3) Each byte must be either a violet/green byte or a blue/red byte. It is not possible to mix green and blue, violet and blue, or violet and red in the

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

same byte.

4) Two colored dots side by side always appear white, even if they are different bytes.

5) On European-modified Apples, these rules apply but the colors generated in the High-Resolution Graphics mode may differ.

Figure 3 shows the Apple's display screen in High-Resolution Graphics mode with the memory addresses of each line on the screen.

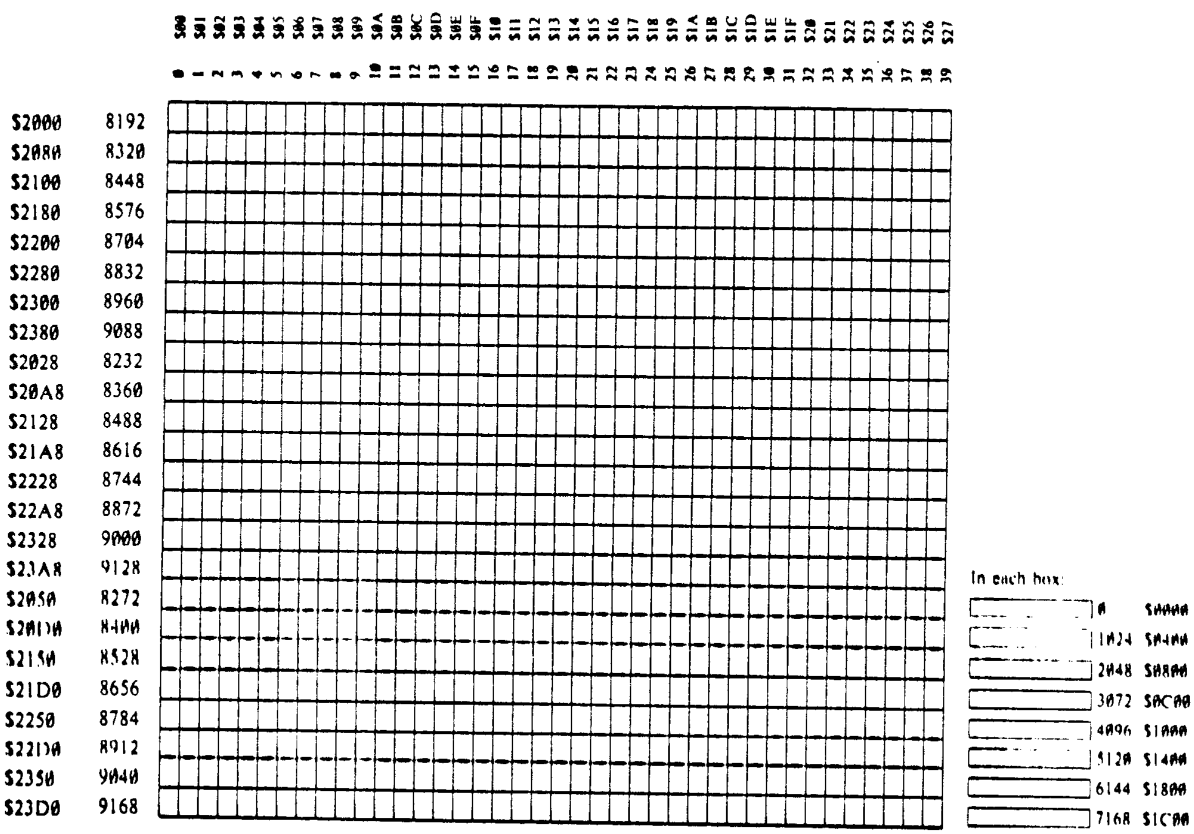


Figure 3. Map of the High-Resolution Graphics Screen

EURAPPLE (50 HZ) MODIFICATION

APPLE II's can be modified to generate a video signal compatible with the CCIR standard used in many European countries. To make this modification, just cut the two X-shaped pads on the right edge of the board about nine inches from the back of the board, and solder together the three O-shaped pads in the same locations(See photo 5). You can then connect the video connector of your Apple to a European standard closed-circuit black-and-white or color video monitor. If you wish, you can obtain a "Eurocolor" encoder to convert the video signal into a PAL or SECAM standard color television signal suitable for use with any European television receiver. The encoder is a small printed circuit board which plugs into the rightmost peripheral slot (slot 7) in the Apple and connects to the single video output pin.

THE EUROPEAN MODIFICATION IS NOT COMPLETE AND WE DO NOT SUPPORT OR RECOMMEND MODIFICATION OF APPLES FOR EUROPEAN TELEVISION SIGNALS.

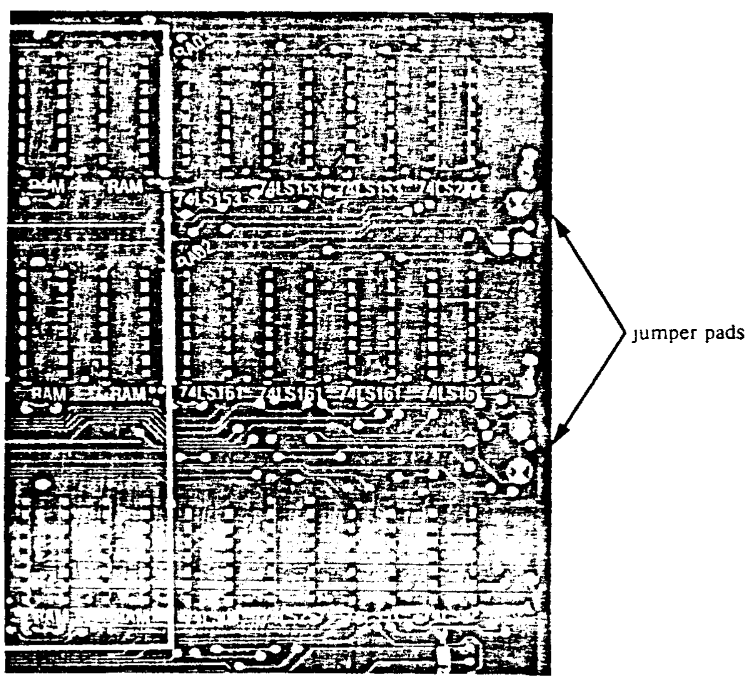


Photo 5. Eurapple (50 hz) Jumper Pads.

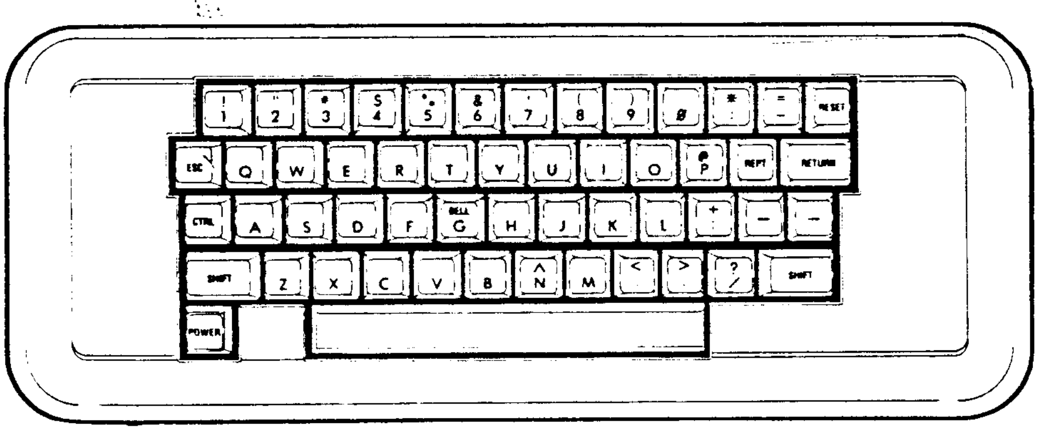
PRE-RELEASE VERSION

THE KEYBOARD

The Apple Keyboard

Number of Keys:	52			
Coding:	Upper Case ASCII			
Number of codes:	91			
Output:	Seven bits, plus strobe			
Power requirements:	+5v at 120mA −12v at 50mA			
Rollover:	2 key			
Special keys:	CTRL ESC RESET REPT ← →			
Memory mapped locations:		Hex	Decimal	
	Data	$C000	49152	-16384
	Clear	$C010	49168	-16368

PRE-RELEASE VERSION



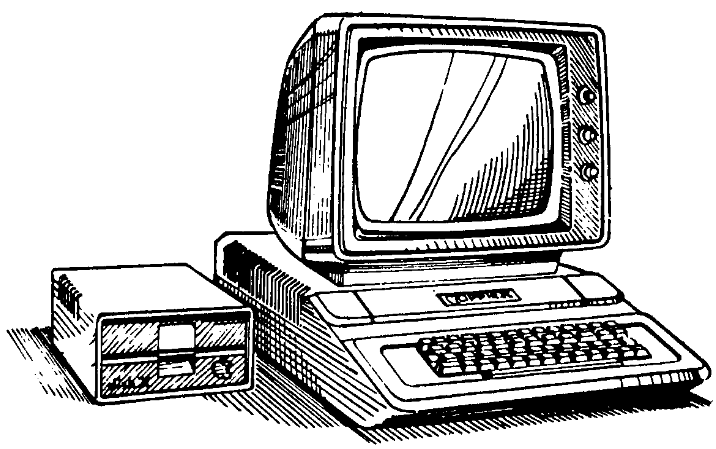
"Photo" 3. The Apple Keyboard.

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS
LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 3
KEYBOARD



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

KEYBOARD

Theory of Operation

The APPLE ll has a built-in 52-key typewriter-like which communications using the American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII)*. Ninety-one of the 96 upper-case ASCII characters can be generated directly by the keyboard. Table 2 shows the keys on the keyboard and their associated ASCII codes. Photo 3 is a diagram of the keyboard.

The keyboard is electrically connected to the main circuit board by a 16-conductor cable with plugs at each end that plug into standard integated circuit sockets. One end of this cable is connected to the keyboard, the other end plugs into the APPLE board's keyboard connector, near the very front edge of the board, under the keyboard itself. The electrical specifications for this connector are given in Chapter 2.

The keyboard sends seven bits of information which together form one character. These seven bits, along with another signal which indicates when a key has been pressed, are available to most programs as the contents of a memory location. Programs can read the current state of the keyboard by reading the contents of this location. When you press a key on the keyboard, the value in the location becomes 128 or greater, and the particular value it assumes is the numeric code for the character which was typed. Table 3 shows the ASCII characters and their associated numeric codes. The location will hold this one value until you press another key, or until your program tells the memory location to forget the character it's holding.

Once your program has accepted and understood a keypress, it should tell the keyboard's memory location to "release" the character it is holding and prepare to receive a new one. Your program can do this by referencing another memory location. When you reference this other location, the value contained in the first location will drop below 128. This value will stay low until you press another key. This action is called "clearing the keyboard strobe". Your program can either read or write to the special memory location; the data which are written to or read from that location are irrelevant. It is the mere reference to the location which clears the keyboard strobe. Once you have cleared the keyboard strobe, you can still recover the code for the key which was last pressed by adding 128 (hexadecimal $80) to the value in the keyboard location.

Table 11 shows the special memory locations used by the keyboard:

The RESET key at the upper right-hand corner does not generate an ASCII code, but instead is directly connected to the microprocessor. When this key is pressed, all processing stops. When the key is released, the computer starts a reset cycle.

When you turn your APPLE'S power switch ON or press and release the RESET key, the APPLE'S 6502 microprocessor initiates a RESET cycle. It begins by jumping into a subroutine in the APPLE'S Monitor ROM. In the two different versions of the ROM, the Monitor ROM and the Autostart ROM, the RESET cycle does very different things.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

The CTRL and SHIFT keys generate no codes by themselves, but only alter the codes produced by other keys.

The REPT key, if pressed alone, produces a duplicate of the last code that was generated. If you press and hold down the REPT key while you are holding down a character key, it will act as if you were pressing that key repeatedly at a rate of 10 presses each second. This repetition will cease when you release either the character key or REPT.

The ESC key, when pressed causes the APPLE'S input subroutines to go into an escape mode. In this mode, eleven keys have separate meanings, called "escape codes". When you press one of these eleven keys, the APPLE will perform the function associated with that key. After it has performed the function, The APPLE will either continue or terminate escape mode, depending upon which escape code was performed. If you press any key in escape mode which is not an escape code, then that keypress will be ignored and escape mode will be terminated. The APPLE recognizes eleven escape codes, eight of which are pure cursor moves, which simply move the cursor without altering the screen or the input line, and three of which are screen clear codes, which simply blank part or all of the screen.

The backspace key <---- when pressed moves the cursor over the printed text and deletes unwanted chars. This is extremely useful when correcting a typographical error.

The RETYPE key ----> when pressed has the same effect as typing the character which is under the cursor. This is extremely useful for re-entering the remainder of a line which you have backspaced over to correct a typographical error.

Table 2: Keys and Their Associated ASCII Codes

Key	Alone	CTRL	SHIFT	Both	Key	Alone	CTRL	SHIFT	Both
space	$A0	$A0	$A0	$A0	RETURN	$8D	$8D	$8D	$8D
0	$B0	$B0	$B0	$B0	G	$C7	$87	$C7	$87
1!	$B1	$B1	$A1	$A1	H	$C8	$88	$C8	$88
2"	$B2	$B2	$A2	$A2	I	$C9	$89	$C9	$89
3#	$B3	$B3	$A3	$A3	J	$CA	$8A	$CA	$8A
4$	$B4	$B4	$A4	$A4	K	$CB	$8B	$CB	$8B
5%	$B5	$B5	$A5	$A5	L	$CC	$8C	$CC	$8C
6&	$B6	$B6	$A6	$A6	M	$CD	$8D	$DD	$9D
7'	$B7	$B7	$A7	$A7	N^	$CE	$8E	$DE	$9E
8(	$B8	$B8	$A8	$A8	O	$CF	$8F	$CF	$8F
9)	$B9	$B9	$A9	$A9	P@	$D0	$90	$C0	$80
:*	$BA	$BA	$AA	$AA	Q	$D1	$91	$D1	$91
;+	$BB	$BB	$AB	$AB	R	$D2	$92	$D2	$92
,<	$AC	$AC	$BC	$BC	S	$D3	$93	$D3	$93
-=	$AD	$AD	$BD	$BD	T	$D4	$94	$D4	$94
.>	$AE	$AE	$BE	$BE	U	$D5	$95	$D5	$95
/?	$AF	$AF	$BF	$BF	V	$D6	$96	$D6	$96
A	$C1	$81	$C1	$81	W	$D7	$97	$D7	$97
B	$C2	$82	$C2	$82	X	$D8	$98	$D8	$98
C	$C3	$83	$C3	$83	Y	$D9	$99	$D9	$99
D	$C4	$84	$C4	$84	Z	$DA	$9A	$DA	$9A
E	$C5	$85	$C5	$85	→	$88	$88	$88	$88
F	$C6	$86	$C6	$86	←	$95	$95	$95	$95
					ESC	$9B	$9B	$9B	$9B

All codes are given in hexadecimal. To find the decimal equivalents, use Table 3.

Table 3: The ASCII Character Set

Decimal:	Hex:	128 $80	144 $90	160 $A0	176 $B0	192 $C0	208 $D0	224 $E0	240 $F0
0	$0	nul	dle		0	@	P		p
1	$1	soh	dc1	!	1	A	Q	a	q
2	$2	stx	dc2	"	2	B	R	b	r
3	$3	etx	dc3	#	3	C	S	c	s
4	$4	eot	dc4	$	4	D	T	d	t
5	$5	enq	nak	%	5	E	U	e	u
6	$6	ack	syn	&	6	F	V	f	v
7	$7	bel	etb	'	7	G	W	g	w
8	$8	bs	can	(	8	H	X	h	x
9	$9	ht	em	)	9	I	Y	i	y
10	$A	lf	sub	*	:	J	Z	j	z
11	$B	vt	esc	+	;	K	[	k	{
12	$C	ff	fs	,	<	L	\	l	|
13	$D	cr	gs	–	=	M	]	m	}
14	$E	so	rs	.	>	N	^	n	~
15	$F	si	us	/	?	O	_	o	rub

Table 1: Keyboard Special Locations

Location: Hex	Decimal		Description
$C000	49152	-16384	Keyboard Data
$C010	49168	-16368	Clear Keyboard Strobe

1C

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

KEYBOARD VARITIES

The first Apple keyboard was built by Datanetics, assembly number 01-0425. The built-in keyboard was built around a MM5740 monolithic keyboard decoder ROM. The inputs to this Rom, on pins 4 through 12 and 22 through 31, are connected to the matrix of keyswitches on the keyboard. The outputs of this Rom are buffered by a 7404 and are connected to the Apple's Keyboard Connector.

The keyboard decoder rapidly scans through the array of keys on the keyboard, looking for one which is pressed. This scanning action is controlled by the free-running oscillator made up of three sections of a 7400 at keyboard location U4. The speed of this oscillation is controlled by C6, R6, and R7 on the keyboard's printed -circuit board. This keyboard is non-serivable.

The second Apple keyboard was also built by Datanetics, assembly number 01-0551-0. The keyboard comes with a redesigned keyboard made up of two parts, mechanical assembly (power light and 52 key switch matrix), and encoder board (contains all electronic components). This style uses the same key switch that was used on the old style keyboard (Assembly #01-0425). The replacement procedure for this key switch is found in Appendix D.

The third Apple keyboard was built by the keyboard Company which is located in Garden Grove, California. This style uses a new key switch whose replacement procedure is described in Appendix D. This style does not require the aluminum bracket stand-offs. This keyboard is refered to as an ALPS switchable with low profile or sculpured key caps. It also contains an encoder board seperate from the mechanical assembly.

The fourth Apple keyboard was also built by the Keyboard Company. This keyboard is described as a bucket keyboard. It also is a two piece keyboard with a detachable encoder board and a non-repairable mechanical assembly. This keyboard offers two types of keycaps low profile and sculpured.

All the keyboards described above use the same encoder board except the first keyboard built by Datanetics. Each keyboard is built around a AY-5-3600 keyboard encoder Rom. The inputs to this ROM, on pins 17 through 26 and 36 through 40 are connected to the matrix of keyswitches on the keyboard. The outputs of this ROM are buffered by a 74LS04 and are connected to the Apple keyboard connector.

The keyboard decoder rapidly scans through the array of keys on the keyboard, looking for one which has been pressed. This scanning action is controlled by the free running oscillator made up of three sections of a 74LS00 at location B3 on the separate encoder board. The speed of this oscillation is controlled by C7, R7, and R8 on the encoder board.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ENCODER BOARD

Theory of Operation:

The keyboard is a scanning encoder scheme. It uses a clock formed by 3 gates from B4 (74LS00), and 2 resistor with a capacitor to generate a 75 KHZ scan rate. The scan sequences through all of it's inputs looking for a transition. When it finds a transition it takes the X,Y co-ordinance of the key pressed and produces an ASCII character. This character corresponds to the key pressed.

The keyboard is also capable of repeating a particular character by activating the REPEAT key. This causes the some character to output with the strobe pulsing at 1 HZ or 1 character per/second. This repeat circuit is formed by a LM555 Monolithic Timer chip. It forms a square wave clock that pulses the data strobe line on and off for each repeat or a desired character.

The Encoder is a AY-5-3600-931 MOS chip which converts X,Y co-ordinates into ASCII Characters. It has inputs for Scan Clock, Repeat Clock, and Control Key functions. The output is held in the enable mode by pulling it to ground.

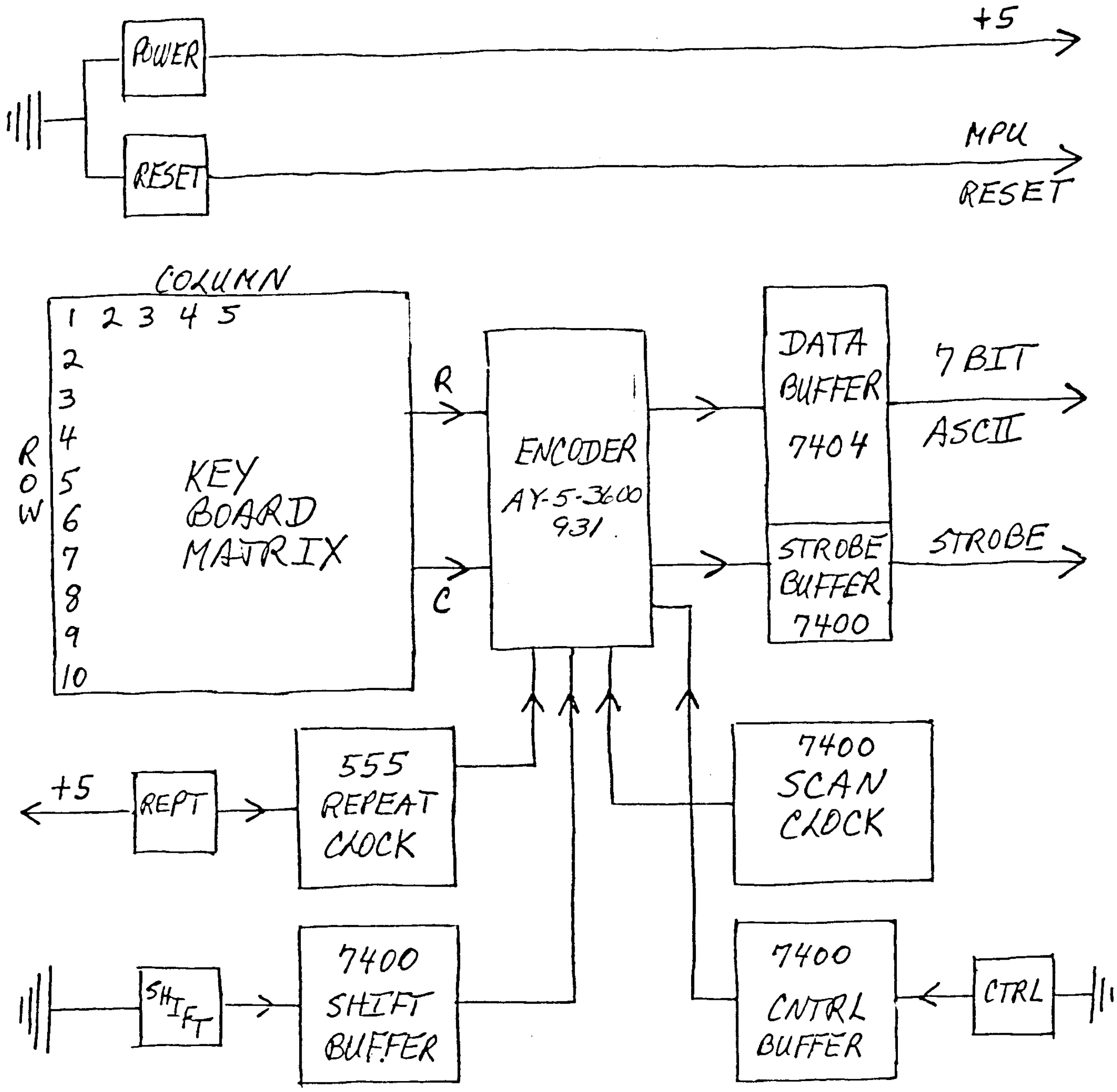
The keys are arranged in a matrix that has 5 columns and 10 rows. Each key on the board is a cross point switch which shorts a unique X,Y location on the matrix. Each key has it's own X and Y. This produces a unique address for each key. The encoder sequences through it's key addresses until an X causes a Y to go to logic 1. When this occurs we have a key press and the encoders current address in the sequence corresponds to a data byte which is the ASCII Character desired. It then presents this ASCII Character as it's output and generates a strobe.

When a Shift or Control Character is desired the appropriate CTRL or SHIFT key is pressed in conjunction with the selected key value. This alters the addressing of the encoder to produce the character with the bit pattern of a control character. The SHIFT key and CTRL key give us the function of many keys with few keep switches.

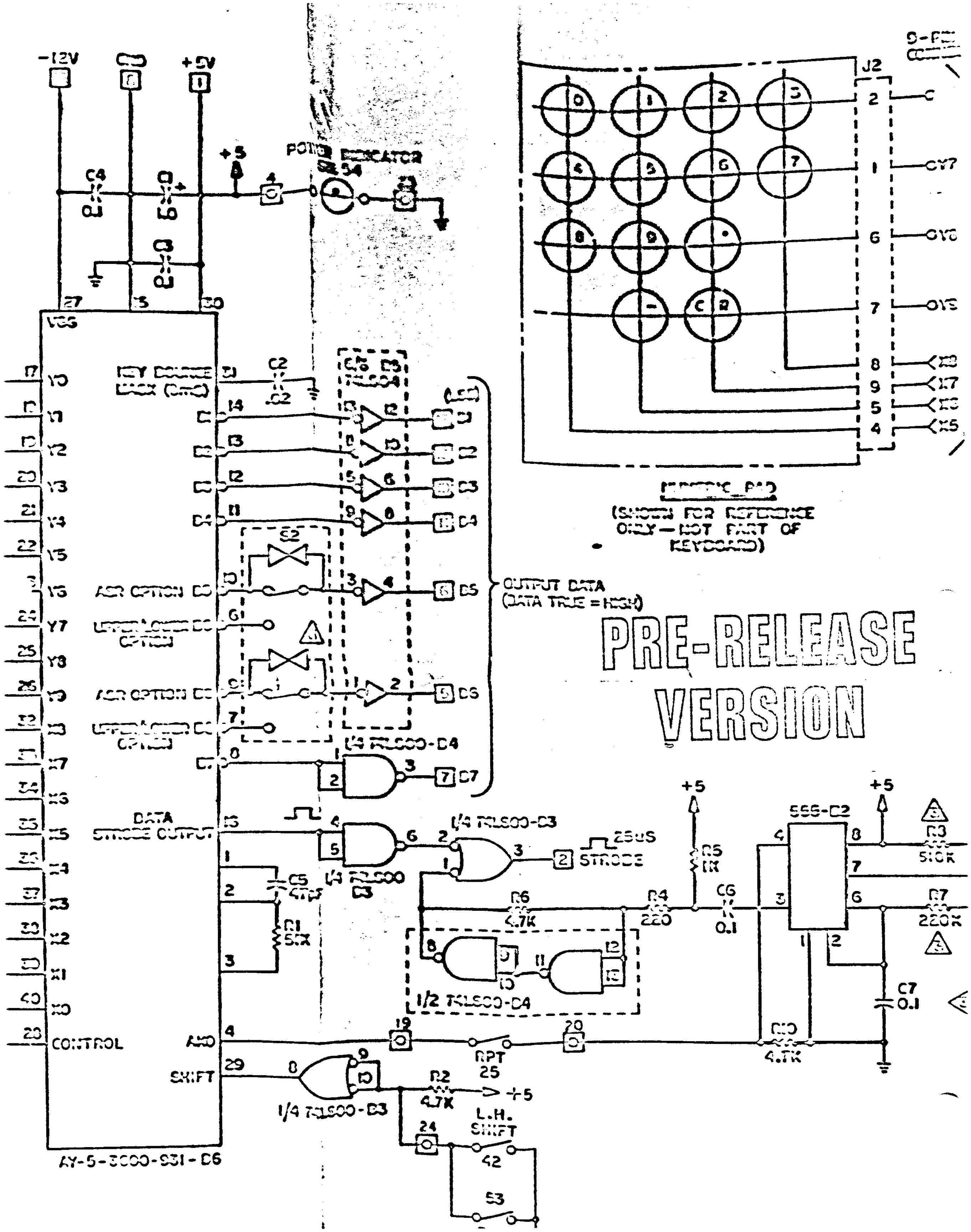
On the input to the encoder there is a debounce circuit. This circuit prevents the same key from being read two or more times. If it see's a second key press of the same key too soon it will ignore that signal. This delay in sampling is approximately the time it takes to depress and release a key switch. When a key is bouncing it will give a transition on the way down when pressed and also on the way up when it springs back into place. This sampling is quick enough that a ligitimate multipule character will be accepted.

When typing on the Apple II keyboard the fastest human operator will never loose a character as the key board has N Key roll over. This means that the keyboard is scaned at a faster rate than a human typist can generate characters.

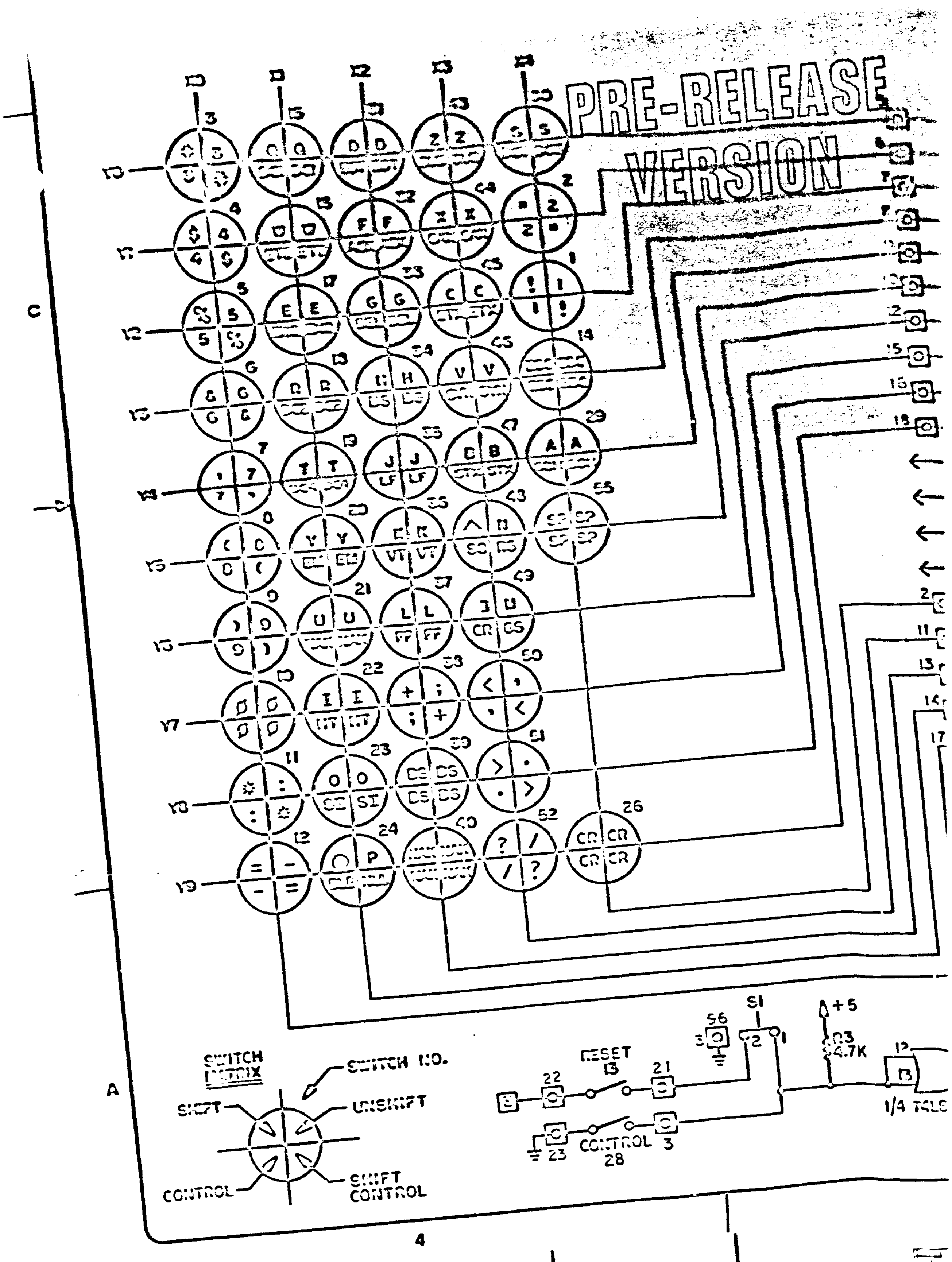
KEY BOARD BLOCK DIAGRAM



PRE-RELEASE VERSION



-12V
+5V
+5
C4
C3
POWER INDICATOR
J2
NUMERIC PAD
(SHOWN FOR REFERENCE ONLY—NOT PART OF KEYBOARD)
OUTPUT DATA
(DATA TRUE = HIGH)
PRE-RELEASE VERSION
KEY BOUNCE MASK
ASR OPTION
UPPER/LOWER OPTION
DATA STROBE OUTPUT
1/4 74LS00-D4
1/4 74LS00-D3
1/2 74LS00-D4
555-D2
STROBE
CONTROL
SHIFT
RPT
L.H. SHIFT
AY-5-3600-931-D6


PRE-RELEASE
VERSION
SWITCH MATRIX
SWITCH NO.
SHIFT
UNSHIFT
CONTROL
SHIFT CONTROL
RESET
+5
R3
4.7K
1/4
4

AUTOSTART ROM/MONITOR ROM

All Apple 11 Plus Systems include the Autostart Monitor ROM. All other Apple systems do not contain the Autostart ROM, but instead have the Apple System Monitor ROM.This version of the ROM lacks some of the features present in the Autostart ROM, but also has some features which are not present in that ROM. The main differences in the two ROMS are listed below.

Editing Controls: The ESC-I,J,K, and M sequences, which move the cursor up, left, right, and down, respectively, are not available in the Old Monitor ROM.

Stop-List: The Stop-List feature (invoked by a CTRL S, which allows you to introduce a pause into the output of most BASIC or machine language programs or listings, is not available in the Old Monitor ROM.

The RESET cycle: When you first turn on your Apple or press RESET, the Old Monitor ROM will send you directly into the Apple System Monitor, instead of initiating a warm or cold start as described in AUTOSTART ROM RESET.

AUTOSTART ROM RESET

Apples with the Autostart ROM begin their RESET cycles by flipping the soft switches which control the video screen to display the full primary page of Text mode, with Low-Resolution Graphics mixed mode lurking behind the veil of text. It then opens the text window to its full size, drops the output cursor to the bottom of the screen, and sets Normal video mode. Then it sets the COUT and KEYLN switches to use the APPLE'S internal keyboard and video display as the standard input and output devices. It flips annunciators 0 and 1 OFF and annunciators 2 and 3 ON the Game I/O connector, clears the keyboard strobe, turns off any active I/O Expansion ROM and sounds a "beep!".

These actions are performed every time you press and release the RESET key on your APPLE. At this point, the Autostart ROM peeks into two special locations in memory to see if it's been RESET before or if the APPLE has just been turned on, then the Autostart ROM performs a "cold start" otherwise, it does a "warm start".

1)Cold Start. On a freshly activated Apple, RESET cycle continues by clearing the screen and displaying "APPLE 11" top and center. It then sets up the special locations in memory to tell itself that it's been powered up and RESET. Then it starts looking through the rightmost seven slots in your APPLE'S backplane, looking for a Disk 11 Controller Card. It starts the search with Slots 7 and continues down to Slot 1. If it finds a disk controller card, then to proceeds to bootstrap the Apple Disk Operating System (Dos) from the diskette in the disk drive attached to the controller card it discovered. You can find a descripition of the disk bootstrapping procedure in Do's and Don't of DOS. Apple part number A2L0012, page 11.

If the Autostart ROM cannot find a Disk 11 controller card, or you press RESET again before the disk booting procedure has completed, then the RESET cycle will continue with a "lukewarm start". It will initialize and jump into the language which is installed on ROM on your APPLE. For a Revision 0 APPLE, either without an Applesoft 11 firmware card or with such a card with its controlling switch in the DOWN position, the Autostart ROM will start Apple Interger Basic. For Apple ll-plus systems, or Revision 0 Apple lls with the Applesoft ll Firmware card with the switch in the UP position, The Autostart ROM will begin Applesoft ll Floating-Point BASIC.

2)Warm Start. If you have an Autostart ROM which has already performed a cold start cycle, then each time you press and release the RESET key, you will be returned to the language you were using, with your program and variables intact.

"OLD MONITOR" ROM RESET

A RESET cycle in the Apple ll Monitor ROM begins by setting Normal video mode, a full screen of Primary Page text with the Color Graphics mixed mode behind it, a fully-opened text window, and Apple's standard keyboard and video screen as the standard input and output devices. It sounds a "beep!", the cursor leaps to the bottom line of the uncleared text screen, and you find yourself facing an asterisk (*) prompt and talking to the Apple System Monitor.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

SUBROUTINES

Almost every program and language on the APPLE needs some sort of input from the keyboard, and some way to print information on the screen. There is a set of subroutines stored in the APPLE'S ROM which handle most of the standard input and output from all programs and languages on the APPLE.

The subroutines in the APPLE'S ROM which perform these input and output functions are called by various names. These names were given to the subroutines by their authors when they were written. The APPLE itself does not recognize or remember the names of its own machine language subroutines, but it's convenient for us to call these subroutines by their given names.

Standard Output:

The standard output subroutine is called COUT. COUT will display upper-case letters, numbers, and symbols on the screen in either Normal or Inverse mode. It will ignore control characters except RETURN, the bell character, the line feed character, and the backspace character.

The COUT subroutine maintains its own invisible "output cursor"* (the position at which the next character is to be placed). Each time COUT is called, it places one character on the screen at the current cursor position, replacing whatever character was there, and moves the cursor one space to the right. If the cursor is bumped off the right edge of the screen, then COUT shifts the cursor down to the first postion on the next line. If the cursor passes the bottom line of the screen, the screen "scrolls" up one line and the cursor is set to the first postion on the newly blank bottom line.

When a RETURN character is sent to COUT, it moves the cursor to the first postion of the next line. If the cursor falls off the bottom of the screen, the screen scrolls as described above.

The Stop-List Feature:

When any program or language sends a RETURN code to COUT, COUT will take a quick peek at the keyboard. If you have typed a CTRL S since the last time Cout looked at the keyboard, then it will stop and wait for you to press another key. This is called the Stop-List Feature. This feature is not present on APPLES without the Autostart ROM. When you press another key, COUT will then output the RETURN code and proceed with normal output. The code of the key which you press to end the Stop-List mode is ignored unless it is a CTRL C. If it is, then COUT passes this character code back to the program or language which is sending output. This allows you to terminate a BASIC program or listing by typing CRTL C while you are in Stop-List mode.

A line feed character causes COUT to move its mythical output cursor down one line without and horizontal motion at all. As always, moving beyond the bottom of the screen causes the screen to scroll and the cursor remains at its same position on a fresh bottom line.

A backspace character moves the imaginary cursor one space to the left. If the cursor is bumped off the left edge, it is reset to the rightmost position on the previous line. If there is no previous line (if the cursor was at the top of the screen), the screen does not scroll downwards, but instead the cursor is placed again at the rightmost position on the top line of the screen.

When Cout is sent a "bell" character (CTRL G), it does not change the screen at all, but instead produces a tone from the speaker. The tone has a frequency of 100 Hz and lasts for 1/10th of a second. The output cursor does not move for a bell character.

Standard Input:

There are actually two subroutines which are concerned with the gathering of standard input: RDKEY, which fetches a single keystroke from the keyboard, and GETLN, which accumulates a number of keystrokes into a chunk of information called an input line.

RDKEY:

The primary function of the RDKEY subroutine is to wait for the user to press a key on the keyboard, and then report back to the program which called it with the code for the key which was pressed. But while it does this, RDKEY also performs two other helpful tasks:

1).Input Prompting. When RDKEY is activated, the first thing it does is make visible the hidden output cursor. This accomplishes two things: it reminds the user that the APPLE is waiting for a key to be pressed, and it also associates the input it wants with a particular place on the screen. In most cases, the input prompt appears near a word or phase describing what is being requested by the particular program or language currently in use. The input cursor itself is a flashing representation of whatever character was at the position of the output cursor. Usually this is the blank character, so the input cursor most often appears to be a flashing square. When the user presses a key, RDKEY dutifully removes the input cursor and returns the value of the key which was pressed to the program which requested it. Remember that the output cursor is just a position on the screen, but the input cursor is a flashing character on the screen. They usually move in tandem and are rarely separated from each other, but when the input cursor disappears, the output cursor is still active.

2). Ramdon Number Seeding. While it waits for the user to press a key, RDKEY is continually adding 1 to a pair of numbers in memory. When a key is finally pressed, these two locations together represent a number from 0 to 65,535, the exact value of which is quite unpredictable. Many programs and languages use this number as the base of a random number generator. The two locations which are randomized during RDKEY are numbers 78 and 79 (hexadecimal $4E and $4F).

GETLN:

The vast majority of input to the APPLE is gathered into chunks called input lines. The subrountine in the APPLE'S ROM called GETLN requests an input line from the keyboard, and after getting one, returns to the program which called it. GETLN has many features and nuances, and it is good to be familiar with the services it offers.

When called, GETLN first prints a prompting character, or "prompt". The Prompt helps you to identify which program has called GETLN requesting input. A prompt character of an asterisk (*) represents the System Monitor, a right caret (>) indicates Apple Integer BASIC, a right bracket (]) is the prompt for Applesoft 11 BASIC, and an exclamation point (!) is the hallmark of the APPLE Mini-Assembler. In addition, the question-mark prompt (?) is used by many programs and languages to indicate that a user program is requesting input. From your (the user) point of view, the Apple simply prints a prompt and displays an input cursor. As you type, the charcaters you type are printed on the screen and the cursor moves accordingly. When you press RETURN, the entire line is sent off to the program or language you are talking to, and you get another prompt.

Actually, what really happens is that after the prompt is printed, GETLN calls RDKEY, which displays an input cursor. When RDKEY returns with a keycode, GETLN stores that keycode in an input buffer and prints it on the screen where the input cursor was. It then calls RDKEY again. This continues until the user presses RETURN. When GETLN recieves a RETURN code from the keytboard, it sticks the RETURN code at the end of the input buffer, clears the remainder of the screen line the input cursor was on, and sends the RETURN code to COUT (see above). GETLN then returns to the program which called it. The program or language which requested input may now look at the entire line, all at once, as saved in the input buffer.

At any time while you are typing a line, you can type a CTRL X and cancel that entire line. GETLN will simply forget everything you have typed, print a backslash (\), skip to a new line, and display another prompt, allowing you to retype the line. Also, GETLN can handle a maximum of 255 characters in a line. If you exceed this limit, GETLN will cancel the entire line and you must start over. To warn you that you are approaching the limit, GETLN will sound a tone every keypress starting with the 249th character.

GETLN also allows you to edit and modify the line you are typing in order to correct simple typographical errors. A quick introduction to the standard editing functions and the use of the two arrow keys, <---- and ---->, appears in the section entitled Keyboard Theory.

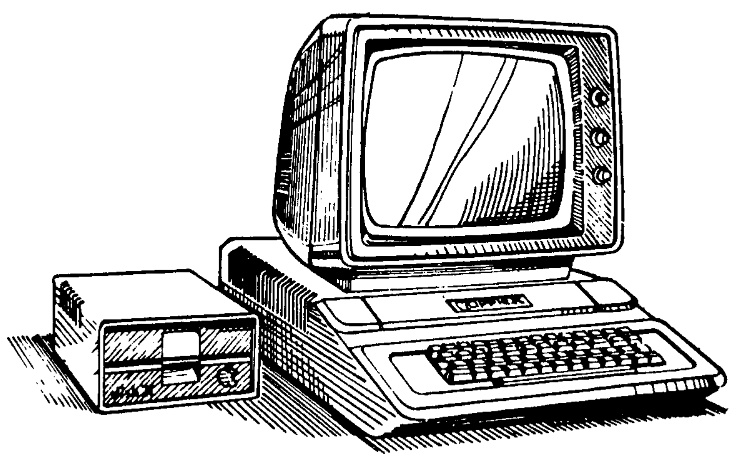
PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS
LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 4
POWER SUPPLY



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

POWER SUPPLY

Theory of Operation

The metal box on the left side of the interior is the power supply. It supplies four volages +5v, -5.2v, +11.8v, and -12.0v. It is a high-frequency "switching" type power supply, with many protective features to ensure that there can be no imbalances between the different supplies. The main power cord for the computer plugs directly into the back of the power supply. The power on switch is also on the power supply itself, to protect you and your fingers from accidently becoming part of the high voltage power supply circuit.

The Apple power supply first converts the AC line voltage into a DC voltage and then uses this DC voltage to drive a high-frequency oscillator. The output of this oscillator is fed into a small transformer with many windings. The voltages on the secondary windings are then regulated to become the output voltages.

The +5 volt output voltage is compared to a reference voltage, and the difference error is fed back into the oscillator circuit. When the power supply's output starts to move out of its tolerances the frequency of the oscillator is altered and the volages return to their normal levels. If by chance one of the output voltages of the power supply is short-circuited a feed back circuit in the power supply stops the oscillator and cuts all output circuits. The power supply then pauses for about 1/2 second and then attempts to restart the oscillations. If the output is still shorted, it will stop and wait again. It will continue this cycle until the short circuit is removed or the power is turned off.

If the output connector of the power supply is disconnected from the Apple board, the power supply will notice this "no load" condition and effectively short-circuit itself. This activates the protection circuits described above, and cuts all power output. This pervents damage to the power supply's internals.

If one of the output volages leaves its tolerance range, due to any problen either within or external to the power supply, it will again shut itself down to prevent damage to the components on the Apple board. This insures that all voltages will either be correct and in porportion, or they will be shut off.

When one of the above fault conditions occurs, the internal protection circuits will stop the oscillations which drive the transformer. After a short while, the power supply will perform a restart cycle, and attempt to oscillate again. If the fault condition has not been removed, the supply will again shut down. This cycle can continue infinitely without damage to the power suply. Each time the oscillator shuts down and restarts, its frequency passes through the audible range and you can hear the power supply squeal and squeak. Thus, when a fault occurs, you will hear a steady "click click click" emanating from the power supply. This is your warning that something is wrong with one of the voltage outputs.

Under no circumtances should you apply more than 140 VAC to the input of the transformer (or more than 280 VAC when the supply's switch is in the 220V position, if so equipped). Permanent damage to the supply will result.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

THE APPLE POWER SUPPLY

Input Voltages:	107vac to 132vac
	214vac to 264vac
Supply voltages:	+5.0
	+11.0
	-12.0
	+5.2
Power Consumption:	60 watts max.(full load)
	79 watts max.(intermittent
Full Load Power Output:	
	+5v: 2.5amp
	-5v: 250ma
	+12v: 1.5amp(~2.5amp intermittent)
	-12v: 250ma
Operating Temperture:	
	55c(131 degrees fareheit)

POWER SUPPLY VARITIES

Physical Description:

Four basic power supplies have been used on the Apple II since it was first introduced. Modifications and changes to the power supplies have been incorporated during the normal evolution of Apple II, which have made new part numbers necessary to identify modifications to each basic model. The four basic power supplies, modifications, changes and part numbers in order of production are:

Note: Apple supports all of the power supplies listed below except the first one which is being phased out. The RFI version is the only available new power supply.

1) Apple Power Supply (P/N 600--0026) (EM/N 600-9026)

The first power supply used in the Apple 11 computers was manufactured by Apple. A description on how the power supply functions is found in the theory portion of this chapter. To physically distinguish the first Apple power supply from the others note the toggle on/off switch on the outside of the case.

2) Apple Power Supply (P/N 605-5001) (EM/N 605-9001)

Designed and marketed by Apple Computer. Identified by the Apple Part number A2M001 on the back of the case. The case is Silver is color. On the back of the case indiciates UL recognition.

3) Astec Model AA11040 Standard (P/N 605-5703) (EM/N 605-9703)

Astec is a manufacturer of power supplies in Hong kong. The third power supply used in the Apple 11 computers was model 11040 built by Astec. The 11040 standard power supply was more cost effective and had a higher reliability rate than the Apple power supply. The physical difference can be seen in photo 2.

a. Switchable Version Astec Model AA11040 Standard (P/N 605-6001) (EM/N 605-9001)
Note the on/off switch and the black cover protecting the switchable 115v/230v switch. The model number AA 11040 is located on the power supply. The 11040 standard power supply is not U/L approved but U/L reconized.

4) Astec Model AA11040B (P/N 652-0337) (EM/N 652-9337)

European Version Astec Model AA11040B (P/N 699-0049) (EM/N 699-9049)

The fourth power supply which is model number 11040-B was built by Astec to meet U/L approval. Astec removed the outside 115v/230v switch and now uses jumpers on the PCB to determine whether it is to be a 115v or 230v power supply.

a) RFI Version Astec Model AA11040B:

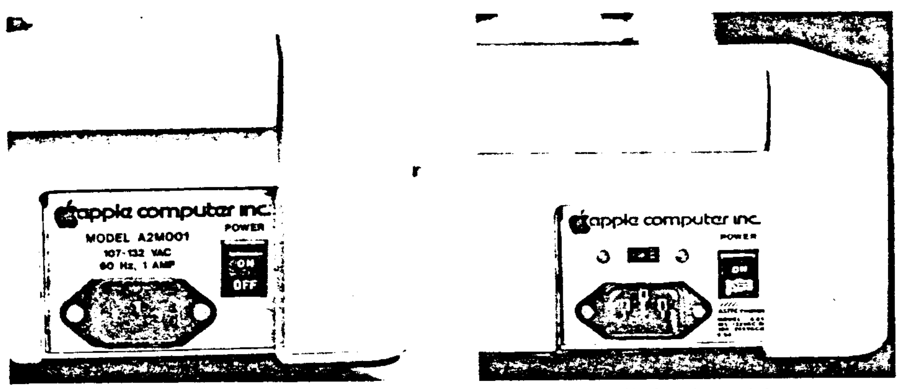
110 volt (P/N 652-0337) (EM/N 652-9337)

220 volt (P/N 699-0049) (EM/N 699-9049)

Astec Model AA11040B with Astec production numbers 55073241 through 55074240 and all AA11040B units beginning with 55079547 are RFI. Astec production numbers are stamped in the case on the left side of the unit. RFI units are also identified by a red dot on the back of the power supply.

All RFI power supplies are UL Recognized.

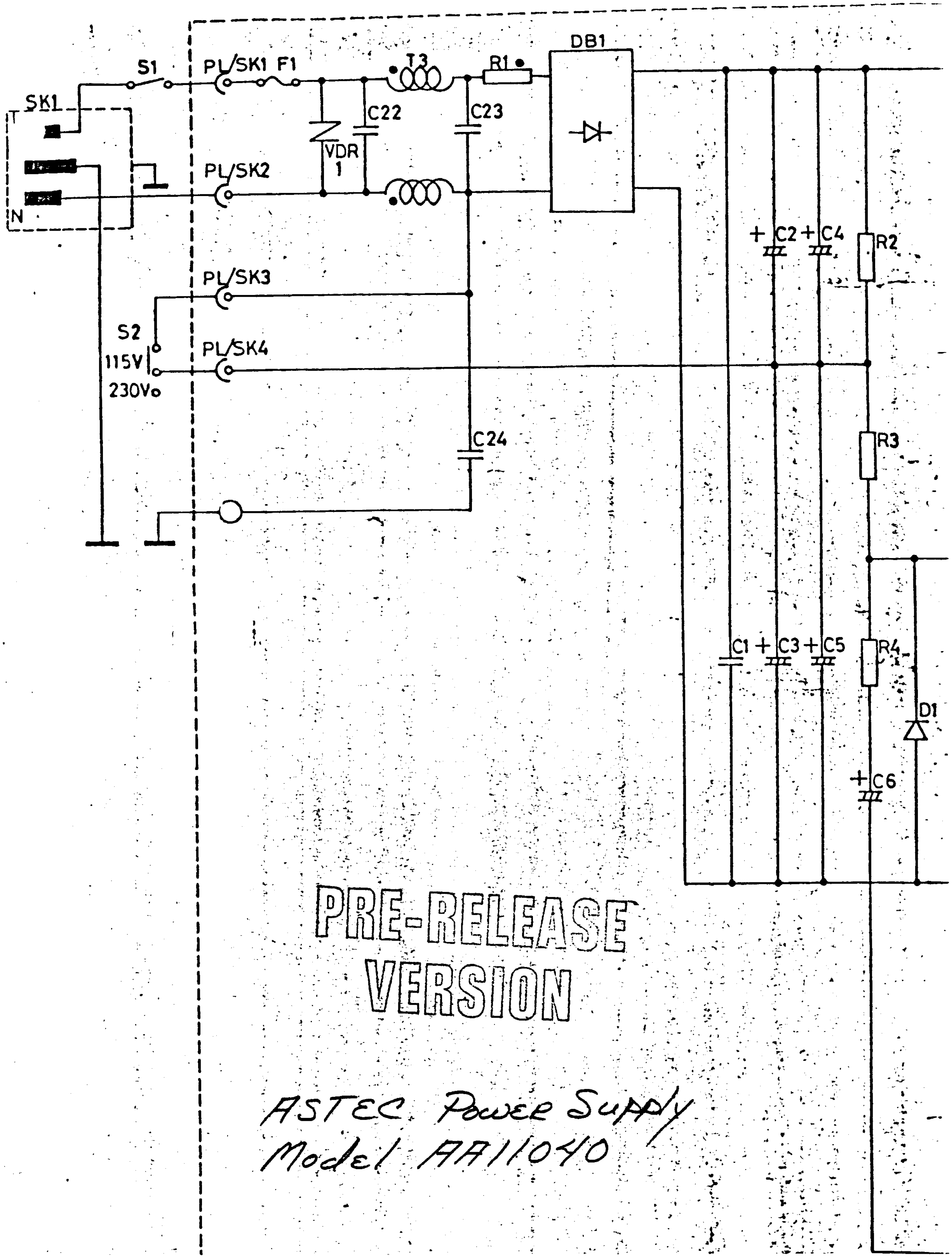
PRE-RELEASE VERSION



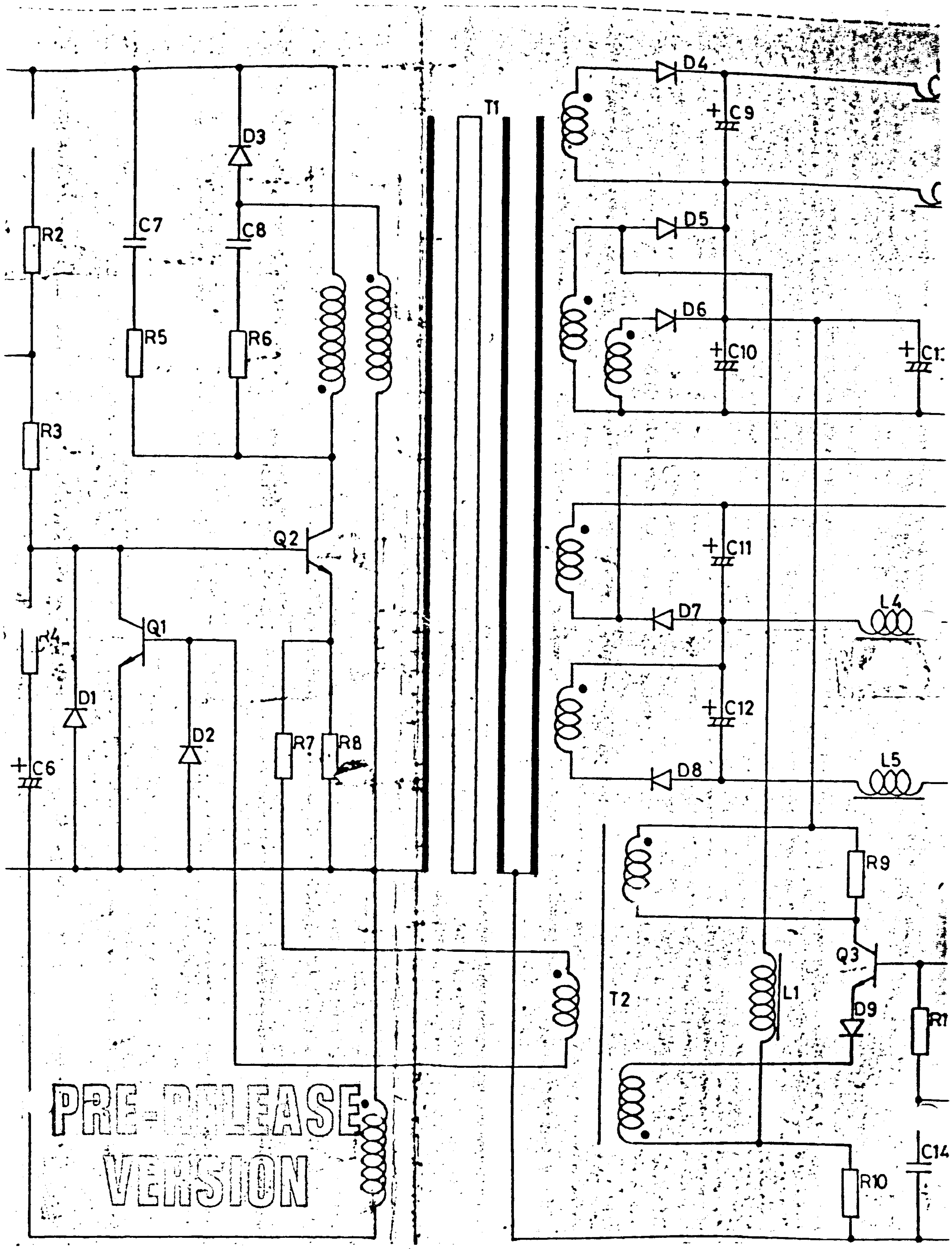
110 volt model

110/220 volt model

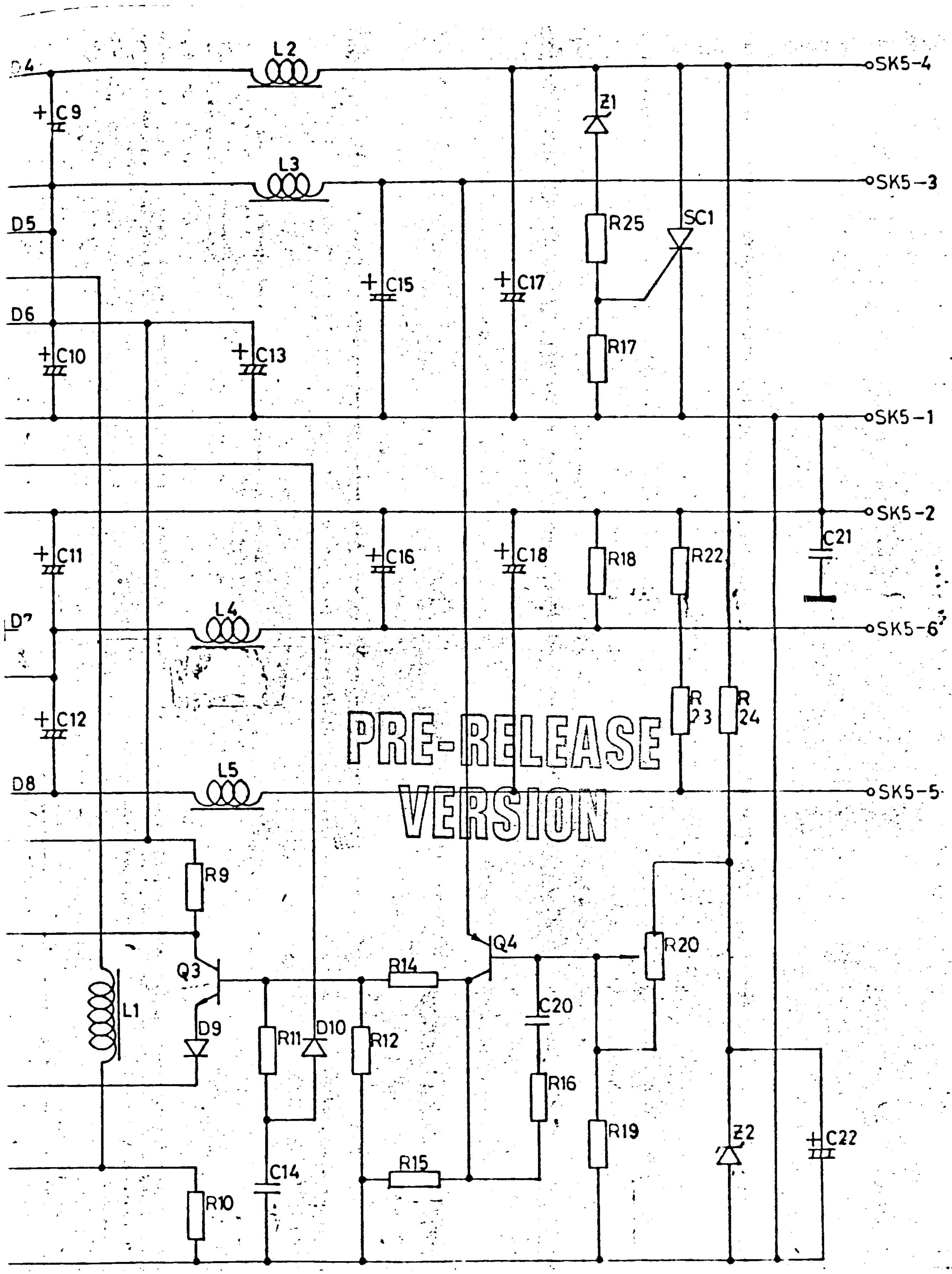
Photo 2. The back of the Apple Power Supply.

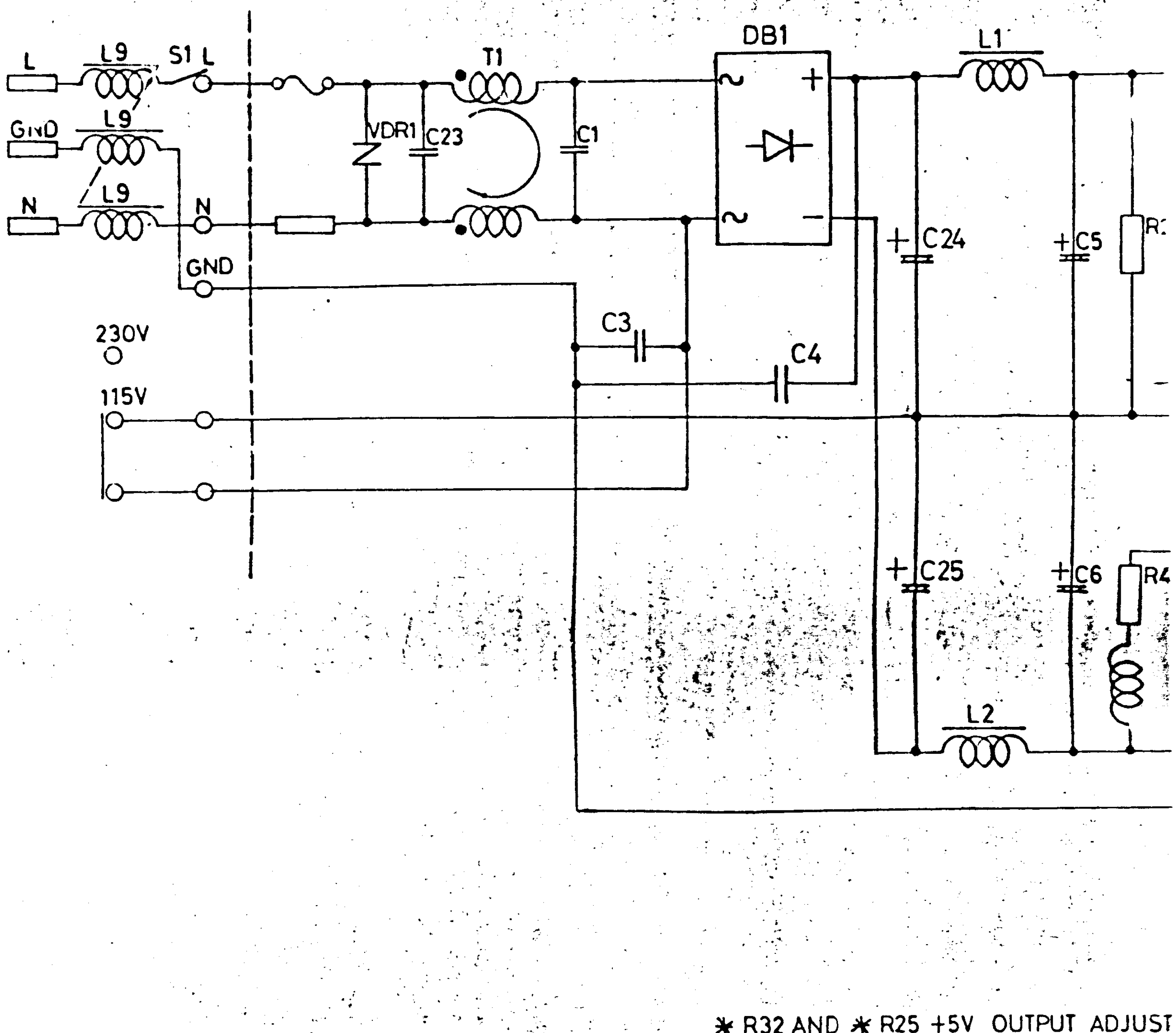


S1
PL/SK1
F1
T3
R1
DB1
SK1
T
N
C22
C23
VDR 1
PL/SK2
C2
C4
R2
PL/SK3
S2
115V
230V
PL/SK4
C24
R3
C1
C3
C5
R4
D1
C6
PRE-RELEASE VERSION
ASTEC Power Supply
Model AA11040



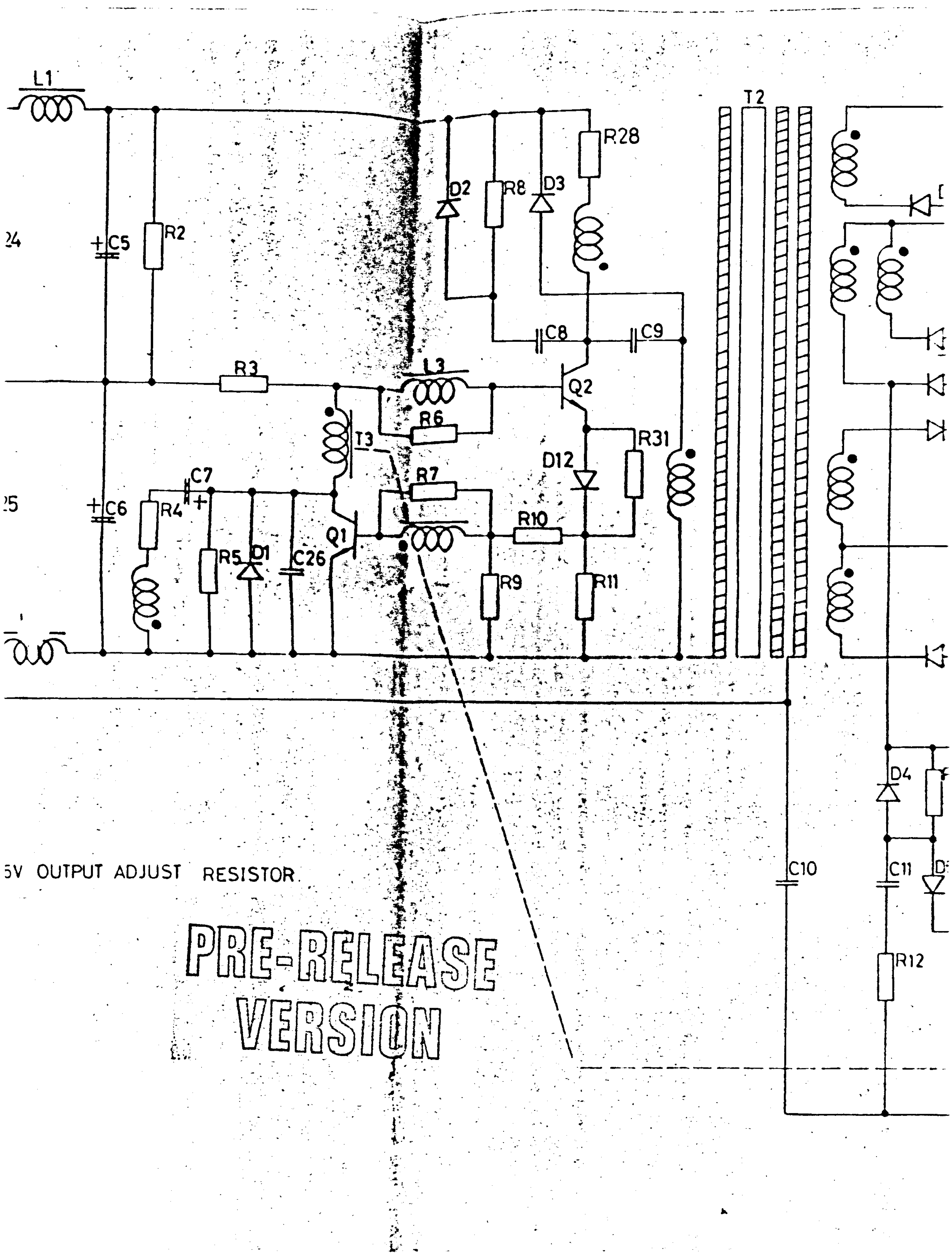
D4
C9
D3
T1
R2
C7
C8
D5
D6
R5
R6
C10
C1
R3
Q2
C11
Q1
D7
L4
D1
C12
D2
R7
R8
C6
D8
L5
R9
Q3
L1
T2
D9
PRE-RELEASE VERSION
C14
R10

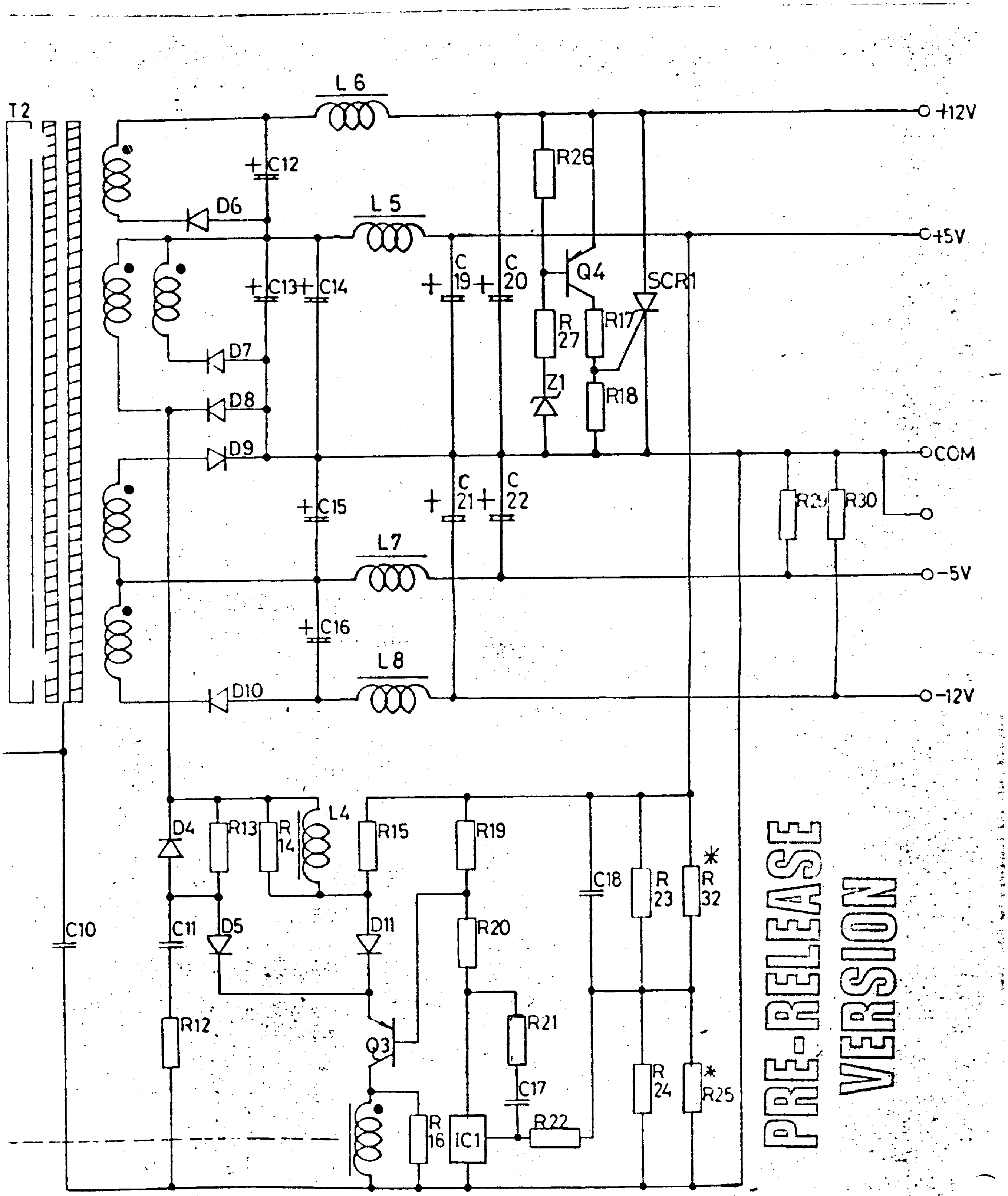

D4
L2
SK5-4
C9
Z1
L3
SK5-3
D5
R25
SC1
C15
C17
D6
C10
C13
R17
SK5-1
SK5-2
C11
C16
C18
R18
R22
C21
L4
SK5-6
C12
R23
R24
PRE-RELEASE
VERSION
D8
L5
SK5-5
R9
Q4
R20
Q3
R14
L1
D9
R11
D10
R12
C20
R16
R19
Z2
C22
C14
R15
R10



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ASTEC Power Supply
Model AA11040B


L1
T2
R28
D2
R8
D3
C5
R2
C8
C9
R3
L3
Q2
R6
T3
R31
D12
C7
R7
C6
R4
R10
Q1
R5
D1
C26
R9
R11
D4
C10
C11
R12
5V OUTPUT ADJUST RESISTOR
PRE-RELEASE
VERSION

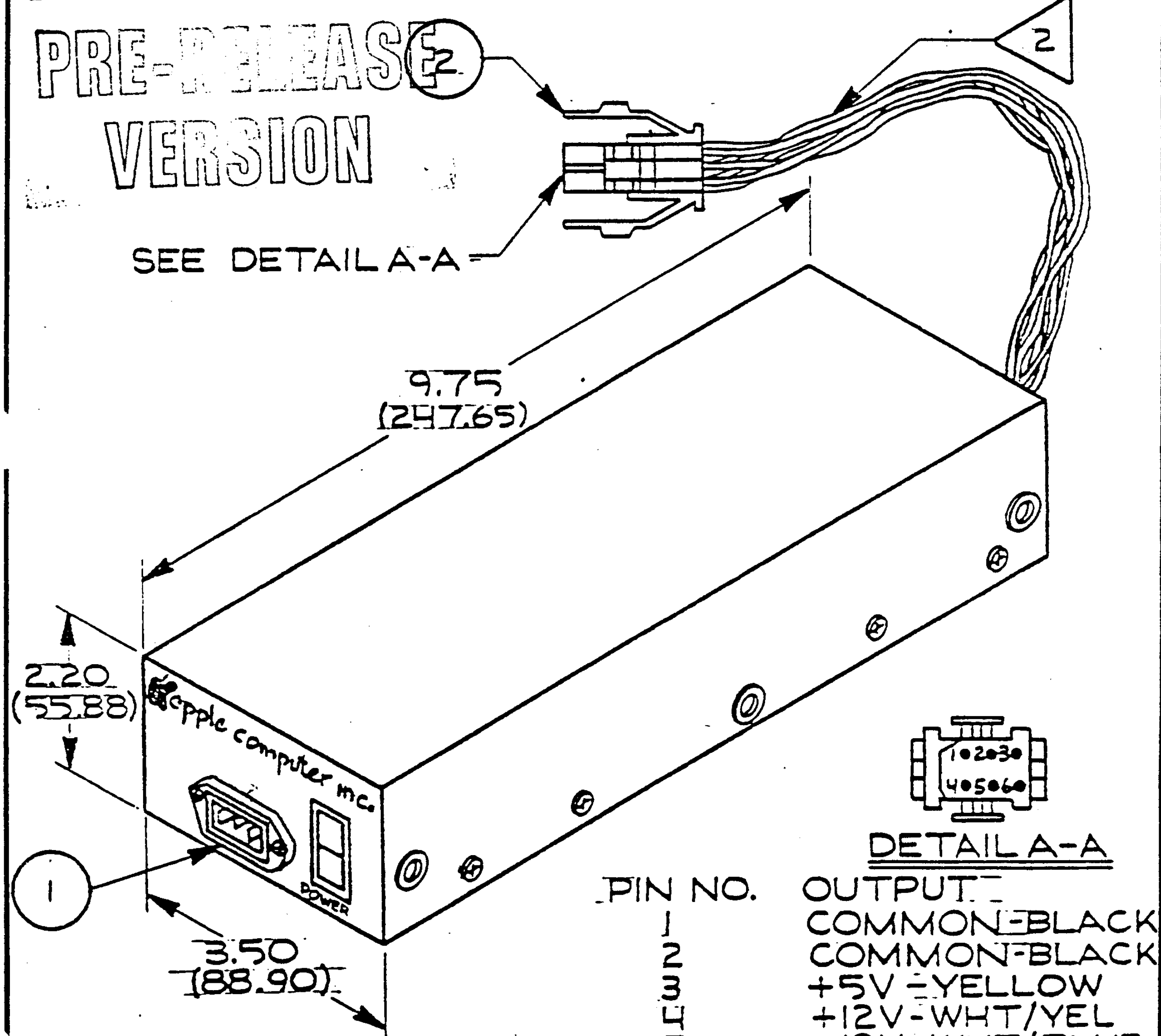

T2
L6
+12V
C12
R26
D6
L5
+5V
C13
C14
C 19
C 20
Q4
SCR1
D7
R 27
R17
Z1
R18
D8
D9
COM
C15
C 21
C 22
R30
L7
-5V
C16
L8
D10
-12V
L4
D4
R13
R 14
R15
R19
C18
R 23
R 32
C10
C11
D5
D11
R20
R12
R21
Q3
R 24
R25
C17
R 16
IC1
R22
PRE-RELEASE VERSION

NOTES: UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED.

1. POWER CONNECTOR: (1) PRIMARY - 3 PRONG INTERNATIONAL STANDARD POWER CORD RECEPTACLE (2) SECONDARY: AMP P/N 1-350241-9 (HOUSING) & 350665-1. (PIN)

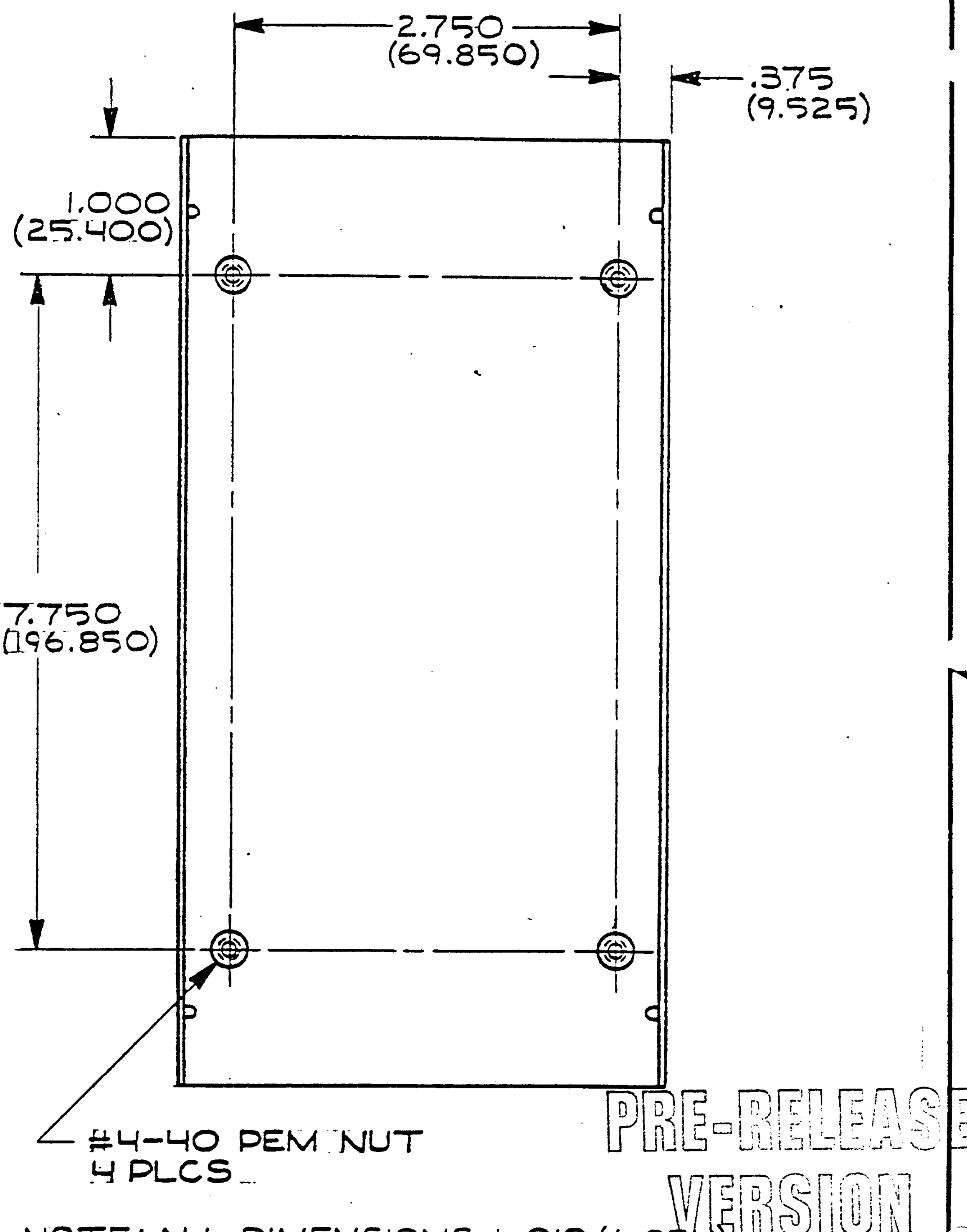
2. CABLE ASSY. FROM EXIT POINT TO END OF CONNECTOR SHALL BE 12"±.5" (304.8 ±12.7)

3. CABLE SHALL BE ABLE TO WITHSTAND 10 LBS. OF FORCE IN ANY DIRECTION WITHOUT DAMAGE TO ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS OR WIRES.



PIN NO.	OUTPUT
1	COMMON - BLACK
2	COMMON - BLACK
3	+5V - YELLOW
4	+12V - WHT/YEL
5	-12V - WHT/BLUE
6	-5V - BLUE

apple computer inc.	SIZE	DRAWING NUMBER
	A	699-0049-A
	SCALE: NONE	SHEET 10 OF 11



NOTE: ALL DIMENSIONS ±.010 (±.254)

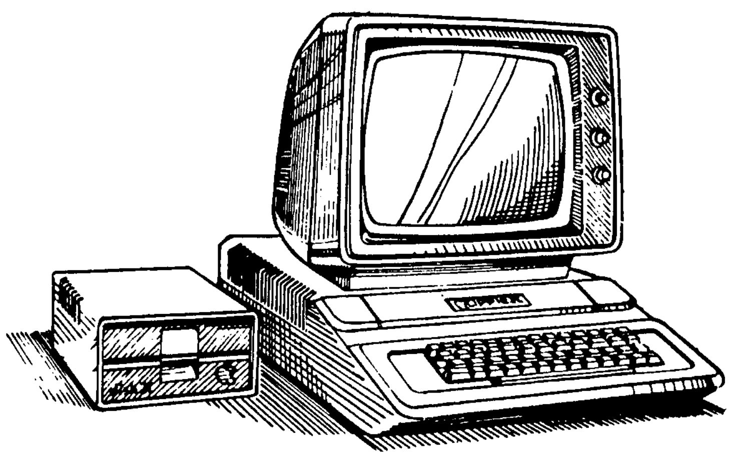
apple computer inc.	SIZE A	DRAWING NUMBER 699-0049-A
	SCALE: NONE	SHEET 11 OF 11

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 5
CONNECTORS



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

PERIPHERAL CONNECTORS

Along the back of the Apple's main board is a row of eight long "slots", or Peripheral Connectors. Into seven of these eight slots, you can plug any of many Peripheral Interface boards designed especially for the Apple. In order to make the peripheral cards simpler and more versatile, the Apple's circuitry has allocated a total of 280 byte locations in the memory map for each of the seven slots. There is also a 2K byte "commmon area", which all peripheral cards in your Apple can share.

Each slot on the board is individually numbered, with the leftmost slot called "Slot 0" and the rightmost called "Slot 7". Slot 0 is special it is meant for RAM, ROM, or Interface expansion. All other slots (1 through 7) have special control lines going to them which are active at different times for different slots.

The pin out for these connectors is given in Figure 21, and the signal descriptions are given in Table 33.

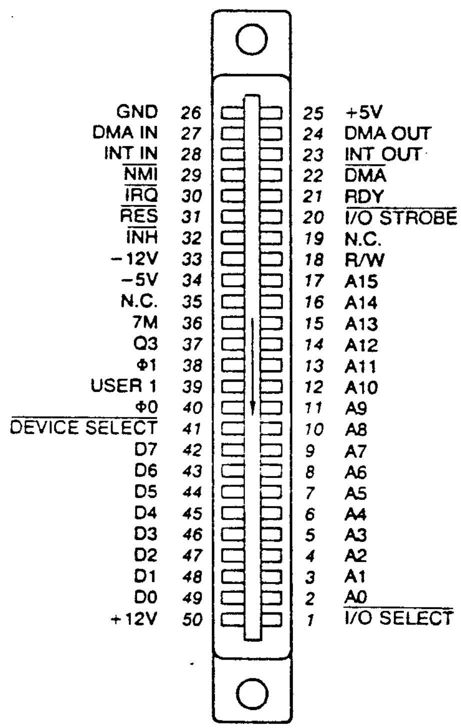


Figure 21. Peripheral Connector Pinout

Table 33: Peripheral Connector Signal Description

Pin:	Name:	Description:
1	I/O SELECT	This line, normally high, will become low when the microprocessor references page $C*n*, where *n* is the individual slot number. This signal becomes active during $\Phi 0$ and will drive 10 LSTTL loads•. This signal is not present on peripheral connector 0.
2-17	A0-A15	The buffered address bus. The address on these lines becomes valid during $\Phi 1$ and remains valid through $\Phi 0$. These lines will each drive 5 LSTTL loads•.
18	R/W	Buffered Read/Write signal. This becomes valid at the same time the address bus does, and goes high during a read cycle and low during a write. This line can drive up to 2 LSTTL loads•.
19	SYNC	On peripheral connector 7 *only*, this pin is connected to the video timing generator's SYNC signal. In International Apples only.
20	I/O STROBE	This line goes low during $\Phi 0$ when the address bus contains an address between $C800 and $CFFF. This line will drive 4 LSTTL loads•.
21	RDY	The 6502's RDY input. Pulling this line low during $\Phi 1$ will halt the microprocessor, with the address bus holding the address of the current location being fetched.
22	DMA	Pulling this line low disables the 6502's address bus and halts the microprocessor. This line is held high by a 1KΩ resistor to +5v.
23	INT OUT	Daisy-chained interrupt output to lower priority devices. This pin is usually connected to pin 28 (INT IN).
24	DMA OUT	Daisy-chained DMA output to lower priority devices. This pin is usually connected to pin 22 (DMA IN).
25	+5v	+5 volt power supply. 500mA current is available for *all* peripheral cards.
26	GND	System electrical ground.

• Loading limits are for each peripheral card.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Table 33 (cont'd): Peripheral Connector Signal Description

Pin:	Name:	Description:
27	DMA IN	Daisy-chained DMA input from higher priority devices. Usually connected to pin 24 (DMA OUT).
28	INT IN	Daisy-chained interrupt input from higher priority devices. Usually connected to pin 23 (INT OUT).
29	$\overline{\text{NMI}}$	Non-Maskable Interrupt. When this line is pulled low the Apple begins an interrupt cycle and jumps to the interrupt handling routine at location $3FB.
30	$\overline{\text{IRQ}}$	Interrupt ReQuest. When this line is pulled low the Apple begins an interrupt cycle only if the 6502's I (Interrupt disable) flag is not set. If so, the 6502 will jump to the interrupt handling subroutine whose address is stored in locations $3FE and $3FF.
31	$\overline{\text{RES}}$	When this line is pulled low the microprocessor begins a RESET cycle (see page 36).
32	$\overline{\text{INH}}$	When this line is pulled low, all ROMs on the Apple board are disabled. This line is held high by a 1KΩ resistor to +5v.
33	−12v	−12 volt power supply. Maxmum current is 200mA for all peripheral boards.
34	−5v	−5 volt power supply. Maximum current is 200mA for all peripheral boards.
35	COLOR REF	On peripheral connector 7 *only*, this pin is connected to the 3.5MHz COLOR REFerence signal of the video generator.
36	7M	7MHz clock. This line will drive 2 LSTTL loads*.
37	Q3	2MHz asymmetrical clock. This line will drive 2 LSTTL loads*.
38	Φ1	Microprocessor's phase one clock. This line will drive 2 LSTTL loads*.
39	USER 1	This line, when pulled low, disables *all* internal I/O address decoding**.

* Loading limits are for each peripheral card.
** See page 99.

Table 33 (cont'd): Peripheral Connector Signal Description

Pin:	Name:	Description:
40	$\Phi 0$	Microprocessor's phase zero clock. This line will drive 2 LSTTL loads*.
41	$\overline{\text{DEVICE SELECT}}$	This line becomes active (low) on each peripheral connector when the address bus is holding an address between $CØ*n*Ø and $CØ*n*F, where *n* is the slot number plus $8. This line will drive 10 LSTTL loads*.
42-49	D0-D7	Buffered bidirectional data bus. The data on this line becomes valid 300nS into $\Phi 0$ on a write cycle, and should be stable no less than 100ns before the end of $\Phi 0$ on a read cycle. Each data line can drive one LSTTL load.
50	+12v	+12 volt power supply. This can supply up to 250mA total for all peripheral cards.

PRE-RELEASE
VERSION

SPEAKER CONNECTOR

The Apple's internal speaker is driven half of a 74LS74 flip-flop through a Darlington amplifer circuit. The speaker connector is a Molex KK100 series connector, with two square pins, .25 inch tall, on .10 inch centers.

The connector coming from the speaker is plugged into the socket labeled speaker between rows A and B on the rightmost section of the motherboard.

Table 32: Speaker Connector Signal Descriptions -

Pin:	Name:	Description:
1	SPKR	Speaker signal. This line will deliver about .5 watt into an 8 Ohm load.
2	+5v	+5 volt power supply.

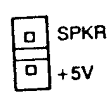


Figure 20. Speaker Connector

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

KEYBOARD CONNECTOR

The data from the Apple's keyboard goes directly to the RAM data multiplexers and latches, the two 74LS257's at locations B6 and B7. The STROBE line on the keyboard connector sets a 74LS74 flip-flop at location B10. When the I/O selector activates its "0" line, the data which is on the seven inputs on the keyboard connector, and the state of the strobe flip-flop, are multiplexed onto the Apple's data bus. The keyboard connector plugs into the A-7 socket on the main logic board.

Table 30: Keyboard Connector Signal Descriptions

Pin:	Name:	Description:
1	+5v	+5 volt power supply. Total current drain on this pin must be less than 120mA.
2	STROBE	Strobe output from keyboard. This line should be given a pulse at least 10μs long each time a key is pressed on the keyboard. The strobe can be of either polarity.
3	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$	Microprocessor's $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ line. Normally high, this line should be pulled low when the [RESET] button is pressed.
4,9,16	NC	No connection.
5-7, 10-13	Data	Seven bit ASCII keyboard data input.
8	Gnd	System electrical ground.
15	−12v	−12 volt power supply. Keyboard should draw less than 50mA.

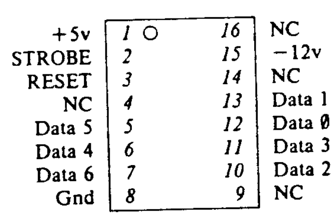
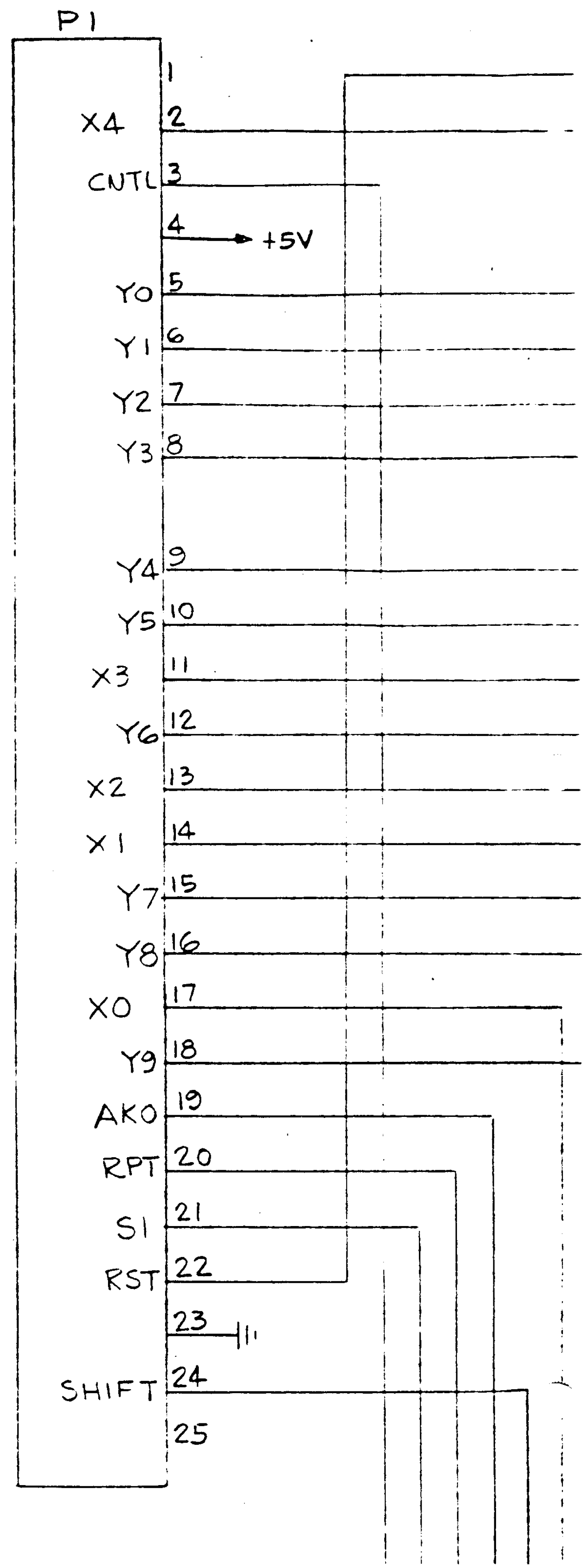


Figure 18.
Keyboard Connector Pinouts

ENCODER BOARD CONNECTOR

PRE-RELEASE VERSION



POWER CONNECTOR

This connector mates with the cable from the Apple power supply. This is an Amp #9-3028-1 six pin male connector. The connector leads from the power supply and plugs into the K-1 socket of the main logic board.

Table 31: Power Connector Pin Descriptions

Pin:	Name:	Description:
1,2	Ground	Common electrical ground for Apple board.
3	+5v	+5.0 volts from power supply. An Apple with 48K of RAM and no peripherals draws ~1.5 amp from this supply.
4	+12v	+12.0 volts from power supply. An Apple with 48K of RAM and no peripherals draws ~400ma from this supply.
5	−12v	−12.0 volts from power supply. An Apple with 48K of RAM and no peripherals draws ~12.5ma from this supply.
6	−5v	−5.0 volts from power supply. An Apple with 48K of RAM and no peripherals draws ~0.0ma from this supply.

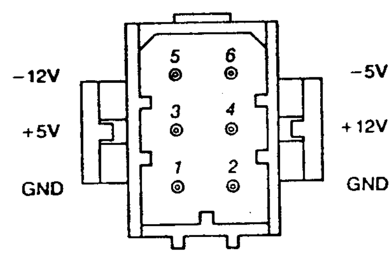


Figure 19. Power Connector

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

GAME I/O CONNECTOR

The purpose of the Game I/O Connector is to allow you to connect special input and output devices to heighten the effect of programs in general, and specifically, game programs. This connector allows you to connect three one-bit inputs, four one-bit outputs, a data strobe, and four analog inputs to the Apple, all of which can be controlled by your programs. Supplied with your Apple is a pair of Game Controllers which are connected to cables which plug into the Game I/O Connector. The two rotary dials on the controllers are connected to two analog inputs on the connector; the two pushbuttons are connected to two of the one-bit inputs.

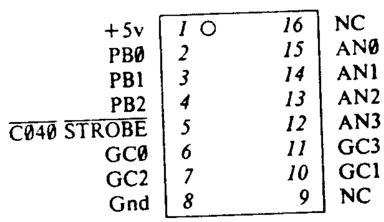


Figure 16.
Game I/O Connector Pinouts

Table 29: Game I/O Connector Signal Descriptions

Pin:	Name:	Description:
1	+5v	+5 volt power supply. Total current drain on this pin must be less than 100mA.
2-4	PB0-PB2	Single-bit (Pushbutton) inputs. These are standard 74LS series TTL inputs.
5	$\overline{\text{C040 STROBE}}$	A general-purpose strobe. This line, normally high, goes low during Φ0 of a read or write cycle to any address from $C040 through $C04F. This is a standard 74LS TTL output.
6,7,10,11	GC0-GC3	Game controller inputs. These should each be connected through a 150K Ohm variable resistor to +5v.
8	Gnd	System electrical ground.
12-15	AN0-AN3	Annunciator outputs. These are standard 74LS series TTL outputs and must be buffered if used to drive other than TTL inputs.
9,16	NC	No internal connection.

CASSETTE INTERFACE JACKS

The two female miniature phone jacks on the back of the Apple 11 can connect your Apple to a normal home cassette tape recorder.

Cassette Input Jack:

This jack designed to be connected to the "Earphone" or "Monitor" output jacks on most tape recorders. The input voltage should be 1 volt peak to peak (nominal). The input impedance is 12K ohms.

Cassette Output Jack:

This jack is designed to be connected to the "Microphone" input on most tape recorders. The output voltage is 25mv into a 100 Ohm impedance load.

PRE-RELEASE
VERSION

VIDEO OUTPUT

RCA Jack:

On the back of the Apple board, near the right edge is a standard RCA phono jack. The sleeve on this jack is connected to the Apple's common ground and the tip is connected to the video output signal through a 200 ohm potentiometer. This potentiometer can adjust the voltage on this connector from 0 to 1 volt peak.

Auxilary Video Connector:

On the right side of the Apple board near the back is a Molex KK100 series connector with four square pins, .25 inch on .10 inch centers. This connector supplies the composite video output and two power supply voltages. This connector is illustrated in figure 15 with a signal description in Table 28.

Auxilary Video Pin:

This single metal wire-wrap pin below the Auxilary Video Output Connector supplies the same video signal available on that connector. It is meant to be a connection point for Eurapple PAL/SECAM encoder boards.

Table 28: Auxiliary Video Output Connector Signal Descriptions

Pin	Name	Description
1	GROUND	System common ground; 0 volts.
2	VIDEO	NTSC compatible positive composite video. Black level is about .75 volt, white level about 2.0 volt, sync tip level is 0 volts. Output level is not adjustable. This is not protected against short circuits.
3	+12v	+12 volt power supply.
4	−5v	−5 volt line from power supply.

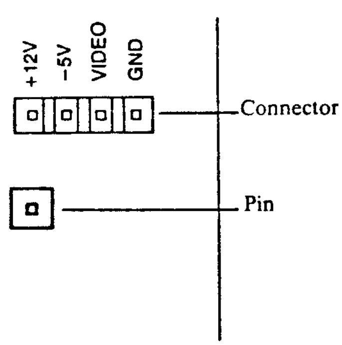


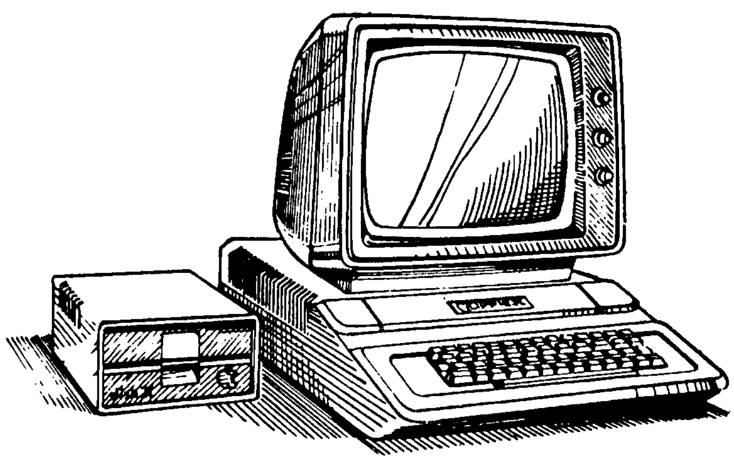
Figure 15. Auxiliary Video Output Connector and Pin.

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS
LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 6
OTHER INPUT / OUTPUT FEATURES



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

"USER 1" JUMPER

There is and unlabeled pair of solder pads on the Apple board, to the left of slot 0, called the "User 1" jumper. This jumper is illustrated in Photo 8. If you connect a wire between these two pads, then the USER 1 line on each peripheral connectors becomes active. If any peripheral card pulls this line low, all internal I/O decoding is disabled. The I/O SELECT and the DEVICE SELECT lines all go high and will remain high while USER 1 is low, regardless of the address on the address bus.

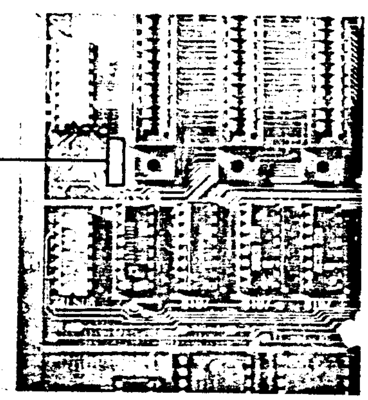


Photo 8. The USER 1 Jumper.

OTHER INPUT/OUTPUT FEATURES

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Input: Cassette Input
Three One-bit Digital Inputs
Four Analog Inputs

OUTPUT: Cassette Output
Built-In Speaker
Four "Annunciator" Outputs
Utility Strobe Output

The Cassette Interface

On the back edge of the Apple's main board, on the right side next to the VIDEO connector, are two small black packages labelled "IN" and "OUT". These are miniature phone jacks into which you can plug a cable which has a pair of minature phono plugs on each end. The other end of this cable can be connected to a standard cassette tape recorder so that your Apple can save information on audio cassette tape and read it back again.

The connector marked "OUT" is wired to yet another soft switch on the Apple board. This is another toggle switch, like the speaker switch. The soft switch for the cassette out-put plug can be toggled by referencing memory location number 49184 (or the equivalent-16352 or hexadecimal $C020). Referencing this location will make the voltage on the OUT connector swing from zero to 25 millivolts (one forieth of a volt), or return from 25 millivolts back to zero. If the other end of the cable is plugged into the MICROPHONE input of a cassette tape recorder which is recording into a tape, this will produce a tiny "click" on the recording . By referencing the memory location associated with the cassette output soft switch repeatedly and frequently, a program can produce a tone on the recording. By varying the pitch and duration of this tone, information may be encoded on a tape and saved for later use.

Be forewarned that if you attempt to flip the soft switch for the cassette output by writing to its special location, you will actually generate two "clicks" on the recording. The reason for this is mentioned in the describtion of the speaker. You should only use "read" operations when toggling the cassette output soft switch.

The other connector, marked "IN", can be used to "listen" to a cassette tape recording. Its main purpose is to provide a means of listening to tones on the tape, decoding them into data, and storing them in memory. Thus, a program or data set which was stored on cassette tape may be read back in and used again.

The input circuit takes a 1 volt (peak-to-peak) signal from the cassette recorder's EARPHONE jack and converts it into a sting of ones and zeroes. Each time the signal applied to the input circuit swings from positive to negative, or vice-versa, the input circuit changes state: if it was sending ones, it will start sending zeroes, and vice versa. A program can inspect the state of the cassette input circuit by looking at memory location number 49248 or the equivalents-16288 or hexidecimal $C060. If the value which is read from this location is greater than or equal to 128, then the state is a "one", if the value in the memory location is less than 128, then the state is a "zero". Although BASIC programs can read the state of the cassette input circuit, the speed of a BASIC program is usually much too slow to be able to make any sense out of what it reads. There is, however, a program in the System Monitor which will read the tones on a cassette tape and decode them.

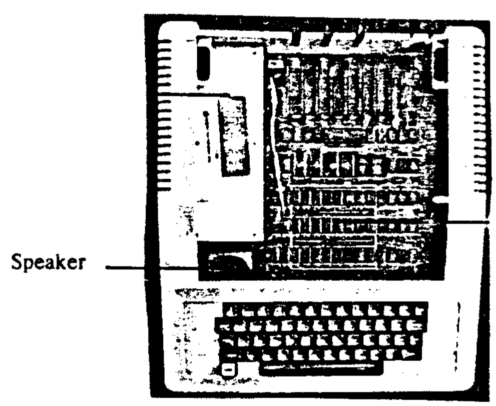
THE SPEAKER

Inside the Apple's case, on the left side under the keyboard, is a small 8 ohm speaker. It is connected to the internal electronics of the Apple so that a program can cause it to make various sounds.

The speaker is controlled by a soft switch. The switch can put the paper cone of the speaker in two positions: "in" and "out". This soft switch is not like the soft switches controlling the various video modes, but is instead a toggle switch. Each time a program references the memory address a associated with the speaker switch, the speaker will change state: change from "in" to "out" or vice-versa. Each time the state is changed, the speaker produces a tiny "click". By referencing the address of the speaker switch frequently and continuously, a program can generate a steady tone from the speaker.

The soft switch for the speaker is associated with memory location number 49200. Any reference to this address (or the equivalint addresses-16336 or hexidecimal $C030) will cause the speaker to emit a click.

A program can "reference" the address with memory location for the speaker by performing a "read" or "write" operation to that address. The data which are read or written are irrelevant, as it is the address which throws the switch. Note that a "write" operation on the Apple's 6502 microprocessor actually performs a "read" before the "write", so that if you use a "write" operation to flip and soft switch, you will actually throw that switch twice. For toggle-type soft switches, such as the speaker switch, this means that a "write" operation to the special location controlling the switch will leave the switch in the same state it was in before the operation was performed.



ANNUNCIATOR OUTPUTS

The four one-bit outputs are called "annunciators". Each annunciator output can be used as an input to some other electronic device, or the annunciator outputs can be connected to circuits to drive lamps, relays, speakers, etc.

Each annunciator is controlled by a soft switch. The addresses of the soft switches for the annunciators are arranged into four pairs, one pair for each annunciator. If you reference the second address in the pair, you turn the annunciator's output "on". When an annunciuator is "off", the voltage on its pin on the Game I/O Connector is near 0 volts; when an annunciator is "on", the voltage is near 5 volts. There are no inherent means to determine the current setting of an annunciator bit. The annunciator soft switches are:

Table 9: Annunciator Special Locations

Ann.	State	Address: Decimal		Hex
0	off	49240	-16296	$C058
	on	49241	-16295	$C059
1	off	49242	-16294	$C05A
	on	49243	-16293	$C05B
2	off	49244	-16292	$C05C
	on	49245	-16291	$C05D
3	off	49246	-16290	$C05E
	on	49247	-16289	$C05F

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

STROBE OUTPUT

There is an additional output, called C040 STROBE, which is normally +5 volts but will drop to zero volts for a duration of one-half microsecond under the control of a machine language or BASIC program. You can trigger this "strobe" by referring to location 49216 (-16320 or $C040). Be aware that if you perform a "write" operation to this location, you will trigger the strobe twice.

ONE-BIT INPUTS

The three one-bit inputs can each be connected to either another electronic device or to a pushbutton. You can read the state of any of the on-bit inputs from a machine language or BASIC program on the same manner as you read the Cassette input, above, the locations for the three one-bit inputs have the addresses 49249 through 49251 (-16287 through -16285 or hexidecimal $C061 through $C063).

ANALOG INPUTS

The four analog inputs can be connected to 150k Ohm varible resistors or potentiometers. The variable resistance on an input varies, the timing characteristics of its corresponding timing circuit change accordingly. Machine language programs can sense the changes on the timing loops and obtain a numerical value corresponding to the position of the potentiometer.

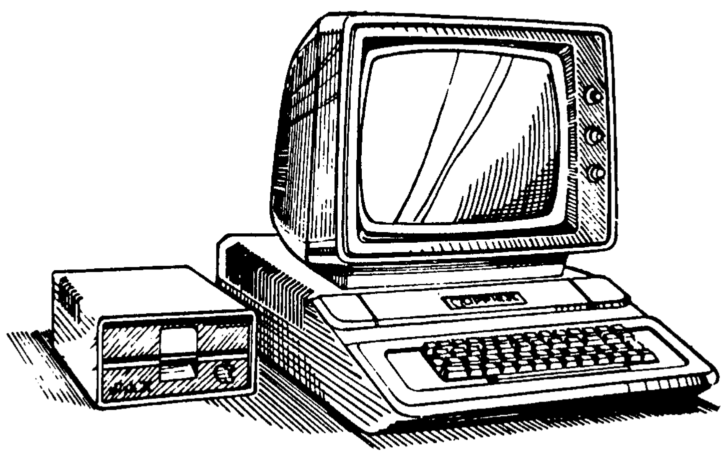
Before a program can start to read the setting of a potentiometer, it must first reset the timing circuits. Location number 49264 (-16272 or

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 7
MOTHERBOARD



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

hexidecimal $C070) does just this. When you reset the timing circuits, the values contained in the four locations 49252 through 49255 (-16284 through -16281 ir $C064 through $C067) become greater than 128 (their high bits are set). Within 3,060 milliseconds, the values contained on these four locations should drop below 128. The exact time it takes for each location to drop in value is directly proportional to the setting of the game paddle associated with that location. If the potentiometers connected to the analog inputs have a greater resistance than 150k Ohms, or there are no potentiometers connected, then the values in the game controller locations may never drop to zero.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

MAIN LOGIC BOARD

THEORY OF OPERATION

The APPLE II's Main Logic Board represents the full range of integration from simple gates to highly dense microprocessor and memory chips. Much of the power of the APPLE II logic circuitry comes from the use of medium-scale (MSI) integrated circuits. These include multiplexers, shift registers, counters and decoders.

This Theory of Operation contains detailed descriptions of medium-scale ICs as they apply to the APPLE II design. It was written with the understanding that the reader has had exposure to simple gates and memory/microprocessor circuits. Since almost none of the APPLE II's use of medium-scale IC's is straightforward, each MSI package is described before detailing how it functions in the APPLE II. In cases where an MSI device is used in several sections of the circuit board, the functional description will be repeated. If you already know how a device functions you may want to pass over the device's functional description, and concentrate on how it fits into the APPLE II design.

This material is especially intended for the Service Technician, but it should also be helpful to individuals who need to interface hardware to the APPLE II.

There are three sections to this chapter:

1. The written part, which breaks the Main Logic Board into 11 sections verbally guides you through the APPLE II logic within each section, with appropriate overlapping between sections.

2. A block diagram and ten schematic drawings (Figures S1 - S11) which show the APPLE II logic circuits within each section.

3. A System Timing Diagram which graphically shows the timing signals within the Main Logic Board and includes a state diagram of the Sync Counters.

The goal of this chapter is to allow you to understand how the APPLE II works, using the schematics to refresh your memory when necessary. The written part is intended to help you through the schematics, and should be read WITH the schematics and System Timing Diagram.

As a practical note, the Service Technician will want to be able to get around on the Main Logic Board using a scope. It is suggested that an "open APPLE II" be created using a logic board, keyboard, power supply and monitor. As signals are described they can be observed as well, thus speeding up learning.

Effort has been made to keep each section complete unto itself at the risk of making this part of the manual redundant at times. This will allow you to read the sections in any order you want to. Please read SECTION 1: OVERVIEW first to get a general flavor.

One great asset to the the Service Technician is a working knowledge of the software contained in the APPLE II's F8 Monitor and the various APPLE II "soft switch" commands. The F8 Monitor is well documented in Chapter 9 and the soft switches in Chapter 2.

Lastly, a few details:

ICs are identified on the Main Logic Board using an X-Y coordinate system. The X coordinate ranges from 1 to 14 with position 1 on the far left and position 14 on the far right as you face the keyboard. The Y coordinate ranges alphabetically from A (bottom row) to K (top row) as you face the keyboard. IC "B2", for example, locates the 74S86 in the second row and column from the lower left edge of the Main Logic Board. Pin numbers are indicated with a dash following the IC location. "B2-8" therefore locates pin 8 of the 74LS86 at B2.

Three types of TTL (Transistor-Transistor Logic) are used in the APPLE II. They are:

Standard TTL (example: "74166")... These parts are used only occasionally in the APPLE II and are electrically similar to Fairchild's 9000 series. APPLE part numbers of each type are prefixed with "301" so that the part number for "74166" becomes "301-0166", and the part number for "9334" becomes "301-9334".

Low-power Shottky TTL (example: "74LS195")... These ICs combine fast switching times with power needs similar to standard TTL. These chips are used in the high frequency System Timing section of APPLE II. The corresponding APPLE part numbers begin with "307" so that "74S195" becomes "307-0195".

ICs of the above types will be described once in each section using the full part name, and then will be abbreviated as follows:

"74175" becomes "175"

"74LS138" becomes "138"

"74166" becomes "166"

Signals which are active low are indicated with a single quote (') following the signal's mnemonic as in RAS (Row Address Strobe).

Numbers in base 16 (hexadecimal) are preceded with a "$".

PRE-RELEASE
VERSION

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

OVERVIEW

SECTION 1

The Main Logic Board is one of a family of modules which make up the APPLE II product line. It is one of three "essential" modules which comprise a minimum APPLE II system. These essential modules are:

1. MAIN LOGIC BOARD. This is the large printed-circuit board which takes up most of the space inside the APPLE II´s case. It is an integrated single board computer and video display terminal. With it we can display text or graphics through an external monitor, or using an inexpensive modulator, through an ordinary television set.

2. POWER SUPPLY. This square metal box sits on the upper left-hand corner as you face the keyboard. It supplies all the power requirements needed by the APPLE II.

3. KEYBOARD. The keyboard sends parallel ASCII characters to the Main Logic Board and allows programs or data to be manually entered.

In addition to these essential modules, peripheral devices may by connected to the APPLE II by installing printed-circuit cards into one of the eight connectors at the back of the Main Logic Board. These include disc drives, printers, etc. Circuits within the Main Logic Board allow control signals to be sent to each peripheral card under program control.

The Main Logic Board is the nucleus of the APPLE II computer. Figure S-1 is a Block Diagram of the logic board divided into 11 sections. Each section will by described briefly in this chapter.

The APPLE II Main Logic Board is both a computer and video display device; Random-Access Memory (RAM) is commonly shared by both. The computer end is controlled by a Synertek-MOS Technology 6502 microprocessor which generates 16-bit Addresses (via the System Address Bus) and one system control output, the R/W´ (Read-Write´) line. The Address generated by the 6502 points to a memory or I/O (input-output) location, and the R/W´ line controls the direction of data over an eight-bit Data Bus. Some of the data flowing into the 6502 contains instructions, called opcodes, which direct the microprocessor to perform certain tasks.

The video circuits also generate an address to memory. All of the accesses to memory by the video circuits are memory reads which cause a byte of data to be sent to the Video Generator adds sync pulses and a color burst signal to the video data to produce composite video, available from an RCA jack behind the computer.

Making all of this possible are the System Timing ciruits which coordinate the timing events of both the microprocessor and the video circuits.

Here´s a quick guide to the topic of each remaining sections. The appropriate schematic will be the same as the section´s number. For Section 4 (Sync Counters) for example, the appropriate schematic would be Figure S-4.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

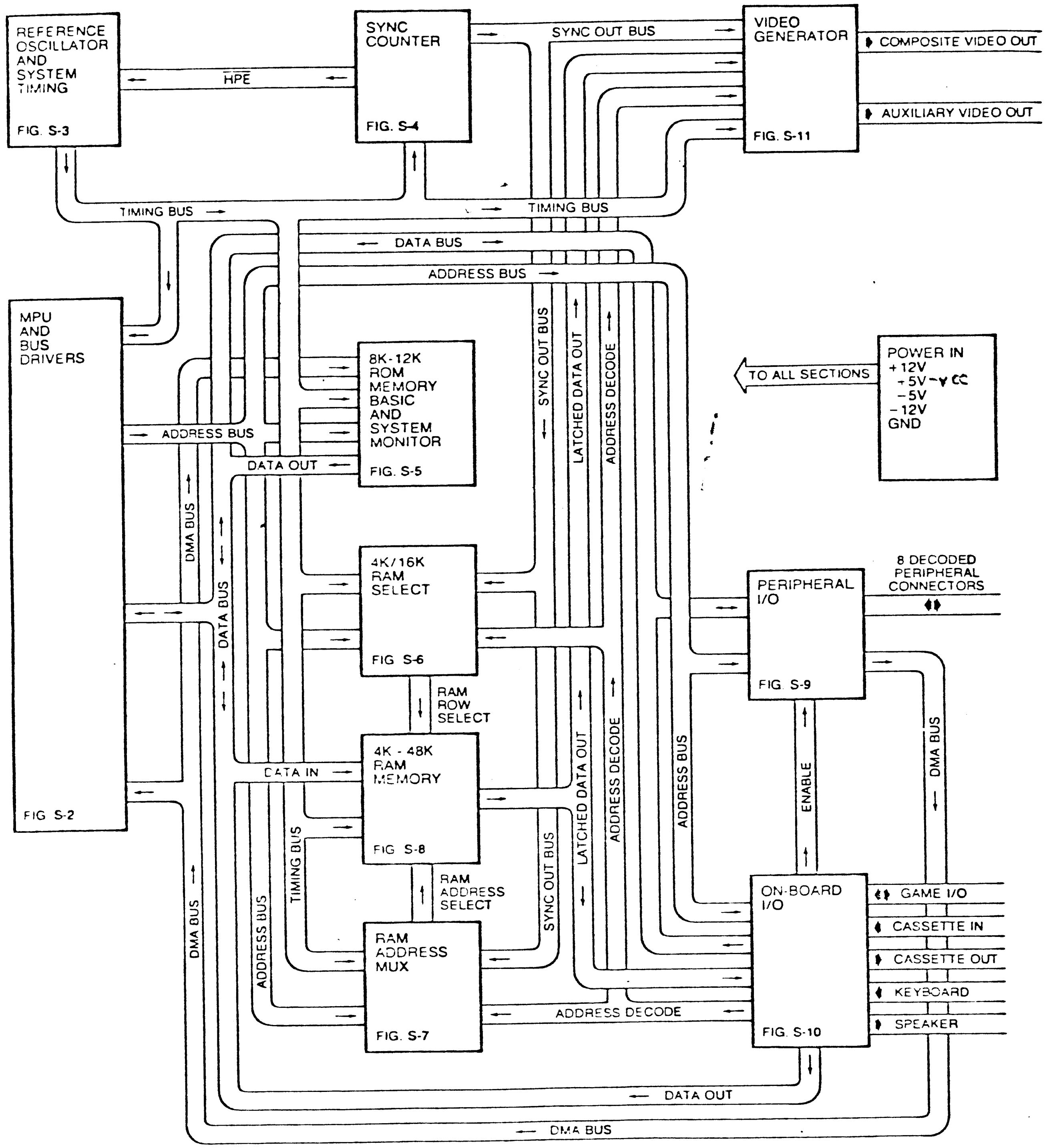


FIGURE S-1 APPLE II SYSTEM DIAGRAM

SECTION 2: MPU and System Bus. Signals to and from the 6502 microprocessor are isolated from the System Busses by bus drivers. These chips also create Direct Memory Access (DMA) capability. System Timing signal "PHASE ZERO" drives the microprocessor's clock input.

Section 3: Reference Oscillator and System Timing. Here a variety of timing signals are created.

One Mhz signals PHASE ZERO and PHASE ONE are used to select alternately between the microprocessor and the video bus cycles (memory accesses). These signals also enable circuits such as Peripheral I/O which use the System (buffered 6502) Busses. LDPS' advances the Sync Counters at one Mhz. LD194 controls when the Video Generator's graphics circuits load a new byte of data.

Two Mhz signals RAS' (Row Address Strobe) are timing signals to the APPLE II's dynamic RAM which receives an address in two steps (multiplexed). AX' controls when the RAM Address Mux circuits do the actual multiplexing. Q3 is available for general use.

Other System Timing signals include the 3.58 Mhz COLOR REF signal, 7M and 14M. These signals are used by the Video Generator.

SECTION 4: Sync Counters. Clocked by the one Mhz LDPS' signal, these four binary counters generate six horizontal and eight vertical timing signals. In the horizontal direction, signals H0 through H5 go through 65 states (40 microseconds of "live" characters and 25 microseconds of blanking). In vertical direction, signals VA, VB, VC, and V0 - V4 go through 262 state (192 "live" and 70 blanking). In text mode, VA, VB, and VC select one of the eight vertical scan lines within each character. Signals Vo - V4 point to a row of characters out of 245 possible rows.

SECTION 5: ROM Memory. The Apple II stores some programs permanently in 2K byte Read-Only Memory (ROM) ICs. Six ROMs may reside in the Main Logic Board for a total of 12K bytes of storage. Several different ROM variations are currently being offered, but every stock APPLE II offers and F8 (machine-langage) Monitor and a high-level BASIC language in ROM.

SECTION 6: RAM Select. Random-Access Memory (RAM) is stored in three rows of 16K-bit RAMs for a total of 48K bytes of on-board R/W' memory. A given byte-wide row of RAM is selected when it recieves the CAS' signal. This Section describes how that happens and describes how RAM address line A6 is driven.

SECTION 7: RAM Address Mux. This describes the circuits which allow both microprocessor and video circuits to access memory, and describes the function of some circuits which modify the Sync Counter outputs to create a Video Address.

SECTION 8: RAM Memory. The RAMs and their data latches are described here.

SECTION 9: Peripheral I/O. The Main Logic Board offers expansion capability via eight plug-in connectors. Three control signals, Device Select (DEV SEL'), I/O Select (I/O SEL') and I/O Strobe (I/O STRB') appear at each connector and make control over the peripheral device possible.

SECTION 10: On-Board I/O. The Apple II offers on-board I/O (Input/Output) circuits which include the keyboard, video display and the built-in loudspeaker.

SECTION 11. Video Generator. The Apple II displays text characters and also operates in two graphics modes. This section describes how video data is created for each mode.

It will be helpful to have the System Timing Diagram and the appropriate detailed schematic alongside when tracing through the logic. The detailed schematics are of the REV 0 board and as such do not accurately show the current APPLE II circuitry in all cases.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

MPU AND SYSTEM BUS

SECTION 2

The 6502 microprocessor is the heart of the APPLE II computer. The 6502 is an eight bit parallel, single chip processor with a repetoire of 56 instructions. Signals coming in and out of the 6502 divide into three groups of related signals, or "busses".

1. ADDRESS BUS (A0 - A15)

These 16 lines point to 2~16, or 65,536 unique locations in memory. The address lines coming from the 6502 cannot be placed into a high impedance or "floating" conditions. Also, they lack the drive capability to power both the on-board chips and peripheral cards which make use of them. 8T97 tristate buffers are then used to connect the 6502's address lines A0 - A15 to the System Address Bus. The Address Bus, as presented by the 6502, is valid about 200ns before the rising edge of the PHASE ZERO clock and is valid until after the PHASE ZERO clock falls. When PHASE ZERO is high, or its inverse, PHASE ONE, is low, a valid address is present on the Address Bus. For this reason, PHASE ZERO is used as a high-going enable, and PHASE ONE as a low going enable to ICs which use the System Address lines as inputs. These ICs include the motherboard 138s which are decoders for ROM and I/O space, and various chips on the peripheral cards.

The DMA' signal, normally pulled high through an on-board 1K ohm resistor, drives inverter input C11-13. If a peripheral device pulls this signal low, it causes the 8T97s to become high impedance, which released the Address Bus to the peripheral device.

2. DATA BUS (D0 - D7)

The Data Bus allows eight bits of data to be transferred to or from the 6502. When the 6502 performs a READ operations, data flows from the DATA Bus into the 6502. When a WRITE operation occurs, data passes from the 6502 onto the Data Bus.

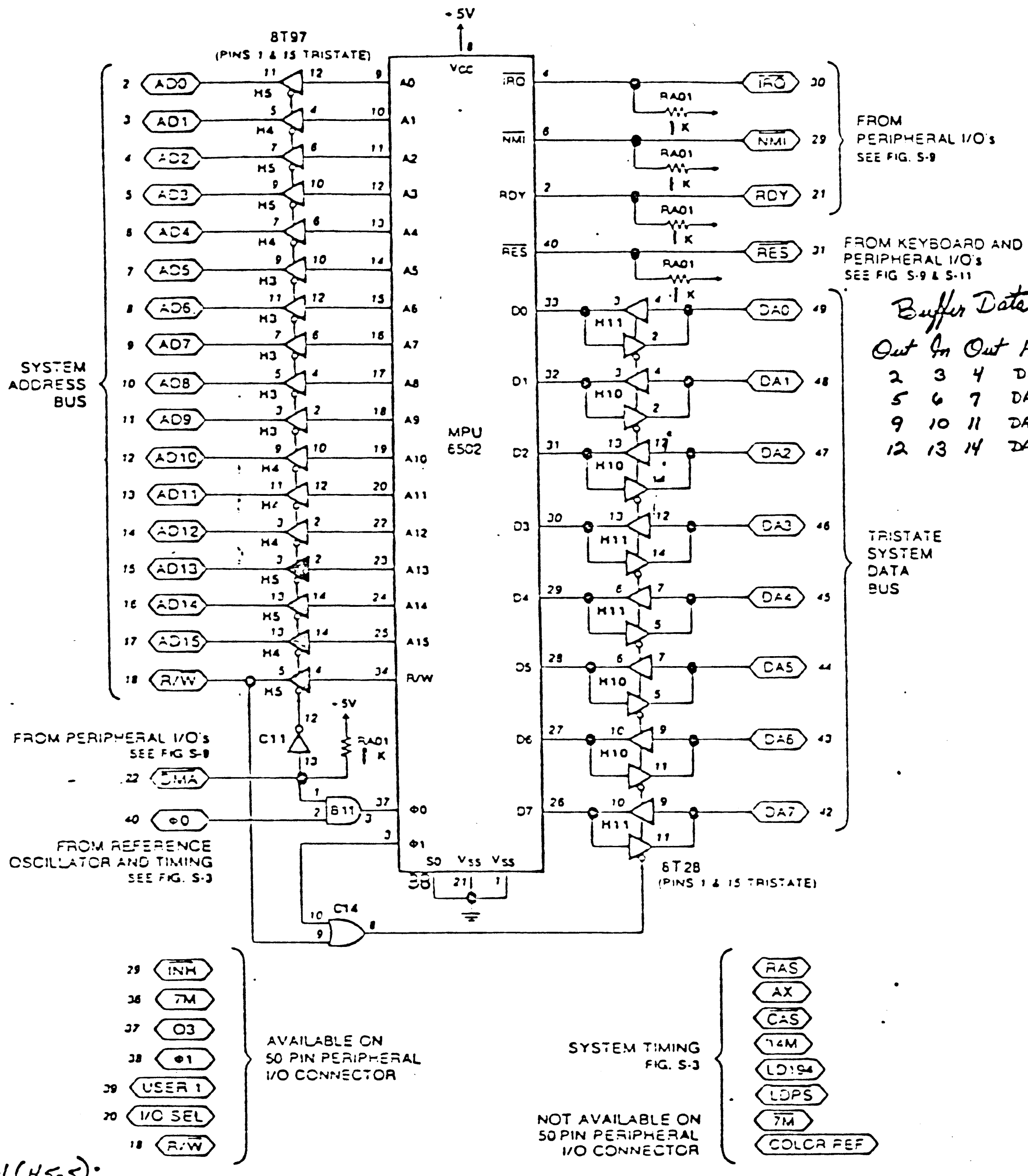
As in the case of the address lines, the 6502 data lines are also buffered - this time with 8T28 bus tranceivers. Pins 1 and 15 of each 8T28 are tied together, and form a receive / transmit input. Driving this input is C14-8 This signal goes low only when R/W' and the 6502's internal PHASE ONE goes low. Data from the 6502 will then be gated onto the System Data Bus. The 6502's PHASE ONE is used instead of the PHASE ONE from System Timing because the flow of data across the Data Bus must closely follow the 6502's internal timing. The 6502's PHASE ONE clock is produced when it inverts the PHASE ZERO signal, as provided by B11-3, and lags the System Timing PHASE ONE by a few nanoseconds.

During a READ cycles, data to the 6502 must be valid at least 100ns prior to the falling edge of PHASE ZERO.

During a WRITE cycle, data from the 6502 is valid roughly 200ns before the falling edge of PHASE ZERO.

8T28 3-state quad Bus Transceiver
8T97 high speed hex 3-state inverters

Read cycle - valid at least 100ns prior to falling edge of phase 0 (Data to 6502)
Write cycle - valid ~ 200ns before falling edge of phase 0 (Data from 6502)



Buffer Data

Out	In	Out	H10	H11
2	3	4	DA1	DA0
5	6	7	DA5	DA4
9	10	11	DA6	DA7
12	13	14	DA2	DA3

R/W (H5-5):
C14-9 C14-13
A2-4, I/O-18

FIGURE S-2 MPU AND SYSTEM BUS

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Valid address on bus is indicated by Phase 0 high & Phase 1 low

3. CONTROL BUS

This bus comprises six signals:

RES′, NMI′, IRQ′, RDY, which connect directly to the processor.

R/W′, which is buffered by one of the 8T97 gates.

DMA′, which is implemented in hardware surrounding the 6502.

The RES′ line is a "wake up" signal to the 6502 and causes it to begin executing code, starting at the address pointed to by locations $FFFC and $FFFD in memory. This signal goes low for about 150 milliseconds after system power-up and whenever the RESET key is pressed.

NMI′ is a non-maskable (unconditional) interrupt input which causes the 6502 to save its current address and then jump to the address pointed to by locations $FFFA and $FFFB.

IRQ′ is much like NMI except that the I flag internal to the 6502 must be at a logic "0" in order for this interrupt to be acknowledged by the CPU. The 6502 then jumps to the location pointed to by locations $FFFE and $FFFF.

RDY is an input intended to extend read cycles by 1 microsecond when the 6502 is connected to slow memory devices such as EPROM ICs. This input is sampled during PHASE ONE. If the RDY input is low (not-RDY) the CPU will then delay for one microsecond before reading the data.

All of the $FFFA-$FFFF locations point into the F8 MONITOR ROM which permanently stores these indirect addresses or "vectors". This allows the system to be able to handle any of these input signals immediately upon power-up.

The R-W′ line controls the direction of data flow to and from the 6502. Like the Address Bus, it is also valid roughly 200ns before the rising edge of PHASE ZERO. Similarly, PHASE ZERO can be used as a negative-going enable and PHASE ONE as a positive-going enable for any IC using R/W as an input.

DMA′, when held low, causes both the System Address Bus And the System Data Bus to tristate. An external device can pick up the busses and perform its own memory or I/O transfers. This signal should be brought low during I1.

When running a program, the 6502 first performs a fetch cycle by reading an opcode from memory. Then the 6502 executes the opcode, which could be a memory read or write instruction, an instruction to move data between two of the 6502′s internal registers, etc. After this the 6502 then fetches another instructions and the pattern repeats. This fetch-execute pattern is called an instruction cycle. The time it takes for each instruction cycle varies from 2 to 6 microseconds with the APPLE II′s Mhz clock.

REFERENCE OSCILLATOR AND SYSTEM TIMING

SECTION 3

The Reference Oscillator consists of a differential amplifier made from discrete components, and a quartz crystal. The base of Q1 forms the different amp's inverting input and is held at AC ground (+5 V). The base of Q2 and the collector of Q1 form the amplifier's non-inverting input and output, respectively. The crystal electrically looks like a series L-R-C circuit with a resonant frequency of 14.31863 Mhz. It is tied from non-inverting input to non-inverting output creating a positive feedback loop. Above and below the crystal's resonant frequency, inductive and capacitive reactance, respectively, dominate and create a large voltage drop across the crystal causing very little voltage to appear at the base of Q2 (the non-inverting input). At the crystal's resonant frequency, inductive and capacitive reactance cancel allowing a large signal to appear at the base of Q2, and oscillations to take place.

The Exclusive-OR gate at B2 buffers and squares up the inverted output of the oscillator which appears across R3. The X-OR gate's output provides the 14M signal mainly to drive the System Timing circuits, but 14M is also used in the Video Generator section.

System Timing is generated by the tight interaction between three devices: the 195 at C2, the 153 at C1 and the 175 at B1. These three devices are operated synchronously - which means that all three chips are clocked together causing outputs to change together. Many of the outputs drive inputs on the same or another chip, getting ready for the next clocking. In addition, HPE' (Horizontal Parallel Enable) from the Sync Counters periodically causes most System Timing signals to be stretched slightly.

Eight basic signals are generated by System Timing:

1. 7M - A seven Mhz general purpose timing signal.

2. COLOR REF - A 3.58 Mhz signal used by an external television receiver as a phase reference for color information, as sent by the APPLE II.

3. PHASE ZERO - A one Mhz signal used in both Microprocessor and Video timing. The term PHASE TWO is used in manufacturer's literature to describe the 6502 microprocessor's clock input (and output). PHASE ZERO supplies this input and is used with PHASE ONE for one Mhz timing needs.

4. PHASE ONE - The inverse of PHASE ZERO.

5. RAS' (Row Address Strobe) - This two Mhz signal is used to strobe a seven-bit row address into the 4116 dynamic RAM chips.

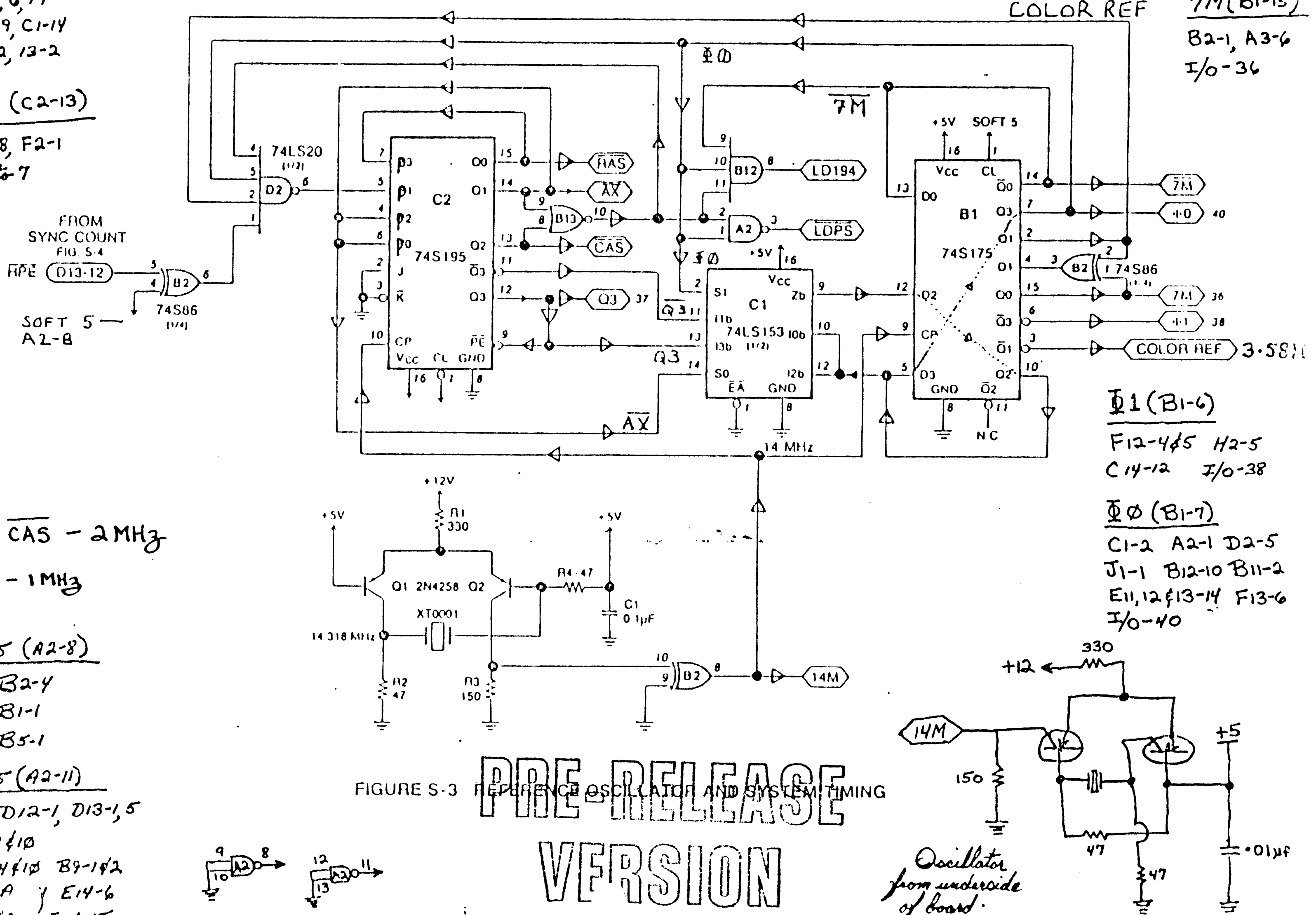
6. AX' (Address multipleX) - This two Mhz signal tells RAM hardware to switch from row to column address so that the seven-bit column address may be strobed into the RAMs.

7. CAS' (Column Address Strobe) - This signal, also two Mhz, tells a row of 16K dynamic RAM to select the memory cell at the intersection of the row and

74LS153 Dual 4 to 1 multiplexer
74S175 Quad D flip-flop
74S195 4-bit parallel access shift register (fully synchronous data transfer)(÷7 generates RAM timing)

AX (2MHz):
C2-4, 6, 14
B13-9, C1-14
E11, 12, 13-2

$\overline{CAS}$ (C2-13)
B13-8, F2-1
F1-1 to 7



RAS & CAS - 2 MHz

LDPS - 1 MHz

Soft 5 (A2-8)
C2-1, B2-4
A3-9, B1-1
B4-1, B5-1

$\overline{Soft 5}$ (A2-11)
D11-1, D12-1, D13-1, 5
D14-1, 7 & 10
B10-1, 4 & 10 B9-1 & 2
B8-1 A E14-6
A10-1, 2 & F14-15

FIGURE S-3 REFERENCE OSCILLATOR AND SYSTEM TIMING

PRE-RELEASE
VERSION

SYSTEM TIMING

dashed line = 14M·⌐

D2-6	HPE'	LDPS'	LD194	Q3	CAS'	AX'	RAS'	H1	H0	COLOR REF	7M
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1
1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1
1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0
1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	1
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	1
1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	0
1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	1
1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1
1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0	1
1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1
1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0
1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	1
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1
1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0
	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0
1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1
1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

D7-6	HPE'	LDPS'	LD194	Q3	CAS'	AX	RAS'	I1	I0	COLOR REF	7M
1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	1
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1
1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0
1	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0
1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1
1	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0
1	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1
1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0
1	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1
1	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1
1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0
1	0	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	1
1	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	0
1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	1
1	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	1	0
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	1
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0
1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	1	1
1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	0
	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1
1	1	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	0
1	1	1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1
1	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0

column addresses, and perform either a read or write cycle.

8. Q3 - A general purpose two MHz waveform similar to the RAM timing signals.

Two other signals are generated by combining the basic signals. They are:

1. LD194 (LoaD 194s) - This signal is used in the Video Generator circuits and determines when the 194 Universal Shift Registers will parallel-load graphics data.

2. LDPS′ (LoaD Parallel to Serial) - This signal forms the clock input to the 161 Sync Counters, and determines when the 166 Shift Register will parallel load one character row of data.

The Q3, COLOR REF and 7M signals also exist in their inverted form and are used occasionally in various sections of the Main Logic Board. These signals are produced as follows:

7M and COLOR REF are produced by dividing down 14M by two and then four; this is done in the 175.

RAM timing signals, RAS′, AX′ and CAS′, are generated in the 195 by first parallel loading ones, then shifting in zeroes.

The Phase Clocks are produced by the interaction between all three chips. Using the 153, PHASE ZERO routes either Q3 or Q3′ indirectly back into its D input at the 175, causing PHASE ZERO to change polarity twice each microsecond.

The 175 acts as a divide-by-two to produce 7M and 7M′. With the help of the EXCLUSIVE-OR gate at B2, 7M is divided by two to produce the 3.58 Mhz COLOR REF signal. (The actual frequency of 14M is 14.31818 Mhz; when divided down, 7M then has an actual frequency of 7.15909 Mhz, COLOR REF the required frequency of 3.579545 Mhz, and so on). Later on we will discuss how the 175 also helps generate the Phase Clocks.

The generation of 7M and 7M′ is straightforward. The Q0′ signal feeds its D0 Input to create a divide-by two. Less straightforward is the second divide-by-two which produces the 3.58 Mhz COLOR REF signal. Here the D1 Input is 7M exclusive-ORed with Q1. Here are the states:

7M	CURRENT: Q1	D1	NEXT: Q1
0	0	0	0
1	0	1	1
0	1	1	1
1	1	0	0
0	0	0	0
1	0	1	1

Observe that Q1 half the frequency of 7M, which creates the 3.58 Mhz color burst signal.

The 195 Four-Bit Parallel-Access Shift Register acts as a divide-by-seven and generates the RAM timing signals: RAS′, AX′, and CAS′. The J and K′ inputs, when tied together, form a D type input; this "D" input (pins 2 and 3 of the 195) is tied to ground. When the 195 is in SHIFT RIGHT mode, zeroes are continually shifted into to the Q0 position.

RAS′, AX′, CAS′ and Q3 appear to be the same waveform shifted in time. This is true up until one 14M clock pulse after Q3 goes low. We also see that Q3 is connected to the PE′ input of the 195. When Q3 goes, the operation mode changes from shift right mode to parallel load mode. This causes the 195 to behave as a group of D type latches where data at the P0 through P3 inputs appears at the Q0 through Q3 outputs at the next clocking.

Then, AX′ goes high one clock pulse after Q3 goes low. This happens because AX′s Parallel Input P1 is held high by the NAND gate at D2 pin 6.

RAS′ and CAS′ go high one clock pulse after AX′ goes high. This is because AX′ feeds their parallel enable inputs P0 and P2. Q3 goes high one clock pulse after RAS′ goes high, because RAS′ feeds the parallel enable input to Q3. At this point our cycle repeats for the 195′s timing.

In detail, the generation of the phase clocks PHASE ZERO and PHASE ONE involves the interaction of all three System Timing chips. The 153 at C1 plays an important part.

Driving the Select Inputs to the 153 are:

PHASE ZERO, which drives the S1 Input and chooses between the I0b/I1b set of inputs and the I2b/I3b set.

AX′, which drives the S0 input and chooses between the lower and higher numbered inputs within each set.

The phase clocks are generated using the 2 Mhz RAM signals which the 195 generates the unused latches on the 175 as a shift register and the 153 as a switch.

Of the phase clocks, only PHASE ZERO feeds back into the circuitry. Note the path that it takes within the 175 and how long each path takes:

From D2 to Q2, 70ns.

From D3 to Q3, 70ns.

Driving half of the inputs to the 153 (I0b and I2b) is the Q2 output. Since the 153′s Z output drives the D2 input to the 175 while the 153 is selecting either the I0b or I2b inputs, the signal at Q2 then feeds back into itself.

The 153′s S0 input is driven by AX′, and the S1 input by PHASE ZERO. When AX′ is low, the I0b and I2b inputs to the 153 are selected causing the Q2

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

signal to recirculate.

The other two inputs to the 153, I1b and I3b, are driven by Q3 and Q3′, respectively. When AX′ is high, either Q3′ or Q3 is selected depending on the current value of PHASE ZERO.

During the first 500ns of timing, AX′ is high, then goes low, then goes high again. When AX′ is low, the signal from Q2 of the 195 recirculates through the 153 Q2 can only change when AX′ is high.

Q3′ is low, and Q3 is high when AX′ first goes high. This causes PHASE ZERO to select a value equal to itself to be routed to the D2 input of the 175. Why? If PHASE ZERO is low with AX′ high, Q3 (which is low) is routed to the D2 input. That leaves us with the period when AX′ is high for the second time, for PHASE ZERO to change. Q3′ is now high and Q3 low, causing PHASE ZERO to select its opposite to be routed into D2 of the 175. Two 14M clockings later this signal at D2 becomes the new PHASE ZERO.

The HPE′ signal from the SYNC COUNTERS, which occurs during the 65th character position of each line, feeds into the EXCLUSIVE-OR gate at B2 which acts as an inverter. This output drives pin 1 of the 74LS20 at D2. Four signals must be high in order for the 74LS20′s output to go low. They are:

HPE′ (inverted by the X-OR gate)

COLOR REF′

PHASE ZERO

B13 pin 10 (AX′ and CAS′ low)

This occurs just before the second falling of Q3 as indicated on the System Timing Diagram.

When Q3 goes from high to low the 195 is in Parallel Enable mode. Usually, AX′ is loaded with a one on the next clock pulse, which then pulls RAS′ and CAS′ up on the clocking after that. With P1 at a zero level, RAS′, CAS′, Q3 and Phase zero are frozen because they all depend on AX′ to go high in order to change. The only signal which feeds the LS20 that is not dependent on AX′ to go high is the COLOR REF′ signal. Therefore, System Timing stops until the clock pulse after COLOR REF goes low. This adds two 14M clockings or one-half COLOR REF cycle to each line and causes the COLOR REF signal to be inverted with respect to the video data after each line. This allows the non-interlaced color video output of the APPLE II to work properly with ordinary color display devices.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

SYNC COUNTERS

SECTION 4

During PHASE ZERO high, the 6502 microprocessor accuses memory. The 6502's Address Bus is valid about 200ns before the rising edge of PHASE ZERO, and is stable until after the falling edge of PHASE ZERO. During PHASE ONE high, the Video circuits access memory, fetching a byte of memory and routing it to the Video Generator. Ram Select (Figure S-6) and Ram Address Mux (Figure S-7) circuits switch between the 6502's Address Bus and the "Video Address Bus" begins life at the Sync Counters as seen in Figure S-4.

The Sync Counters consist of four 161 Four-Bit Binary Counters cascaded together. The counters are operated syncronously (all of the counters are clocked at the same time). When a carry is to be generated from one counter to the next, the counter generating the carry sets a flag, which indicates that the last count has been reached. This flag, called TC (Terminal Count), Enables the next counter stage to advance at the next clocking.

The Sync Counters provide both horizontal and vertical addresses, which point to a memory location containing the ASCII code for the current text character to be sent out. Six signals are used to define the current horizontal character position. They are H0 through H5 and HPE' (Horizontal Parallel Enable).

APPLE II uses 65 horizontal character positions per line. 40 of those are "live" while 25 are used for blanking. One count is used for Parallel Loading the 161's at D13 and D14. This causes HPE' to go from low to high while the remaining six signals, H0 through H5 stay low. 64 counts are used for these six signals H0 through H5 to go through a complete count sequence.

Besides Parallel Loading the 161's at D13 and D14, HPE' also affects System Timing by introducing a 140ns "freeze" on most of the System Timing signals. Refer to Section 3 for more details.

Each time a line of horizontal characters is displayed (the horizontal signals H0 through H5 and HPE' run through a complete 65-count sequence), the current vertical position is incremented so that the video circuits then begin fetching bytes of data from screen memory allocated for the next line. Eight signals are used to define the current vertical character position. They are VA, VB, VC, and V0 through V4.

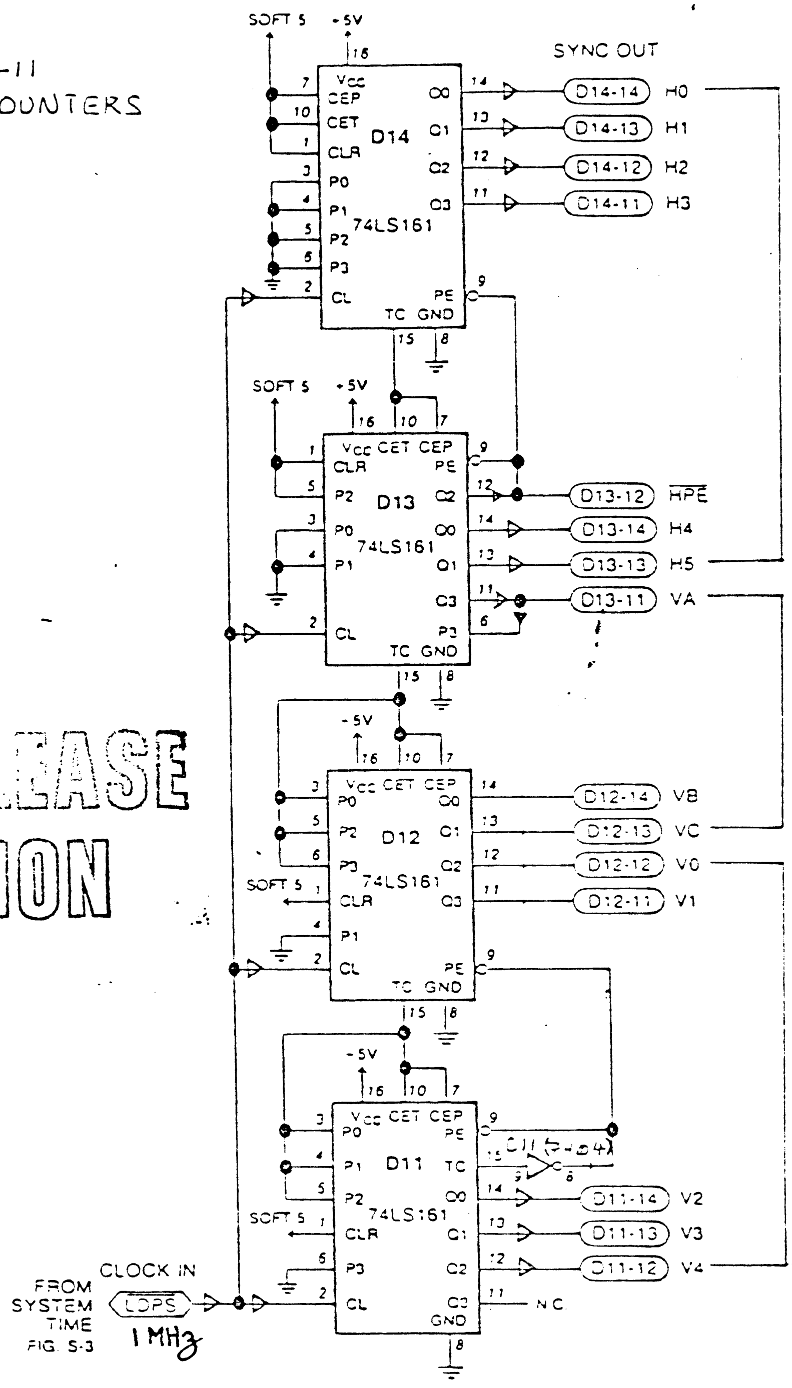
VA, VB, and VC determine which row (of eight rows of dots) is to be displayed. In TEXT mode, these signals are used by the 2316 Character Generator ROM to select the correct row of dots to be shifted out. In LORES mode, VC selects between the two 194's - VA and VB are not used. In HIRES mode, these signals influence the memory addressing sequence so that data is fetched from a unique memory location for each character - wide row of dots to be displayed.

Looking at Figure S-4, we see that VA Feeds its own Parallel Enable input. This leaves VA undisturbed by the Parallel Load That occurs during HPE'. Each Parallel Load copies the current value of VA back into itself.

The Vertical scan time in the APPLE II design is divided into 192 scan lines of "live" video followed by 70 lines of blanking. Looking at the System Timing

74LS161 4-bit binary counter

SOFT 5 = A2-11
ALL SYNC COUNTERS



HORIZONTAL CHARACTER POSITION

65 STATES,
40 μs ON-SCREEN
25 μs BLANKING

THESE SELECT ONE OF THE EIGHT VERTICAL SCAN LINES WITHIN A TEXT CHAR.

THESE SELECT WHICH ROW OF CHARS OUT OF 24 ON-SCREEN

Vertical
262 States
• 192 Live
: 70 Blanking

FIGURE S-4 SYNC COUNTERS

V1 (D12-11): C11-3, E11-12
VB (D12-14): C12-6, A5-15
VC (D12-13): A8-5, A5-16
C12-13, H1-13

Diagram, observe that the "live" vertical count and the first 64 counts of blanking are straightforward binary up-counting. Six extra counts are added to the blanking time with the following scheme:

At the 64th count of blanking, all of the counters are at an "all ones" condition. In addition D11-11 is high which means that all TC outputs including the TC output from the 161 at D11 are high. This causes the PE inputs of D11 and D12 to be held low by the inverter at C11 pin 8. On the next clocking, both D11 and D12 will Parallel Load data. (The 161's at D13 and D14 will again wrap around to all zeroes as usual.) This causes D11 and D12 to be set to a pattern six counts short of an all-ones condition.

However, D11-11 is pre-set to a zero, which means that on the seventh clocking after D11 and D12 Parallel Load, all counter outputs except D11-11 will wrap around to zero instead of Parallel Loading again. This happens because the unused output of D11 (pin 11) is at a logic zero and therefore the 161 at D11 cannot generate a TC signal until D11-11 goes high once again.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ROM MEMORY

SECTION 5

Just below the microprocessor are six sockets which may be filled with from one to six slightly smaller integrated circuits. These ICs are the Read-Only Memory (ROM) "chips" for the Apple. They contain programs for the Apple which are available the moment you turn on the power. Many programs are available in ROM, including the Apple System Monitor, the Apple Autostart Monitor, Apple Integer BASIC and Applesoft II BASIC, and the Apple Programmer's Aid #1 utility subroutine package. The number and contents of your Apple's ROMs depend upon which type of Apple you have, and the accessories you have purchased.

The APPLE II's motherboard ROM memory is organized into six sections of 2K (2048) bytes each. The type "2316" ROMs are referred to by the memory locations into which they map. The D0 ROM occupies space from $D000 - $D7FF, the F8 ROM from $F800 - $FFFF, etc. On a standard APPLE II, locations $E000 - $FFFF contain ROM memory with an optional IC available for the $D000 - $D7FF memory space. An APPLE II PLUS contains ROM memory in the entire $D000 - $FFFF memory space.

The two low-going Chip Select Inputs for each ROM are provided by outputs from the 138 at F12. Looking at Figure S-5, we see that the two negative-going enable inputs to the 138 (E1' and E2') are driven by pin 6 of the AND gate at H1. In order for one of the 138's outputs to go low, all of the Enable Inputs must be satisfied. This happens only if:

1. A14 and A15 are high ($C000 - $FFFF memory space addressed.)

2. PHASE ONE is low (a valid address is on the Address Bus at this time.)

If the 138's Enable Inputs are not satisfied, all outputs Z0 through Z7 are high.

If the Enable Inputs are satisfied, the three Address Inputs to the 138 select one of the Z0 through Z7 outputs to go low. Since the Address Inputs to the 138 are driven by A11 through A13, each 138 output reflects a unique 2K byte memory space. These low-going outputs are routed to the two low-going Enable Inputs of the appropriate ROM chip. The selected ROM will then go from high-impedance to low-impedance mode. The ROM places a byte of code onto the Data Bus selected from the 2K bytes which are permanently stored (mask programmed) within it. The byte to be selected is determined by the 12 Address Inputs A0 through A11, which drive the appropriate inputs to the ROM.

At the rising edge of PHASE ONE, the low-going enable to the 138 is removed, forcing all of its outputs high and disabling ROM. The selected ROM returns to tristate mode at this time.

The high-going enable (CS2) to each ROM has a pullup resistor to +5 volts. This INH' signal is available on the bus to deselect ROM memory. Two current APPLE products, the ROM Card and the Language Card, use this signal to "bank switch" the motherboard ROMs out, so that memory on the peripheral card can be mapped into the same address space.

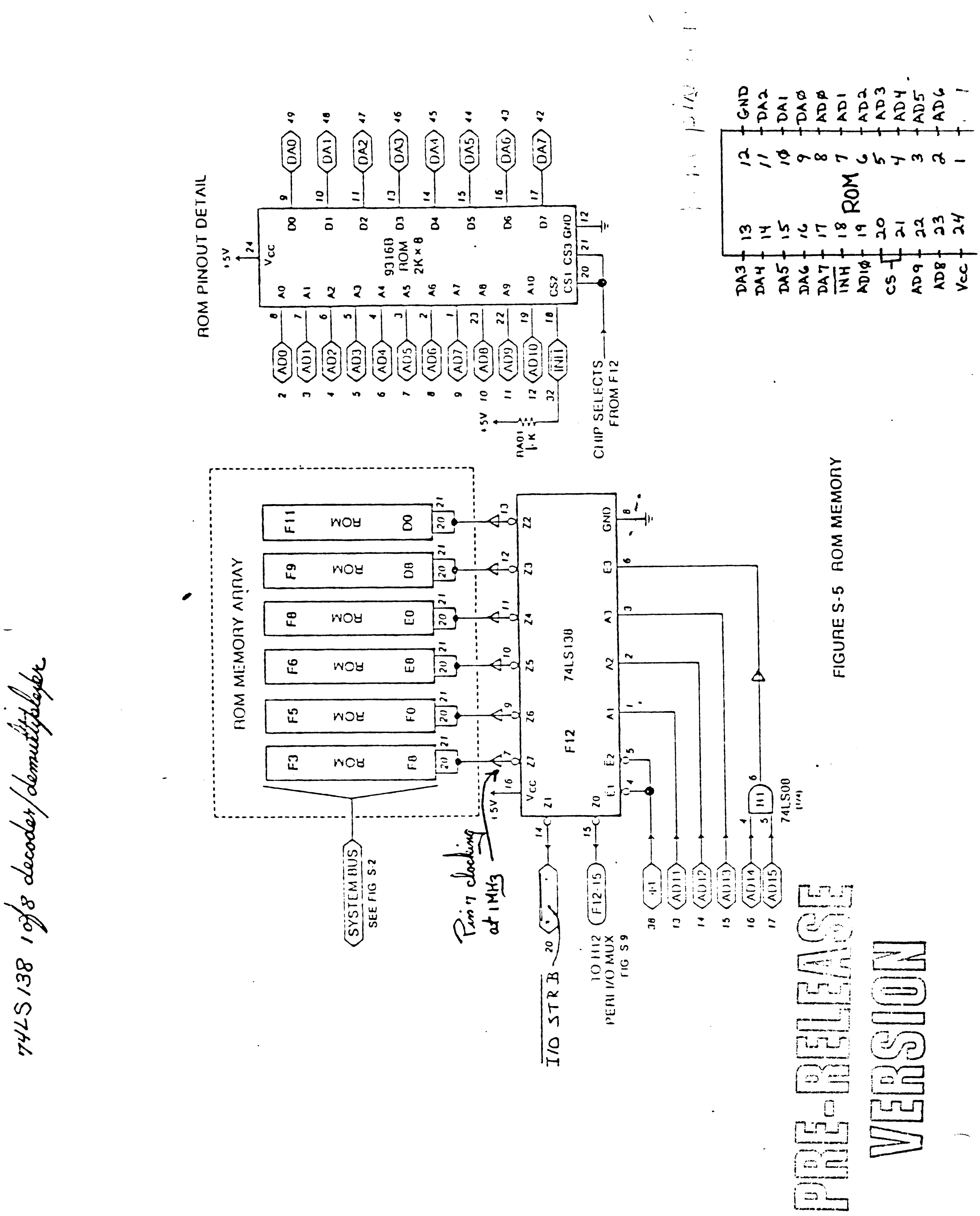


FIGURE S-5 ROM MEMORY

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

RAM SELECT

SECTION 6

Right below the ROMs and the central mounting nut is an area marked by a white square on the board which encloses twenty-four sockets for integrated circuits. Some or all of these may be filled with ICs. These are the main Random Access Memory (RAM) "chips" for your Apple. An Apple can hold 4,096 to 49,152 bytes of RAM memory in these three rows of components.* Each row can hold eight ICs of either the 4K or 16K variety. A row must hold eight of the same type of memory components, but the two types can both be used in various combinations on different rows to give nine different memory sizes.** The RAM memory is used to hold all of the programs and data which you are using at any particular time. The information stored in RAM disappears when the power is turned off.

The 6502 microprocessor has 16 address lines, and therefore can address 2^{16} or 64K bytes of memory. APPLE II memory space is divided into four 16K sections and takes advantage of 16K dynamic RAMs. The top two address lines, A14 and A15, select the 16K block to be addressed:

A15	A14	SELECTED MEMORY
0	0	ROW C RAM: $0 TO $3FFF
0	1	ROW D RAM: $4000 TO $7FFF
1	0	ROW E RAM: $8000 TO $BFFF
1	1	I/O SPACE: $C000 TO $CFFF
		ROM OR LANGUAGE CARD: $D000 TO $FFFF

This leaves 14 address lines, A0 through A13, to select an individual byte within a row of RAM. (I/O and ROM / Language Card address space is discussed separately.)

The 16K "4116" Dynamic RAM has only 7 Address Inputs, A0 through A6. In order to send 14 address bits to the RAM, we send them in two groups of seven, a Row Address followed by a Column Address. We also send control signals which indicate when the Row and Column Addresses are valid. These control signals, RAS′ (Row Address Strobe) and CAS′ (Column Address Strobe) perform other important functions as well: RAS′ refreshes data within the RAM, and when R/W is high and RAS′ and CAS′ are low, then the output of the RAM is enabled.

Looking at figure S-6 we see three sets of signals generated: RAM SEL′, RAM A6, and RAM CAS′.

RAM SEL′ goes low when there is a READ from RAM or the keyboard. This then places data from either RAM or the keyboard onto the System Data Bus, via the 257s at B6 and B7. RAM A6 sends two bits of address information to the RAM each time a READ or WRITE is performed.

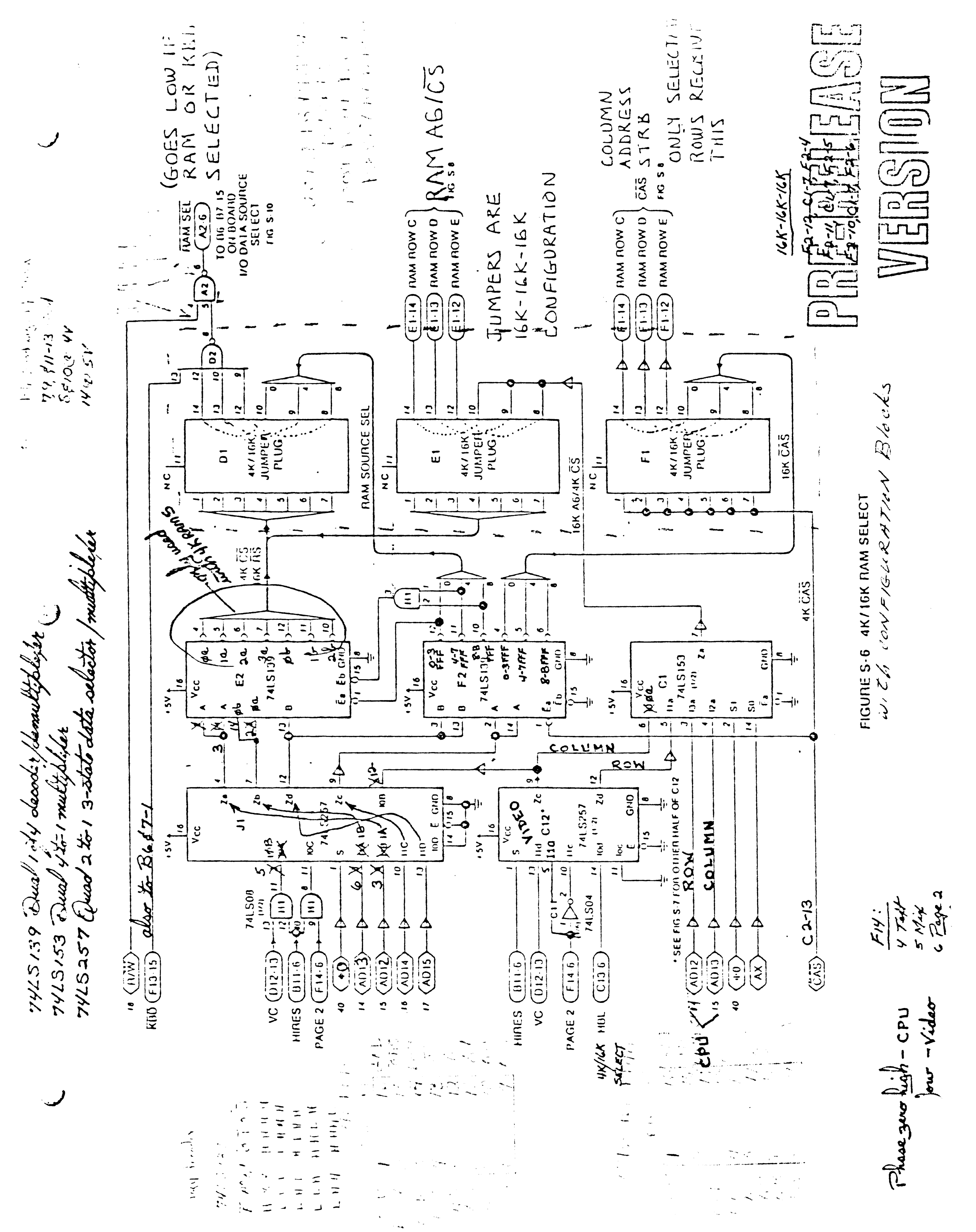


FIGURE S-6 4K/16K RAM SELECT
with 16K CONFIGURATION Blocks

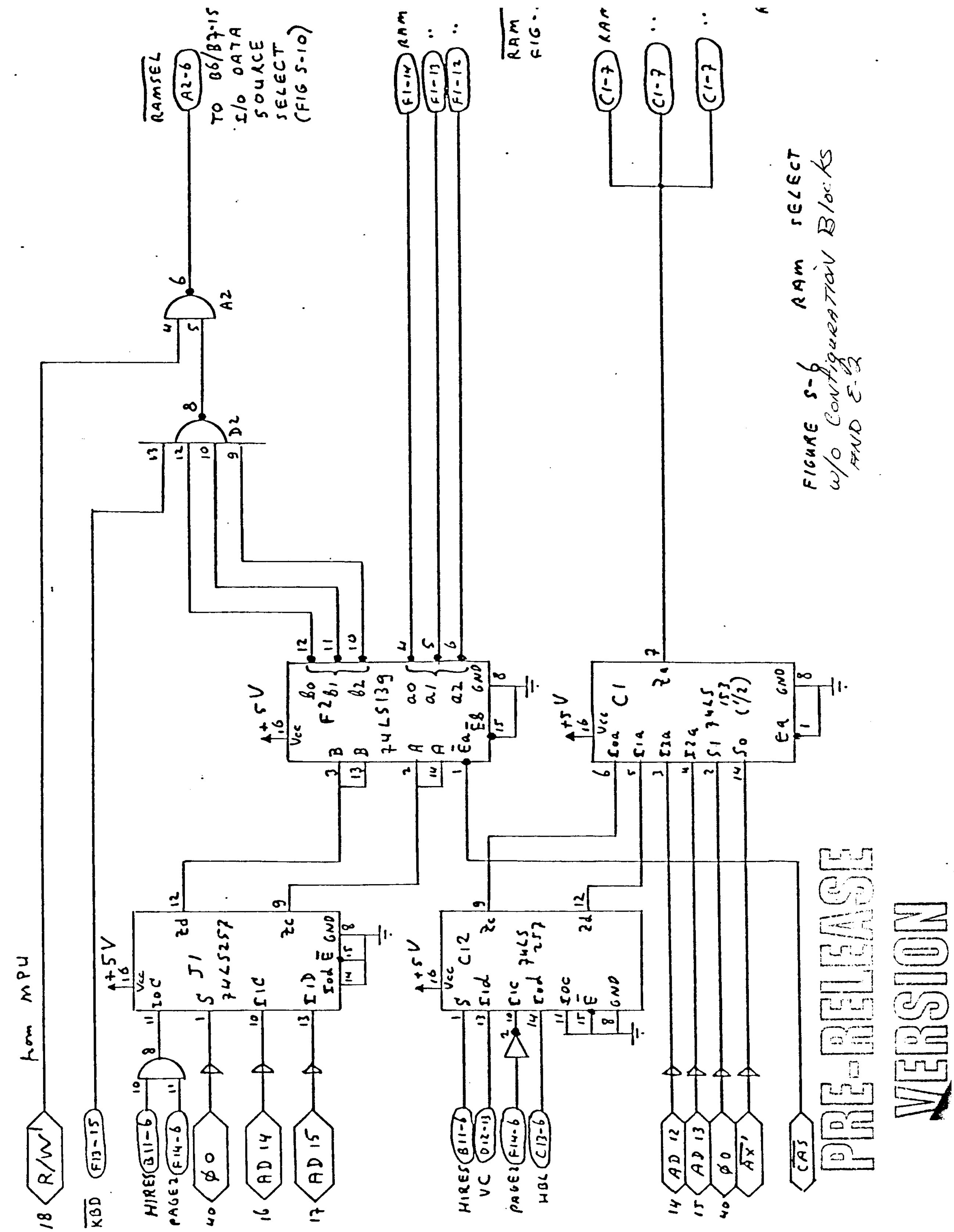


FIGURE S-6 RAM SELECT
w/o Configuration Blocks
AND E-3

CAS′ is the RAM chip select signal in 16K schemes. Only chips that receive CAS′ actually go into a low-impedance mode when a READ from RAM happens. During a WRITE to RAM, only chips that receive CAS′ actually change their data.

Referring to the System Timing Diagram, note that there are two memory accesses (bus cycles) each microsecond. The first one occurs when PHASE ZERO is low. This is the Video Cycle where a byte of data is fetched to be displayed on the screen.

The second memory access occurs when PHASE ZERO is high. This is the Microprocessor Cycle where a byte of data is read from or written to memory. There are three timing events within each cycle:

RAS′... When this signal goes low, the Row Address as it appears on RAM A0-A6 is strobed into memory.

AX′ (Address multipleX)... This signal causes a switchover from Row to Column Address as seen on RAM A0-A6.

CAS′... This signal strobes in the now valid Column Address into RAM and selects a row of RAM.

Referring back to Figure S-6, we have two activities occuring:

1. The PHASE ZERO clock selects between Video (PHASE ZERO low) and Microprocessor (PHASE ZERO high) addresses.

2. AX′ selects between Row Addresses (AX′ high) and Column Addresses (AX′ low) during each Video and Microprocessor Cycle.

Let′s look at how the RAM A6 signal is produced. On systems with 16K RAMs, the RAM A6 signal is common to each RAM. The 153 at C1 produces both the Row A6 and Column A6 for each bus cycle (Video and Microprocessor).

Driving the Select Inputs to the 153 are:

PHASE ZERO - Drives the S1 input and chooses between the two Video Address Inputs (pins 5 and 6) and the two microprocessor inputs (pins 3 and 4).

AX′ - Drives S0 input, and chooses between the two Video Address Inputs during PHASE ZERO low, and the two Microprocessor Inputs during PHASE ZERO high.

The Microprocessor Inputs to the 153 are straightforward - A12 and A13 from the microprocessor′s Address Bus. The Video Inputs to the 153 are not as straightforward, however. They come from the 257 at C12.

Driving the Select Input to the 257 is the HIRES signal which is high during HIRES graphics and low otherwise. This is done because a different addressing scheme is required for HIRES as opposed to LORES and TEXT.

Now lets′s look at how RAM CAS′ is produced. Recall that we want to only give the chips in a selected ROW of RAM the CAS′ signal. During PHASE ZERO (microprocessor mode), the high-order address lines A14 and A15 Select between four blocks of 16K bytes each. At this time we use these high order address lines to point to a row of RAM to receive CAS′. During PHASE ONE (Video Mode), we use the Video Address signals to properly select a row of RAM.

RAM CAS′ is produced at one of the outputs of the 139 only when CAS′ goes low. At that time the values at the A and B inputs determine which row gets CAS′. The A and B inputs are determined by the 257 at J1.

Note in Figure S-6 that the other half of the 139 sends its outputs to a four input NAND gate at D2. This half of the 139 is configured much like the first half except that the Enable pin (pin 15) is grounded. This 139 half feeds the four input NAND gate at D2 with a low going signal any time RAM in the mother-board is selected. Also feeding this NAND gate is the KBD′ signal from F13-5. The output of the NAND gate at pin 8 then goes high if either the keyboard or RAM is selected. DF2 pin 8 then drives one input of a two input NAND gate at A2. R/W′, the microprocessor READ-WRITE line, drives the other input. The result is that RAM SEL′ at A2 pin 6 goes low any time there is a READ from the keyboard or RAM. This gates keyboard or RAM data onto the System Data Bus (Figure S-10).

----

* You can extend your RAM memory to 64K by purchasing the Apple Language Card, part of the Apple Language System (part #A2B0006).

** Due to continuing cost reductions on 16K RAMs, current revisions of the Apple II will accept only 16K RAMs.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

RAM ADDRESS MUX

SECTION 7

Two bus cycles occur within an APPLE II each microsecond. One cycle occurs when PHASE ZERO is high and causes the address generated by the microprocessor to be presented to the RAM chips. The other cycle occurs when PHASE ONE is high and causes the Video Address generated by the Sync Counters to be switched in. Some of the Sync Counter Outputs are ready "as is" to be presented to RAM memory while others undergo further processing. Both the Microprocessor Address and the processed Video Address are, at alternate 500ns intervals, presented to the RAM ICs. The RAM chips expect an address to be presented in two steps. With 16K RAMs, a seven bit row address is first presented. The RAM stores this internally when RAS′ goes low. Then, a seven bit column address is presented and CAS′ is sent to a selected row of RAM which causes it and the seven other selected RAM chips in that row to transfer data to or from the System Data Bus.

We then have a four-way multiplexing scheme, because both the Microprocessor Address and the Video Address must be presented to RAM, each being sent in two stages: a Row Address followed by a Column Address.

Looking at Figure S-7 (Appendix A) we see that six of the seven RAM Address lines are generated using the 153′s at E12 and E13. The seventh address line is covered in the RAM Select chapter.

As shown in Figure S-7, two signals drive the select inputs to each 153:

1. PHASE ZERO - Drives each S0 input. It is high during microprocessor access and low during video access.

2. AX′ - Drives each S1 input. IT is high when the Row Address is being presented, and low when the Column Address is presented, to the RAMs.

Twice during each bus cycle, RAS′ (Row Address Strobe) goes low, strobing the Row Address into the RAM chips (they internally latch the Row Address). Next, AX′ goes from high to low causing the 153s to switch over to the Column Address. Only a selected Row of RAM receives CAS′ (Column Address Strobe), which latches the Column Address, now valid at the RAM address lines, into the RAM chip and causes a READ or WRITE operation to take place.

The refresh scheme used with dynamic RAM requires each chip to receive the full 128 possible Row Addresses, followed by RAS′, every two milliseconds. The Video Address, multiplexed in during PHASE ZERO low, meets this requirement, and thus provides a transparent refresh without the need for dedicated refresh hardware.

Looking at Figure S-7, we see 12 Microprocessor Address lines and 12 Video Address lines driving the 153 inputs. For each MIcroprocessor address line, a corresponding Video Address line exists. In some cases the correspondence is straightforward - H0, H1, and H2 correspond to A0, A1, and A2. In order to hold the screen memory size down to a minimum, however, an extra chip, the 283 Adder, was introduced. Here′s why....

74LS153 Dual 4-to-1 multiplexer
74LS257 Quad 2 to 1 data selector/multiplexer (3-state)
74LS283 4-bit full adder with fast carry

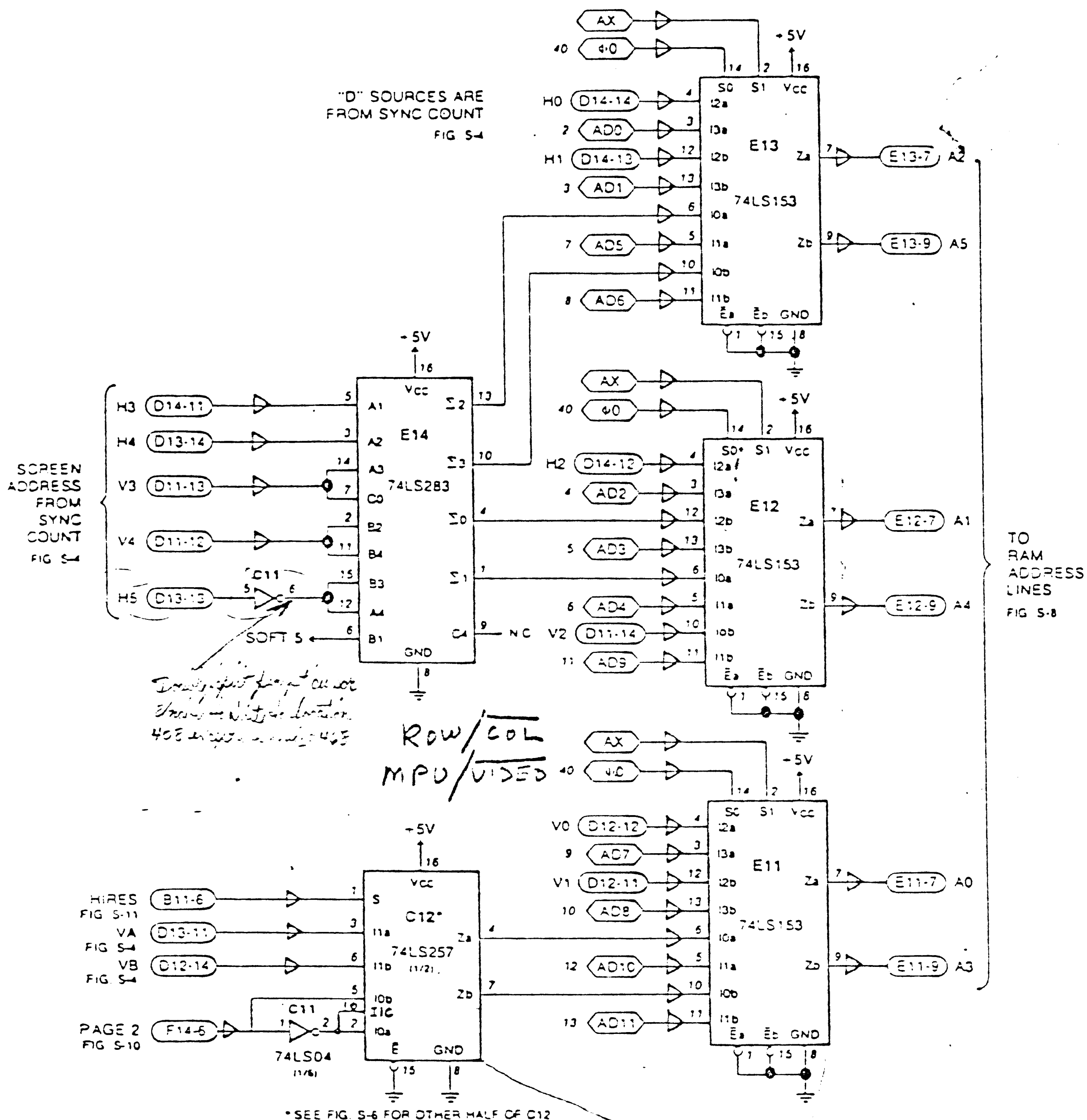


FIGURE S-7 RAM ADDRESS MUX
& Refresh Count

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

In TEXT mode, there are 24 lines of 40 characters each for a total of 960 "live" characters. To be able to address each character in memory we need only 10 address lines since 2~10 equals 1024, more that the 960 we need. Furthermore, we don't care what the Video Address looks like during blanking except to satisfy the RAM refresh requirements. We do want all of the RAM memory that contains video character to be in one continuous block, however. There are a total of 11 "video address" lines generated by the Sync Counters: H0 through H5, and V0 through V4. (In TEXT mode, VA, VB, and VC go only to the 2316 Character Generator and don't affect the Video Addressing). The 283 takes in 5 Video Address lines from the Sync Counters, and by adding them together a four bit sum is created. This reduces the count to ten lines resulting in 1024 memory locations used to map 960 "live" characters. (The 64 "wasted" characters are used by the Peripheral Cards. This is documented in the Hobby Card Manual).

The 283 adds the two four bit binary words, plus a carry bit. It produces a four bit result and a carry out. The carry out is not used in the APPLE II design. The following are the two four-bit word signals:

```
                          V3  (CIN)

OP A:      H5'  V3   H4   H3

OP B:  +   V4   H5'  V4    1  (SOFT 5 VOLTS)

-------------------------------------------

       =   E3   E2   E1   E0  (TO 153's)
```

The formula above accomplishes the compression from five signals to four. The circuit adds horizontal and vertical signals together, plus a constant, so that the address gaps created by horizontal and vertical blanking are removed. This scheme for generating addresses is responsible for the interweaving that takes place when a page of memory is filled with data from beginning to end consecutively. Adjacent lines are not stored in consecutive memory locations.

Another aspect of the Video Addressing not mentioned until now is the action of the 257 at C12. Looking at Figure S-7, we see that the 257 generates the upper two Address Bits of the Video Address. The Select Input of C12 is driven by the HIRES soft-switch output from the 9334 at B11. When S is low (TEXT/LORES mode) the PAGE 2 soft-switch output from the 9334 and its compliment form the Video Address equivalents of A11 and A12, respectively. This circuit creates the $400 or $800 base address used when in TEXT/LORES modes. The high-order four bits are all at a logic zero when in TEST/LORES. The circuits which do this are discussed in the RAM SELECT chapter.

When the HIRES soft-switch output is high (HIRES mode) these two outputs reflect VA and VB from the Sync Counters. HIRES uses an eight K byte memory block and must toggle the equivalent of A12 to A0 in the process of scanning the full memory block. VC is used as the video equivalent of A12,and the base address of $2000 (HIRES PAGE 1) or $4000 (HIRES PAGE 2) is generated in circuits found in the Ram Select chapter. This causes the twelve-way interlace seen when filling a HIRES page with data, starting at the base address and moving upwards.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

RAM MEMORY WITH DATA LATCH

SECTION 8

The APPLE II design centers heavily on the use of Random Access Memory (RAM). Our explanations are limited to the use of type "4116" 16K dynamic RAM ICs.

The four corners of each RAM supply power to the IC:

PIN NUMBER	FUNCTION	VOLTAGE
1	Vbb	-5 V
8	Vdd	+12 V
9	Vcc	+5 V
16 (GROUND)	Vss	0 V

Seven pins are used for addressing:

PIN NUMBER	FUNCTION
5	A5
6	A4
7	A3
10	A0
11	A1
12	A2
13	A6

Since each address line is independent of the others, the addresss labels assigned to the seven address pins are purely arbitrary. For example, one could switch the trace going to pin 5 of a RAM chip with the trace going to pin 6 with no effect in performance. Data would be stored in and read from different cells within the RAM but there would be no change external to the RAM. Usually the signals driving the RAM address lines are routed to the RAM address inputs at the convenience of the printed circuit board designer.

Two pins are used for DATA:

DIN (Data IN) appears at pin 2. This pin is driven by one of the System Data Bus signals D0-D7.

DOUT (Data OUT) appears at pin 14. This RAM signal drives the 174 RAM latches at B5 and B8.

74LS174 D flip flop

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

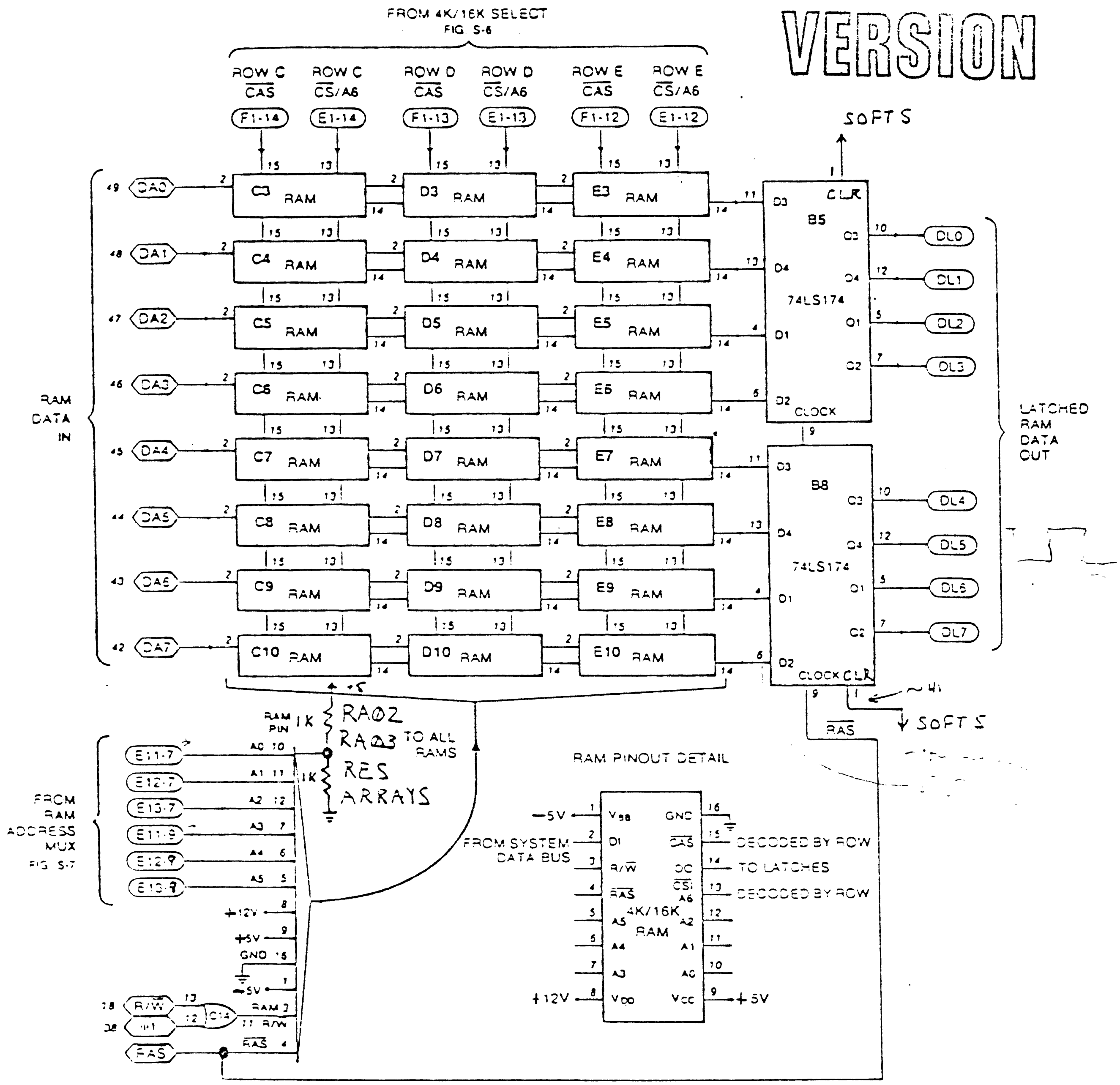
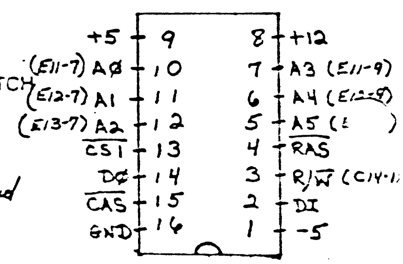
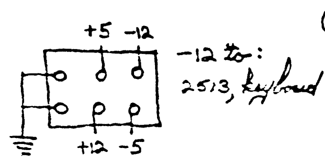


FIGURE S-8 4K TO 48K RAM MEMORY WITH DATA LATCH





There are three RAM control inputs:

WRITE' (READ/WRITE input). This input is driven by the System R/W' line and is ORed with the PHASE ONE clock before being presented to the RAM chips.

RAS' (Row Address Strobe). This signal latches the ROW address into each RAM and causes all cells in the indicated ROW to be refreshed.

CAS' (Column Address Strobe) Is applied only to selected rows of RAM and causes the unique bit cell indentified by the row and column address to be selected. If a write operation is indicated, the value which appears at the DIN input of the RAM cell is copied into the selected bit cell. If a read operation is indicated, the selected bit cell's contents is routed to the DOUT pin and latched by the 174's.

Looking at Figure S-8, we see that the RAM's WRITE' is driven by ORing the System R/W' with the PHASE ONE clock as described earlier. This is done to guarantee that a WRITE cycle only occurs during PHASE ZERO high (the microprocessor's turn to access memory) and never during PHASE ONE high (video's turn to access memory).

The 174s at B5 and B8 are each Quad "D" Latches with a positive-going Clock input. RAM data is latched so that the system can use RAM data while the next address is being set up. Looking at the System Timing Diagram, we see that the new ROW address is strobed into RAM 140ns after the data produced by the previous READ is latched into the 174s.

PRE-RELEASE
VERSION

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PERIPHERAL I/O

SECTION 9

Three pins on each slot of the APPLE II motherboard are used to send control pulses to the circuit card installed in that slot position. They are:

CONN. PIN# PRONOUNCED:	SIGNAL NMEMONC
20 "I/O STROBE"	I/O STRB′
41 "DEVICE SELECT"	DEV SEL′
1 "I/O SELECT"	I/O SEL′

Each of these signals produces a low-going pulse for 500ns in response to an address generated by the 6502 microprocessor. Of the three signals, only one, I/O STRB′, is common to all slots. The remaining two signals can be sent to a selected slot to the exclusion of all other slots. (I/O STRB′ is detailed in the ROM Memory section).

DEV SEL′ and I/O SEL′ are slot dependent signals. Each slot has a set of addresses which cause a pulse to be generated only at that particular slot. This eliminates the need to have the hardware in each peripheral card decide which signals are intended for it and which are not.

I/O SEL′ signals are generated by the 138 at H2. Driving its active-low inputs is F12-15 (see ROM Decode section). This pin goes low anytime an address in the $C000 to $C7FF range is generated. Looking at Figure S-9, we see that A8, A9, and A10 drive the Address Inputs to the (H2) 138. This causes the various outputs of the chip to go low anytime a particular 256 byte memory area is addressed. The Z0 output of H12 responds to addresses in the $C000 to $C0FF range and is used to enable the keyboard, on-board I/O and soft-switch circuits when A7 is high ($C080 to $C0FF), then the 138 at H2 is enabled and DEV SEL′ signals, to be detailed later, are generated.

The other seven outputs from the 138 at H12 are distributed among seven I/O slots (Slot 0 does not receive I/O SEL′). Since each slot receives I/O, SEL′ over a 256 byte range, this signal is used to enable a small program in PROM which controls APPLE II′S communication with the card. As described in the ROM Decode section, the outputs of the 138 at F12 go low only during PHASE AERO high. The enable into pins 4 and 5 of the 138 at H12 will only go low during Phase zero High. Our I/O SEL′ pulses will then be active only during the PHASE ZERO-high portion that the appropriate address is generated.

I/O SEL′ provides slots 0 through 7 with a 256 byte memory area. The mapping for this is $C <slot #> 00 to $C <slot #> FF, with slot 0 having no I/O SEL′ signal.

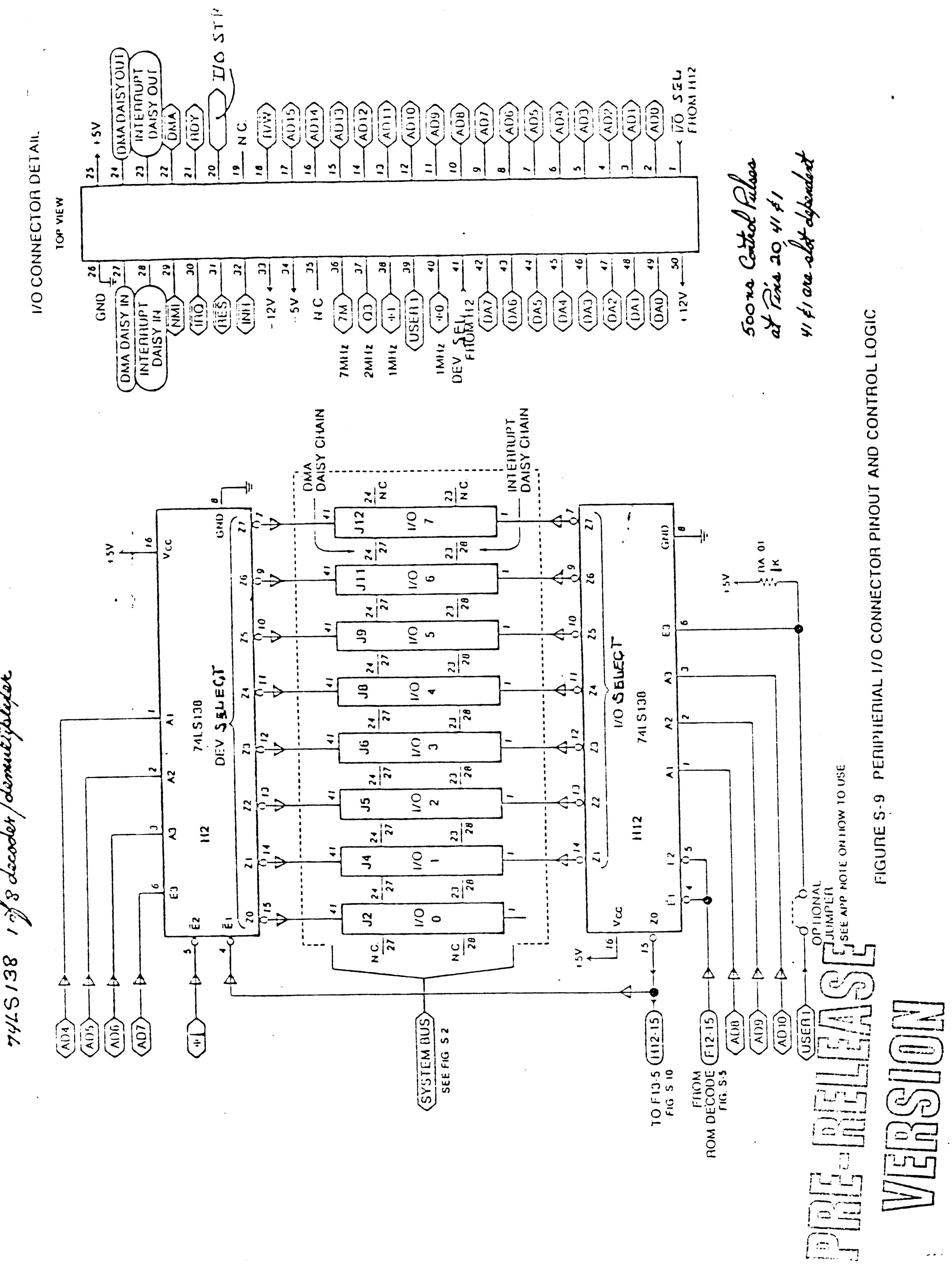


FIGURE S-9 PERIPHERIAL I/O CONNECTOR PINOUT AND CONTROL LOGIC

Observe in Figure S-9 that the active-high enable to the 138 at H12 has a pull-up resistor, and an optional jumper to connect it to the USER1 pin at the I/O slot (Pin 39). If the jumper is shorted, then USER1 may be used to disable any I/O signals in the $C800 memory range. This is done by bringing this pin to ground, which disables the 138's active high Enable Input.

DEV SEL' signals map into a tighter address space than the I/O SEL signals. Since the Z0 output of the 138 at H12 is used to enable the 138 at H2, the address space is limited to the $C000 to $C0FF space. Since A7 is also used as an enable to the 138 at H12, the address space is further limited to $C080 to $C0FF. This allows each peripheral connector a 16 byte address space since A4 to A7 Drive this 138's Address Inputs. Normally, address lines A0 to A3 Are used with the DEV SEL' signal to act as control signals for the peripheral card's hardware. The program to do this often resides in PROM, mapping into the peripheral card's I/O space. In summary:

I/O SEL' gives each peripheral slot, except Slot 0, 256 bytes of address space. Pin 1 of the selected slot will go low for one PHASE ZERO - high time period (500ns) each time one of the slot's 256 assigned addresses is generated by the 6502. This signal is used to enable a small PROM program on the peripheral card.

DEV SEL' gives each peripheral slot, including Slot 0, 16 bytes of address space. Pin 41 of the selected slot will go low for one PHASE ZERO - high time each time an address in the slot's DEV' address space is generated by the 6502. This signal is used to send control signals to the peripheral card.

Since the phase clocks are used to ENABLE the 138's, all signals generated by the 138's will LAG the phase clocks slightly. This means that that the DEV SEL' or I/O SEL' signal will be present until AFTER the falling edge of PHASE ZERO or the rising edge of PHASE ONE. These slot-dependent signals, along with I/O STRB', can be captured by sending the signal into the D input of a latch and clocking the latch with the rising edge of PHASE ONE.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ON-BOARD I/O

SECTION 10

APPLE II offers on-board I/O (input/output) circuits which include the keyboard, video display and the built-in loudspeaker. Other on-board I/O capability includes cassette interface circuitry, Game Paddle (analog to digital conversion) circuits and some general purpose logic inputs and outputs.

Looking at Figure S-10, observe how address lines A0 - A13 distribute themselves between the four ICs at the left. The 138s at F12 and H12 provide enable signals to the ROMs and to the peripheral cards. This is mentioned in detail in the Rom Memory and Peripheral I/O chapters. It is important to note that the Z0 output from the 138 at H12 goes low when an address in the $C000 - $C0FF range is generated. You may recall from the Peripheral I/O chapter that the DEV SEL′ signals are only enabled when A7 is high and the Z0 output just mentioned is low. The 138 at H12 also uses this Z0 output and A7 as enable signals but A7 is used as a low-going enable signal producing an address range of $C000 - $C07F for the 138 at F13 where an address range of $C080 - $C0FF exists for the DEV SEL′ signals.

Driving the high going Enable Input of the 138 at F13 is the I/O signal from System Timing. This is done since the Address Bus is valid all the time that I/O is high. Address lines A4 to A6 drive this 138′s Address Inputs. Since A0 to A3 do not connect with this device, each output will have a 16 byte memory space where any one of the 16 addresses present on the Address Bus will cause the selected output to go low.

Let′s cover some F13′s outputs and the memory locations into which they are mapped:

Z0 ($C000 - $C00F). A READ to any of these addresses causes an ASCII character from the keyboard to be placed onto the Data Bus via the 257s at B6 and B7.

Z1 ($C010 - $C01F). This is the Cassette Save signal which clocks the 74LS74 at K13 which is set up as a divide-by-two. This causes its output to toggle. R18 and R19 form a 120 to 1 voltage divider and reduce the four volt peak-to-peak signal from K13′s Q2 output to under 40 millivolts peak-to-peak.

Z3 ($C030 - $C03F). This signal clocks the other 74LS74 at K13 which is also configured as a divide-by-two. The output of this LS74 is AC coupled to a single-package Darlington amplifier which drives the speaker through a 27 ohm current-limiting resistor.

Z4 ($C040 - $C04F). This signal appears at pin 5 of the game I/O connector and is available for user applicaitons.

Z5 ($C050 - $C05F). This signal enables the 9334 at F14 which is responsible for the graphics "soft switches" and some software-controlled signals available at the Game I/O connector outputs.

Z6 ($C060 - $C06F). This signal enables the 251 at H14. The 251 chooses between the following inputs:

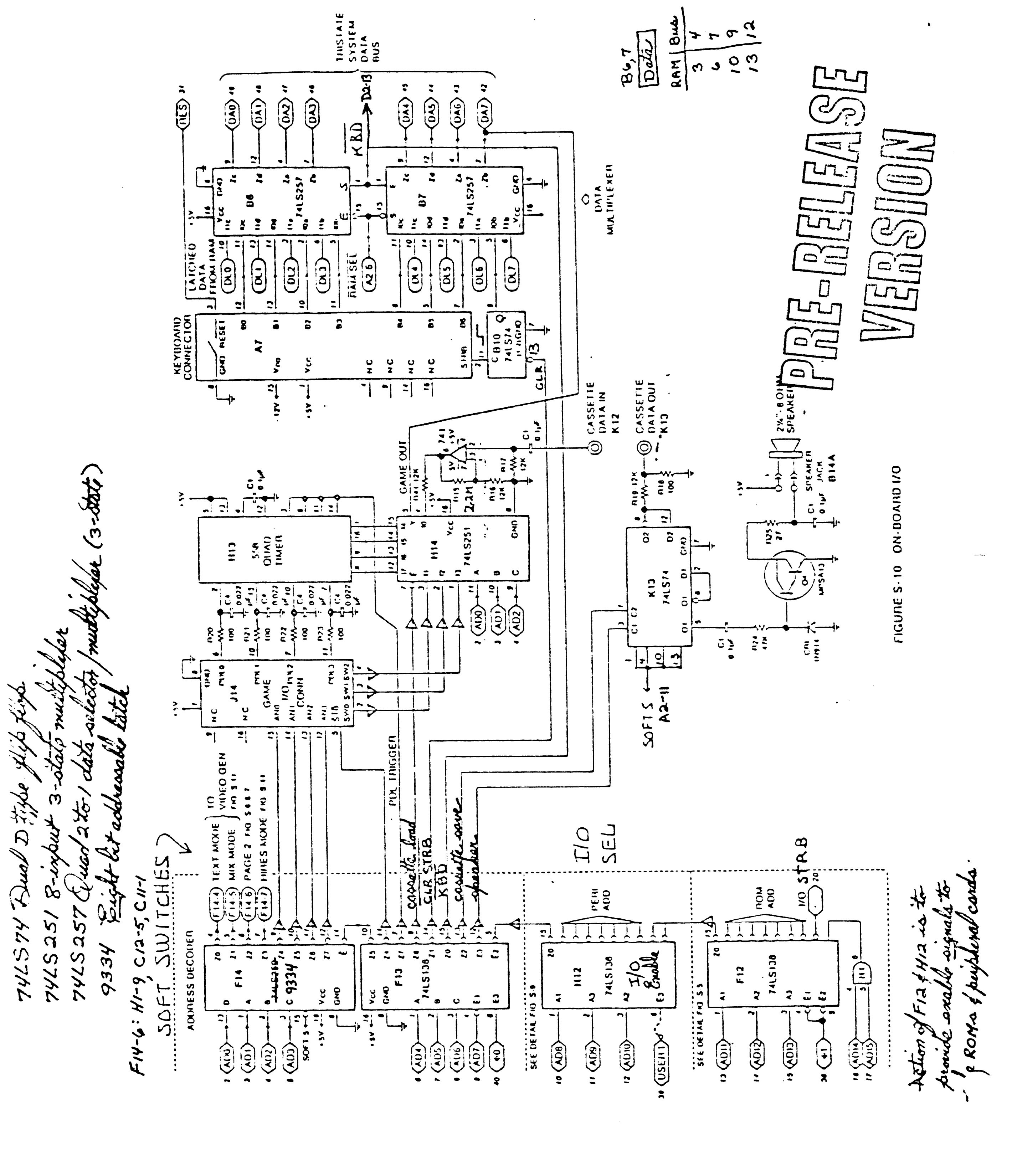


FIGURE S-10 ON-BOARD I/O

MUX INPUT NAME	INPUT IS
10	Cassette In
11	SW0
12	SW1
13	SW2
14	PDL0
15	PDL1
16	PDL2
17	PDL3

Since the 251's Select INputs are driven by A0-A2, these various inputs appear at Data bit 7 when reading to addresses $C060 $C067. The 251's Y output drives bit 7 of the Address Bus.

The Cassette In Signal to the 251 comes from the 741 Op-Amp at location K1.

The PDL signals to the 251 come from the 558 Quad Timer. The varying resistance of each paddle changes the R-C time constant; therefore, the time period for which the output remains high. This time period is converted into a number ranging from 0 to 255, in software.

Z7 ($C070 - $C07F). This output from the 138 resets all four of the 558's Timers.

The 257s at B6 and B7 buffer the keyboard and Latched RAM Data from the Data Bus.

The RAM SEL' signal drives the Enable Input to the 257, and goes low if RAM or the KBD is selected. When this happens, usually Latched RAM Data is selected. If our KBD' signal from the 138 at F13 is low, however, (READ from KBD) then the keyboard is selected.

The 9334 IC at F14 is an eight-bit Addressable Latch. The 9334's outputs perform two functions. The first one is to throw the soft switches which control the video modes. These switches are in the $C050 to $C057 address range. Note that A0 forms the D input to this 9334. This second function performed by the 9334 is to set the four Annuciator Outputs available at the Game I/O Connector. This general-purpose LSTTL outputs are available for user applications.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

VIDEO GENERATOR

SECTION 11

The Video Generator circuits convert bytes of data into serial video. Horizontal and vertical sync pulses are added to produce composite video. A color burst signal is also added when color graphics is displayed. The purpose of the Video Generator is then to:

1. Generate text or graphics serial video data.

2. Correctly route the video signal to the output jack.

3. Add horizontal and vertical sync pulses and, if required, a color burst signal.

There are three video modes:

1. TEXT. Data is displayed as alphanumeric characters in 24 lines of 40 columns each.

2. LORES (LOw RESolution) graphics. Data appears as colored squares within a 40 (h) by 48 (v) matrix with 16 available colors.

3. HIRES (HIgh RESolution) graphics. Data is shifted out as a 280 (h) by 192 (v) matrix with six colors available.

TEXT generation is the most straightforward of the three modes. Two principal ICs are involved - the *2316 Character Generator and the 166 Shift Register. Referring to Figure S-11 we see that the 2316 is a special-purpose ROM with 9 Address Inputs and 5 Data Outputs. Let's describe what a character is supposed to look like on the screen:

A TEXT character appears as seven groups of five dots across. These groups of five dots are stacked vertically to produce a five (h) by seven (v) dot matrix. To the left and right of each character is a blank column used to separate characters horizontally. An eighth ROW of blank dots is produced by the Character Generator to separate characters vertically.

The Character Generator produces eight groups of five dots each which are shifted out as serial video. Looking at Figure S-11, we see that six of the Character Generator's inputs are from Latched RAM Data and represent the ASCII code of th character to be displayed. Three other inputs to the 2316 are VA, VB, and VC from the Sync Counters. These three signals go through 2~3 or eight different states, each state addressing a different row of dots within each character.

The 166 Shift Register accepts each five-dot row from the Character Generator, adds a blank dot in front of an behind the row, and shifts out the dots one at a time.

Three inputs from System Timing, 14M, 7M, and LDPS' (LoaD Parallel to Serial) control the action of the 166. During each shift, bits are shifted up alphabetically: G moves to H, F to G, E to F, etc. Note that both H and B inputs

74LS151 8-input multiplexer
74166 8-bit serial/parallel-in, serial-out shift register
74LS174 Hex D flip flop
74LS194 4-bit BiDi universal shift register
74LS257 Quad 3-state 2 to 1 data selector/multiplexer

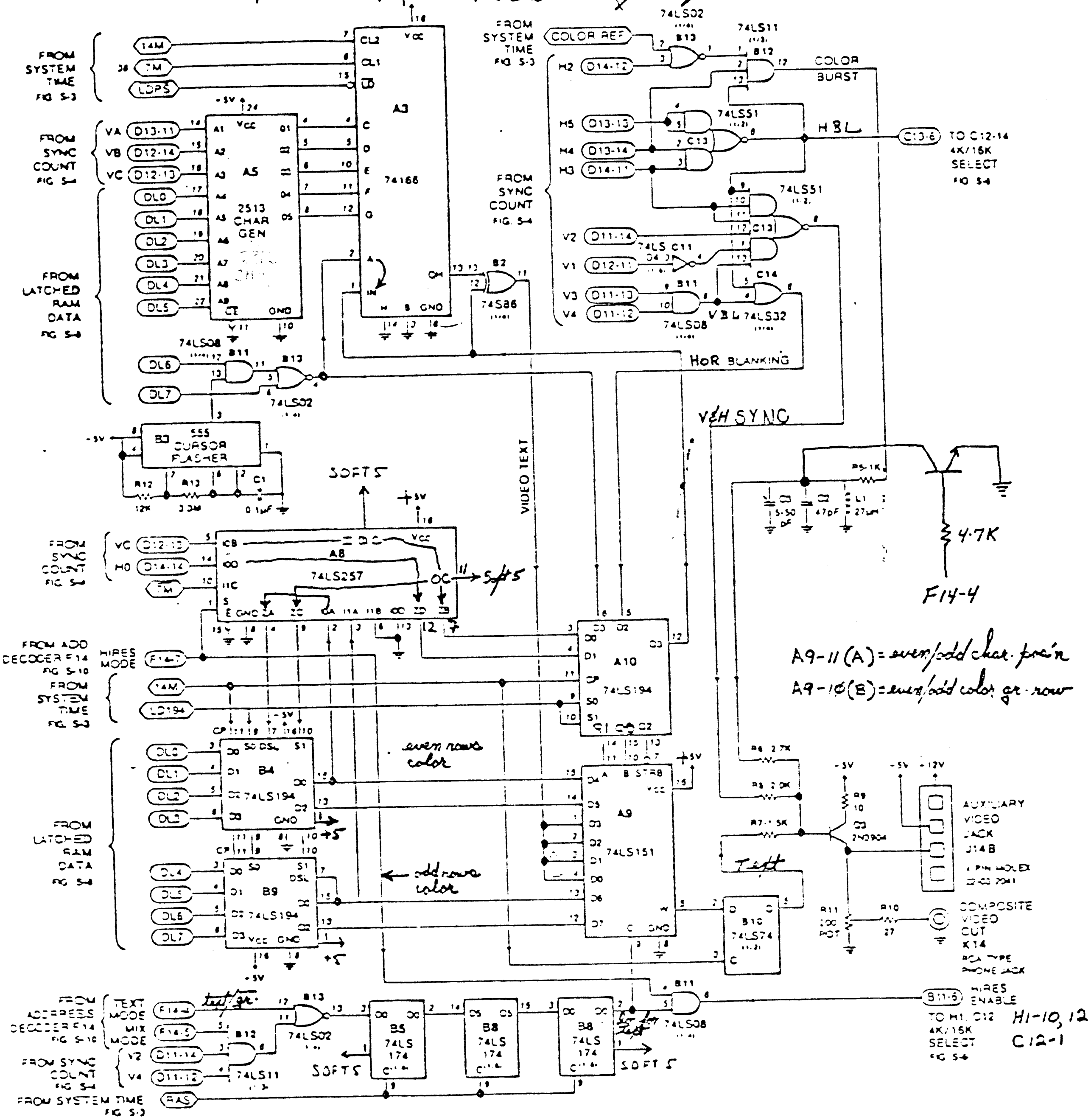


FIGURE S-11 VIDEO GENERATOR

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

are grounded; these create the blank dots to the left and right of each row which separate adjacent characters.

Our 166 mode diagram looks like this:

14M	7M	LDPS′	RESULT
X	1	X	HOLD CURENT POSITION
^	0	0	PARALLEL LOADS
^	0	1	SHIFTS UP ONE POSITION

NOTE: "^" represents a low-to-high transition. "X" means "can be any value."

The 166 is allowed to change only if 7M is high. This results in data being shifted out at 7 Mhz. Referring to the System Timing Diagram, we see that LDPS′ occurs in the middle of PHASE ZERO once every microsecond, causing a new row of microsecond.

The Exclusive-OR gate, which QH feeds into, functions as a controlled inverter. Observe in Figure S-11 that Latched RAM Data bits six and seven feed into gates at B11 and B13, the output of which passes through the 194 at A10 via pins six and seven, to the other input of the Exclusive-OR gate. (The 194 at A10 functions as a latch.) The 555 Oscillator at B3 operates at about three hertz and also feeds into the gates at B11 and B13. As a result, when pin 12 of the EXCLUSIVE-OR is high, video will be displayed in inverse field, otherwise it passes through undisturbed. The effect of DL6 and DL7 on the serial video output is:

DL7	DL6	VIDEO MODE	
0	0	INVERSE	B13-4 IS HELD HIGH
0	1	FLASHING	B13-4 WILL BE HIGH (EXCEPT WHEN 555 IS HIGH)
1	0	NORMAL	B13-4 IS HELD LOW
1	1	NORMAL	B13-4 IS HELD LOW

The video output feeds into the 151 at A9. This chip acts as a master switch between TEXT, LORES, and HIRES modes. (will be discussed later)

Both LORES and HIRES GRAPHICS make use of the 194 Universal Shift Register. The complexity of this chip is due to the four operation modes which cause a Hold conditon, Shift Left and Right conditions, and a Parallel Load condition. For our purposes we can ignore one unused mode and describe the 194′s operating modes as: (see top of next page)

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

S1	S0	MODE	RESULT
0	0	HOLD	DATA STAYS THE SAME
1	0	SHIFT LEFT	DATA FROM Q3 SHIFTS TO Q2, Q2 TO Q1, ETC DSL INPUT SHIFTS INTO Q3
1	1	PAR. LOAD	DATA AT D0 - D3 APPEARS AT Q0 - Q3

NOTE: References made to "the twin 194s" refer to the two at B4 and B9. These two ICs are the nucleus of the LORES and HIRES circuits.

In both LORES and HIRES schemes Latched RAM Data is parallel-loaded into the Twin 194s and then shifted left for a one microsecond interval. The HIRES signal from F14 pin 7 drives the 257's Select Input. The 257 then chooses between Data Input Set 0 when in LORES mode or Data Input Set 1 when in HIRES mode. The effect that changing modes has on the Twin 194s is to:

1. Change the way data circulates within the 194's - they act as independent recirculating shift registers, or "spinners" when in LORES. In HIRES mode the Twin 194s connect in series to make one eight position shift register (only 7 are actually used).

2. Change the rate at which the 194s are shifted by effecting the S1 Mode Control input to the 194s.

The twin 194s have their S1 Inputs held high all the time when in LORES. Remember that Data Input Set 0 is selected (routed to the Z Outputs) when in LORES mode, and Data Input Set 1 is selected when in HIRES. Following the path back from the ZC output of the 257, we see that the 194s S1 inputs connect to Soft 5 volts via the I0c Input of the 257. The S0 inputs of the 194s are "hardwired" to the LD194 signal from System Timing. In LORES then, the 194s are in one of two modes:

1. Parallel Load (LD194 is high)

2. Shift Left (LD194 is low) enter a Hold state

3. When LD194 is low and 7M' is high, then the 194s do an eight bit shift. The Q0 output of the 194 at B9 feeds the Data Shift Left Input of the 194 at B4.

The 151 at A9 serves as the master switch between TEXT, LORES and HIRES. It also switches between inputs in LORES mode. Looking at Figure S11, we see that the C Input to the 151 is driven by pin 2 of the 174 at B8. This signal serves to switch between TEXT and graphics. When the C Input is low, one of the Data Inputs D0 through D3 are candidates to become the output. Select inputs A and B choose between the four inputs. All four inputs D0 through D3 are, however, driven by the video text signal. Therefore, we are in TEXT mode regardless of the values of the A and B inputs when C Input is low.

When the C input is high, one of the data inputs D4 through D7 are selected to become the output signal. Here the final selection process is more involved.

The Zb and Zd outputs of the 257 pass through the 194 at A10 which acts as a latch. The Q0 and Q1 outputs of the 194 which reflect the levels of the Zb and Zd outputs from the 257, drive the A and B inputs, selecting either Data Input D4, D5, D6, or D7. The selected input becomes the final output.

In LORES mode, Data Input set 0 is selected. H0 and VC from the Sync Counters are now routed to the A and B inputs, respectively, of the 151. This causes two effects:

1. When VC is low, the 194 at B4 is selected. When VC is high, the 194 at B9 is selected.

2. On even numbered columns, data is tapped from each 194 at its Q0 output. On odd numbered columns, data is tapped from each 194 at its Q2 output. This allows for continuous LORES patterns to be generated across the screen. This happens because each 194 is two clockings out of phase after 14 clockings (14 MOD four is two). The "tap" is moved two places to corrector for this.

VC, from the Sync Counters, changes polarity every time four horizontal lines are generated. Switching between the Twin 194s every four horizontal lines causes a byte of Latched RAM Data to appear as two LORES squares stacked on top of one another.

In HIRES mode, the A and B inputs to the 151 are both low. This causes only the Q0 output of the 194 at B4 to be selected.

In summary for mode switching:

1. In TEXT mode the C input to the 151 at A9 is low. Any values for the A and B inputs to the 151 selected TEXT video. In either graphics mode, the C input is high.

2. In LORES mode, H0 and VC from the Sync Counters drive the A and B inputs to the 151, causing a byte of Latched Ram Data to appear as two LORES squares, stacked one on top of another.

3. In HIRES mode, only Q0 of the 194 at B4 is selected as video data.

At the bottom of Figure S-11 are two soft switch outputs, TEXT and MIX, two soft Sync Counter outputs V2 and V4, and RAS′ from System Timing. These signals combine in the gates at B12 and B13. The resulting signal, delayed by 1.5 microseconds by the cascaded latches at B5 and B8 drives the C input to the 151 switching between TEXT (C input high). These gates allow for MIX mode which has four text lines at the bottom of the screen. The HIRES ENABLE signal is produced by ANDing the HIRES signal with latch output B8-2, and is used to alter the addressing scheme when in HIRES mode.

In either GRAPHICS mode, brightness and color information is contained in the bit patterns that are shifted out. Brightness, or luminance is based on the ratio of the number of dots set high to the total number of dots sent out within a given screen area.

Color information is based on the phase relationship between the 3.58 Mhz

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

COLOR BURST signal, which is sent for a brief time following the rising edge of the horizontal Sync pulse, and the serial video data.

As explained in the new APPLE II Reference Manual, the most significant bit from Latched RAM Data serves as a control bit in REV 1 or higher boards. This creates an additional 70ns delay to the serial video when the high-order bit from Latched RAM Data is set. We get green, violet, white and black when the "control bit" is 0 and orange, blue, white1, and black1 when the control bit is 1.

The gates in the upper right corner of Figure S-11 produce the horizontal and vertical sync pulses that allow a television set to "lock in" to the APPLE II video signal. APPLE II generates composite video (all video information is contained in one signal); sync pulses are mixed in with the video data via R6. Looking at the System Timing Diagram, we see that horizontal blanking occurs during the first 25 counts of the Sync Counters. Note also that vertical blanking occurs whenever V3 and V4 from the Sync Counters are both high. Within each horizontal and vertical blanking period, a corresponding sync pulse is generated.

Circuits disable the 151 during blanking, thus forcing its output to a logic 0. Looking at Figure S-11, we can trace back from the STRB Input of the 151 (pin 7) through the 194 at A10 to pin 6 of the OR gate at C14. Since the STRB Input to the 151 is active low, we want the OR gate to go high only during horizontal or vertical blanking. Driving pin 5 of the OR gate is the HBL (Horizontal BLanking) signal produced by pin 6 of the LS51 - this signal is high during the first four counts of the Sync Counters. Driving pin 4 of the OR gate is V3 ANDed with V4, which is the Vertical Blanking signal. The sync pulses are produced by ANDing the blanking signals with a few more timing signals to narrow them down within the blanking periods. For the horizontal sync pulse we AND HBL with V3. For the vertical sync pulse we AND VBL with V2 And V1′. This is done with the lower LS51 in Figure S-11. This LS51 ORs the horizontal and vertical sync pulses and inverts the result so our sync pulses will be low-going. The final result is mixed into the output via R8.

Rev 1 or later boards have a modified version of the sync circuit, which corrects for some timing problems encountered when interfacing the APPLE II to certain television set models.

COLOR BURST occurs during HBL when H4 is high and H2 is low. Looking at the System Timing Diagram, we see that this starts right after the horizontal sync pulse and continues until H2 goes high (4 microseconds total time).

The COLOR BURST signal is shaped by R5, L1, C2, C3. This network is a tank circuit which is tuned to the COLOR BURST frequency of 3.58 Mhz.

Adjusting C3 causes a slight phase shift to the COLOR BURST signal with reference to the video data and has the effect of shifting the colors on the screen. This provides a "fine tuning" color adjustment on the APPLE II to supplement controls found on the television set.

*Early revision boards used a 2513 Character Generator.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

'IDEO STATE DIAGRAM

HOR..ONTAL CHARACTER POSITIONS: 25 STATES OF BLANKING, 40 STATES OF "LIVE" VIDEO. ACH STATE (ONE CHARACTER WIDE) LASTS 1 MICROSECOND (CLOCKED BY LDPS')

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

	HBL				LIVE				
H0	0	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
H1	0	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
H2	0	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
H3	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1
H4	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1
H5	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1
HPE'	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

65 HORIZONTAL CHARACTER POSITIONS PER LINE OF TEXT

HORIZONTAL SYNC

VERTICAL SYNC COUNTERS INCREMENT HERE

192 LIVE VERTICAL SCAN LINES: 24 CHARACTER POSITIONS WITH 8 SCAN LINES PER ROW.

70 BLANKED SCAN LINES (VBL)

A	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	0	1	0	1	0	1
B	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	1	1	0	0	1	1
C	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	0	0	1	1	1	1
0	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	1	1	1	1	1	1
1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
2	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
3	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
[illegible] 11	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

8 SCAN LINES PER ROW OF CHARACTERS

24 CHARACTER ROWS

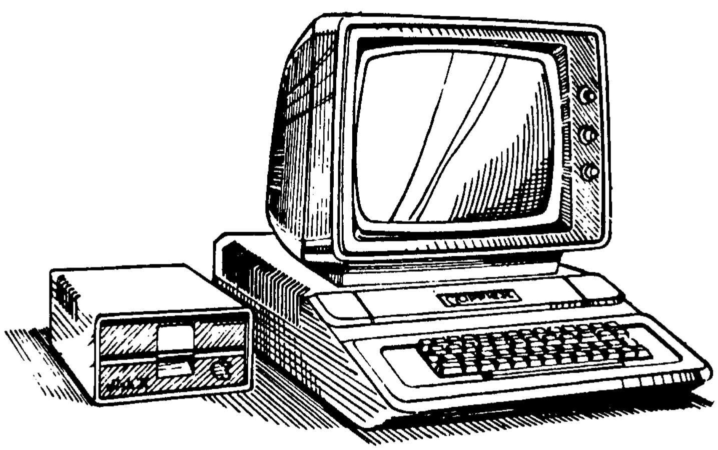
VERTICAL SYNC

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS
LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 8
MORE MEMORY



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

MORE MEMORY

The Apple's 6502 microprocessor can directly reference a total of 65,536 distinct memory locations. You can think of the Apple's memory as a book with 256 "pages", with 256 memory locations on each page. For example, "page $30" is the 256 memory locations beginning at location #3000 and ending at location $30FF. Since the 6502 uses two eight-bit bytes to form the address of any memory location, you can think of the bytes as the page number and other as the location within the page.

The Apple's 256 pages of memory fall into three categories: Random Access Memory (RAM), Read-Only Memory (ROM), and Input/Output locations (I/O). Different areas of memory are dedicated to different functions. The Apple's basic memory map looks like this:

System Memory Map

Page Number: Decimal	Hex	
0	$00	RAM (48K)
1	$01	
2	$02	
.	.	
.	.	
.	.	
190	$BE	
191	$BF	
192	$C0	I/O (2K)
193	$C1	
.	.	
.	.	
.	.	
198	$C6	
199	$C7	
200	$C8	I/O ROM (2K)
201	$C9	
.	.	
.	.	
.	.	
206	$CE	
207	$CF	
208	$D0	ROM (12K)
209	$D1	
.	.	
.	.	
.	.	
254	$FE	
255	$FF	

Figure 5. System Memory Map

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

RAM STORAGE

The area in the Apple's memory map which is allicated for RAM memory begins at the bottom of Page Zero and extends up to the end of Page 191. The Apple has the capacity to house from 4K (4,096 bytes) of RAM on its main circuit board, (only early revisions with RAM configuration blocks). In addition, you can expand the RAM memory of your Apple all the way up to 64K (65,536 bytes) by installing an Apple Language Card. This extra 16K of RAM takes the place of the Apple's ROM memory, with two 4K segments of RAM sharing the 4K range from $D000 to $DFFF.

Most of your Apple's RAM memory is available to you for the storage of programs and data. The Apple, however, does reserve some locations in RAM for use of the System Monitor, various languages, and other system functions. Here is a map of the available areas in RAM memory:

Table 16: RAM Organization and Usage

Page Number: Decimal	Hex	Used For:	
0	$00	System Programs	
1	$01	System Stack	
2	$02	GETLN Input Buffer	
3	$03	Monitor Vector Locations	
4 5 6 7	$04 $05 $06 $07	Text and Lo-Res Graphics Primary Page Storage	
8 9 10 11	$08 $09 $0A $0B	Text and Lo-Res Graphics Secondary Page Storage	FREE RAM
12 through 31	$0C $1F		FREE RAM
32 through 63	$20 $3F	Hi-Res Graphics Primary Page Storage	FREE RAM
64 through 95	$40 $5F	Hi-Res Graphics Secondary Page Storage	FREE RAM
96 through 191	$60 $BF		FREE RAM

ZERO PAGE MEMORY MAPS

Table 18: Monitor Zero Page Usage

Decimal	Hex	0 $0	1 $1	2 $2	3 $3	4 $4	5 $5	6 $6	7 $7	8 $8	9 $9	10 $A	11 $B	12 $C	13 $D	14 $E	15 $F
0	$00																
16	$10																
32	$20	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
48	$30	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
64	$40	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●					●	●
80	$50	●	●	●	●	●	●										
96	$60																
112	$70																
128	$80																
144	$90																
160	$A0																
176	$B0																
192	$C0																
208	$D0																
224	$E0																
240	$F0																

Table 19: Applesoft II BASIC Zero Page Usage

Decimal	Hex	0 $0	1 $1	2 $2	3 $3	4 $4	5 $5	6 $6	7 $7	8 $8	9 $9	10 $A	11 $B	12 $C	13 $D	14 $E	15 $F
0	$00	●	●	●	●	●	●					●	●	●	●	●	●
16	$10	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●							
32	$20																
48	$30																
64	$40																
80	$50	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
96	$60	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
112	$70	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
128	$80	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
144	$90	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
160	$A0	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
176	$B0	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
192	$C0	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●		
208	$D0	●	●	●	●	●	●			●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
224	$E0	●	●	●		●	●	●	●	●	●	●					
240	$F0	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●							

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Following is a breakdown of which ranges are assigned to which functions:

Zero page: Due to the construction of the Apple's 6502 microprocessor, the lowermost page in the Apple's memory is prime real estate for machine language programs. The System Monitor uses about 20 locations on Page Zero; Apple Integer BASIC uses a few more; and Applessoft II BASIC and Apple Disk Operating System use the rest. Tables 18, 19, 20, and 21 show the locations on zero page which are used by these system functions.

Page one: The Apple's 6502 microprocessor reserves all 256 bytes of Page 1 for use as a "stack". Even though the Apple usually uses less than half of this page at any one time, it is not easy to determine just what is being used and what is lying fallow, so you shouldn't try to use Page 1 to store any data.

Page two: The GETLN subroutine, which is used to get input lines by most programs and languages, uses Page 2 as its input buffer. If you're sure that you won't be typing any long input lines, then you can (somewhat) safely store temporary data in the upper regions of Page 2.

Page three: The Apple's Monitor ROM (both the Autostart and the original) use the upper sixteen locations in Page Three, from location $3F0 to $3FF (decimal 1008 to 1023). The Monitor's use of these locations is outlined on Table 14.

Pages four through seven. This 1,024-byte range of memory locations is used for the Text and Low-Resolution Graphics Primary Page display, and is therefore unusable for storage purposes. There are 64 locations in this range which are not displayed on the screen. These 64 locations are reserved for use by the peripheral cards.

Table 20: Apple DOS 3.2 Zero Page Usage

Decimal	Hex	0 $0	1 $1	2 $2	3 $3	4 $4	5 $5	6 $6	7 $7	8 $8	9 $9	10 $A	11 $B	12 $C	13 $D	14 $E	15 $F
0	$00																
16	$10																
32	$20							●	●			●	●	●	●	●	●
48	$30						●	●	●	●	●					●	●
64	$40	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●		●	●	●	●		
80	$50																
96	$60								●	●	●	●					●
112	$70	●															
128	$80																
144	$90																
160	$A0																●
176	$B0	●															
192	$C0											●	●	●	●		
208	$D0									●							
224	$E0																
240	$F0																

Table 21: Integer BASIC Zero Page Usage

Decimal	Hex	0 $0	1 $1	2 $2	3 $3	4 $4	5 $5	6 $6	7 $7	8 $8	9 $9	10 $A	11 $B	12 $C	13 $D	14 $E	15 $F
0	$00																
16	$10																
32	$20																
48	$30																
64	$40											●	●	●	●		
80	$50						●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
96	$60	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
112	$70	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
128	$80	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
144	$90	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
160	$A0	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
176	$B0	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
192	$C0	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
208	$D0	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
224	$E0																
240	$F0																

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

RAM CONFIGURATION BLOCKS

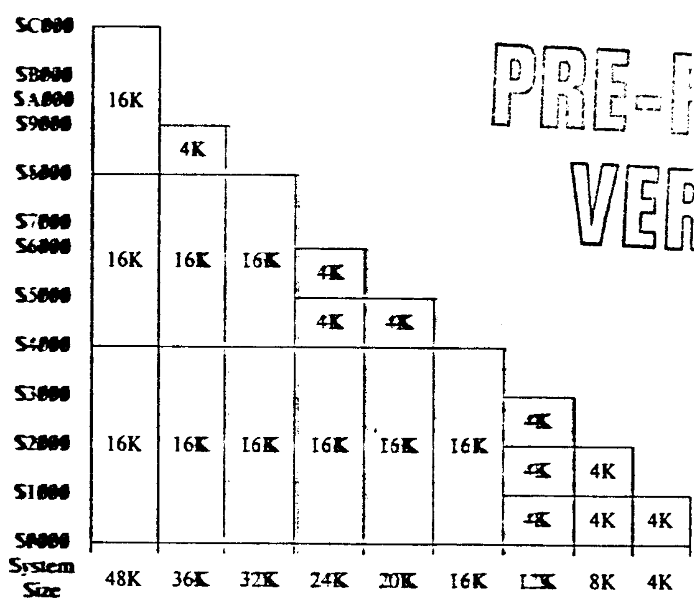
NOTE: RAM Configuration blocks are not included on Revision 7 and later Apple boards.

The Apple's RAM memory is composed of eight to 24 integrated circuits. These IC'S reside in three rows of sockets on the Apple board. Each row can hold eight chips of either the 4,096-bit (4-K) or 16,384-bit (16K) variety. The 4K RAM chips are of the Mostek "4096" family, and may be marked "MK4096" or "MCM6604". The 16K chips are of the "4116" type, and may have the denomination "MK4116" or "UPD4260". Each row must have eight of the same type of chip, although different rows may hold different types.

A row of eight 16K IC'S represents 16,384 eight-bit bytes of RAM. The leftmost IC in a row represents the lowermost (least significant) bit of every byte in that range, and the rightmost IC in a row represents the uppermost (most significant) bit of every byte. The row of RAM IC'S which is frontmost on the Apple board holds the RAM memory which begins at location 0 in the memory map; the next row back continues where the first left off.

You can tell the Apple how much memory it has, and of what type it is, by plugging Memory Configuation Blocks into three IC sockets on the left side of the Apple board. These configuration blocks are three 14-legged critters which look like big, boxy integrated circuits. But there are no chips inside of them; only three jumper wires in each. The jumper wires "strap" each row of RAM chips into a specific place on the Apple's memory map. All three configuration blocks should be strapped the same way. Apple supplies several types of standard configuration blocks for the most common system sizes.

There are nine different RAM memory configurations possible in your Apple. These nine memory sizes are made up from various combinations of 4K and 16K RAM chips in the three rows of sockets in the Apple. The nine memory configurations are:



Of the fourteen "legs" on each controller block, the three in the upper-right corner represents the three rows of RAM chips on the Apple's main board. There should be a wire jumper from each one of these pins to another pin in the configuration block. The "other pin" corresponds to a place in the Apple's memory map where you want the RAM chips in each row to reside. The pins on the configuration block are represented thus:

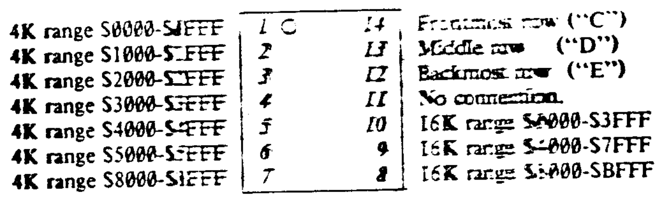


Figure 7. Memory Configuration
Block Pinouts

If a row contains eight chips the 16K variety, then you should connect a jumper wire from the pin corresponding to that row to a pin corresponding to a 16K range of memory. Similarly, if a row contains eight 4K chips, you should connect a jumper wire from the pin that row to a pin corresponding to a 4K range of memory. You should never put 4K chips in a row strapped for 16K, or vice versa. It is also not advisible to leave a row unstrapped, or to strap two rows into the same range of memory.

You should always make sure that there is some kind of memory beginning at location 0. Your Apple's memory should be in one contiguous block, but it does not need to be. For example, if you have only three sets of 4K chips, but you want to use the primary page fo the High-Resolution Graphics mode, then you would strap one row of 4K chips to the beginning of memory (4K range $0000 through $0FFF), and strap the other two rows to the memory range used by the High-Resolution Graphics primary page (4K ranges $2000 through $2FFF and $3000 through $3FFF). This will give you 4K bytes of RAM memory to work with, and 8K bytes of RAM to be used as a picture buffer.

There is a problem in Apples with Revision 0 boards and 20K or 24K of RAM. In these systems, the 8K range of the memory map from $400 to $5FFF is duplicated in the memory range $6000 of $7FFF, regardless of whether it contains RAM or not. So systems with only 20K or 24K of RAM would appear to have 24K or 36K, but this extra RAM would be only imaginary. This has been changed in the Revision 1 Apple II boards.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ROM STORAGE

The Apple, in its natural state, can hold from 2K (2,048 bytes) to 12K (12,288 bytes) of Read-Only memory on its main board. This ROM memory can include the System Monitor, a couple of dialects of the BASIC language, various system and utility programs, or pre-packaged subroutines such as are included in Apple's Programmer's Aid #1 ROM.

The Apple's ROM memory resides in the top 12K (48 pages) of the memory map, beginning at location $D000. For proper operation of the Apple, there must be some kind of ROM in the uppermost locations of memory. When you turn on the Apple's power supply, the microprocessor must have some program to execute. It goes to the top locations in the memory map for the address of this program. In the Apple, this address is stored on ROM, and is the address of a program within the same ROM. This program initializes the Apple and lets you start to use it.

Here is a map of the Apple's ROM memory, and of the programs and packages that Apple currently supports in ROM:

Table 17: ROM Organization and Usage

Page Number: Decimal	Hex	Used By:	
208	$D0	Programmer's Aid #1	Applesoft II BASIC
212	$D4		
216	$D8		
220	$DC	Integer BASIC	
224	$E0		
228	$E4		
232	$E8		
236	$EC		
240	$F0		
244	$F4	Utility Subroutines	
248	$F8	Monitor ROM	Autostart ROM
252	$FC		

Six 24-pin sockets on the Apple's board hold the ROM integrated circuits. Each sockets can hold one of a type 9316B 2,048-byte by 8-bit Read-Only Memory. The leftmost ROM in the Apple's board holds the upper 2K of ROM in the Apple's memory map; the rightmost ROM IC holds the ROM memory beginning at page $D0 in the memory map. If a Rom is not present in a given socket, then the values contained in the memory range corresponding to that socket will be unpredictable.

The Apple Firmware card can disable some or all of the ROMS on the Apple board, and substitute its own ROMs in their place. When you have an Apple Firmware card installed on any slot in the Apple's board, you can disable the Apple's on-board ROM'S by flipping the card's controller switch to its UP position and pressing and releasing the RESET button, or by referencing location $C080 (decimal 49280 or -16256). To enable the Apple's on-board ROM'S again, flip the controller switch to the DOWN position and press RESET, or reference location $C081 (decimal 49281 or -16255).

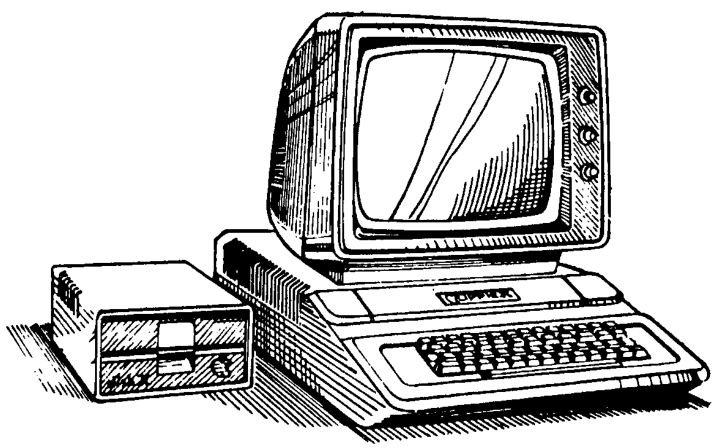
PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 9
SYSTEM MONITOR



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

THE SYSTEM MONITOR

Buried deep within the recesses of the Apple's F8 ROM is a masterful program called the System Monitor. It acts as both a supervisor of the system and a slave to it; controls all programs and all programs use it. You can use the powerful features of the System Monitor to discover the hidden secrets in all 65,536 memory locations. From the Monitor, you may look at one, some, or all locations; you may change the contents of any location; you can write programs in Machine and Assembly languages to be executed directly by the Apple's microprocessor; you can save vast quantities of data and programs onto cassette tape and read them back in again; you can move and compare thousands of bytes of memory with a single command; and you can leave the Monitor and enter any other program or language on the Apple.

ENTERING THE MONITOR

The Apple System Monitor program begins at location number $FF69 (decimal 65385 or -151) in memory. To enter the Monitor, you or your BASIC program can CALL this location. The Monitor's prompt (an asterisk [*]) will appear on the left edge of the screen, with a flashing cursor to its right. The Monitor accepts standard input lines just like any other system or language on the Apple. It will not take and action until you press RETURN. Your input lines to the Monitor may be up to 255 characters in length. When you have finished your stay in the Monitor, you can return to the language you were previously using by typing CTRL C <CR> (or, with the Apple DOS:

3D0G <CR> or RESET

ADDRESSES AND DATA

Talking to the Monitor is somewhat like talking to any other program or language on the Apple: type a line on the keyboard, followed by a <CR), and the Monitor will digest what you typed and act according to those instructions. You will be giving the Monitor three types of information: addresses, values, and commands. Addresses and values are given to the Monitor in hexadecimal notation uses the ten decimal digits (0-9) to represent themselves and the first six letters (A-F) to represent the numbers 10 through 15. A pair of hex digits can assume any value from 0 to 255, and a group of four hex digits can denote any number from 0 to 65,536. It so happens that any address in the Apple can be represented by four hex digits, and any value by two hex digits. This is is how you tell the Monitor about addresses and values. When the Monitor is looking for an address, it will take any group of hex digts. If there are fewer than four digits in the group, it will prepend leading zeroes; if there are more than four hex digits, the Monitor will truncate the group and use only the last four hex digits. It follows the smae procedure when looking for two-digit data values.

The Monitor recognizes 22 different command characters. Some of these are punctuation marks, others are upper-case letters or control characters. In the following sections, the full name of a command will appear in capital letters. The Monitor needs only the first letter of the command name. Some commands are invoked with control characters. You should note that although the Monitor recognizes and interprets these characters, a control character typed on an input line will not appear on the screen.

The Monitor remembers the addresses of up to five locations. Two of these are special: they are the addresses of the last location whose value you inquired about, and the location which is next to have its value changed. This are called the last opened location and the next changeable location. The usefulness of these two addresses will be revealed shortly.

EXAMINING THE CONTENTS OF MEMORY

When you type the address of a location in memory alone on an input line to the Monitor, it will reply* with the address you typed, a dash, a space, and the value** contained in that location, thus:

```
*E000

E000- 20
*300

0300- 99
*
```

Each time the Monitor displays the value contained in a location, it remembers that location as the last opened location. For technical reasons, it also considers that location as the next changeable location.

* In the example, your queries are in normal type and the Apple replies in BOLDFACE.

** The values printed in these examples may differ from the values displayed by your Apple instructions.

EXAMINING SOME MORE MEMORY

If you type a period (.) on an input line to the Monitor, followed by an address, the Monitor will display a memory dump: the values contained in all locations from the last opened location to the location whose address you typed following the period. The Monitor then considers the last location displayed to be both the last opened location and the next changeable location.

```
*20

0020- 00
*.2B

0021- 28 00 18 0F 0C 00 00
0028- 18 06 D0 07
*300

0300- 99
*.315

0301- B9 00 08 0A 0A 0A 99
```

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

```
0308- 00 08 C8 D0 F4 A6 2B A9
0310- 09 85 27 AD CC 03
*.32A

0316- 85 41
0318- 84 40 8A 4A 4A 4A 4A 09
0320- C0 85 3F A9 5D 85 3E 20
0328- 43 03 20
*
```

You should notice several things about the format of a memory dump. First, the first line in the dump begins with the address of the location following the last opened location; second, all other lines begin with addresses which end alternately in zeroes and eights; and third, there are never more that eight values displayed on a single line in a memory dump. When the Monitor does a memory dump, it starts by displaying the address and value of the location following the last opened location. It then proceeds to the next successive location in memory. If the address of that location ends in an 8 or a 0, the Monitor will "cut" to a new line and display the address of that location and continue displaying values. After it has displayed the value of the location whose address you specified, it stops the memory dump and sets the address of both the last opened location, the Monitor will display the address and value of only the location following the last opened location.

You can combine the two commands (opening and dumping) into one operation by concatenating the second to the first; that is, type the first address, followed by a period and the second address. This two-addresses-separated-by-a-period form is called a memory range.

```
*300.32F

0300- 99 B9 00 09 0A 0A 0A 99
0308- 00 08 C8 D0 F4 A6 2B A9
0310- 09 85 27 AD CC 03 85 41
0318- 84 40 8A 4A 4A 4A 4A 09
0320- C0 85 3F A9 5D 85 3E 20
0328- 43 03 20 46 03 A5 3D 4D
*30.40

0030- AA 00 FF AA 05 C2 05 C2
0038- 1B FD D0 03 3C 00 40 00
0040- 30
*E015.E025

E015- 4C ED ED
E018- A9 20 C5 24 B0 0C A9 8D
E020- A0 07 S0 ED FD A9
*
```

EXAMINING STILL MORE MEMORY

A single press of the <CR> key will cause the Monitor to respond with one line of memory dump; that is, a memory dump from the location following the last opened location to the next eight-location "cut". Once again, the last location displayed is considered the last opened and next changeable location.


```
*5

0005- 00
*<CR>
 00 00
*<CR>

0008- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
*32

0032- FF
*<CR>
 AA 00 C2 05 C2
*<CR>

0038- 1B FD D0 03 3C 00 3F 00
*
```

CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF A LOCATION

You've heard all about the "next changeable location"; now you're going to use it. Type a colon followed by a value.

```
*0

0000- 00
*:5F
```

Presto! The contents of the next changeable location have just been changed to the value you typed. Check this by examining that location again:

```
*0

0000- 5F
*
```

You can also combine opening and changing into one operation:

```
*302:42

*302

0302- 42
*
```

When you change the contents of a location, the old value which was contained in that location disappears, never to be seen again. The new value will stick around until it is replaced by another hexadecimal value.

CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF CONSECUTIVE LOCATIONS

You don't have to type an address, a colon, a value, and press <CR> for each and every location you wish to change. The Monitor will allow you to change the values of up to eighty-five locations at a time by typing only the initial address and colon, and then all the values separated by spaces. The Monitor will duly file the consecutive values in consecutive locations, starting at the next changeable location. After it has processed the string of values, it will assume that the location following the last changed location is the next changeable location. Thus, you can continue changing consecutive locations without breaking stride on the next input line by typing another colon and more values.

```
*300:69 01 20 ED FD 4C 0 3

*300

0300-69
*<CR>
 01 20 ED FD 4C 00 03
*10:0 1 2 3

*:4 5 6 7

*10.17

0010- 00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07
*
```


MOVING A RANGE OF MEMORY

You can treat a range of memory (specified by two addresses separated by a period) as an entity unto itself and move it from one place to another in memory by using the Monitor's MOVE command. In order to move a range of memory from one place to another, the Monitor must be told both where the range is situated in memory and where it is to be moved. You give this information to the Monitor in three parts: the address of the destination of the range, the address of the first location in the range proper, and the address of the last location in the range. You specify the starting and ending addresses of the range in the normal fashion, by separating them with a period, You indicate that this range is to be placed somewhere else by separating the range and the destination address with a left caret (<). Finally, you tell the Monitor that you want to move the range to the destination by typing the letter M for "MOVE". The final command looks like this:

```
{destination} < {start}.{end} M
```

When you type this line to the Monitor, of course, the words in curly brackets should be replaced by hexadecimal address and the spaces should be omitted. Here are some real examples of memory moves:

```
*0.F
```

```
0000- 5F 00 05 07 00 00 00 00
0008- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
*300:A9 8D 20 ED FD A9 45 20 DA FD 4C 00 03

*300.30C

0300- A9 8D 20 ED FD A9 45 20
0308- DA FD 4C 00 03
*<300.30CM

*0.C

0000- A9 8D 20 ED FD A9 45 20
0009- DA FD 4C 00 03
*310<8.AM

*310.312

0310- DA FD 4C
*2<7.9M

0000- A9 8D 20 DA FD A9 45 20
0008-DA FD 4C 00 03
*
```

The Monitor simply makes a copy of the indicated range and moves it to the specified destination. The orignal range is left undisturbed. The Monitor remembers the last location in the original rnage as the last opened location, and the first location in the original range as the next changeable location. If the second address in the range specification is less than the first, then only one value (that of the first location in the range) will be moved.

If the destination address of the MOVE command is inside the original range, then strange and (sometimes) wonderful things happen: the locations between the beginning of the range and the destination are treated as a sub-range and the values in this sub-range are replicated throughout the original range. See "Special Tricks", for an interesting application of this feature.

COMPARING TWO RANGES OF MEMORY

You can use the Monitor to compare two ranges of memory using much the same format as you use to move a range of memory from one place to another. In fact, the VERIFY command can be used immediatly after a MOVE to make sure that the move was succesful.

The VERIFY command, like the MOVE command, needs a range and a destination. In shorthand:

```
{destination} < {start}.{end} V
```

The Monitor compares the range specified with the range beginning at the destination address. If there is any discrepancy, the Monitor displays the address at which the difference was found and the two offending values.

```
*0:D7 F2 E9 F4 F4 E5 EE A0 E2 F9 A0 C3 C4 C5

*300<0.DM

*300<0.DV

*6:E4

*300<0.DV

0006-E4 (EE)
*
```

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Notice that if the VERIFY command finds a discrepancy, it displays the address of the location in the original range whose value differs from its counterpart in the destination range. If there is no discrepancy, VERIFY displays nothing. It leaves both ranges unchanged. The last opened and next changeable locations are set just as in the MOVE command. As before, if the ending address of the ranges will be compared. VERIFY also does unusual things if the destination is within the original range; see "Special Tricks".

SAVING A RANGE OF MEMORY ON TAPE

The Monitor has two special commands which allow you to save a range of memory onto cassette tape and recall it again for later use. The first of these two commands, WRITE, lets you save the contents of one to 65,536 memory locations on standard cassette tape.

To save a range of memory to tape, give the Monitor the starting and ending addresses of the range, followed by the letter W (for WRITE):

```
{start}.{end} W
```

To get an accurate recording, you should put the tape recorder in record mode before you press <CR> on the input line. Let the tape run a few seconds, then press <CR>. The Monitor will write a ten-second "leader" tone onto the tape, followed by the data. When the Monitor is finished, it will sound a 'beep!' and give you another prompt. You should then rewind the tape, and label the tape with something intelligible about the memory range that's on the the tape and what it's supposed to be.

```
*0:FF FF AD 30 C0 88 D0 04 C6 01 F0 08
*:CA D0 F6 A6 00 4C 02 00 60

*0.14

0000- FF FF AD 30 C0 88 D0 04
0008- C6 0A F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6
0010- 00 4C 02 00 60
*0.14W

*
```

It takes about 35 seconds total to save the values of 4,096 memory locations preceded by the ten-second leader onto tape. This works out to a speed of about 1,350 bits per second, average. The WRITE command writes one extra value on the tape after it has written the values in the memory range. is extra value is the checksum. It is the partial sum of all values in the range. The READ subroutine uses this value to determine if a READ has been successful (see below).

READING A RANGE FROM TAPE

Once you've saved a memory range onto tape with the Monitor's WRITE command, you can read that memory range back into the Apple by using the Monitor's READ command. The data values which you've stored on the tape need not be read back into the same memory range from whence they came; you can tell the Monitor to put those values into any similarly sized memory range in the Apple's memory.

The format of the READ command is the same as that of the WRITE command, except that the command letter is R, not W:

```
  {start}.{end} R
```

Once again, after typing the command, don't press <CR>. Instead, start the tape recorder in PLAY mode and wait for the tape's nonmagnetic leader to pass by. Although the WRITE command puts a ten-second leader tone on the beginning of the tape, the READ command needs only three seconds of this leader in order to lock on to the frequency. So you should let a few seconds of tape go by before you press <CR>, to allow the tape recorder's output to settle down to a steady tone.

```
*0:0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
 0 0

*0.14

0000- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
0008- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
0018- 00 00 00 00 00
*.14R

*.14

0000- FF FF AD 30 C0 88 D0 04
0008- C6 0A F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6
0010- 00 4C 02 00 60
*
```


After the Monitor has read in and stored all the values on the tape, it reads in the extra checksum value. It compares the checksum on the tape to its own checksum, and if the two differ, the Monitor beeps the speaker and displays "ERR". This warns you that there was a problem during the READ and that the values stored in memory aren't the values which were recorded on the tape. If, however, the two checksums match, the Monitor will give you another prompt.

CREATING AND RUNNING MACHINE LANGUAGE PROGRAMS

Machine language is certainly the most efficient language on the Apple, albeit the least pleasant in which to code. The Monitor has special facilities for those of you who are determined to use machine language to simplify creating, writing, and debugging machine language programs.

You can write a machine language program, take the hexadecimal values for the opcodes and operands, and store them in memory using the commands covered above. You can get a hexadecimal dump of your program, move it around in memory, or save it to tape and recall it agian simply by using the commands you've already learned. The most important command, however, when dealing with machine language programs is the GO command. When you open a location from the Monitor and type the letter G, the Monitor will cause the 6502 microprocessor to start executing the machine language program which begins at the last opened location. The Monitor treats this program as a subroutine: when it's finished, all it need do is execute an RTS (return from subroutine) instruction and control will be transferred back to the Monitor.

Your machine language programs can call many subroutines in the Monitor to do various things. Here is an example of loading and running a machine language program to display the letters A through Z:

```
*300:A9 C1 20 ED FD 18 69 1 C9 DB D0 F6 60

*300.30C

0300- A9 C1 20 ED FD 18 69 01
0308- C9 DB D0 F6 60
*300G
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
*
```


(The instruction set of the Apple's 6502 microprocessor is listed in Appendix)

Now, straight hexadecimal code isn't the easiest thing in the world to read or debug. With this in mind, the creators of the Apple's Monitor neatly included a command to list machine language programs in assembly language form. This means that instead of having one, two, or three bytes of unformatted hexadecimal gibberish to comprehend for each instruction. The LIST command to start at the specified location and display a screenfull (20 lines) of instructions:

```
*300L

0300-   A9 C1       LDA    #SC1
0302-   20 ED FD    JSR    $SFDED
0305-   18          CLC
0306-   69 01       ADC    #$01
0308-   C9 DB       CMP    #$DB
030A-   D0 F6       BNE    $0302
030C-   60          RTS
030D-   00          BRK
030E-   00          BRK
```

```
030F-   00          BRK
0310-   00          BRK
0311-   00          BRK
0312-   00          BRK
0313-   00          BRK
0314-   00          BRK
0315-   00          BRK
0316-   00          BRK
0317-   00          BRK
0318-   00          BRK
0319-   00          BRK
*
```

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Recognize those first few lines? They're the assembly language form of the program you typed a page or so ago. The rest of the lines (the BRK instructions) are just there to fill up the screen. The address that you specify is remembered by the Monitor, but not in one of the ways explained before. It's put in the Program Counter, which is used solely to point to locations within programs. After a LIST command, the Program Counter is set to point to the location immediately following the last location displayed on the screen, so that if you do another LIST command it will continue with another screenfull of instructions, starting where the first screen left off.

THE MINI-ASSEMBLER

There is another program within the Monitor* which allows you to type programs into the Apple in the same assembly format which the LIST command displays. This program is called the Apple Mini-Assembler. It is a "mini-assembler because it cannot understand symbolic lables, something that a full-blown assembler must do. To run the Mini-Assembler, type:

```
*F666G

!
```

You are now in the Mini-Assembler. The exclamation point (!) is the prompt character. During your stay in the Mini-Assembler, you can execute any Monitor command by prededing it with a dollar sign ($). Aside from that, the Mini-Assembler has an instruction set and syntax all its own.

The Mini-Assembler remembers one address, that of the Program Counter. Before you start to enter a program, you must set the Program Counter to point to the location where you want your program to go. Do this by typing the address followed by a colon. Follow this with the mnemonic for the first instruction in your program, followed by a space. Now type the operand of the instruction (Formats for operands are listed on page 66). Now press <CR>. The Mini-Assembler converts the line you typed into hexadecimal, stores it in memory beginning at the location of the Program Counter, and then disassembles it again and displays the disassembled line on top of your input line. It then poses another prompt on the next line. Now it's ready to accept the second instruction in your program. To tell it that you want the next instruction to follow the first don't type and address or a colon, but only a space, followed by the next instruction's mnemonic and operand. Press <CR>. It assembles that line and waits for another.

If the line you type has an error in it, the Mini-Assembler will beep loudly and display a circumflex (^) under or near the offending character in the input line. Most common errors are the result of typographical mistakes: misspelled mnemonics, missing parentheses, etc. The Mini-Assembler also will reject the input line if you forget the space before or after a mnemonic or include an extraneous character in a hexadecimal value or address. If the destination address of a branch instruction is out of the range of the brranch (more than 127 locations distant from the address of the isntruction), the Mini-Assembler will also flag this as an error.

```
!300-LDX #02

0300-   A2 02           LDX     #$02
! LDA $0,X

0302-   B5 00           LDA     $00,X
! STA $10,X

0304-   95 10           STA     $10,X
! DEX

0306-   CA              DEX
! STA $D030

0307-   8D 30 C0        STA     $C030
! BPL $302

030A-   10 F6           BPL     $0302
! BRK

030C-   00              BRK
!
```


To exit the Mini-Assembler and re:enter the Monitor, either press <CR> or type the Monitor command (preceded by a dollar sign) FF69G:

```
!$FF69G

*
```

Your assembly language program is stored in memory. You can look at it again with the LIST command:

```
0300-   A2 02           LDX     #$02
0302-   B5 00           LDA     $00,X
0304-   95 10           STA     $10,X
0306-   CA              DEX
0307-   8D 30 C0        STA     $C030
030A-   10 F6           BPL     $0302
030C-   00              BRK
030D-   00              BRK
030E-   00              BRK
```

```
030F-   00              BRK
0310-   00              BRK
0311-   00              BRK
0312-   00              BRK
0313-   00              BRK
0314-   00              BRK
0315-   00              BRK
0316-   00              BRK
0317-   00              BRK
0318-   00              BRK
0319-   00              BRK
*
```

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

----

* The Mini-Assembler does not actually riside in the Monitor ROM, but is part of the Integer BASIC ROM set. Thus, it is not available on Apple II Plus systems or while Firmware Applesoft II is in use.

DEBUGGING PROGRAMS

As put so concisely by Lubarsky*, "There's always one more bug." Don't worry, the Monitor provides facilities for stepping through ornery programs to find that one last bug. The Monitor's STEP** command decodes, displays, and executes one instruction at a time, and the TRACE** command steps quickly through a program, stopping when a BRK instruction is executed.

Each STEP command causes the Monitor to execute the instruction in memory pointed to by the Program Counter. The instruction is displayed in its disassembled form, thn executed. The contents of the 6502's internal registers are displayed after the instruction is executed. After execution, the Program Counter is bumped up to point to the next instruction in the program.

Here's what happens when you STEP through the program you entered using the Mini-Assembler, above:

```
*300S

0300-   A2 02           LDX     #$02
 A=0A  X=02  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*S

0302-   B5 00           LDA     $00,X
 A=0C  X=02  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*S

0304-   95 10           STA     $10,X
 A=0C  X=02  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*12

0012- 0C
*S

0306-   CA              DEX
 A=0C  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
```

```
*S

0307-   8D D0 C0        STA     $C030
 A=0C  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*S

030A-   10 F6           BPL     $0302
 A=0C  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*S

0302-   B5 00           LDA     $00,X
 A=0B  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*S

0304-   95 10           STA     $10,X
 A=0B  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*
```

Notice that after the third instruction was executed, we examined the contents of location 12. They were as we expected, and so we continued stepping. The Monitor keeps the Program Counter and the last opened address separate from one another, so that you can examine or change the contents of memory while you are stepping through your program.

The TRACE command is just an infinite STEPper. It will stop TRACEing the execution of a program only when you push RESET or it encounters a BRK instruction in the program. If the TRACE encounters the end of a program which returns to the Monitor via an RTS instruction, the TRACEing will run off into never-never land and must be stopped with the RESET button.

```
*T

0306-   CA              DEX
 A=0B  X=00  Y=D8  P=32  S=F8

0307-   8D 30 C0        STA     $C030
 A=0B  X=00  Y=D8  P=32  S=F8

030A-   10 F6           BPL     $0302
 A=0B  X=00  Y=D8  P=32  S=F8

0302-   B5 00           LDA     $00,X
 A=0A  X=00  Y=D8  P=32  S=F8

0304-   95  10          STA     $10,X
 A=02  X=00  Y=D8  P=32  S=F8

0306-   CA              DEX
 A=0A  X=FF  Y=D8  P=B0  S=F8

0307    8D 30 C0        STA     $C030
 A=0A  X=FF  Y=D8  P=B0  S=F8

030A-   10 F6           BPL     $0302
```

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

```
 A=0A  X=FF  Y=D8  P=B0  S=F8

030C-   00              BRK
030C-    A=0A  X=FF  Y=D8  P=B0  S=F8
*
```

----

* In Murphy's Law, and Other Reasons why Things Go Wrong, edited by Arthur Bloch. Price/Stern/Sloane 1977.

** The STEP and TRACE commands are not available on Apples with the Autostart ROM.

EXAMINING AND CHANGING REGISTERS

As you saw above, the STEP and TRACE commands displayed the contents of the 6502's internal registers after each instruction. You can examine these registers at will or pre-set them when you TRACE, STEP, or GO a machine language program.

The Monitor reserves five locations in memory for the five 6502 registers: A,X, Y,P (processor status register0, and S (stack pointer). The Monitor's EXAMINE command, invoked by a <CE), tells the Monitor to display the contents of these locations on the screen, and lets the location which holds the 6502's A-register be the next changeable location. If you want to change the values in these locations, just type a colon and the values separated by spaces. Next time you give the Monitor a GO, STEP, or TRACE command, the Monitor will load these five locations into their proper registers inside the 64502 before it executes the first instruction in your program.

```
*CTRL E

 A=0A  X=FF  Y=D8  P=B0  S=F8
*:B0 02

*CTRL E
 A=B0  X=02  Y=D8  P=B0  S=F8
*306S

0306-   CA              DEX
 A=B0  X=0A  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*S

0307-   8D 30 C0        STA     $C030
 A=B0  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*S

030A-   10 F6           BPL     $0302
 A=B0  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8

*
```

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

MISCELLANEOUS MONITOR COMMANDS

You can control the setting of the Inverse/Normal location used by the COUT subroutine (see Chapter 3) from the Monitor so that all of the Monitor's output will be in Inverse video. The INVERSE command does this nicely. Input lines are still displayed in Normal mode, however. To return the Monitor's output to Normal mode, use the NORMAL command.

```
*0.F

0000- 0A 0B 0C 0D 0E 0F D0 04
0008- C6 01 F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6
*I

*0.F

0000- 0A 0B 0C 0D 0E 0F D0 04
0008- C6 01 F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6
*N

*0.F

0000- 0A 0B 0C 0D 0E 0F D0 04
0008- C6 01 F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6
*
```

The BASIC command, invoked by a CTRL B, lets you leave the Monitor and enter the language installed in ROM on your Apple, usually either Apple Integer or Applesoft II BASIC. Any program or variables that you had previously in BASIC will be lost. If you've left BASIC for the Monitor and you want to re-enter BASIC with your program and variables intact, use the CTRL C (CONTINUE BASIC) command. If you have the Apple Disk Operating System (DOS) active, the '3D0G' command will return you to the language you were using, with your program and variables intact.

The PRINTER command, activated by a CTRL P, diverts all output normally destined for the screen to an Apple Intelligent Interface in a given slot in the Apple's backplane. The slot number should be from 1 to 7, and there should be an interface card in the given slot, or you will lose control of your Apple and your program and variables may be lost. The format for the command is:

{slot number} CTRL P

A PRINTER command to slot number 0 will reset the flow of printed output back to the Apple's video screen.

The KEYBOARD command similarly substitutes the device in a given backplane slot for the Apple's keyboard. For details on how these commands and their BASIC counterparts PR# and IN# work, please refer to "CSW and KSW Switches". The format for the KEYBOARD command is:

{slot number} CTRL K

The Monitor will also perform simple hexadecimal addition and subtraction. Just type a line in the format:

```
{value} + {value}
{value} - {value}
```

The Apple will perform the arithmetic and display the result:

```
*20+13
=33
*4A-C
=3E
*FF+4
=03
*3-4
=FF
*
```


SPECIAL TRICKS WITH THE MONITOR

You can put as many Monitor commands on a single line as you like, as long as you separate them with spaces and the total number of characters in the line is less than 254. You can intermix any and all commands freely, except the STORE (:) command. Since the Monitor takes all values following a colon and places them in consecutive memory locations, the last value in a STORE must be followed by a letter command before another address is encountered. The NORMAL command makes a good separator; it usually has no effect and can be used anywhere.

```
*300.307 300:18 69 1 N 300.302 300S S

0300- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
0300- 18 69 01
0300-    18              CLC
 A=04  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
0301-    69 01           ADC     #$01
 A=05  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*
```

Single-letter commands such as LCS,I, and N need not be separated by spaces.

If the Monitor encounters a character in the input line which it does not recognize as either a hexadecimal digit or a valid command character, it will execute all commands on the input line up to that character, and then grind to a halt with a noisy beep, ignoring the remainder of the input line.

The MOVE command can be used to replicate a pattern of values throughout a range in memory.

To do this, first store the pattern in its first position in the range:

```
*300:11 22 33

*
```

Remember the number of values in the pattern: in this case, 3. Then use this special arrangement of the MOVE command:

```
{start + number} < {start} . {end - number} M
```

This MOVE command will first replicate the pattern at the locations immediately following the original pattern, then re-replicate that pattern following itself and so on until it fills the entire range.


```
*303<300.32DM

*300.32F

0300- 11 22 33 11 22 33 11 22
0308- 33 11 22 33 11 22 33 11
0310- 22 33 11 22 33 11 22 33
0318- 11 22 33 11 22 33 11 22
0320- 33 11 22 33 11 22 33 11
0328- 22 33 11 22 33 11 22 33
*
```

A similiar trick can be done with the VERIFY command to check whether a pattern repeats itself through memory. This is especially useful to verify that a given range of memory locations all contain the same value:

```
*300:0

*301<300.31FM

*301<300.31FV

*304:02

*301<300.31FV

0303-00 (02)
0304-02 (00)
*
```

You can create a command line which will repeat all or part of itself indefinitely by beginning the part of the command line which is to be repeated with a letter command, such as N, and ending it with the sequence 34:n, where n is a hexadecimal number specifying the character position of the command which begins the loop; for the first character in the line, n=0. The value for n must be followed with a space in order for the loop to work properly.

```
*N 300 302 34:0

0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
```

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

```
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
030
*
```

The only way to stop a loop like this is to press RESET.

CREATING YOUR OWN COMMANDS

The USER (CTRL Y) command, when encountered in the input line, forces the Monitor to jump to location number $3F8 in memory. You can put your own JMP instruction in this location which will jump to your own program. Your program can then either examine the Monitor's registers and pointers or the input line itself. For example, here is a program which will make the CTRL Y command act as a "comment" indicator: everything on the input line following the CTRL Y will be displayed and ignored.

```
*F666G

!300:LDY $34

0300-   A4 34          LDY     #34
! LDA 200,Y

0302-   B9 00 02       LDA     $0200,Y
! JSR FDED

0305-   20 ED FD       JSR     $FDED
! INY

0308-   C8             INY
! CMP #$8D

0309-   C9 8D          CMP     #$8D
! BNE 302

030B-   D0 F5          BNE     $0302
! JMP $FF69

030D-   4C 69 FF       JMP     $FF69
!3F8:JMP $300

03F8-   4C 00 03       JMP     $0300
!$FF69G

*CTRL Y THIS IS A TEST.
THIS IS A TEST.
```

SPECIAL TRICKS WITH THE MONITOR

You can put as many Monitor commands on a single line as you like, as long as you separate them with spaces and the total number of characters in the line is less than 254. You can intermix any and all commands freely, except the STORE (:) command. Since the Monitor takes all values following a colon and places them in consecutive memory locations, the last value in a STORE must be followed by a letter command before another address is encountered. The NORMAL command makes a good separator; it usually has no effect and can be used anywhere.


```
*300.307 300:18 69 1 N 300.302 300S S

0300- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
0300- 18 69 01
0300-    18            CLC
 A=04  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
0301-    69 01         ADC      #$01
 A=05  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*
```

Single-letter commands such as LCS,I, and N need not be separated by spaces.

If the Monitor encounters a character in the input line which it does not recognize as either a hexadecimal digit or a valid command character, it will execute all commands on the input line up to that character, and then grind to a halt with a noisy beep, ignoring the remainder of the input line.

The MOVE command can be used to replicate a pattern of values throughout a range in memory.

To do this, first store the pattern in its first position in the range:

```
*300:11 22 33

*
```

Remember the number of values in the pattern: in this case, 3. Then use this special arrangement of the MOVE command:

```
{start + number} < {start} . {end - number} M
```

This MOVE command will first replicate the pattern at the locations immediately following the original pattern, then re-replicate that pattern following itself and so on until it fills the entire range.

```
*303<300.32DM

*300.32F

0300- 11 22 33 11 22 33 11 22
0308- 33 11 22 33 11 22 33 11
0310- 22 33 11 22 33 11 22 33
0318- 11 22 33 11 22 33 11 22
```

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

```
0320- 33 11 22 33 11 22 33 11
0328- 22 33 11 22 33 11 22 33
*
```

A similiar trick can be done with the VERIFY command to check whether a pattern repeats itself through memory. This is especially useful to verify that a given range of memory locations all contain the same value:

```
*300:0

*301<300.31FM

*301<300.31FV

*304:02

*301<300.31FV

0303-00 (02)
0304-02 (00)
*
```

You can create a command line which will repeat all or part of itself indefinitely by beginning the part of the command line which is to be repeated with a letter command, such as N, and ending it with the sequence 34:n, where n is a hexadecimal number specifying the character position of the command which begins the loop; for the first character in the line, n=0. The value for n must be followed with a space in order for the loop to work properly.

```
*N 300 302 34:0

0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
030
*
```

The only way to stop a loop like this is to press RESET.

CREATING YOUR OWN COMMANDS

The USER (CTRL Y) command, when encountered in the input line, forces the Monitor to jump to location number $3F8 in memory. You can put your own JMP instruction in this location which will jump to your own program. Your program can then either examine the Monitor's registers and pointers or the input line itself. For example, here is a program which will make the CTRL Y command act as a "comment" indicator: everything on the input line following the CTRL Y will be displayed and ignored.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

```
*F666G

!300:LDY $34

0300-   A4 34          LDY     #34
! LDA 200,Y

0302-   B9 00 02       LDA     $0200,Y
! JSR FDED

0305-   20 ED FD       JSR     $FDED
! INY

0308-   C8             INY
! CMP #$8D

0309-   C9 8D          CMP     #$8D
! BNE 302

030B-   D0 F5          BNE     $0302
! JMP $FF69

030D-   4C 69 FF       JMP     $FF69
!3F8:JMP $300

03F8-   4C 00 03       JMP     $0300
!$FF69G

*CTRL Y THIS IS A TEST.
THIS IS A TEST.

*
```

SUMMARY OF MONITOR COMMANDS

Summary of Monitor Commands.	
Examining Memory.	
{adrs}	Examines the value contained in one location.
{adrs1}.{adrs2}	Displays the values contained in all locations between {adrs1} and {adrs2}.
RETURN	Displays the values in up to eight locations following the last opened location.
Changing the Contents of Memory.	
{adrs}:{val} {val} ...	Stores the values in consecutive memory locations starting at {adrs}.
:{val} {val} ...	Stores values in memory starting at the next changeable location.
Moving and Comparing.	
{dest}<{start}.{end}M	Copies the values in the range {start}.{end} into the range beginning at {dest}.
{dest}<{start}.{end}V	Compares the values in the range {start}.{end} to those in the range beginning at {dest}.
Saving and Loading via Tape.	
{start}.{end}W	Writes the values in the memory range {start}.{end} onto tape, preceded by a ten-second leader.
{start}.{end}R	Reads values from tape, storing them in memory beginning at {start} and stopping at {end}. Prints "ERR" if an error occurs.
Running and Listing Programs.	
{adrs}G	Transfers control to the machine language program beginning at {adrs}.
{adrs}L	Disassembles and displays 20 instructions, starting at {adrs}. Subsequent L's will display 20 more instructions each.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Summary of Monitor Commands.

The Mini-Assembler

F666G	Invoke the Mini-Assembler.*
$(command)	Execute a Monitor command from the Mini-Assembler.
$FF69G	Leave the Mini-Assembler.
(adrs) S	Disassemble, display, and execute the instruction at (adrs), and display the contents of the 65Ø2's internal registers. Subsequent S's will display and execute successive instructions.**
(adrs) T	Step infinitely. The TRACE command stops only when it executes a BRK instruction or when you press [RESET].**
[CTRL E]	Display the contents of the 65Ø2's registers.

Miscellaneous.

I	Set Inverse display mode.
N	Set Normal display mode.
[CTRL B]	Enter the language currently installed in the Apple's ROM.
[CTRL C]	Reenter the language currently installed in the Apple's ROM.
{val}+{val}	Add the two values and print the result.
{val}−{val}	Subtract the second value from the first and print the result.
{slot} [CTRL P]	Divert output to the device whose interface card is in slot number {slot}. If {slot}=Ø, then route output to the Apple's screen.
{slot} [CTRL K]	Accept input from the device whose interface card is in slot number {slot}. If {slot}=Ø, then accept input from the Apple's keyboard.
[CTRL Y]	Jump to the machine language subroutine at location $3F8.

* Not available in the Apple II Plus.
** Not available in the Autostart ROM.

SOME USEFUL MONITOR SUBROUTINES

Here is a list of some useful subroutines in the Apple's Monitor and Autostart ROMs. To use these subroutines from machine language programs, load the proper memory locations or 65Ø2 registers as required by the subroutine and execute a JSR to the subroutine's starting address. It will perform the function and return with the 65Ø2's registers set as described.

$FDED COUT Output a character

COUT is the standard character output subroutine. The character to be output should be in the accumulator. COUT calls the current character output subroutine whose address is stored in CSW (locations $36 and $37), usually COUT1 (see below).

$FDFØ COUT1 Output to screen

COUT1 displays the character in the accumulator on the Apple's screen at the current output cursor position and advances the output cursor. It places the character using the setting of the Normal/Inverse location. It handles the control characters RETURN, linefeed, and bell. It returns with all registers intact.

$FE8Ø SETINV Set Inverse mode

Sets Inverse video mode for COUT1. All output characters will be displayed as black dots on a white background. The Y register is set to $3F, all others are unchanged.

$FE84 SETNORM Set Normal mode

Sets Normal video mode for COUT1. All output characters wwill be displayed as white dots on a black background. The Y register is set to $FF, all others are unchanged.

$FD8E CROUT Generate a RETURN

CROUT sends a RETURN character to the current output device.

$FD8B CROUT1 RETURN with clear

CROUT1 clears the screen from the current cursor position to the edge of the text window, then calls CROUT.

$FDDA PRBYTE Print a hexadecimal byte

This subroutine outputs the contents of the accumulator in hexadecimal on the current output device. The contents of the accumulator are scrambled.

$FDE3 PRHEX Print a hexadecimal digit

This subroutine outputs the lower nybble of the accumulator as a single hexadecimal digit. The contents of the accumulator are scrambled.

$F941 PRNTAX Print A and X in hexadecimal

This outputs the contents of the A and X reisters as a four-digit hexadecimal value. The accumulator contains the first byte output, the X register contains the second. The contents of the accumulator are usually scrambled.

$F948 PRBLNK Print 3 spaces

Outputs three blank spaces to the standard output device. Upon exit, the accumulator usually contains $A0, the X register contains 0.

$F94A PRBL2 Print many blank spaces

This subroutine outputs from 1 to 256 blanks to the standard output device. Upon entry, the X register should contain the number of blanks to be output. If X=$00, then PRBL2 will output 256 blanks.

$FF3A BELL Output a "bell" character

This subroutine sends a bell (CTRL G) character to the current output device. It leaves the accumulator holding $87.

$FBDD BELL1 Beep the Apple's speaker

This subroutine beeps the Apple's speaker for .1 second at 1KHz. It scrambles the A and X registers.

$FD0C RDKEY Get an input character

This is the standard character input subroutine. It places a flashing input cursor on the screen at the position of the output cursor and jumps to the current input subroutine whose address is stored in KSW (locations $38 and $39), usually KEYIN (see below).

$FD35 RDCHAR Get an input character or ESC code

RDCHAR is an alternate input subroutine which gets characters from the standard input, but also interprets the eleven escape codes (see page 34).

$FD1B KEYIN Read the Apple's keyboard

This is the keyboard input subroutine. It reads the Apple's keyboard, waits for a keypress, and randomizes the random number seed (see page 32). When it gets a keypress, it removes the flashing cursor and returns with the keycode in the accumulator.

$FD6A GETLN Get an input line with prompt

GETLN is the subroutine which gathers input lines (see page 33). Your programs can call GETLN with the proper prompt character in location $33; GETLN will return with the input line in the input buffer (beginning at location $200) and the X register holding the length of the input line.

$FD67 GETLNZ Get an input line

GETLNZ is an alternate entry point for GETLN which issues a carriage return to the standard output before falling into GETLN (see above).

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

62

$FD6F GETLN1 Get an input line, no prompt

GETLN1 is an alternate entry point for GETLN which does not issue a prompt before it gathers the input line. If, however, the user cancels the input line, either with too many backspaces or with a [CTRL X], then GETLN1 will issue the contents of location $33 as a prompt when it gets another line.

$FCA8 WAIT Delay

This subroutine delays for a specific amount of time, then returns to the program which called it. The amount of delay is specified by the contents of the accumulator. With A the contents of the accumulator, the delay is $\frac{1}{2}(26+27A+5A^2)$ μseconds. WAIT returns with the A register zeroed and the X and Y registers undisturbed.

$F864 SETCOL Set Low-Res Graphics color

This subroutine sets the color used for plotting on the Low-Res screen to the color passed in the accumulator. See page 17 for a table of Low-Res colors.

$F85F NEXTCOL Increment color by 3

This adds 3 to the current color used for Low-Res Graphics.

$F800 PLOT Plot a block on the Low-Res screen

This subroutine plots a single block on the Low-Res screen of the prespecified color. The block's vertical position is passed in the accumulator, its horizontal position in the Y register. PLOT returns with the accumulator scrambled, but X and Y unmolested.

$F819 HLINE Draw a horizontal line of blocks

This subroutine draws a horizontal line of blocks of the predetermined color on the Low-Res screen. You should call HLINE with the vertical coordinate of the line in the accumulator, the leftmost horizontal coordinate in the Y register, and the rightmost horizontal coordinate in location $2C. HLINE returns with A and Y scrambled, X intact.

$F828 VLINE Draw a vertical line of blocks

This subroutine draws a vertical line of blocks of the predetermined color on the Low-Res screen. You should call VLINE with the horizontal coordinate of the line in the Y register, the top vertical coordinate in the accumulator, and the bottom vertical coordinate in location $2D. VLINE will return with the accumulator scrambled.

$F832 CLRSCR Clear the entire Low-Res screen

CLRSCR clears the entire Low-resolution Graphics screen. If you call CLRSCR while the video display is in Text mode, it will fill the screen with inverse-mode "@" characters. CLRSCR destroys the contents of A and Y.

$F836 CLRTOP Clear the top of the Low-Res screen

CLRTOP is the same as CLRSCR (above), except that it clears only the top 40 rows of the screen.

63

$F871 SCRN Read the Low-Res screen

This subroutine returns the color of a single block on the Low-Res screen. Call it as you would call PLOT (above). The color of the block will be returned in the accumulator. No other registers are changed.

$FB1E PREAD Read a Game Controller

PREAD will return a number which represents the position of a game controller. You should pass the number of the game controller (Ø to 3) in the X register. If this number is not valid, strange things may happen. PREAD returns with a number from $ØØ to $FF in the Y register. The accumulator is scrambled.

$FF2D PRERR Print "ERR"

Sends the word "ERR", followed by a bell character, to the standard output device. The accumulator is scrambled.

$FF4A IOSAVE Save all registers

The contents of the 65Ø2's internal registers are saved in locations $45 through $49 in the order A-X-Y-P-S. The contents of A and X are changed; the decimal mode is cleared.

$FF3F IOREST Restore all registers

The contents of the 65Ø2's internal registers are loaded from locations $45 through $49.

PRE-RELEASE
VERSION

MONITOR SPECIAL LOCATIONS

Table 14: Page Three Monitor Locations

Address: Decimal	Hex	Use: Monitor ROM	Autostart ROM
1ØØ8 1ØØ9	$3FØ $3F1	None.	Holds the address of the subroutine which handles machine language "BRK" requests (normally $FA59).
1Ø1Ø 1Ø11	$3F2 $3F3	None.	Soft Entry Vector.
1Ø12	$3F4	None.	Power-up Byte.
1Ø13 1Ø14 1Ø15	$3F5 $3F6 $3F7	Holds a "JuMP" instruction to the subroutine which handles Applesoft II "&" commands.* Normally $4C $58 $FF.	
1Ø16 1Ø17 1Ø18	$3F8 $3F9 $3FA	Holds a "JuMP" instruction to the subroutine which handles "USER" (CTRL Y) commands.	
1Ø19 1Ø2Ø 1Ø21	$3FB $3FC $3FD	Holds a "JuMP" instruction to the subroutine which handles Non-Maskable Interrupts.	
1Ø22 1Ø23	$3FE $3FF	Holds the address of the subroutine which handles Interrupt ReQuests.	

* See page 123 in the **Applesoft II BASIC Reference Manual**.

MINI-ASSEMBLER INSTRUCTION FORMATS

The Apple Mini-Assembler recognizes 56 mnemonics and 13 addressing formats used in 6502 Assembly language programming. The mnemonics are standard, as used in the **MOS Technology/Synertek 6500 Programming Manual** (Apple part number A2L0003), but the addressing formats are different. Here are the Apple standard address mode formats for 6502 Assembly Language:

Table 15: Mini-Assembler Address Formats

Mode:	Format:
Accumulator	None.
Immediate	#${value}
Absolute	${address}
Zero Page	${address}
Indexed Zero Page	${address},X ${address},Y
Indexed Absolute	${address},X ${address},Y
Implied	None.
Relative	${address}
Indexed Indirect	(${address},X)
Indirect Indexed	(${address}),Y
Absolute Indirect	(${address})

An {address} consists of one or more hexadecimal digits. The Mini-Assembler interprets addresses in the same manner that the Monitor does: if an address has fewer than four digits, it adds leading zeroes; if it has more than four digits, then it uses only the last four.

All dollar signs ($), signifying that the addresses are in hexadecimal notation, are ignored by the Mini-Assembler and may be omitted.

There is no syntactical distinction between the Absolute and Zero Page addressing modes. If you give an instruction to the Mini-Assembler which can be used in both Absolute and Zero-Page mode, then the Mini-Assembler will assemble that instruction in Absolute mode if the operand for that instruction is greater than $FF, and it will assemble that instruction in Zero Page mode if the operand for that instruction is less than **$0100**.

Instructions with the Accumulator and Implied addressing modes need no operand.

Branch instructions, which use the Relative addressing mode, require the *target address* of the branch. The Mini-Assembler will automatically figure out the relative distance to use in the instruction. If the target address is more than 127 locations distant from the instruction, then the Mini-Assembler wil sound a "beep", place a circumfex (^) under the target address, and ignore the line.

If you give the Mini-Assembler the mnemonic for an instruction and an operand, and the addressing mode of the operand cannot be used with the instruction you entered, then the Mini-Assembler will not accept the line.

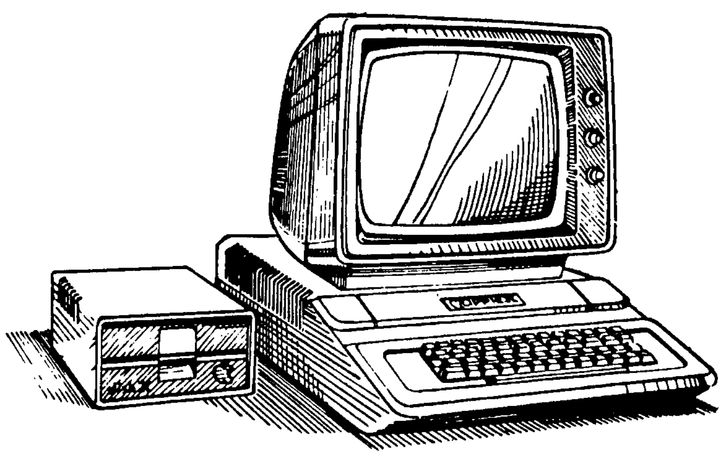
PRE-RELEASE
VERSION

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS
LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 10
TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

General Troubleshooting Tips:

On both a hardware and a software level, APPLE 11 is highly interactive. The first step in repairing an APPLE 11 system is to isolate the problem to a particular module. With the Modular Exchange Program, this is done at the Dealer level. When a Main Logic Board is received, it should be connected up to a known-good Power Supply, Keyboard and Disk 11 so that any failures observed are the fault of the board under repair. When a unit is received as a complete APPLE 11 having its own Power Supply and Keyboard, the case must be removed from the unit so the the board may be completely exposed. You may also wish to remove the board, and connect it to a known-good Keyboard and Power Supply.

Most board failures are due to IC failure. In this case, the problem can usually be narrowed down to an area on the board, and parts substitution will identify the bad component.

If the problem is mechanical in nature, (open or shorted trace, bad socket) no amount of chip-swapping will solve the problem. In this case, the bad signal must be found with an oscilloscope to repair the board.

When an IC fails, often one of its outputs will fail to toggle even though the inputs to the chips are good. Sometimes an IC'S input will, due to an internal short, hang up a healthy IC'S output. This can be difficult to locate when the signal goes to many places on the board.

Mechanical failures on the board generally cause either dead shorts or opens, which can be positively identified with a VOM or continuity tester. Mechanical intermittents should be aggravated by flexing the board to bring out the failure.

Board contaminants (spilled liquids, etc.) can be removed from the bottom side of the board by scrubbing the board with a small brush soaked in alchohol. This is much more difficult to do on the component side of the board, and requires that the plastic carrier for each socket in the affected area be removed, and the board area carefully cleaned as above.

With intermittent boards, special attention is required. A 24 or 48 hour burn-in period will show whether a repair on an intermittent unit was successful or not. In cases where a unit dies completely after a period of time, a simple Monitor command such as:

N E000LLL 34:0 <SP> <RET>

will generate repeating screen action, indicating whether the machine is functioning or not. Often a Heat Gun and a can of Cold Spray will speed things up.

Here are some suggestions:

Each technician should have their own personal known-good Main Logic Board to use as a source of components when substituting parts into the board under repair. This serves two purposes. First, we have confidence in the parts which are being placed into the bad unit. Second, the empty sockets in the known good board provide a record of what parts were replaced; this helps when filling out the paperwork.

It sometimes helps to scope out a known-good board when troubleshooting. This helps us get acquainted with what the proper signals should look like. After a while this won't be necessary.

The Main Logic Board Theory of Operation describes what the logic should be doing. It is especially important to spend time familiarizing yourself with the Medium-Scale (MSI) chips present on the board. Consult this material when in doubt.

Learn to use the F8 Monitor's software commands. (A tutorial on switching between video modes and testing video operation from the keyboard is given in the Section entitled "Using the Montor to Verify Video Failure"). It also helps to know 6502 Assembly Language programming (information on using the Dis-assembler and Mini-assembler can be found in the APPLE 11 Reference Manual, APPLE product number A2L0001A).

Temperature-related problems can be fixed by using a heat-gun and cold-spray to isolate the bad component. Heat the unit up until it fails, and then chill suspected ICS on the board using the thin plastic tube that comes with the cold-spray. The board will usually begin functioning correctly when the temperature-sensitive part is cooled.

PRE-RELEASE
VERSION

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

SERVICE PROCEDURES

Motherboard:

I. Test Set-Up:

A. Equipment Needed:

1. A "known good, in spec" 48k system complete with all Apple peripherals.
2. Oscilloscope
3. I C Puller
4. 48K RAM
5. Disk Interface Card
6. Diagnostics Diskette
7. Non Conductive Foam Pad
8. Heat Gun

B. Set up Procedure:

1. Place mother board to be tested in postion on non-conductive foam pad.
2. With power supply switch OFF, plug power supply and video cable into motherboard.(no RAM should yet be installed!)

C. Visual Inspection:

1. Look for obvious damage- burned chips, scratches, drink strains, burn marks, drops of solder, etc.
2. Make sure that there are no missing chips.
3. Make sure that all chips are what they're supposed to be.
4. Make sure all chips are firmly seated.
5. Make sure that all chips are installed correctly pin 1 to hole 1.
6. Make sure that no pins are bent under.

II. Start-up

A. Video Problem:

1. Turn ON power supply.
2. If you have a video failure, look for symtom and possible fix in the section entitled "Motherboard Video Failures/ Symtoms".
3. Repair video problem first and you may find that it will also fix a no reset problem if there is one.

III. Troubleshooting

A. Running Diagnostics:

1. When you have a good video pattern, continue the following procedures.
2. Assure power supply is OFF and insert only 16K of RAM (c-row only), plug in speaker and keyboard (Do not insert Disk Interface Card yet).
3. Turn ON power supply at which time determine whether you have a good cold-start reset (beep, prompt and cursor)-- if you have an Autoboot ROM at F8 you may also get some data locations listed on screen along with prompt and cursor).
4. If you have a good cold start, turn OFF power supply, install full 48K RAM, insert Disk Interface Card, insert Diagnostics Diskette in drive and continue testing (most motherboard problems from this point may be found in the section entitled "Motherboard Miscellaneous Failures/

Symtoms). IF YOU DO NOT HAVE A GOOD COLD START RESET (making sure all three: beep, prompt and cursor, are present), then refer to the section entitled "Motherboard Reset Failures/Symtoms".

5. When you have accomplished the fix and have a good cold start reset, turn OFF power supply and continue as stated in paragraph directly above.

V. Testing:

Once diagnostics have been completed error free, then it is suggested you final test system by running a continuous loop possibly similar to the following:

```
10 for X = 1 TO 39
20 TAB X (HTAB X for Applesoft)
30 PRINT X
40 FOR I = 1 TO 100:NEXT I
50 NEXT X
60 GOTO 10
RUN
```

While this loop is running you might run a heat gun over the board for a short period, then tap chips with the plastic end of a screw-drive. In justifying this seemingly unorthodox procedure, a sufficient number of problems are found at this point that would otherwise have found their wayback to the dealer/customer. Remember that our objective at this point is to create a potential hidden failure if one indeed exists. If there is no failure after a couple of passes with the heat gun and one pass shocking the ICS, pat your-self on the back and ship it (if you have any doubts put it on the burn-in rack overnight).

Of course, once these procedures above are exhausted, it becomes a matter of technical expertise finding opens, shorts, incorrect values, etc. Some test points for various system signals are provided in the section entitled "Scope and Meter".

It is suggested that as you repair a failure you might make note of the systom and the fix action to provide a means of evalution and ready, handy reference. This trouble shooting guide by no means provides all systoms or fix actions.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

USING THE MONITOR TO VERIFY VIDEO FAILURE

First, we need to get into the Monitor. On systems with the F8 Monitor ROM this is easy: just turn on the power and press the Reset button a couple of times. An asterisk prompt (*) will be displayed in the lower left-hand corner of the screen. Newer circuit boards don't require you to press the Reset button at all, but it won't hurt to do so.

On systems with the newer Autostart Monitor (APPLE part number 341-0020) the system will boot up your disk drive if it finds a disc controller card in one of the motherboard slots 1 through 7. If no card is present it will go into BASIC, which is indicated with a greater-than (>) prompt in the lower left-hand corner of the screen. To enter the Monitor type CALL-151 followed by a Return.

To fill the screen with TEXT characters, type in the command L (for list). This invokes the disassembler which interprets memory locations as a series of machine language instructions and displays the opcodes for you. To look at the contents of the F8 ROM you type: F800 L. Each L command following causes the next locations in memory to be displayed.

Now suppose we wish to check out the LORES graphics mode. We do this by typing a series of soft-switch commands which causes the system to shift from TEXT mode into LORES mode. These commands are:

C050 C056

Now entering L causes the text displayed to appear as LORES characters. If we want a TEXT-window at the bottom to see what we are doing, we type:

C053

To make the TEXT-window disappear we type:

C052

These commands will tell you whether or not LORES graphics is ok or not.

For HIRES graphics, we can't alter the contents of screen memory just by entering L. This is because the HIRES screen memory area is mapped into locations $2000 to $3FFE instead of $400 to $800 as is the case with TEXT and LORES modes. In order to use the monitor to alter the HIRES screen memory we must do a "block move" into memory. Here's an example:

Fill the Hires main display page with the value $55 (Since the monitor already speaks on hex, the dollar sign is not required.)

This is done with the command:

2000:55 2001<2000.3FFEM

To see the results use the soft-switch commands:

C050 C053 C057

This will display vertical bars of green and purple on the HIRES screen. Do the block move using AA instead of 55:

2000:AA 2001<2000.3FFEM

This will produce orange and blue vertical bars on the HIRES screen. (On REV 0 boards you will still get the colors green and purple but the positions of the vertical bars will be reversed.)

The soft-switch cammand:

C055

Causes the APPLE 11 to jump into PAGE 2 of whatever graphics mode you are in. The screen locations for these secondary pages are:

Secondary page of TEXT/LORES: $800 to $BFF

Secondary page of HIRES: $4000 to $5FFF

To check out the secondary page of TEXT/LORES, try the following scheme:

C053 C055 (Page 1 with TEXT window)

800<400.7FFM (Loads data from primary to secondary page)

C055 (Switches into secondary page)

For LORES display type:

C056

To load into secondary HIRES page:

To display it type:

C050 C053 C055 C057

If you get lost, type:

C051 C054

Which will return you back to the primary TEXT page so you can see the last 20 or so commands typed in.

Now you have a way to verify each graphics mode and the machine's ability to switch between modes correctly. Again, practice switching modes and block-moving data on a known-good APPLE 11 system. Then on any machine with good Reset you will be able to verify a video problem without special equipment.

MOTHERBOARD VIDEO FAILURE/SYMTOMS

No video at all (dark rather than light screen): With scope grounded, first scope (B2-74S86 pin 10) for 14MHz signal from crystal. Replace crystal if no oscillator signal or if signal is questionable and if this does not correct oscillation then replace Q1 and Q2 (2N4258's) below crystal. If signal at B2 pins 10 & 8 are good then swap the following ICs: (Note:swap 2 or 3 ICs at a time leaving replacements in until you have video. Then remove replacements in the same manner reinserting original ICs and turning system on after replacing 2 or 3 to assure no more than the one chip you replaced is bad).

REMEMBER TURN POWER OFF BEFORE SWAPPING CHIPS!

Most likely cause replace these four first:
B1-74LS175
B2-74S86
C1-74LS153
C2-74LS195
Turn power back on ----if still no video try these:

A2-74LS00	B10-74LS74	C13-74LS51	D2-74LS20	F14-9334
A9-74LS151	B11-74LS08	C14-74LS32	D11-74LS04	
A10-74LS194			D13-74LS161	

If you still have no video, refer to the Section entitled "Scope and Meter".

The following are various types of video failures/symptoms you may encounter and possible fixes. Be aware that the fix given may not be the only problem areas, they are only the most likely, giving you a starting point.

SYMPTOM	CAUSE
Blank white screen	F14-9334 6502 A3-74166 B5,8-74LS174
Screen goes blank when disk boots	B9-74LS194
Will get into diagnostics menu but screen goes all white during RAM test	B2-74S86
Video wavers	C11-74LS04 D11-74LS161 D12-74LS161 D13-74LS161 D14-74LS161
Pulsating data with corresponding speaker static	H1-74LS08
Video distortion but reset OK	D2-74LS20
Top of video missing/distorted	B14-74LS02
Video pushed down & to the right	C13-74LS02
Can't write into upper left of screen	A9-74LS151

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Top three lines of HIRES missing	A11-74LS74
Rolling(not scrolling) video	B14-74LS32
	C11-74LS04
Full vertical screen of question marks scrolling (not rolling) up	E11-74LS153
Entire screen inverse & prompt not flashing	B2-74LS86
Inverse/incorrect prompt at CTRL B/C	F8 ROM
Split video with four corners	B1-74LS174
	C1-74LS153
Split location of prompt/cursor	C11-74LS04
	E14-74LS283
No prompt/cursor	B3-555 timer
	open from C1 pin 3 to H2 pin 14
No flashing cursor	B3-555 timer
	0.1uf capacitor just above B3
Horizonial lines & garbage chars.	B5-74LS174
	B11-74LS08
Color bar test has horizonial lines	B4-74LS194
Color bars come up in text mode	B5-74LS174
	B8-74LS174
Distorted color bars	A12-74LS02
Vertical bars at cold start	F14-9334
	A5-2513
	A9-74LS151
	C12-74LS257
	D12-74LS161
Vertical bars in HIRES	B4-74LS194
Left margin has vertical white column	A3-74LS166
Graphic color bars broken up	B4-74LS194
	B9-74LS194
No page 2	open B11 pin 6 to H1 pin 10
Black sqares with left to right moving characters	B12-74LS11
	B13-74LS02
Smaller chars. & vertical bars	B2-74LS86
Constantly active characters at row 9, column 39&40 also writes garbage into rows 3/4;11/12;19/20 at reset	C11-74LS04
Random chars. upon keyboard reset	B11-74LS08
	F1-(no F1 on boards Rev 7 and up).
Part graphics & part text	A11-74LS74
Entire screen background of exclamation marks	A5-2513
Garbage chars after warmup	27 microhenry choke at end of H-row
Full video & reset but video is pushed down a couple of inches from top	B14-74LS02
Distorted, diagonal breaks in video	C1-74LS153

Right half of text char. missing	A3-74LS166
Video shows only top halves of letters, you get two tops instead of a top & bottom	H1-74LS08
	A5-2513(VC line to pin 13 held low
Mis-shaped question marks/char	A3-74LS166
	A5-2513
	A9-74LS151
	B2-74LS86
	B10-74LS74
No graphics but text ok	B4-74LS194
	B9-74LS194
	A8-74LS257
	A9-74LS151
LORES/HIRES,only one works	A9-74LS151
Double row of prompt, cursor & text	E11-74LS153
No video but will reset & boot disk	A9-74LS151
	A10-74LS194
All white screen with black blinking cursor square	A3-74LS166
All white screen rolling upward & will produce a horizontal bar at each reset & may or may not reset continusously	A12-74LS02
Vertical roll in LORES (color bars) but ok in text & can be corrected momentarily by tweaking video pot	replace video pot

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

MOTHERBOARD RESET FAILURES/SYMTOMS

For a no reset condition where there is no cursor, no prompt, and no speaker beep as obvious symptoms, with scope grounded, check pin 40 of the 6502 for a high to low transition when the reset key is pressed. If no transition occurs, check the following:

REMEMBER TURN POWER OFF WHEN REPLACING ICS!

A13-555
Q5-(2N3904 near A13)
capacitor below Q5 (.luf)

Usually if you have a good reset from the keyboard, but are unable to get a cold start reset , Q5 is good and change the capacitor.
IF YOU HAVE A GOOD TRANSITION WITH HIGH LEVEL AT +5V and still no reset swap the following ICS: NOTE: swap 2 or 3 at a time leaving replacements in umtil you have a good reset then remove replacement ICS in the same manner reinserting original ICS and turning system on after replacing 2 or 3 to assure no more than the one chip you replaced is bad.

Swap chips in the following order as they are arranged according to most common failures and will save you some time: Remove all ROM and the 6502, insert known good 6502 and the F8 ROM leaving all other ROMS out. Then proceed with the chips at the following locations.

B6-74LS257	H10-8T28	H3-8T97	C14-74LS32	D2-74LS20
B7-74LS257	H11-8T28	H4-8T97	A2-74LS00	E11-74LS153
		H5-8T97	B11-74LS08	E12-74LS153
				E13-74LS153

C1-74LS153	F12-74LS138	F14-9334	H1-74LS08
B5-74LS174	F13-74LS138	F2-74LS139	H12-74LS138
B8-74LS174	C11-74LS04	J1-74LS74	H14-74LS251

At this point, if you still have no reset, assure that your 16K of RAM has not gone bad by replacing the row. If a bad reset condition still remains refer to the Section entitled Scope and Meter. This may assist you in getting started in the right direction.

The following are various types of reset failures/symtoms you may encounter and possible fixes. Be aware that the fix given may not be the only problem areas.

No reset & intermittent oscillator failure	Short-pins 5&6
No reset & random char. generation from keyboard reset	D2-74LS20 F1-jumper block E12-74LS153 F2-74LS139
Intermittent reset both at cold start & from keyboard reset	C14-74LS32
Intermittent reset,inputs random data & will not access drive	A2-74LS00 E8-ROM
Random chars. at keyboard reset	B11-74LS08

	F1-jumper block
Constantly active chars. at Row 9, column 39&40 & writes random data into rows 3/4, 11/12, 19/20 at reset	C11-74LS04
Repetitive/continuous reset without load at cold start	B7-74LS257
Good at 16K, no reset above 16K	RAM short (RA02 or RA03)
Good at 16K, intermittent reset over 16K & will not complete RAM test	F2-74LS139
Reset OK but no speaker output (no beep)	J13-74LS74
Good speaker output but no reset, prompt or cursor	C13-74LS51 F14-9334 E11-74LS153 E12-74LS153 E14-74LS153 H1-74LS08
No prompt or cursor	B3-555 cap. just above B3
Split location of prompt/cursor	C11-74LS04
No reset with ROM card in and switch in up position, OK with switch down (determined not to be a ROM card fault)	RA01
No reset with Disk Interface Card, OK without	H2-74LS138 H12-74LS138
At cold start, reset nay be intermittent, random data input & will not complete RAM test	RAM short

PRE-RELEASE
VERSION

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

MISCELLANEOUS MOTHERBOARD SYMTOMS/FAILURES

Following are various types of miscellaneous motherboard failures/symtoms and possible fixes. Be aware that the fix given may not be the only problem areas, they are only the most likely, giving you a starting point.

Unable to access drive:	B5-74LS174 B6-74LS257	
Will not boot disk, drive LED on, prompt switches back and forth from Monitor to a mis-shaped rounded Basic:	B5-74LS174	C1-74LS153
Will not boot disk:	H2-74LS138 H3-74LS8T97 H12-74LS138	B6-74LS257 B7-74LS257
Prompt but no cursor and will not access disk:	B3-555	
Disk boots then screen goes blank:	B9-74LS194	
Goes into monitor, program stops after warmup:	RAM E11-74LS153 E12-74LS153 E13-74LS153 E14-74LS153 Slot 0 50-pin connector	C1-74LS153 B6-74LS257 B7-74LS257 ROM Card in slot 0
Keyboard input failures but keyboard is good:	B6-74LS257 B7-74LS257 B10-74LS74 anything in keyboard strobe line	C11-74LS04 F13-74LS138
Will not run D-row RAM & has static output to speaker & screen during diagnostics:	H1-74LS08 J1-74LS257 D2-74LS20	
Will not run E-row RAM & has static output to speaker & screen during diagnostics:	D2-74LS20 H1-74LS08 J1-74LS257	
Will not run E-row RAM (no static output at speaker):	D1-jumper block D-row RAM F1-not on rev. 7 or later boards.	
Cursor moves by itself through diagnostics menu, sometimes will not move when ESC pressed & will boot intermittently:	I/O select not grounded	
Will not go to Basic from Monitor with CTRL B/C:	B6-74LS257	
Double row of prompt,cursor, & chars.:	E11-74LS153	

SCOPE AND METER

NO RESET

A no reset condition is where there is no cursor, no prompt, and no speaker. Check pin 40 of the 6502 for a high to low transition when the reset key is pressed. If no transition occurs check the following: Q5 (2N3904 near A13, and the capacitor below Q5(.1 microfarad). Usually if Q5 is bad the APPLE will keyboard reset (but will not power on reset). If a transistion occurs check the following points with an oscilloscope:

Data Lines D0-D7 (pins 49-42 on I/O slots),
Address Lines A0 to A15 (pins 2-17 on I/O slots),
Read/Write (the write signal is active low) at pin 34 of the 6502,
pin 5 of H5(8T97),
pin 9(R/W in) of C14,
pin 8(R/W out) at C14.

Look for low logic levels and missing (except AD7 and AD9 which are normally low) signals. The following IC'S could be at fault:

SYMTOMS	PROBABLE CAUSE	
Low Data Levels	B6-74LS257	H10-8T28
	B7-74LS257	H11-8T28
	Bad ROM'S	
Bad Address levels	H3-8T97	Bad ROM'S
	H4-8T97	6502
	H5-8T97	
No R/W signal	H5-8T97	A2-74LS00
	C14-74LS32	6502

With an osilloscope check for the 1 MHz clock on pin 37 of the 6502. Also check B11 pin 1 (74LS08) for the 1 Mhz clock. Check B11 pin 1 for +5 volt level. C11 pin 13 (74LS04) for a +5 volt level, and C11 pin 12 for a low level. See schematic for futher details. Check the following IC'S.

SYMTOMS	PROBABLE CAUSE
No 1 MHz at 6502	C11-74LS04
	B11-74LS08
	RA01 (resistor pak)

SCOPE AND METER

RA01 (resistor pak)

Check the following signals to make sure there is proper RAM addressing. Check the CAS bar signals at pin 15 of the RAM. The CAS bar signal at pins 4 ($0-3FFF), 5 ($4000-$7FFF), 6 ($8000-$BFFF) from F2 (74LS139). Check the CS bar signal at pins 13 of the RAM and pin 7 of C1 (74LS153). Check RAM SEL bar at pin 4 of the RAM, pin 6 of A2 (74LS00). Check inputs and outputs of D2 (74LS20) and pins 10 ($8000-$BFFF), 11 ($4000-$7FFF), and pin 12 ($0-$3FFF). See the schematic for complete detail and check the inputs and outputs of the following IC'S.

J1-74LS257	H1-74LS08	F2-74LS139
C1-74LS153	C12-74LS257	D2-74LS20
C11-74LS04	C14-74LS32	A2-74LS00

Also check the Memory Select headers for continuity (except Rev 7 and above boards)

Check RAM pins 5,6,7, and 10,11,12 for RA0 (pin10), RA1 (pin 11), RA2 (pin 12), RA3 (pin 7), RA4 (pin 6), and RA5 (pin 5). These are the RAM refresh, video addressing signals. Also check pins 7 and 9 of E11,12, and 13 (74LS153's). Check the address and sync inputs to the 74LS153's (see schematic for pinouts).

If the system works with 16k RAM but not with 32K or 48K check RA02 and RA03 resistor paks. These located between E10 and E11 and D10 and D11. Check these with and ohm meter from pins 7 and 9 of E11,12,13 between ground and +5 volts. There should be a reading of about 500 ohms between pin 7 of E11 and ground. Also, it should read the same for pin 7 of E11 and +5 volt buss (about 500 ohms). The readings should be the same for each for them (see schematic for more details).

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

SERVICE PROCEDURE

New style keyboards(two part)

Symptoms	Cause
No keyboard output	Encoder(331-0931)
No Data Strobe(no keybd output)	B3(74LS00) B4(74LS00) C6(.1 microfarad cap)
Incorrect data out	Encode B5(74LS04) B3(74LS00)
No output	Cable
P, Return, and : keys repeat	Change R10 to 3.0K ohm 1/4 watt

resistor. See Apple Service Bulletin #15

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

APPLE

P.S. TEST PROCEDURE

1. DISASSEMBLE

(A) REMOVE RIVETS AND SHEETMETAL SCREWS THAT HOLD LID TO HOUSING.
(B) REMOVE PCB HOLD-DOWN SCREWS AND WASHERS.
(C) REMOVE PCB FROM HOUSING.
(D) FIND THE TWO RIVETS.

2. VISUAL CHECK

(A) DETERMINE LEVEL OF SUPPLY, UPDATE AS NECESSARY.
C6 C7 C16 10UF, 25V ; R17 R20 39 OHM,1/4W.
(B) CHECK FOR BAD DATE CODE OF CR1, IF "7841" CHANGE.
(C) CHECK FOR MOST COMMON FAILURES.
(1) RESISTANCE ACROSS CR16 220 OHM, IF LESS CR15 OR CR16 BAD.
(2) IF FUSE BLOWN CR3 MAY BE SHORTED OR Q1 & Q2 MAY BE BAD.
(3) IF R1 IS OPEN CR1 PROBABLY BAD.
(D) CHECK FOR BURNT RESISTORS AND BAD SOLDER CONNECTIONS.

3. LOAD TEST

(A) HOOK-UP P.S. TO TEST FIXTURE. CHECK FOR FAILURE.
(B) TAKE IN CIRCUIT RESISTANCE READINGS TO FIND CAUSE OF FAILURE.
HAVING A KNOWN GOOD P.S. TO COMPARE WITH WOULD BE HELPFUL.
(C) MAKE NECESSARY REPAIRS.
(D) TEST AT ALL S/W SETTINGS.
(E) VIBRATION TEST, WITH POWER APPLIED TO P.S. ,
TAP PCB WITH THE HANDLE OF A SCREWDRIVER.
NO FLUCTUATION IN OUTPUT SHOULD OCCUR.

4. FINAL TEST

(A) SECURE PCB IN HOUSING, REPLACE LID.
(B) VERIFY OPERATION.
(C) BURN-IN FOR 3-6 HOURS.
COMMON THERMAL PROBLEMS AR1, CR17, CR18, OR CR19.
(D) VERIFY OPERATION.
(E) REPLACE SHEETMETAL SCREWS & RIVETS.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

APPLE ORINGINAL FILE #AS11001

P.S. PROBLEMS

"BAD" MEANS COMPONENT COULD BE OPEN, SHORTED, MISSING, WRONG VALUE, PHSICALLY DAMAGED, HEAT SENSITIVE, OR HAVE A POOR SOLDER CONNECTION.

SYMPTOM ON TESTER	PROBABLE CAUSE IN ORDER OF OCCURRENCE
FAILS CROWBAR TEST	(1) Q5 BAD
@107 HI LOAD NO OUTPUT	(1) FUSE BLOWN - CHECK CR3 (2) R1 OPEN - CHECK CR1 (3) BAD S/W (4) CR15 OR CR16 BAD (5) CR1 BAD
@107 HI LOAD ALL VOLTAGES LO WON'T ADJUST	(1) AR1 BAD (2) C6 OR C7 BAD (3) Q1 OR Q2 BAD (4) CR9, CR18 OR CR19 BAD
@107 HI LOAD [illegible]CILLATING [illegible]KES CLICKING SOUND	(1) AR1 BAD (2) C6 OR C7 BAD (3) Q1 OR Q2 BAD (4) CR5, CR9 OR CR11 BAD
@115 1A LOAD +12V DROPS BELOW 11.25V	(1) CR17, CR18 OR CR19 BAD
@120 HLOO LOAD EXCESSIVE RIPPLE OR MAKES CLICKING SOUND	(1) AR1 BAD (2) R17 BAD (3) C11, C12 OR C18 BAD (4) CR9 OR CR19 BAD
@120 LHOO LOAD EXCESSIVE RIPPLE OR MAKES CLICKING SOUND	(1) CR17, CR18 OR CR19 BAD
@137 LO LOAD EXCESSIVE RIPPLE OR MAKES CLICKING SOUND	(1) C6 OR C7 BAD (2) CR5, CR6, CR9 OR CR11 BAD
VIBRATION PROBLEM	(1) SOLDER CONNECTION OF SINGLE ENDED CAPACITORS (2) HEAT SINK TO PCB SOLDER CONNECTION (3) R16 BAD - REPLACE

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

August 1981

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

REPAIR MANUAL FOR ASTEC POWER SUPPLY AA1040

Section I: Test Set-up

A. Equipment Needed

1. Isolation Transformer (minimum of 500 VA rating)
   Dangerously high voltages are present in this power supply. For the safety of the individual doing the testing, please use an isolation transformer. The 599 VA rating is needed to keep the AC wave form from being clipped off at the peaks. These power supplies have peak charging capacitors and draw full power at the peak of the AC wave form.

2. 0-140V Variable Transformer (Variac)
   Used to vary input voltage. Recommend 10 Amp. 1.4 DVA rating, minimum

3. Voltage meter - Needed to measure DC voltages to 50VDC and AC voltages to 200VAC. Recommend 2 digital Multi Meters.

4. Oscilloscope - Need X10 and X100 probes.

5. Load board with connectors
   See table I for values of loads required. The entry on the table for safe load power is the minimum power ratings for the load resistors used.

6. Ohm meter.

B. Set-up Procedure

Set-up as shown in Figure 1. Monitor the input voltage and the output voltage of the regulated bus, which is the +5 output, with DVM's. Also monitor the +5 output with the oscilloscope using 50mv/div sensitivity. The DVM monitoring the +5 output can also be used to check the other outputs. See text of section III for test points within power supply.

Section II

A. Visual Inspection:

Check power supply for any broken, burned, or obviously damaged components. Visually check fuse; if any question, check with Ohm meter.

B. Load power supply with minimum load as specified in Table I. Bring power up slowly with variable Transformer while monitoring +5 output with scope and DVM. Supply should start with approximately 40-60 VAC applied and should regulate when 104 VAC is reached. If output has reached 5 volts, do a performance test as shown in Section VI. If there is no output refer to Section III.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Section III - No Output

General

With the AC input applied to the L & N connections and the power does not produce an output, and power switch on one or more components have failed. A no output fault condition is most likely caused by a shorted or opened component on the primary side but may also be caused by a short on the secondary. To determine this follow the steps below.

A. Check Fuse:
If fuse is blown, replace but do not apply power until cause of failure is found.

B. Preliminary Check on Major Primary Components:
Check Diode Bridge (DBI), Power Transistor (Q2) and check diode (D3) for shorted junctions. If a component is found shorted, replace it.

C. Primary Check on Major Secondary Components:
Using Ohm meter from output common to each output, with output loads disconnected, check for shorted rectifiers or capacitors. If the +12V output is shorted also check crowbar: SCR (SCR1), +12V.

D. Check B+ with the fuse intact:
Set power supply and attach X100 scope probe ground to the anode of (D1). Slowly turn up power and check for B+ Cathode of D3 (near the transformer T1). With input at 107VAC, this point should be between 260-270 VDC. If this is not correct check R1 and DB1.

If R8 is open, it was most likely caused by a shorted component that is fed power by T1. Check the following components for proper operation, (Q2, Q1, D3).

E. Check Q4 Waveforms:
Use X100 probe on Heat Sink of Q2, check collector waveform. Transistor should be switching, correct waveform is shown in Figure 2. If this is not present check for open junctions on Q2. If Q2 is OK, check to see if base voltage is being supplied to Q2; it should be .7V. If it is not present, check components, (C6, Q1, D1, and R3).

Section IV - Low Outputs

A. All outputs are low
If all outputs are low at the same time, check to insure that the voltage selection jumper is in the proper position.

B. +5V output
The power supply is regulated off the +5V DC output. If this output is low, it could cause the others to be low, If so, adjust +5V by changing R20. If adjustment to correct voltage is not possible, check Q3 and Q4.

C. If any one output is not present, first check the rectifier associated with that output and then the rest of the components in the circuit and the solder joints on the PCB. Check respective choke for output in question (ie. L2, L3, L4, L5).

Section V - Crowbar

If the crowbar is not operating, check Z1 and SCR1. If the crowbar is not triggering within the specified limits, change Z1 and check that any adjustment resistor in series with Z1 has not changed value from its color code value.

Section VI - Performance Test

Each of these test conditions should be set-up and noted to be within the limits specified in Table II.

STEP	INPUT	+5V LOAD	+12V	-12V	-5V
1.	107 VAC	Max	Max	Max	Max
2.	132	Max	Max	Max	Max
3.	120	Max	Min	Min	Min
4.	120	Min	Min	Max	Min
5.	132	Min	Min	Min	Min
6.	Test Crowbar Limits				

If the power supply does not pass the above test, refer to Section IV and V.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Table I: Load Board Valves

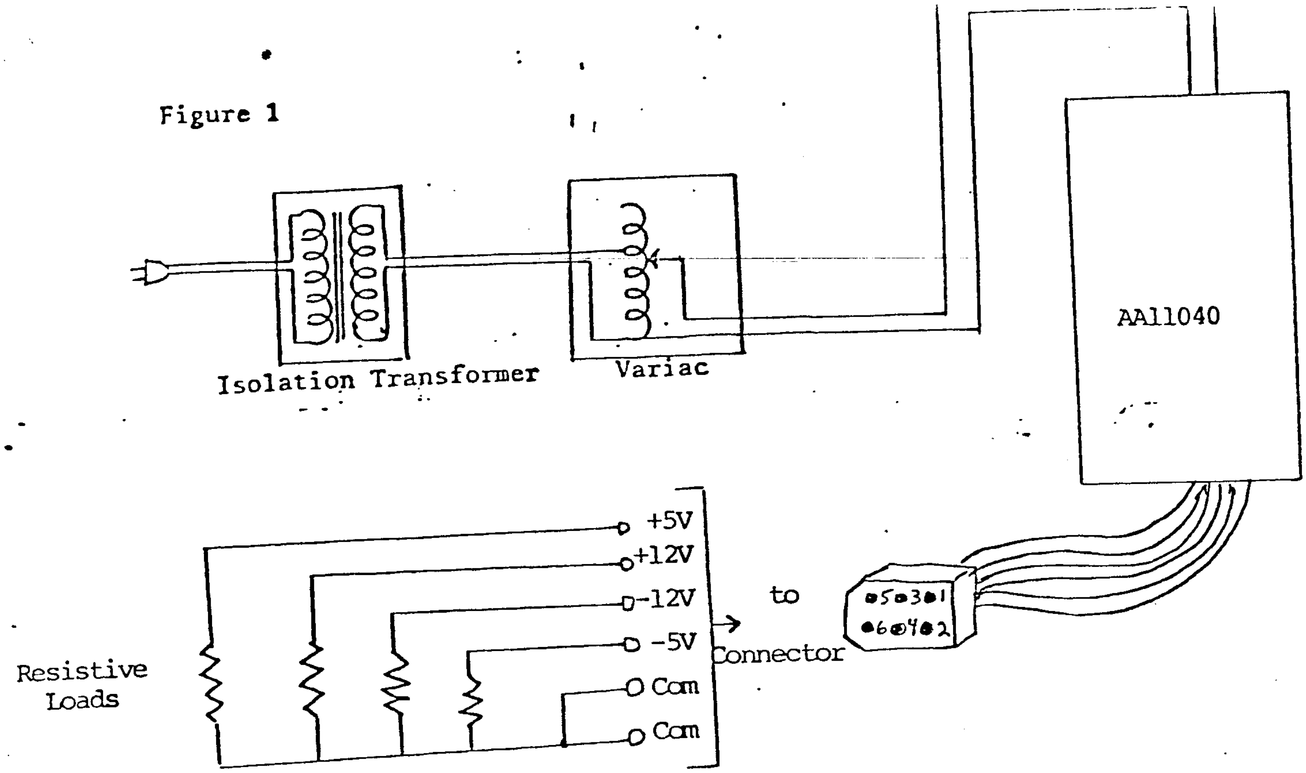
OUTPUT	MIN LOAD	LOAD RESISTANCE	SAFE LOAD POWER	MAX LOAD	LOAD RESISTANCE	SAFE LOAD POWER
+5V	1.0A	5.0 ohms	10 watts	2.5A	2.0 ohms	25 watts
+12V	0.25A	48 ohms	6 watts	2.5A	4.8 ohms	60 watts
-12V	0.05A	240 ohms	1 watt	0.25A	48 ohms	6 watts
-5V	0.10A	50 ohms	1 watt	0.25A	20 ohms	2.5 watts

Table II: Voltage and Ripple Specifications

OUTPUT	MIN	MAX	RIPPLE (MAX RP)
+ 5V	4.90V	5.10V	45MV
+ 12V	11.10V	12.50V	100MV
-12V	-10.80V	-13.20V	100MV
-5V	-4.70V	-5.70V	45MV

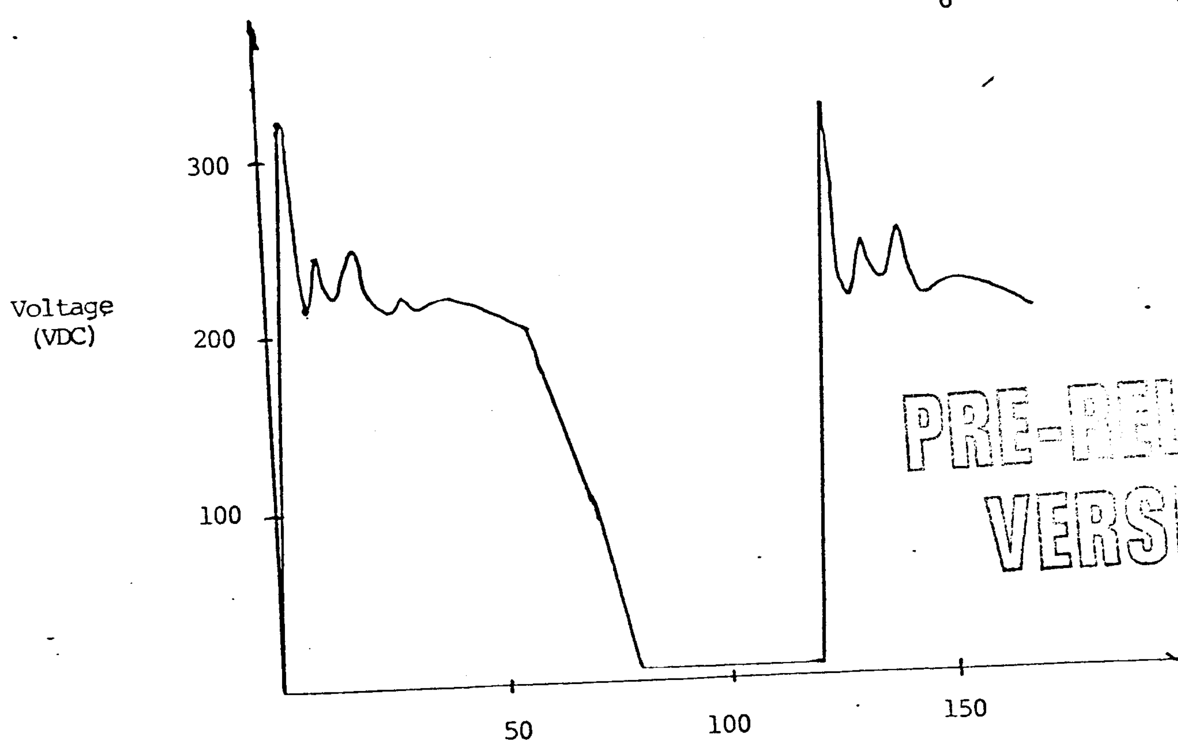
PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Figure 1



Pin No.	Output
1	Common
2	Common
3	+5V
4	+12V
5	-12V
6	-5V

Figure 2



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

June 1981

REPAIR MANUAL FOR ASTEC POWER SUPPLY AA11040(B)

Section I: Test Set-up

A. Equipment Needed

1. Isolation Transformer (minimum of 500 VA rating)
   Dangerously high voltages are present in this power supply. So for the safety of the individual doing the testing please use an isolation transformer. The 500 VA rating is needed to keep the AC wave form from being clipped off at the peaks. These power supplies have peak charging capacitors and draw full power at the peak of the AC wave form.

2. 0-140V Variable Transformer (Variac)
   Used to vary input voltage. Recommend 10 Amp. 1.4 KVA rating, minimum.

3. Voltage meter - Needed to measure DC voltages to 50VDC and AC voltages to 200VAC. Recommend 2 digital Multi Meters.

4. Oscilloscope - Need X10 and X100 probes.

5. Load board with connectors-
   See table one for values of loads required. The entry on the table for safe load power is the minimum power ratings for the load resistors used.

6. Ohm meter.

B. Set-up Procedure

Set-up as shown in Figure 1. You will want to monitor the input voltage and the output voltage of the regulated buss, which is the +5 output, with DVM's. Also monitor the 5 output with the oscilloscope using 50mv/div sensitivity. The DVM monitoring the +5 output can also be used to check the other outputs. See text of section III for test points within power supply.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Section II

A. Visual Inspection:

Check power supply for any broken, burned, or obviously damaged components. Visually check fuse, if any question check with Ohm meter.

B. Start-up

Load power supply with minimum load as specified in Table I. Bring power up slowly with variable Transformer while monitoring +5 output with scope and DVM. Supply should start with approx. 40-60 VAC applied and should regulate when 95 VAC is reached. If output has reached 5 volts, do a performance test as shown in Section VI. If there is no output refer to Section III.

Section III - No Output

General

With the AC input applied to the L & N connections and the power does not produce an output, and power switch on, one or more components have failed. A no output fault condition is most likely caused by a shorted/open component on the primary side but may also be cuased by a short on the secondary. To determine this follow the steps below.

A. Check Fuse:
If fuse is blown, replace but do not apply power until cause of failure is found.

B. Preliminary Check on Major Primary Components:
Check Diode Bridge (DB1), Power Transistor (Q2) and catch diode (D3) for shorted junctions. If any component is found shorted, replace.

C. Primary Check on Major Secondary Components:
Using Ohm meter from output common to each output, with output loads disconnected, check for shorted rectifiers or capacitors. If +12V output is shorted also check crowbar; SCR (SCR1), +12V.

D. Check B with the fuse intact:
Set power supply and attach X100 scope probe ground to the anode of (D1). Slowly turn up power and check for B+ on end of (R28) nearest the transformer. With input at 95VAC, this point should be between 260-270 VDC. If this is not correct check resistor and DB1.

If R5 is open it was most likely caused by a shorted component that is fed power by R28. Check the following components for proper operation, (Q2, Q1, D1)

E. Check Q4 Waveforms:
Using X100 probe on Heat Sink of Q4, check collector waveform. Transistor should be switching, correct waveform is shown in Figure 2.

If this is not ~~priesent~~ present check for open junctions on Q2. If Q2 is ok, check to see if base voltage is being supplied to Q2, it should be .7V. If it is not present, check components, (L3, Q1, D1 and R3).

Section IV - Low Outputs

A. All outputs are low.
   If all outputs are low all at the same time, check to insure that the voltage selection jumper is in the proper position.

B. +5V output.
   The power supply regulates off of the +5V DC output. If this output is low, it could cause the others to be low. If so, adjust +5V by changing R25.

C. If any one output is not present, first check the rectifier accociated with that output and then the rest of the components in the circuit and the solder joints on the PCB.

Section V - Crowbar

If the crowbar is not operating, check Z1, Q4, and SCR1. If the crowbar is not triggering within the specified limits change Z1 and check that R26 and R27 are of the proper resistance.

Section VI Performance Test

Each of these test conditions should be set-up and noted to be within the limits specified in Table II.

STEP	INPUT	+5V LOAD	+12V	-12V	-5V
1.	90 VAC	Max	Max	Max	Max
2.	132	Max	Max	Max	Max
3.	120	Max	Min	Min	Min
4.	120	Min	Min	Max	Min
5.	132	Min	Min	Min	Min
6.	Test Crowbar Limits.				

If the power supply does not pass the above tests, refer to Section IV and V.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Table I: Load Board Valves

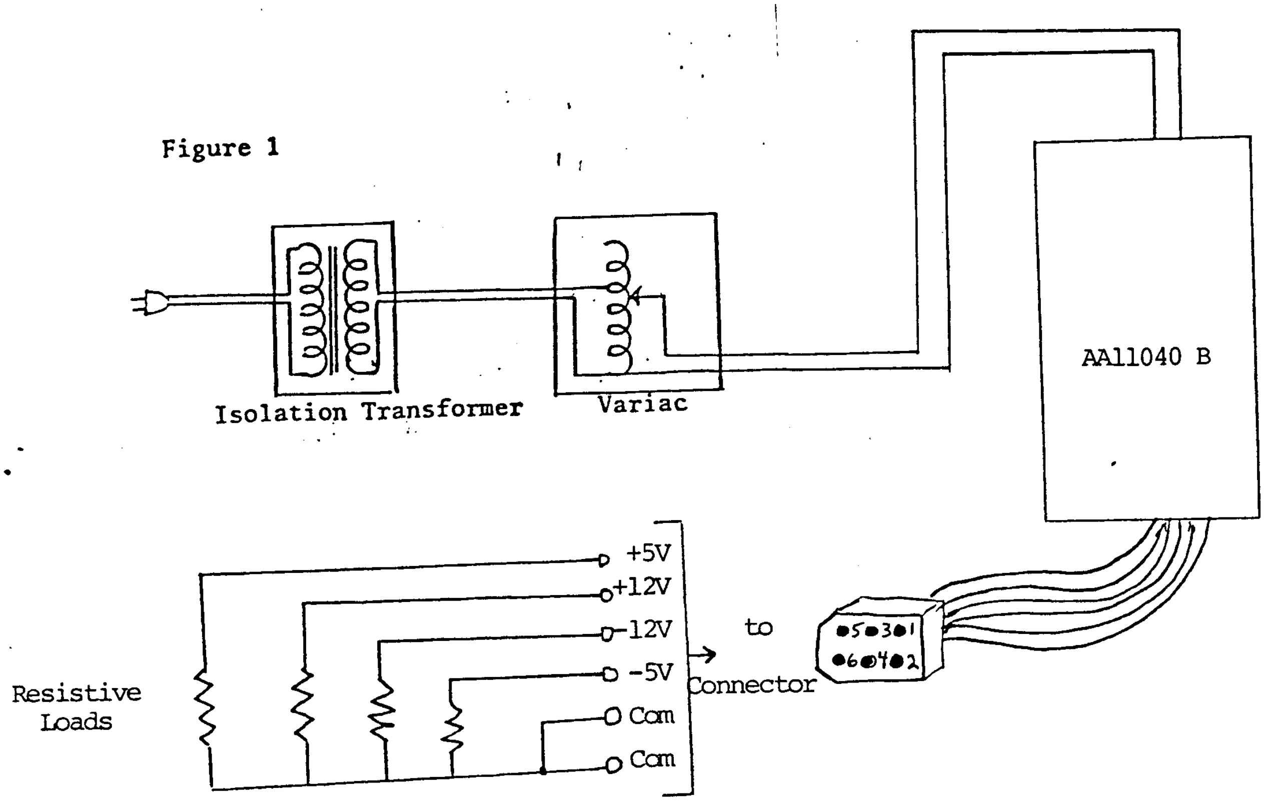
OUTPUT	MIN LOAD	LOAD RESISTANCE	SAFE LOAD POWER	MAX LOAD	LOAD RESISTANCE	SAFE LOAD POWER
+5V	1.0A	5.0 ohms	10 watts	2.5A	2.0 ohms	25 watts
+12V	0.25A	48 ohms	6 watts	2.5A	4.8 ohms	60 watts
-12V	0.05A	240 ohms	1 watt	0.25A	48 ohms	6 watts
-5V	0.10A	50 ohms	1 watt	0.25A	20 ohms	2.5 watts

Table II: Voltage and Ripple Specifications

OUTPUT	MIN	MAX	RIPPLE (MAX RP)
+ 5V	4.90V	5.10V	45MV
+ 12V	11.10V	12.50V	100MV
-12V	-10.80V	-13.20V	100MV
-5V	-4.70V	-5.70V	45MV

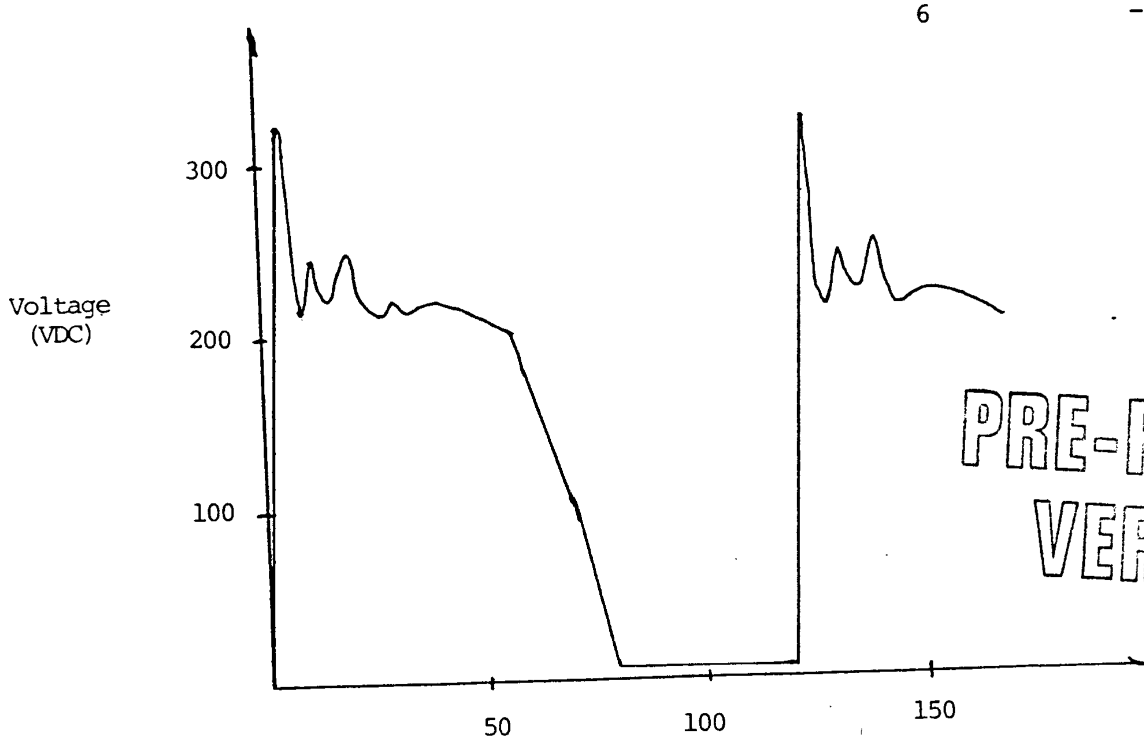
PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Figure 1



Pin No.	Output
1	Common
2	Common
3	+5V
4	+12V
5	-12V
6	-5V

Figure 2



SCOPE AND METER

Introduction:

The following scope & meter points of reference and procedures are provided only as a guideline for tech's in training status. Tech's should eventually develop their own methods/procedures with which they feel most comfortable.

When metering RAM, ROM or I/O slots for continuity the following will not zero out:
RAM: Row- pin 2 will read approximately 19 to 20 and pin 14 will read open.
Column- pin 15 will read open.
ROM: Pins 20 & 21 will read open.
I/O slots: The following pins will read open --1,19,23,27,28,35,41.

SECTION 5: REFERENCE GUIDE TO SIGNALS

A. SYSTEM TIMING

SIGNAL MNEMONIC	LOCATION
14M	B2-8
7M	B1-15
7M'	B1-14
COLOR REF	B1-3
COLOR REF'	B1-2
PHASE ZERO	B1-7
PHASE ONE	B1-6
RAS'	C2-15
AX'	C2-14
CAS'	C2-13
Q3	C2-12
Q3'	C2-11
LD194	B12-8
LDPS'	A2-3

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

B. VIDEO

SIGNAL MNEMONIC	LOCATION
H0	D14-14
H1	D14-13
H2	D14-12
H3	D14-11
H4	D13-14
H5	D13-13
HPE'	D13-12
HBL	C13-6
VA	D13-11
VB	D12-14
VC	D12-13
V0	D12-12
V1	D12-11
V2	D11-14
V3	D11-13
V4	D11-12
VBL	B11-8
SYNC	C13-8
TEXT VIDEO	B2-11

C. MPU

SIGNAL MNEMONIC	LOCATION

A0	H5-11
A1	H4-5
A2	H5-7
A3	H5-9
A4	H4-7
A5	H3-9
A6	H3-11
A7	H3-7
A8	H3-5
A9	H3-3
A10	H4-9
A11	H4-11
A12	H4-3
A13	H5-3
A14	H5-13
A15	H4-13
R/W	H5-5
D0	H11-2
D1	H10-2
D2	H10-14
D3	H11-14
D4	H11-5
D5	H10-5
D6	H10-11
D7	H11-11

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

D. ROM

SIGNAL MNEMONIC	LOCATION
CS' : D0	F12-13
D8	F12-12
E0	F12-11
E8	F12-10
F0	F12-9
F8	F12-7

E. RAM

SIGNAL MNEMONIC	LOCATION
+12	PIN 8
+5	PIN 9
GND	PIN 16
-5	PIN 1
A0	PIN 10
A1	PIN 11
A2	PIN 12
A3	PIN 7
A4	PIN 6

A5	PIN 5
A6	PIN 13
RAS'	C2-15
CAS' : ROW C	F2-4
ROW D	F2-5
ROW E	F2-6
RAM R/W	C14-11
RAM SEL'	A2-6

F. ON-BOARD I/O

SIGNAL MNEMONIC	LOCATION
KBD	F13-15
KBDSTRB	F13-14
CASSETTE CLK	F13-13
CASSETTE OUT	K13-8
SPEAKER CLK	F13-12
SPEAKER OUT	K13-5
GAME I/O STRB	F13-11
9334 EN'	F13-10
251 EN'	F13-9
PDL TRIG	F13-7

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

G. PERIPHERAL I/O

SIGNAL MNEMONIC	LOCATION
DEV' : SLOT 0	H2-15
SLOT 1	H2-14
SLOT 2	H2-13
SLOT 3	H2-12
SLOT 4	H2-11
SLOT 5	H2-10
SLOT 6	H2-9
SLOT 7	H2-7
I/O SEL : SLOT 1	H12-14
SLOT 2	H12-13
SLOT 3	H12-12
SLOT 4	H12-11
SLOT 5	H12-10
SLOT 6	H12-9
SLOT 7	H12-7
I/O STRB'	F12-14

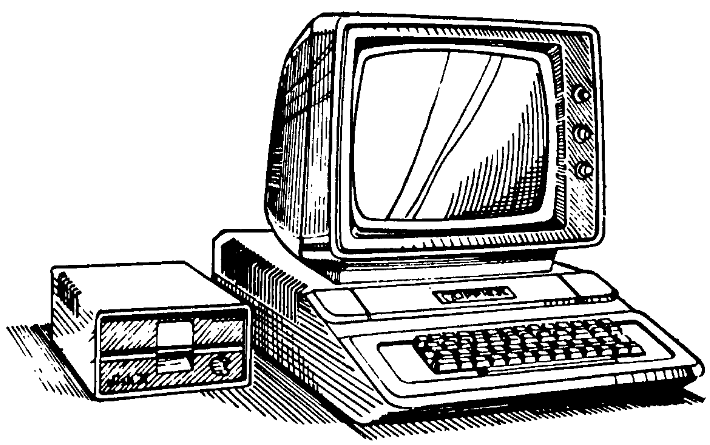
NOTE: Each location given represents the signal's point of origin (furthest upstream location). The schematic diagrams should be used to follow the signal downstream if necessary.

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS
LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

APPENDIX A
IC CHIP MAPS • IC SPECIFICATIONS
6502 INSTRUCTIONS • ROM LISTINGS



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

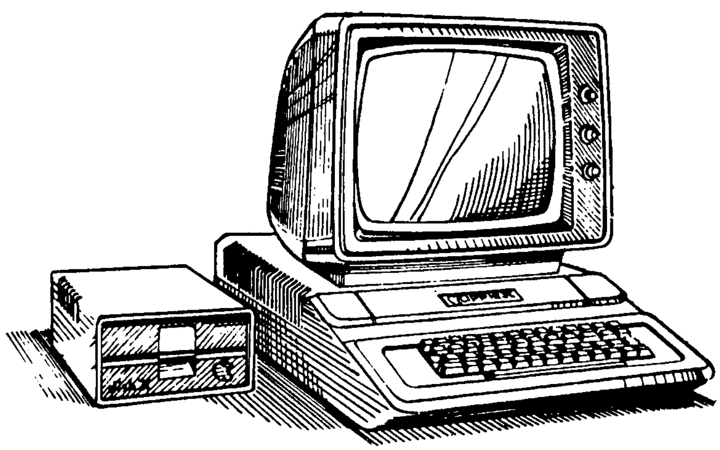
(This page is not part of the original service manual)

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS
LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

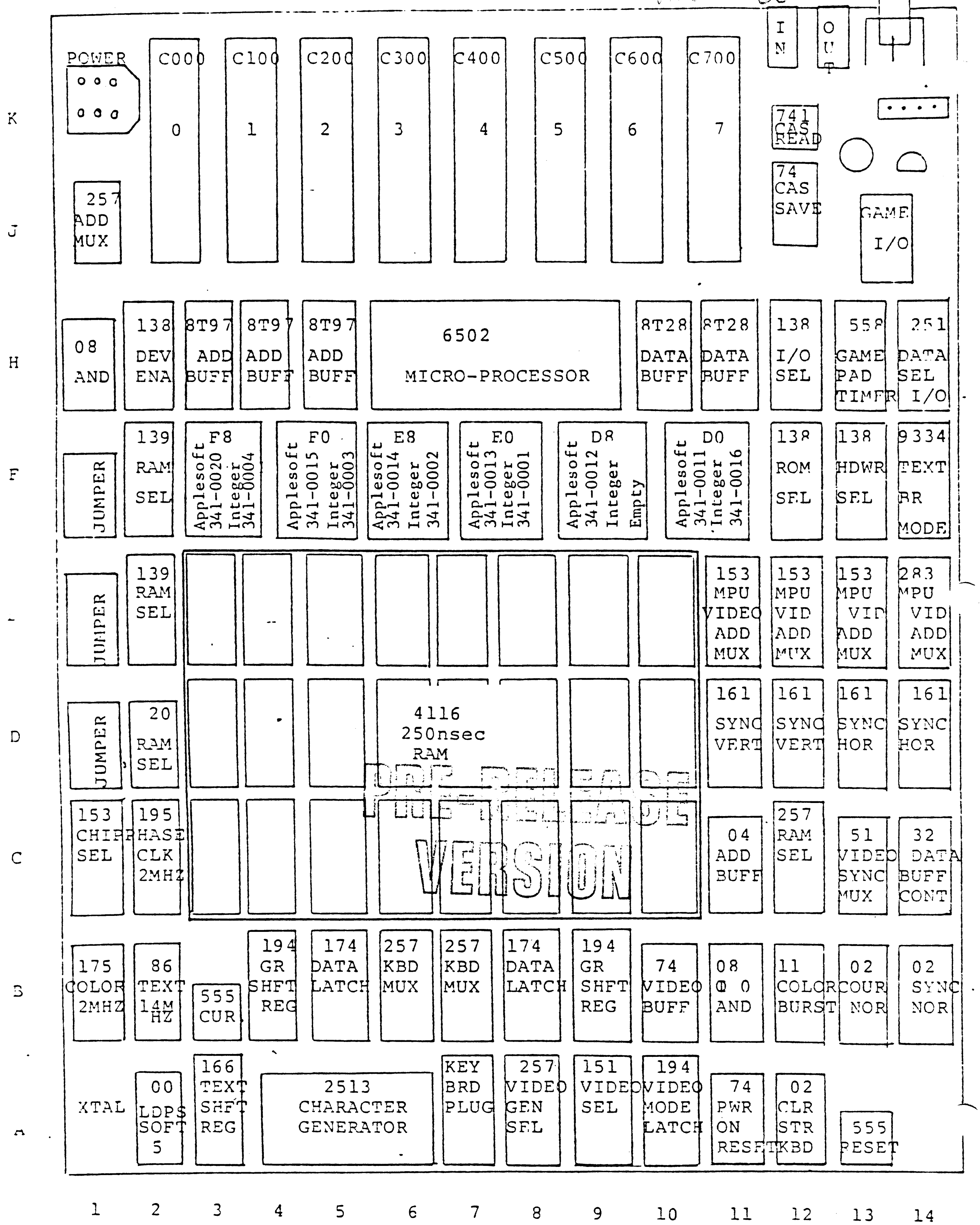
APPENDIX A
IC CHIP MAPS



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

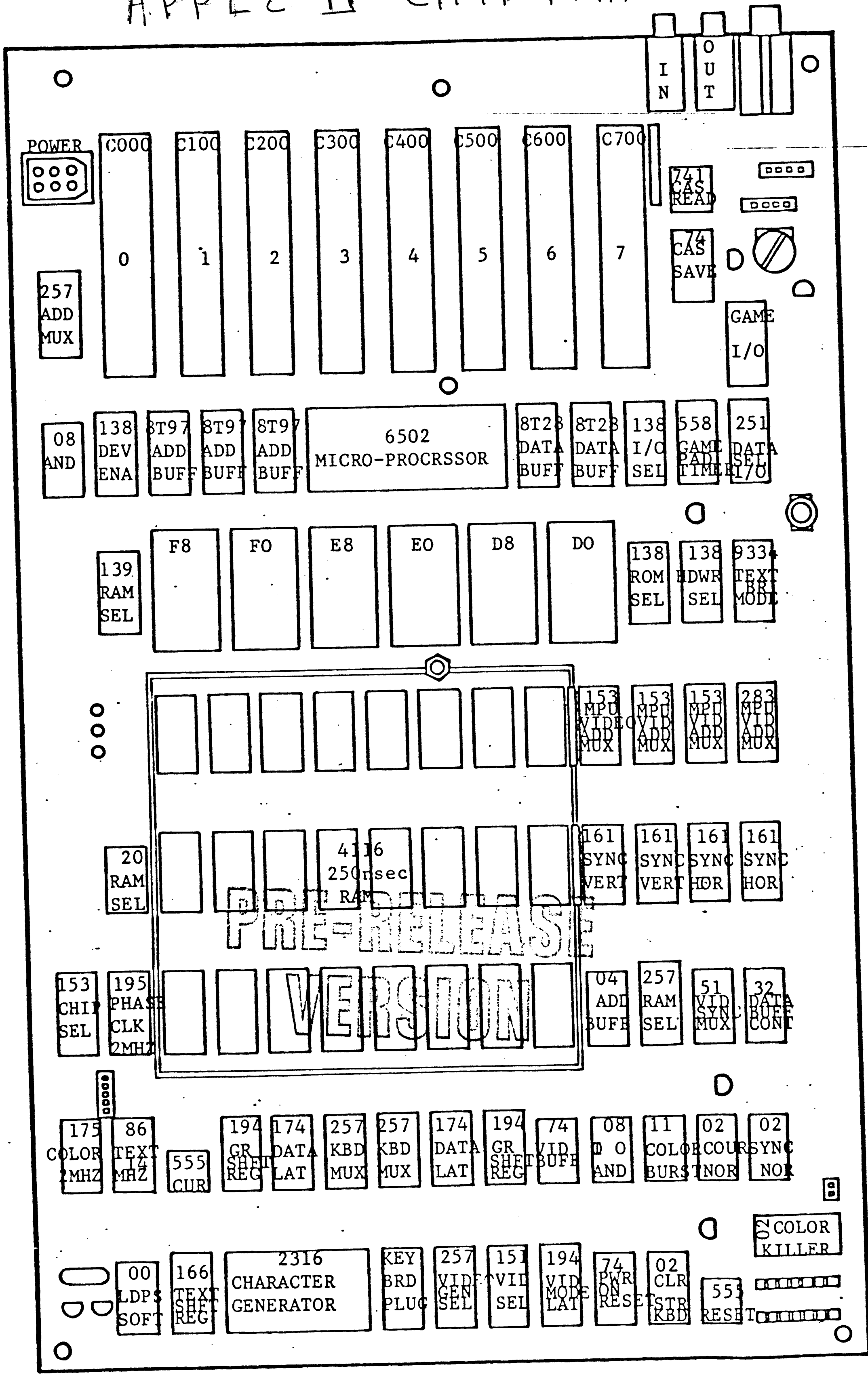
(This page is not part of the original service manual)

APPLE II CHIP MAP

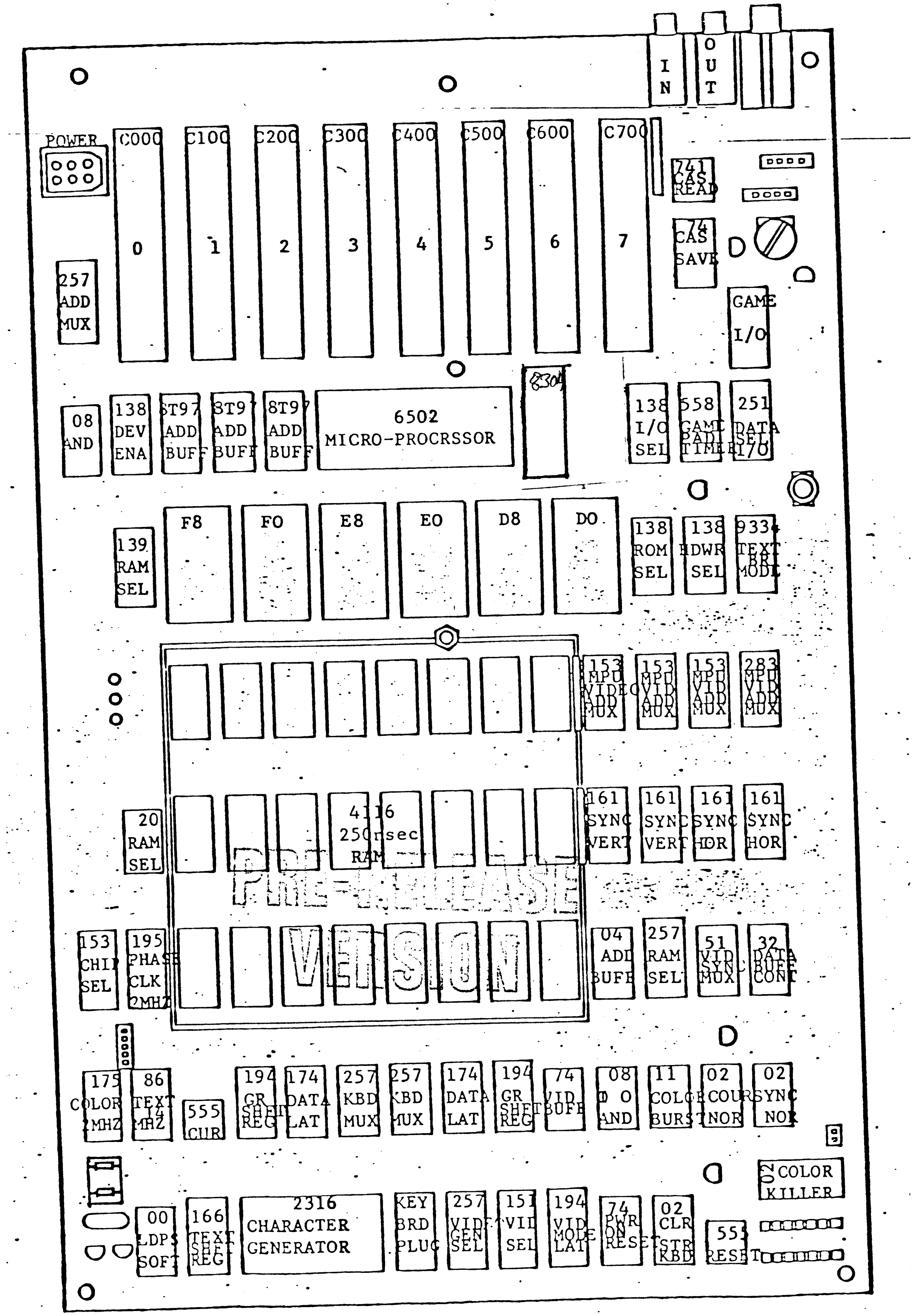


REV 7

APPLE II CHIP MAP



820-0044 Rev B

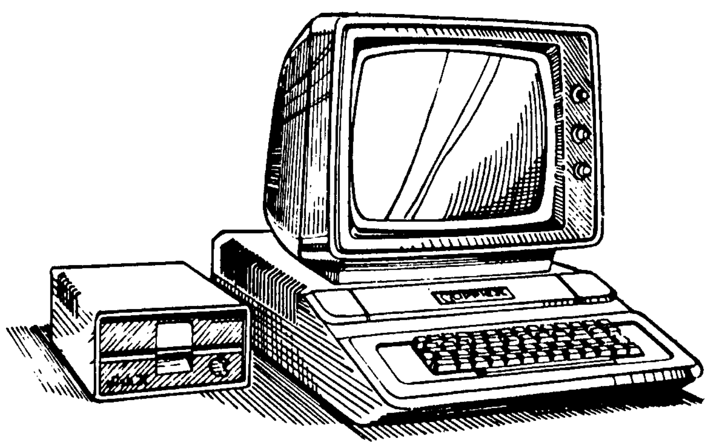


Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS
LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

APPENDIX A
IC SPECIFICATIONS



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

QUADRUPLE 2-INPUT POSITIVE NAND GATE

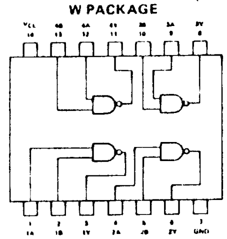
S54S00/503–A,F,W • N74S00/503–A,F

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

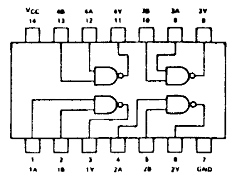
S54S03 / N74S00 / N74S03

[illegible]IGURATIONS

W PACKAGE

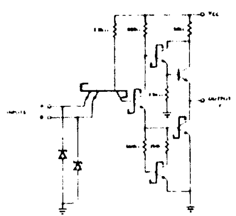


A,F PACKAGE

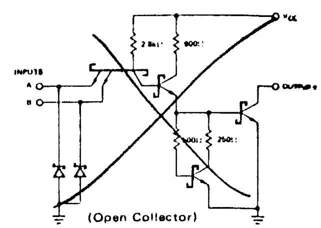


[illegible]IC (each gate)

S54/N74S00



S54/N74S03



(Open Collector)

NOTE:
Component values shown are nominal

[illegible]NDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER	S54S00 MIN	S54S00 NOM	S54S00 MAX	N74S00 MIN	N74S00 NOM	N74S00 MAX
[illegible]oltage V_{CC}	4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25
[illegible] Fan Out from each Output, N: High logic level			20			20
Low logic level			10			10
[illegible] Free Air Temperature, T_A	-55		125	0		70

[illegible]AL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted) (74S00)

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS*			MIN	TYP**	MAX
High level input voltage				2		
Low level input voltage						0.8
Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = -18mA				-1.2
High level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{OH} = -1mA	V_{IL} = 0.8V,	Series 54S	2.5	3.4	
			Series 74S	2.7	3.4	
Low level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{OL} = 20mA	V_{IH} = 2V,				0.5
Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5V				1
High level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.7V				50
Low level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.5V				-2
Short circuit output current[1]	V_{CC} = MAX			-40		-100
Supply current, high level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 0V			2.5	4
Supply current, low level output	V_{CC} = MAX	All inputs at 5V			5	9

[illegible]GNETICS QUADRUPLE 2-INPUT POSITIVE NAND GATE ■ S5[illegible], S54S03, N74S00,

[illegible] CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10 (74S00)

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS			MIN	TYP	MAX
Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 280Ω	NOTE 1	2	3	4.5
	C_L = 50pF,	R_L = 280Ω			4.5	
Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 280Ω		2	3	5
	C_L = 50pF,	R_L = 280Ω			5	

[illegible]ICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER			MIN	TYP**	MAX
High-level input voltage			2		
Low-level input voltage					0.8
Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = -18mA			-1.2
High-level output current	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{OH} = 5.5V	V_{IL} = 0.8V,			250
Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{OL} = 20mA	V_{IH} = 2V,			0.5
Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5V			1
High-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.7V			50
Low-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.5V			-2
Supply current, high-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 0V		1.5	3.3
Supply current, low-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 5V		5	9

[illegible] CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS			MIN	TYP	MAX
Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 280Ω	NOTE 1	2	5	5ns
	C_L = 50pF,	R_L = 280Ω			4.5	
Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 280Ω		2	4.5	7
	C_L = 50pF,	R_L = 280Ω			7	

[illegible] shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the [illegible].

[illegible] values are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C.

[illegible] output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short-circuit test should not exceed one second.

[illegible] circuit and waveforms are shown on page 2-293

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

gnetics

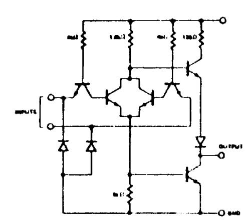
QUADRUPLE 2-INPUT POSITIVE NOR GATE

S54 2 N7402

S5402–A,F,W • N7402–A,F

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

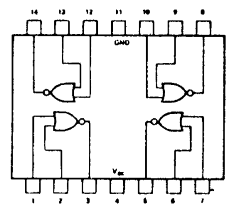
ATIC (each gate)



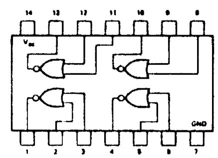
: Component values shown are nominal.

PIN CONFIGURATIONS

W PACKAGE



A,F PACKAGE



MENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
y Voltage V_{CC}:	S5402 Circuits	4.5	5	5.5	V
	N7402 Circuits	4.75	5	5.25	V
alized Fan-Out from each Output, N				10	
ing Free-Air Temperature Range, T_A:	S5402 Circuits	-55	25	125	°C
	N7402 Circuits	0	25	70	°C

ICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*			MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
$V_{in(1)}$	Logical 1 input voltage required at either input terminal to ensure logical 0 level at output	V_{CC} = MIN			2			V
$V_{in(0)}$	Logical 0 input voltage required at both input terminals to ensure logical 1 level at output	V_{CC} = MIN					0.8	V
$V_{out(1)}$	Logical 1 output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{load} = −400μA	V_{in} = 0.8V		2.4	3.3		V
$V_{out(0)}$	Logical 0 output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{sink} = 16mA	V_{in} = 2V,			0.22	0.4	V
$I_{in(0)}$	Logical 0 level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 0.4V				−1.6	mA
$I_{in(1)}$	Logical 1 level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 2.4V				40	μA
		V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 5.6V				1	
I_{OS}	Short circuit output	V_{CC} = MAX		S5402	−20		−55	mA

SIGNETICS QUADRUPLE 2-INPUT POSITIVE NOR GATE ■ S5402

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (Cont'd)

	PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP	MAX
$I_{CC(0)}$	Logical 0 level supply current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 5V		14	27
$I_{CC(1)}$	Logical 1 level supply current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 0		8	16

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

	PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS		MIN	TYP	MAX
t_{pd0}	Propagation delay time to logical 0 level	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 400Ω		8	15
t_{pd1}	Propagation delay time to logical 1 level	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 400Ω		12	22

* For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the device type.
** All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C
† Not more than one output should be shorted at a time.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

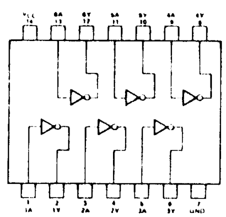
HEX INVERTER | S54S04 S54S05 N74S04 N74S05

S54S04–A,F,W • S54S05–A,F,W • N74S04–A,F,W • N74S05–A,F

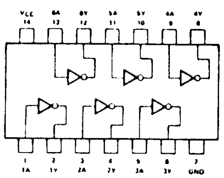
DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

…IGURATIONS

W PACKAGE

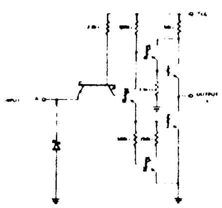


A,F PACKAGE

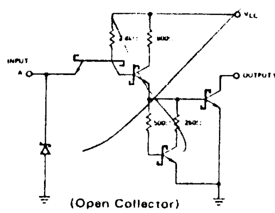


…IC (each gate)

S54/N74S04



S54/N74S05



(Open Collector)

NOTE: Component values shown are nominal.

…NDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		S54S04 MIN	S54S04 NOM	S54S04 MAX	N74S04 MIN	N74S04 NOM	N74S04 MAX	UNIT
…oltage V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
…ed Fan Out from each Output, N:	High logic level			20			20	
	Low logic level			10			10	
…Free Air Temperature, T_A		-55		125	0		70	°C

…AL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted) (74S04)

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS*			MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
High level input voltage				2			V
Low level input voltage						0.8	V
Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = -18mA				-1.2	V
High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{OH} = -1mA	V_{IL} = 0.8V,	Series 54S	2.5	3.4		V
			Series 74S	2.7	3.4		V
Low level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{OL} = 20mA	V_{IH} = 2V,				0.5	V
Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5V				1	mA
High level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.7V				50	µA
Low level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.5V				-2	mA
Short circuit output current[1]	V_{CC} = MAX			-40		-100	mA
Supply current, high level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 0V			2.5	4	mA
Supply current, low level							

SIGNETICS HEX INVERTER ■ …04, S54S05, N74S0…

…ITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

	PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS			MIN	TYP	M…
t_{PLH}	Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output	C_L = 15 pF,	R_L = 280 Ω	NOTE 1	2	3	
		C_L = 50 pF,	R_L = 280 Ω			4.5	
t_{PHL}	Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output	C_L = 15 pF,	R_L = 280 Ω		2	3	
		C_L = 50 pF,	R_L = 280 Ω			5*	

S54/N74S05

…ECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

	PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP**	MAX
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage			2		
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage					0.8
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = -18mA			-1.2
I_{OH}	High-level output current	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{OH} = 5.5V	V_{IL} = 0.8V,			250
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{OL} = 20mA	V_{IH} = 2V,			0.5
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5V			1
I_{IH}	High-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.7V			50
I_{IL}	Low-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.5V			-2
I_{CCH}	Supply current, high-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 0V		1.5	3.3
I_{CCL}	Supply current, low-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 5V		5	9

…ITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

	PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS			MIN	TYP	MAX
t_{PLH}	Propagation delay time, low-to-high level output	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 280Ω	NOTE 1	2	5	5…
		C_L = 50pF,	R_L = 280Ω			4.5	
t_{PHL}	Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 280Ω		2	4.5	…
		C_L = 50pF,	R_L = 280Ω			7	

* For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for device type.

** All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C.

† Not more than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short-circuit test should not exceed one second.

NOTES:

a. The pulse generator has the following characteristics: $V_{in(1)}$ = 3V, $V_{in(0)}$ = 0V, t_1 = t_0 = 2.5ns, PRR = 1 MHz, duty cycle …, Z_{out} ≈ 50Ω.

b. …puts not under test are at 2.7V.

c. C_L includes probe and jig capacitance.

NOTE 1: Load circuit and waveforms are shown on page 2-293

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

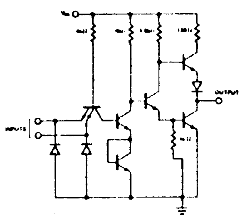
QUADRUPLE 2-INPUT POSITIVE AND GATES

S5408 / N7408

S5408–A,F,W • N7408–A,F

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

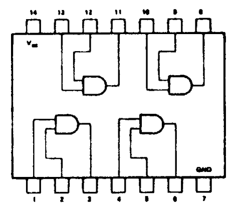
SCHEMATIC (each gate)



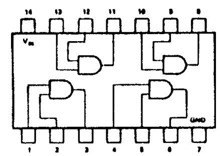
NOTE: Component values shown are nominal.

PIN CONFIGURATIONS

W PACKAGE



A PACKAGE



RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

		MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
Supply Voltage V_{CC}:	S5408 Circuits	4.5	5	5.5	V
	N7408 Circuits	4.75	5	5.25	V
Normalized Fan-Out from Output, N				10	
Operating Free-Air Temperature Range, T_A:	S5408 Circuits	-55	25	125	°C
	N7408 Circuits	0	25	70	°C

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*			MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
$V_{in(1)}$	Logical 1 input voltage required at both input terminals to ensure logical 1 level at output	V_{CC} = MIN			2			V
$V_{in(0)}$	Logical 0 input voltage required at either input terminal to ensure logical 0 level at output	V_{CC} = MIN					0.8	V
$V_{out(1)}$	Logical 1 output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{load} = -800μA	V_{in} = 2.0V,		2.4	3.3		V
$V_{out(0)}$	Logical 0 output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{sink} = 16mA	V_{in} = 0.8V,			0.22	0.4	V
$I_{in(0)}$	Logical 0 level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX	V_{in} = 0.4V				-1.6	mA
$I_{in(1)}$	Logical 1 level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 2.4V				40	μA
		V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 5.5V				1	mA
I_{OS}	Short circuit output current†	V_{CC} = MAX		S5408	-20		-55	mA
				N7408	-18		-55	

SIGNETICS QUADRUPLE 2-INPUT POSITIVE AND GATES ■ S5408/N7408

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (Cont'd)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP**
$I_{CC(1)}$	Logical 1 level supply current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 5V		10
$I_{CC(0)}$	Logical 0 level supply current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 0		18

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS		MIN	TYP
t_{pd0}	Propagation delay time to logical 0 level	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 400Ω		12
t_{pd1}	Propagation delay time to logical 1 level	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 400Ω		17.5

* For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the applicable device type.
** All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C
† Not more than one output should be shorted at a time.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Signetics PRE-RELEASE VERSION

TRIPLE 3-INPUT POSITIVE AND GATE

N74S11 N74S15

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

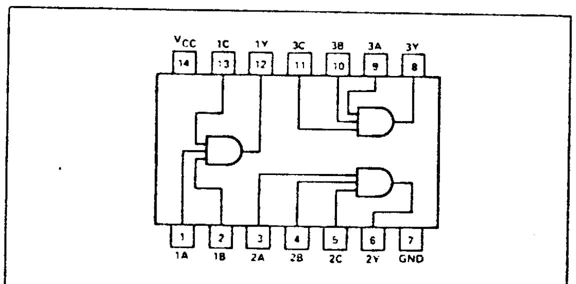
FEATURES

N74S11 ACTIVE PULL-UP

- TYPICAL PROPAGATION TIME — 5 ns at C_L = pF
- TYPICAL POWER DISSIPATION AT 50% DUTY CYCLE — 32 mW PER GATE

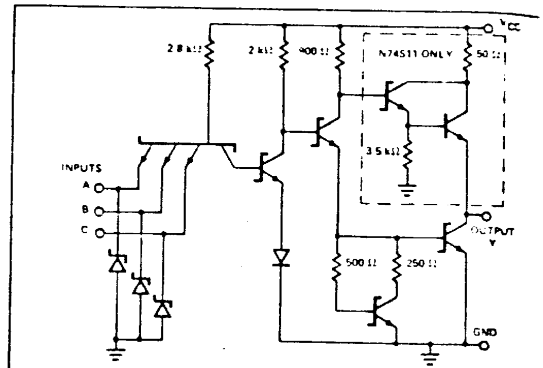
N74S15 OPEN-COLLECTOR

- TYPICAL PROPAGATION TIME — 6 ns at C_L = 15 pF
- TYPICAL POWER DISSIPATION AT 50% DUTY CYCLE — 29 mW PER GATE



Positive Logic: Y = ABC

SCHEMATIC (each gate)



NOTE: Component values shown are nominal.

RECOMMENDED MAXIMUM FAN-OUT FROM EACH OUTPUT

	N74S11	N74S15
Loads at a high logic level	20	
Loads at a low logic level	10	10

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*	N74S11 MIN	N74S11 TYP**	N74S11 MAX	N74S15 MIN	N74S15 TYP**	N74S15 MAX	UNIT
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage		2			2			V
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage				0.8			0.8	V
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = −18 mA			−1.2			−1.2	V
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, I_{OH} = −1 mA	2.7	3.4					V
I_{OH}	High-level output current	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{OH} = 5.5 V						250	μA
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OL} = 20 mA			0.5			0.5	V
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5.5 V			1			1	mA
I_{IH}	High-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 2.7 V			50			50	μA
I_{IL}	Low-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 0.5 V			−2			−2	mA
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current‡	V_{CC} = MAX	−40		−100				mA
I_{CCH}	Supply current, high-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX, All inputs at 5 V		4.5	8		3.5	6.5	mA
I_{CCL}	Supply current, low-level output (Average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX, All inputs at 0 V		8	14		8	14	mA

*For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the applicable series on the second page of this section.
**All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C.
‡Not more than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short-circuit test should not exceed one second.

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS NOTE 1	N74S11 MIN	N74S11 TYP	N74S11 MAX	N74S15 MIN	N74S15 TYP	N74S15 MAX	UNITS
t_{PLH}	Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 280 Ω	2.5	4.5	7	2.5	5.5	8.5	ns
		C_L = 50 pF, R_L = 280 Ω		6			8.5		
t_{PHL}	Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 280 Ω	2.5	5	7.5	2.5	6	9	ns
		C_L = 50 pF, R_L = 280 Ω		7.5			8		

NOTE 1: Load circuits and waveforms are shown on page 2-293

Signetics

DUAL 4-INPUT POSITIVE NAND GATE

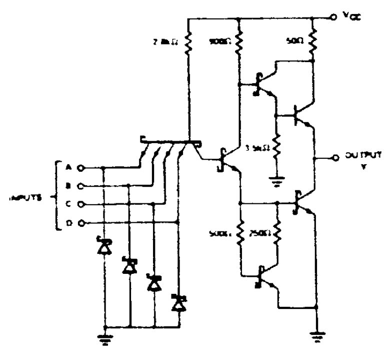
S54S20 N74S20

S54S20–A,F,W • N74S20–A,F

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

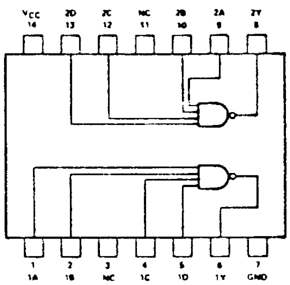
PRE-RELEASE VERSION

SCHEMATIC (each gate)

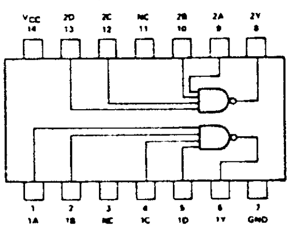


NOTE Component values shown are nominal.

W PACKAGE



A,F PACKAGE



RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER	S54S20			N74S20			UNIT
	MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX	
Supply Voltage V_{CC}	4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
Normalized Fan-Out from each Output, N: High logic level			20			20	
Low logic level			10			10	
Operating Free-Air Temperature, T_A	-55		125	0		70	°C

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*			MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage				2			V
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage						0.8	V
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = -18mA				-1.2	V
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	V_{IL} = 0.8V,	Series 54S	2.5	3.4		V
		I_{OH} = -1mA		Series 74S	2.7	3.4		V
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{OL} = 20mA	V_{IH} = 2V,				0.5	V
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5V				1	mA
I_{IH}	High-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.7V				50	μA
I_{IL}	Low-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.5V				-2	mA
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current†	V_{CC} = MAX			-40		-100	mA
I_{CCH}	Supply current, high-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 0V			2.5	4	mA
I_{CCL}	Supply current, low-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 5V			5	9	mA

2-283

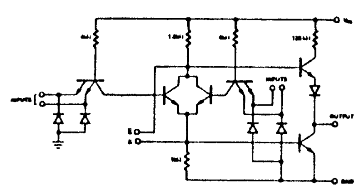
EXPANDABLE DUAL 2-WIDE 2-INPUT AND-OR-INVERT GATES

S5450 S5451 N7450 N7451

S5450A,F,W • S5451–A,F,W • N7450–A,F • N7451–A,F

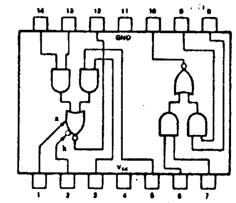
DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

…EMATIC (each gate)

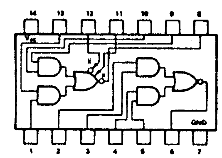


PIN CONFIGURATIONS

W PACKAGE



A,F PACKAGE



…S:
…mponent values shown are nominal.
…th expander inputs are used simultaneously for expanding.
… expander is not used leave X and $\bar{X}$ pins open.

4. Make no external connection to X and $\bar{X}$ pins of the S5451 and N7451.
5. A total of four expander gates can be connected to the expander inputs.

…MMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER	MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
…pply Voltage V_{CC}: S5450, S5451 Circuits	4.5	5	5.5	V
N7450, N7451 Circuits	4.75	5	5.25	V
…ormalized Fan-Out from Output, N			10	
…erating Free-Air Temperature Range, T_A: S5450, S5451 Circuits	-55	25	125	°C
N7450, N7451 Circuits	0	25	70	°C

…TRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
$V_{in(1)}$	Logical 1 input voltage required at both input terminals of either AND section to ensure logical 0 at output	V_{CC} = MIN		2			V
$V_{in(0)}$	Logical 0 input voltage required at one input terminal of each AND section to ensure logical 1 at output	V_{CC} = MIN				0.8	V
$V_{out(1)}$	Logical 1 output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{load} = -400µA	V_{in} = 0.8V,	2.4	3.3		V
$V_{out(0)}$	Logi… …utput voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{sink} = 16mA	V_{in} = 2V,		0.22	0.4	

SIGNETICS EXPANDABLE DUAL 2-WIDE 2-INPUT AND-OR-INVER… …ATES ▪ S5450/51, N…

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (Cont'd)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP**	MA…
$I_{in(0)}$	Logical 0 level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 0.4V			-1.6
$I_{in(1)}$	Logical 1 level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 2.4V			40
		V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 5.5V			1
I_{OS}	Short circuit output current†	V_{CC} = MAX	S5450, S5451	-20		-55
			N7450, N7451	-18		-55
$I_{CC(0)}$	Logical 0 level supply current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 5V		7.4	14
$I_{CC(1)}$	Logical 1 level supply current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 0		4	8

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (S5450 circuits) using expander inputs, V_{CC} = 4.5V, T_A = -55° C

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS		MIN	TYP**	MAX
I_X	Expander current	V_1 = 0.4V,	I_{sink} = 16mA			2.9
$V_{BE(Q)}$	Base-emitter voltage of output transistor (Q)	I_{sink} = 16mA, R_1 = 0	I_1 = 0.41mA,			1
$V_{out(1)}$	Logical 1 output voltage	I_{load} = -400µA, I_2 = -0.15mA	I_1 = 0.15mA,	2.4	3.3	
$V_{out(0)}$	Logical 0 output voltage	I_{sink} = 16mA, R_1 = 138Ω	I_1 = 0.3mA,		0.22	0.4

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (N7450 circuits) using expander inputs, V_{CC} = 4.75V, T_A = 0°C

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS		MIN	TYP**	MAX
I_X	Expander current	V_1 = 0.4V,	I_{sink} = 16mA			3.1
$V_{BE(Q)}$	Base-emitter voltage of output transistor (Q)	I_{sink} = 16mA, R_1 = 0	I_1 = 0.62mA,			1
$V_{out(1)}$	Logical 1 output voltage	I_{load} = -400µA, I_2 = -270µA	I_1 = 270µA,	2.4	3.3	
$V_{out(0)}$	Logical 0 output voltage	I_{sink} = 16mA, R_1 = 130Ω	I_1 = 0.43mA,		0.22	0.4

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP	MAX
t_{pd0}	Propagation delay time to logical 0 level	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 400Ω		8	15
t_{pd1}	Propagation delay time to logical 1 level	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 400Ω		13	22

…shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the a…
…Expander inputs X and $\bar{X}$ are open.
…are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C.
…one output should be shorted at a time.

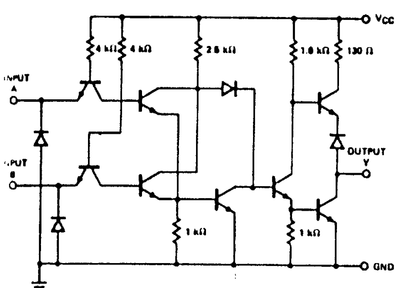
S5432F/W/A • N7432A/F ...432

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

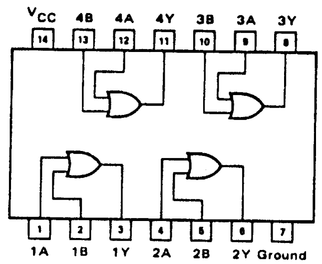
...ESCRIPTION

... 54/7432 provides four 2 input or logic functions. Each ...e may be used individually or connected serially to pro-...e an equivalent five input or function.

...HEMATIC (Each gate)



PIN CONFIGURATION (Top View) *



Positive Logic: Y = A + B

*Pin assignments for these circuits are the same for all packages.

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Supply voltage, V_{CC} (see Note 1) . . . . 7 V
Input voltage . . . . 5.5 V
Operating free-air temperature range:
5432 Circuits . . . . -55°C to 125°C
7432 Circuits . . . . 0°C to 70°C
Storage temperature range . . . . -65°C to 150°C

NOTE:
1. Voltage values are with respect to network ground terminal.

...OMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		5432 MIN.	5432 NOM.	5432 MAX.	7432 MIN.	7432 NOM.	7432 MAX.	UNIT
...ply voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
...nalized fan-out from each output, N	High logic level			20			20	
	Low logic level			10			10	
...rating free-air temperature, T_A		-55	25	125	0	25	70	°C

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

	PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS†		MIN.	TYP‡
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage			2	
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage				
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MAX. I_I = -12 mA			
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN. V_{IH} = 2 V, I_{OH} = -800μA		2.4	3.3
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OL} = 16 mA			0.22
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5.5 V			
I_{IH}	High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX. V_I = 2.4 V			
I_{IL}	Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 0.4 V			
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current §	V_{CC} = MAX	5432	-20	
			7432	-18	
I_{CCH}	Supply current, high-level output	V_{CC} = MAX, See Note 2			15
I_{CCL}	Supply current, low-level output	V_{CC} = MAX, See Note 3			23

† For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for type
‡ All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25° C.
§ Not more than one output should be shorted at a time.

NOTES: 2. I_{CCH} is measured with one input of each gate at 4.5 V, the remaining inputs grounded, and outputs open.
3. I_{CCL} is measured with both inputs of all gates grounded, and outputs open.

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

	PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	MIN.	T
t_{PHL}	Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 400Ω		
t_{PLH}	Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output			

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

signetics PRE-RELEASE VERSION

DUAL D-TYPE EDGE-TRIGGERED FLIP-FLOPS

S54S74 N74S74

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

[illegible]TION

[illegible] [illegible]olithic dual edge-triggered flip-flops utilize Schottky TTL [illegible] to produce very high speed D-type flip-flops. Each flip-flop [illegible] individual clear and preset inputs, and also complementary Q [illegible] $\bar{Q}$ outputs.

[illegible] at input D is transferred to the Q output on the [illegible] going edge of the clock pulse. Clock triggering occurs at a [illegible] level of the clock pulse and is not directly related to the [illegible] time of the positive going pulse. When the clock input is [illegible] the high or low level, the D-input signal has no effect.

[illegible] circuits are fully compatible for use with most TTL or DTL [illegible]. A full fan-out to 10-normalized series 54S/74S loads is [illegible] from each of the outputs at low logic level. At a high logic [illegible], a fan-out of 20 is available to facilitate tying unused inputs to [illegible] inputs. Maximum clock frequency is 75 megahertz, with a [illegible] power dissipation of 75 milliwatts per flip-flop.

The N74S74 is characterized for operation from 0°C to 70°C.

Typical Maximum Input Clock Frequency	90 MHz
Typical Power Dissipation	75 mW per Flip-Flop

TRUTH TABLE (Each Flip-Flop)

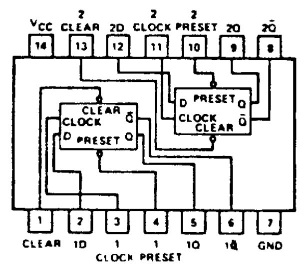
t_n	t_{n+1}	
INPUT	OUTPUT	
D	Q	$\bar{Q}$
L	L	H
H	H	L

H = High level, L = Low level

NOTES A. t_n = bit time before clock pulse

B. t_{n+1} = bit time after clock pulse

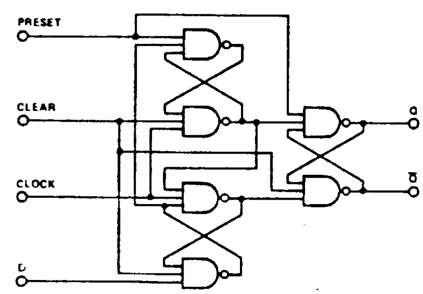
PIN CONFIGURATION



Positive Logic:

Low input to preset sets Q to high level
Low input to clear resets Q to low level
Preset and clear are independent of clock

FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAM (EACH FLIP-FLOP)



RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
Supply voltage, V_{CC}		4.75	5	5.25	V
Normalized fan-out from each output, N	High logic level	•		20	
	Low logic level			10	
Clock frequency, f_{clock}			70		MHz
Width of clock pulse, t_w (clock)			7		ns
Width of preset pulse, t_w (preset)			7		ns
Width of clear pulse, t_w (clear)			7		ns
Input set-up time, t_{setup}	High level data		10		ns
	Low level data		12		
Input hold time, t_{hold}		0			ns
Operating free-air temperature, T_A		0		70	°C

2-291

SIGNETICS DUAL D-TYPE EDGE-TRIGGERED FLIP-FLOPS ■ S54S74,N74S74

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
V_{IH}	High level input voltage			2			V
V_{IL}	Low level input voltage					0.8	V
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = −18 mA			−1.2	V
V_{OH}	High level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8,	V_{IH} = 2 V, I_{OL} = 20 mA	2.7	3.4		V
V_{OL}	Low level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8,	V_{IH} = 2 V, I_{OL} = 20 mA			0.5	V
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5 V			1	mA
I_{IH}	High level input current	V_{CC} = MAX,	D input			50	µA
		V_I = 2.7 V	Clock or Preset			100	µA
			Clear			150	µA
I_{IL}	Low level input current	V_{CC} = MAX,	D input			−2	mA
		V_I = 0.5 V	Clock or Preset			−4	mA
			Clear			−6	mA
I_{OS}	Short circuit output current‡	V_{CC} = MAX		−40		−100	mA
I_{CC}	Supply Current	V_{CC} = MAX,	See Note 1		30		mA

*For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the applicable device type.
**All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C.
‡Not more than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short circuit test should not exceed one second.

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
f_{max}	Maximum clock frequency	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 280 Ω NOTE 1		90		MHz
t_{PLH}	Propagation delay time, low-to-high level output, from clear or preset			5		ns
t_{PHL}	Propagation delay time, high-to-low level output, from clear or preset			8		ns
t_{PLH}	Propagation delay time, low-to-high level output, from clock			7		ns
t_{PHL}	Propagation delay time, high-to-low level output, from clock			7		ns

NOTE 1: Load circuit and test waveforms are shown on page 2-293

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

signetics

QUAD EXCLUSIVE-OR, EXCLUSIVE-OR/NOR GATES

S54S86
N74S86
S54S135
N74S135

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

FEATURES

- FULLY COMPATIBLE WITH MOST TTL AND TTL MSI CIRCUITS
- FULLY SCHOTTKY CLAMPING REDUCES DELAY TIMES:
  - 7 ns Typical 54S86*/74S86
  - 8 ns Typical 54S135*/74S135
- 54S135*, 74S135 CAN OPERATE AS EXCLUSIVE-OR GATE (C INPUT LOW) OR AS EXCLUSIVE-NOR GATE (C INPUT HIGH)

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Supply voltage (see Note 1) . . . . 7 V
Input voltage . . . . 5.5 V
Operating free-air temperature range:
54S86*, 54S135* Circuits . . . . -55°C to 125°C
74S86, 74S135 Circuits . . . . 0°C to 70°C
Storage temperature range . . . . . -65°C to 150°C

NOTE:
1 All voltage values are with respect to network ground terminal.

FUNCTION TABLE 54S86*, 74S86

INPUTS		OUTPUT
A	B	Y
L	L	L
L	H	H
H	L	H
H	H	L

H = High level, L = Low level

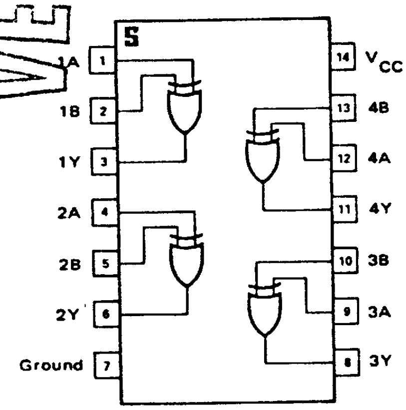
FUNCTION TABLE 54S135*, 74S135

INPUTS			OUTPUT
A	B	C	Y
L	L	L	L
L	H	L	H
H	L	L	H
H	H	L	L
L	L	H	H
L	H	H	L
H	L	H	L
H	H	H	H

H = High level, L = Low level

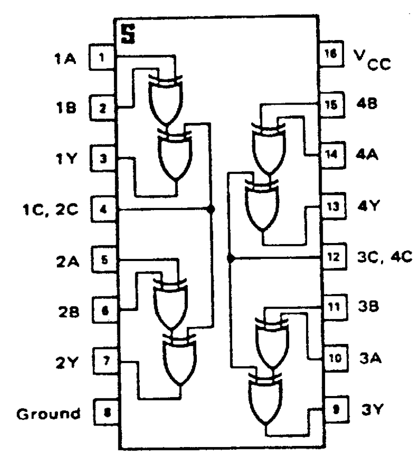
PIN CONFIGURATION (Top View)*

74S86* W-A & F



Positive Logic: $Y = A \oplus B = \overline{A}B + A\overline{B}$

74S135* W-B & F



Positive Logic: With C low, $Y = A \oplus B = \overline{A}B + A\overline{B}$
With C high, $Y = \overline{A \oplus B} = AB + \overline{A}\overline{B}$

*Pin assignments same for all packages.

2-293

SIGNETICS QUAD EXCLUSIVE-OR, EXCLUSIVE-OR/NOR GATES ■ S54/N74S86, S54/N74S135

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (Over recommended operating free-air temperature range. Unless otherwise note)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN.	TYP.**	MAX.	UNIT
V_{IH}	High level input voltage			2			V
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage					0.8	V
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = -18mA				-1.2	V
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = -18 mA	Series 54S*	2.5	3.4		V
		V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OH} = -1mA	Series 74S*	2.7	3.4		
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OL} = 20mA				0.5	V
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5.5 V				1	mA
I_{IH}	High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 2.7 V				50	µA
I_{IL}	Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 05. V				-2	mA
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current†	V_{CC} = MAX		-40		-100	mA
I_{CC}	Supply current	V_{CC} = MAX, See Note	54S86*				mA
			74S86				
			54S135*				
			74S135				

* For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the applicable device type.

** All typical values are V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C.

† Not more than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short-circuit test should not exceed one second.

NOTE:

I_{CC} is measured with the inputs grounded and the outputs open.

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

		54586*	54S135*		74S86	74S135		UNIT
		MIN.	NOM.	MAX.	MIN.	NOM.	MAX.	
Supply voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
Normalized fan-out from each output, N	High logic level			20			20	
	Low logic level			10			10	
Operating free-air temperature, T_A		-55		125	0		70	°C

*Full military version to be announced.

...gnetics 3-LINE-TO-8-LINE AND DUAL 2-LINE-TO-4-LINE DECODERS/DEMULTIPLEXERS 54/74S138 54/74S139

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

...CRIPTION

...e Schottky-clamped TTL MSI circuits are designed to used in high-performance memory-decoding or routing applications requiring very short propagation ...y times. In high-performance memory systems these ...ders can be used to minimize the effects of system ...ding. When employed with high-speed memories ...ing a fast-enable circuit the delay times of these ...ders and the enable time of the memory are usually than the typical access time of the memory. This means the effective system delay introduced by the ...ttky-clamped system decoder is negligible.

54S138 and 74S138 decode one-of-eight lines ...ndent on the conditions at the three binary select ...s and the three enable inputs. Two active-low and one ...-high enable inputs reduce the need for external gates ...nverters when expanding. A 24-line decoder can be ...emented without external inverters and a 32-line ...der requires only one inverter. An enable input can be as a data input for demultiplexing applications. ...cal delay time through the three-level address circuitry nanoseconds total or an average of 2.6 nanoseconds per level. Average power dissipation is typically 245 ...watts or approximately 16 milliwatts each for the 15 ...alent gates.

54S139 and 74S139 comprise two individual ...ine-to-four-line decoders in a single package. The ...-low enable input can be used as a data line in ...ltiplexing applications. Typical total delay time is 7.5 ...econds through the three-gate-level address circuitry ...ower consumption is typically 300 milliwatts total.

...f these decoders/demultiplexers feature fully buffered ...s each of which represents only one normalized Series ...74S load to its driving circuit. All inputs are clamped high-performance Schottky diodes to suppress ...nging and simplify system design. The 54S138 and ...39 are characterized for operation over the full ...ry temperature range of −55°C to 125°C; the 74S138 ...74S139 are characterized for 0°C to 70°C industrial ...ns.

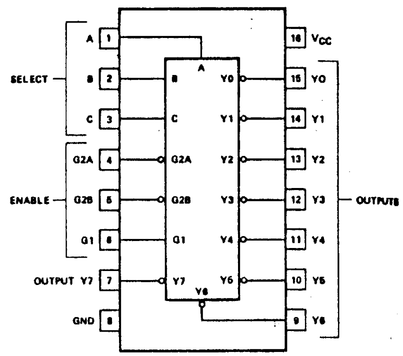
...OLUTE MAXIMUM RATING

...ly Voltage, V_{CC} (See Note 1)	7 V
... Voltage	5.5 V
...ating Free-Air Temperature Range:	
...S138, 54S139 Circuits	−55°C to 125°C
...S138, 74S139 Circuits	0°C to 70°C

PIN CONFIGURATIONS (Top View)

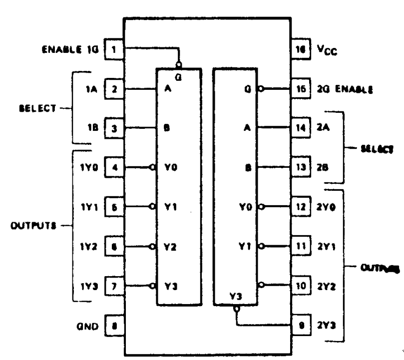
B-F-W PACKAGES

54/74S138



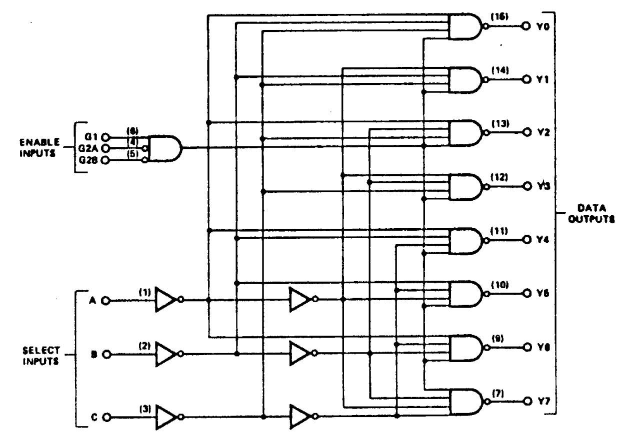
POSITIVE LOGIC: SEE FUNCTION TABLE

54/74S139

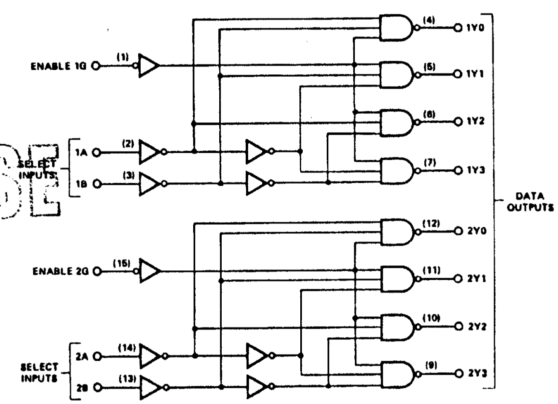


BLOCK DIAGRAMS

54/74S138



54/74S139



54/74S138
FUNCTION TABLE

INPUTS					OUTPUTS							
ENABLE		SELECT										
G1	G2[1]	C	B	A	Y0	Y1	Y2	Y3	Y4	Y5	Y6	Y6
[illegible]	H	X	X	X	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	H
[illegible]	X	X	X	X	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	H
[illegible]	L	L	L	L	L	H	H	H	H	H	H	H
[illegible]	L	L	L	H	H	L	H	H	H	H	H	H
[illegible]	L	L	H	L	H	H	L	H	H	H	H	H
[illegible]	L	L	H	H	H	H	H	L	H	H	H	H
[illegible]	L	H	L	L	H	H	H	H	L	H	H	H
[illegible]	L	H	L	H	H	H	H	H	H	L	H	H
[illegible]	[illegible]	H	H	L	H	H	H	H	H	H	L	H

54/74S139 FUNCTION TAB...
(EACH DECODER/DEMULTIPLE...

INPUTS			OUT...	
ENABLE	SELECT			
G	B	A	Y0	Y1
H	X	X	H	H
L	L	L	L	H
L	L	H	H	L
L	H	L	H	H
L	H	H	H	H

H = High level, L = Low level, X = Irrelevent

SIGNETICS DECODERS/DEMULTIPLEXERS ■ 54/74S138, 54/74S139

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		54S138 54S139 MIN	54S138 54S139 NOM	54S138 54S139 MAX	74S138 74S139 MIN	74S138 74S139 NOM	74S138 74S139 MAX	UNIT
Supply voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
Normalized fan-out from each output N	High logic level			20			20	
	Low logic level			10			10	
Operating free-air temperature, T_A		-55		125	0		70	°C

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (Over recommended operating free-air temperature range. Unless otherwise noted.)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS[1]		54S138 54S139 MIN	54S138 54S139 TYP[2]	54S138 54S139 MAX	74S138 74S139 MIN	74S138 74S139 TYP[2]	74S138 74S139 MAX	UNIT
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage			2			2			V
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage					0.8			0.8	V
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = −18mA				−1.2			−1.2	V
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2V, V_{IL} = 0.8V, I_{OH} = −1mA	Series 54S	2.5	3.4		2.5	3.4		V
			Series 74S	2.7	3.4		2.7	3.4		
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2V, V_{IL} = 0.8V, I_{OL} = 20mA				0.5			0.5	V
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5.5V				1			1	mA
I_{IH}	High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 2.7V				50			50	[illegible]
I_{IL}	Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 0.5V				−2			−2	mA
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current[3]	V_{CC} = MAX		−40		−100	−40		−100	mA
I_{CC}	Supply current	V_{CC} = MAX, Outputs enabled and open			49	74		60	90	mA

NOTES:
1. For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the applicable device type.
2. All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C.
3. Not more than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short-circuit test should not exceed one second.

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER[1]	FROM (INPUT)	TO (OUTPUT)	LEVELS OF DELAY	TEST CONDITIONS	54S138, 74S138 MIN	54S138, 74S138 TYP	54S138, 74S138 MAX	54S139 74S139 MIN	54S139 74S139 TYP	54S139 74S139 MAX	UNIT
t_{PLH}	Binary select	Any	2	C_L = 15pF, R_L = 280 Ω		4.5	7		5	7.5	ns
t_{PHL}						7	10.5		6.5	10	
t_{PLH}			3			7.5	12		7	12	ns
t_{PHL}						8	12		8	12	
t_{PLH}	Enable	Any	2			5	8		5	8	ns
t_{PHL}						7	11		6.5	10	
t_{PLH}			3			7	11				ns
t_{PHL}						7	11				

NOTE:
1. t_{PLH} ≡ propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output
t_{PHL} ≡ propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output

2-306

signetics

8-INPUT DATA SELECTORS/MULTIPLEXERS

S54S151
S54S251
N74S151
N74S251

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

DESCRIPTION

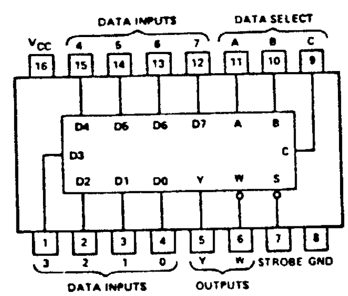
The S54S151, S54S251, N74S151, and N74S251 Schottky-clamped, high-performance, eight-input data selectors/multiplexers are designed for use in very high-speed data routing applications. These multiplexers select one of eight data sources when so directed by the binary address inputs. Both true and complementary data are presented when the strobe input goes low.

The S54S151 and N74S151 are functionally and mechanically interchangeable with the S54151 and N74151 respectively, and in most TTL systems can be utilized to upgrade the performance of existing designs as delay times are typically half that of the S54151 or N74151.

The S54S251 and N74S251 have three-state outputs which permit the outputs to be connected to a common bus. When the strobe input is high, both outputs are in a high-impedance state in which both the upper and lower transistors of each totem-pole output are off, and the output can neither drive nor load the bus. When the strobe is low, the outputs are activated and operate as standard TTL totem-pole outputs.

Typical power dissipation is 225 milliwatts for the S54S151 or N74S151 and 275 milliwatts for the S54S251 and N74S251, or approximately 14 and 17 milliwatts respectively per equivalent gate. The S54S151 and S54S251 are characterized for operation over the full military temperature range of −55°C to 125°C; the N74S151 and N74S251 are characterized for operation from 0°C to 70°C.

PIN CONFIGURATION



Positive Logic: See function table.

FEATURES

- S54S151/N74S151 INTERCHANGEABLE WITH S54151/N74151 IN MOST SYSTEMS
- SCHOTTKY CLAMPED FOR SIGNIFICANT REDUCTION IN DELAY TIMES . . . 4.5 ns TYPICAL, DATA INPUT TO W OUTPUT
- HIGH-SPEED SELECTION FOR ONE OF EIGHT DATA SOURCES
- PERMITS MULTIPLEXING FROM N LINES TO ONE LINE
- S54S251 AND N74S251 HAVE TRI-STATE OUTPUTS
- FULLY COMPATIBLE WITH SERIES 54/74 AND OTHER TTL MSI CIRCUITS

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER	S54S151			S54S251			N74S151			N74S251			UNIT
	MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX	
Supply voltage, V_{CC}	4.5	5	5.5	4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	4.75	5	5.25	V
Normalized fan-out from each output, N (at a low logic level)			10			10			10			10	
High-level output current, I_{OH}			−1			−2			−1			−6.5	mA
Operating free-air temperature, T_A	−55		125	−55		125	0		70	0		70	°C

2-307

...ICS 8-INPUT DATA SELECTORS/MULTIPLEXERS ■ S54/N74S151, S54/N74S251

...AL CHARACTERISTI... (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS*		S54S151 N74S151 MIN	TYP**	MAX	S54S251 N74S251 MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
High-level input voltage			2			2			V
Low-level input voltage					0.8			0.8	V
Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = −18 mA				−1.2			−1.2	V
High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OH} = MAX	Series 54S	2.5	3.4		2.4	3.2		V
		Series 74S	2.7	3.4		2.4	3.2		
Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OL} = 20 mA				0.5			0.5	V
Off-state (high-impedance-state) output current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_O = 2.7 V							50	µA
	V_{CC} = MAX, V_O = 0.4 V							−50	
Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5.5 V				1			1	mA
High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 2.7 V				50			50	µA
Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 0.5 V				−2			−2	mA
Short-circuit output current‡	V_{CC} = MAX		−40		−100	−40		−100	mA
Supply current	V_{CC} = MAX, All inputs at 4.5 V, All outputs open			45	70		55	85	mA

...itions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the ...e device type.
...l values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C.
...e than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short-circuit test should not exceed one second.

...G CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C

...ETER	FROM (INPUT)	TO (OUTPUT)	TEST CONDITIONS	S54S151, N74S151 MIN	TYP	MAX	S54S251, N74S251 MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
...H	A, B, or C (4 levels)	Y	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 280 Ω, See Note 1		12	18		12	18	ns
...					12	18		13	19.5	
...H	A, B, or C (3 levels)	W			10	15		10	15	ns
...					9	13.5		9	13.5	
...H	Any D	Y			8	12		8	12	ns
...					8	12		8	12	
...H	Any D	W			4.5	7		4.5	7	ns
...					4.5	7		4.5	7	
...H	Strobe	Y			11	16.5				ns
...					12	18				
...	Strobe	W			9	13				ns
...					8.5	12				
...	Strobe	Y	C_L = 50 pF, R_L = 280 Ω, See Note 1					13	19.5	ns
...								14	21	
...	Strobe	W						13	19.5	ns
...								14	21	
...	Strobe	Y	C_L = 5 pF, R_L = 280 Ω, See Note 1					6.5	8.5	ns
...								9	14	
...	Strobe	W						5.5	8.5	ns
...								9	14	

...ropagation delay time, low-to-high-level output
...ropagation delay time, high-to-low-level output
...utput enable time ... h level
...utput enable time ... level
...utput disable time from high level

SIGNETICS 8-INPUT DATA SELECTORS/MULTIPLEXERS ■ S54/N74S151, S...

...NCTION TABLE

SELECT C	B	A	STROBE S	D0	D1	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6	D7	S54S151, Y	N74S151 W	S54S251, Y
X	X	X	H	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	L	H	Z
L	L	L	L	L	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	L	H	L
L	L	L	L	H	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	H	L	H
L	L	H	L	X	L	X	X	X	X	X	X	L	H	L
L	L	H	L	X	H	X	X	X	X	X	X	H	L	H
L	H	L	L	X	X	L	X	X	X	X	X	L	H	L
L	H	L	L	X	X	H	X	X	X	X	X	H	L	H
L	H	H	L	X	X	X	L	X	X	X	X	L	H	L
L	H	H	L	X	X	X	H	X	X	X	X	H	L	H
H	L	L	L	X	X	X	X	L	X	X	X	L	H	L
H	L	L	L	X	X	X	X	H	X	X	X	H	L	H
H	L	H	L	X	X	X	X	X	L	X	X	L	H	L
H	L	H	L	X	X	X	X	X	H	X	X	H	L	H
H	H	L	L	X	X	X	X	X	X	L	X	L	H	L
H	H	L	L	X	X	X	X	X	X	H	X	H	L	H
H	H	H	L	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	L	L	H	L
H	H	H	L	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	H	H	L	H

...igh logic level, L = low logic level, Z = high impedance, X = irrelevant

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

DUAL 4-LINE TO 1-LINE DATA SELECTORS/MULTIPLEXERS

S54S153 N74S153

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

·TION

...olithic Schottky-barrier-diode-clamped TTL circuits are ...mance multiplexers which are significantly faster than ...N74153. As an example, the two-gate-level delay from ...puts to the output is only 8.5 nanoseconds maximum ...to 18 or 23 nanoseconds maximum for the ...ed part. Overall, the guaranteed delay times for the ...74S153 represent approximately a 100% improvement ...d TTL with only a 12% increase in maximum d-c power ...n. In many cases, the S54S153 or N74S153 can plug ...systems designed for S54153 or N74153.

...selectors/multiplexers are fully compatible for use with ...d, high-speed, and low-power TTL and DTL circuits. ...clamped input represents only one normalized Series ...d, and full fan-out to 10 normalized Series 54S/74S ...able from each of the outputs at low logic levels. A ...0 normalized Series 54S/74S loads is provided at high ...to facilitate connection of unused inputs to used inputs. ...er dissipation is 225 milliwatts.

...3 is characterized for operation over the full military ...range of -55°C to 125°C; the N74S153 is ...d for operation from 0°C to 70°C.

...CHOTTKY-BARRIER-DIODE CLAMPING FOR VERY ...EEDS

...S MULTIPLEXING FROM N LINES TO 1 LINE

...N ASSIGNMENTS AS S54153 AND N74153

...L (ENABLE) LINE PROVIDED FOR CASCADING (N ...O n LINES)

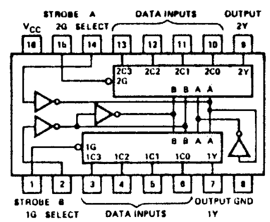
...L AVERAGE PROPAGATION DELAY TIMES:
...A INPUT TO OUTPUT (2 GATE LEVELS) 6 ns
...BE INPUT TO OUPUT (3 GATE LEVELS) 9.5 ns
...CT INPUT TO OUTPUT (4 GATE LEVELS) 12 ns

...AN-OUT LOW IMPEDANCE TOTEM-POLE OUTPUTS

COMPATIBLE WITH MOST TTL AND DTL CIRCUITS

PIN CONFIGURATION

J OR N DUAL-IN-LINE
OR W FLAT PACKAGE (TOP VIEW)



LOGIC: SEE FUNCTION TABLE

FUNCTION TABLE

SELECT INPUTS		DATA INPUTS				STROBE	OUTPUT
B	A	C0	C1	C2	C3	G	Y
X	X	X	X	X	X	H	L
L	L	L	X	X	X	L	L
L	L	H	X	X	X	L	H
L	H	X	L	X	X	L	L
L	H	X	H	X	X	L	H
H	L	X	X	L	X	L	L
H	L	X	X	H	X	L	H
H	H	X	X	X	L	L	L
H	H	X	X	X	H	L	H

Address inputs A and B are common to both sections.
H = High level, L = Low level, X = Irrelevant

SIGNETICS DUAL 4-LINE TO 1-LINE DATA SELECTORS/MULTIPLEXERS ■ S54S153, N...

...COMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		S54S153 MIN	S54S153 NOM	S54S153 MAX	N74S153 MIN	N74S153 NOM	N74S153 MAX
Supply voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25
Normalized fan-out from each output, N	High logic level			20			20
	Low logic level			10			10
Operating free-air temperature range, T_A		−55		125	0		70

...TRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*			MIN	TYP**	MAX
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage				2		
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage						0.8
V_I	Input clamp Voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = −18 mA				−1.2
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8 V,	V_{IH} = 2 V, I_{OH} = −1 mA	Series 54S	2.5	3.4	
				Series 74S	2.7	3.4	
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8 V,	V_{IH} = 2 V, I_{OL} = 20 mA				0.5
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5 V				1
I_{IH}	High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.7 V				50
I_{IL}	Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.5 V				−2
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current‡	V_{CC} = MAX			−40		−100
I_{CCL}	Supply current, low level output	V_{CC} = MAX,	See Note 1			45	70

...r conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the ...plicable device type.
...typical values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C.
...t more than one output should be shorted at a time.
...TE: 1: I_{CCL} is measured with the outputs open and all inputs grounded.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

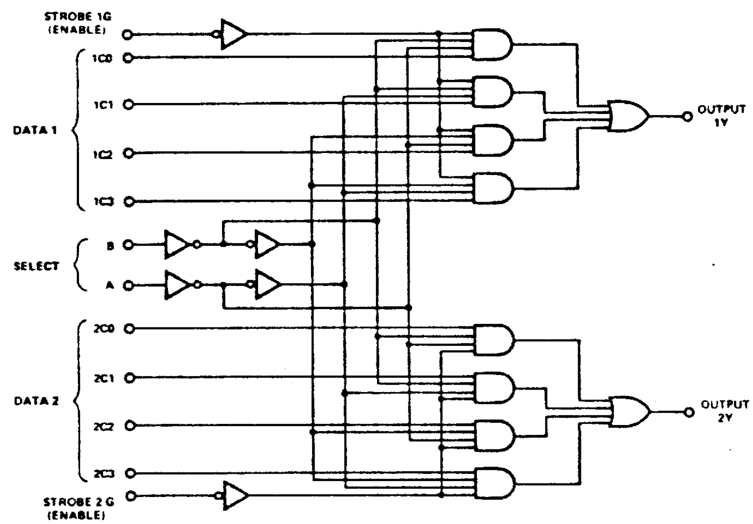
...CHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER	FROM (INPUT)	TO (OUTPUT)	TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNI...
t_{PLH}	Data	Y	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 280 Ω, See Note 2		6	9	ns
t_{PHL}	Data	Y			6	9	ns
t_{PLH}	Select	Y			11.5	18	ns
t_{PHL}	Select	Y			12	18	ns
t_{PLH}	Strobe	Y			10	15	ns
t_{PHL}	Strobe	Y			9	13.5	ns

...≡ Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output.
...≡ Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output.
...E 2: Load circuit and test waveforms are shown on page 2-293

SIGNETICS DUAL 4-LINE TO 1-LINE DATA SELECTORS/MULTIPLEXERS ■ S54S153, N74S153

FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAM



TEST TABLE FOR NOTE 2

INPUTS							OUTPUT Y WAVEFORM
B	A	C0	C1	C2	C3	G	
GND	GND	INPUT	X	X	X	GND	A
GND	4.5 V	X	INPUT	X	X	GND	A
4.5 V	GND	X	X	INPUT	X	GND	A
4.5 V	4.5 V	X	X	X	INPUT	GND	A
GND	INPUT	GND	4.5 V	X	X	GND	A
INPUT	GND	GND	X	4.5 V	X	GND	A
GND	GND	4.5 V	X	X	X	INPUT	B

X = Irrelevant A=IN-PHASE OUTPUT
B=OUT-OF-PHASE

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

SYNCHRONOUS 4-BIT COUNTER | S54160 N7[...] S54161 N74161 S54162 N74162 S54163 N74163

S54160–B,F,W • S54161–B,F,W • S54162–B,F,W • S54163–B,F,W
N74160–B,F • N74161–B,F • N74162–B,F • N74163–B,F

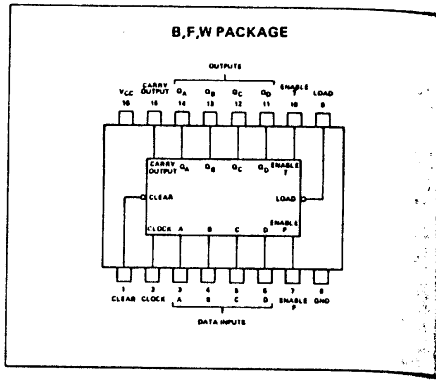
DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

[...]PTION

[...]nchronous, presettable counters feature an internal carry [...]d for application in high-speed counting schemes. The [...]54162, N74160, and N74162 are decade counters and the [...]54163, N74161, and N74163 are 4-bit binary counters. [...]ous operation is provided by having all flip-flops clocked [...]ously so that the outputs change coincident with each [...]n so instructed by the count-enable inputs and internal [...]his mode of operation eliminates the output counting [...]ich are normally associated with asynchronous (ripple [...]nters. A buffered clock input triggers the four J-K master-[...]flops on the rising (positive-going) edge of the clock input [...]

[...]s are diode-clamped to minimize transmission-line effects, [...]mplifying system design. A full fan-out to ten normalized [...]74 loads is available from each of the outputs in the low-[...] A fan-out to 20 normalized Series 54/74 loads is provided [...]gh-level state to facilitate connection of unused inputs [...]r dissipation is typically 325 milliwatts.

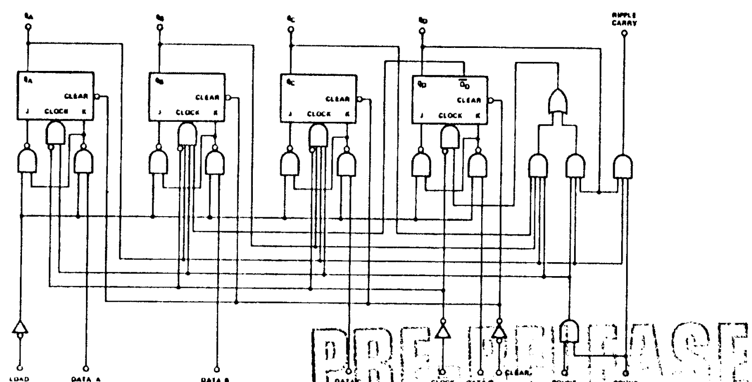
PIN CONFIGURATION



[...]IAGRAM

S54160/N74160 SYNCHRONOUS DECADE COUNTERS

(S54162/N74162 synchronous decade counters are similar; however the clear is synchronous as shown for the S54163/N74163 binary counters).

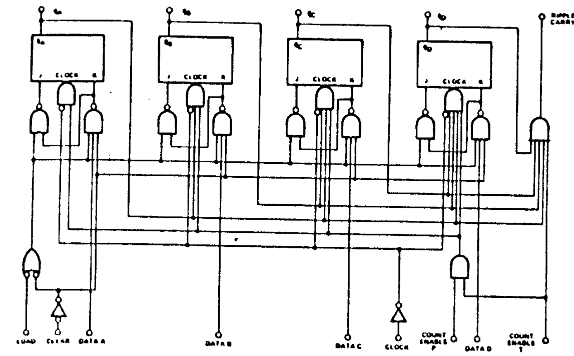


[...]GNETICS SYNCHRONOUS 4-BIT COUNTER ■ S54/N74160, S54/N741[...], S54/N74162, S54/N[...]

[...] DIAGRAM (Cont'd)

S54163/N74163 SYNCHRONOUS BINARY COUNTERS

S54161/N74161 synchronous binary counters are similar; however the clear is asynchronous as shown for the S54160/N74160 decade counters).



[...]MMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER	S54160, S54161 S54162, S54163 MIN	NOM	MAX	N74160, N74161 N74162, N74163 MIN	NOM	MAX
Supply Voltage V_{CC}	4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25
Normalized Fan-Out from each Output, N: High logic level			20			20
Low logic level			10			10
Input Clock Frequency, f_{clock}	0		25	0		25
Width of Clock Pulse, $t_{w(clock)}$	25			25		
Width of Clear Pulse, $t_{w(clear)}$	20			20		
Setup Time, t_{setup}: Data Inputs, A,B,C,D	15			15		
Enable P	20			20		
Load	25			25		
Clear	20			20		
Hold Time at any Input, t_{hold}	0			0		
Operating Free-Air Temperature, T_A	-55	25	125	0	25	70

[...]ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise specified)

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS*		S54160,S54161 S54162,S54163 MIN	TYP**	MAX	N74160,N74161 N74162,N74163 MIN	TYP**	MAX
High-level input voltage			2			2		
Low-level input voltage					0.8			0.8
Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	I_I = -12mA			-1.5			-1.5
High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MAX, V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8V,	V_{IH} = 2V, I_{OH} = -800μA	2.4			2.4		
Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8V,	V_{IH} = 2V, I_{OL} = 16mA			0.4			0.4
Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5V			1			1
High level input current: Clock or enable T	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.4V			80			80
High level input current: Other inputs					40			40
Low level input current: Clock or enable T	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.4V			-3.2			-3.2
Low level input current: Other inputs					-1.6			-1.6
Short circuit output current†	V_{CC} = MAX		-20		-57	-18		-57
Supply current, all outputs high	V_{CC} = MAX,	See Note 3						

signetics

HEX QUADRUPLE D-TYPE FLIP-FLOPS WITH CLEAR

S54S174 S54S175 N74S174 N74S175

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

DESCRIPTION

These high-performance monolithic, positive-edge-triggered flip-flops use high-speed Schottky TTL technology to implement D-type flip-flop logic. All have a direct clear input, and the S54S175 and N74S175 feature complementary outputs from each flip-flop. Pin configurations for these Schottky flip-flops are identical to the standard TTL versions meaning that these Schottky versions can be used to upgrade existing system performance in most cases.

Information at the D inputs meeting the setup time requirements is transferred to the Q outputs on the positive-going edge of the clock pulse. When the clock input is at either the high or low level, the D input signal has no effect at the output.

FEATURES

- FULL SCHOTTKY CLAMPING TO ACHIEVE TYPICAL MAXIMUM TOGGLE RATES OF 110 MHz
- FUNCTIONALLY AND MECHANICALLY IDENTICAL TO THE SERIES 54/74 COUNTERPARTS AND CAN BE USED TO UPGRADE EXISTING SYSTEMS WITH SIGNIFICANT IMPROVEMENT IN SPEED
- FULLY COMPATIBLE WITH OTHER TTL CIRCUITS
- S54S174 AND S54S175 OPERATE OVER FULL MILITARY TEMPERATURE RANGE OF –55°C TO 125°C
- FOR USE IN HIGH-PERFORMANCE:
  - BUFFER/STORAGE REGISTERS
  - SHIFT REGISTERS
  - COUNTERS
  - PATTERN GENERATORS

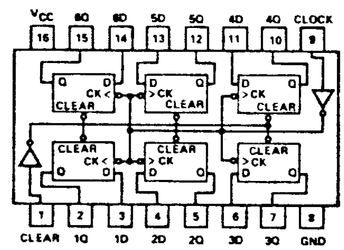
FUNCTION TABLE (EACH FLIP-FLOP)

INPUTS			OUTPUTS	
CLEAR	CLOCK	D	Q	$\overline{Q}$ †
L	X	X	L	H
H	↑	H	H	L
H	↑	L	L	H
H	L	X	Q_0	$\overline{Q_0}$

H = High level (steady state)
L = Low level (steady state)
X = Irrelevant
↑ = Transition from low to high level
Q_0 = The level of Q before the indicated steady-state input conditions were established
† = S54S175 and N74S175 only

PIN CONFIGURATION

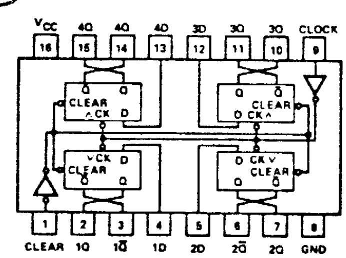
S54S174, N74S174



Positive Logic: See function table

PIN CONFIGURATION

S54S175, N74S175



Positive Logic: See function table

…MENDED OPERA…ONDITIONS

PARAMETER		S54S174, S54S175 MIN	NOM	MAX	N74S174, N74S175 MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
…pply voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
…malized fan-out from each output, N	High logic level			20			20	
	Low logic level			10			10	
…ut clock frequency, f_{clock}		0		75	0		75	MHz
…th of clock or clear pulse, t_w		12			12			ns
…p time, t_{setup}	Data input	8			8			ns
	Clear inactive-state	15			15			
…hold time, t_{hold}		2			2			ns
…rating free-air temperature, T_A		−55		125	0		70	°C

…ICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
High-level input voltage			2			V
Low-level input voltage					0.8	V
Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = −18 mA				−1.2	V
High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OH} = −1 mA	Series 54S	2.5	3.4		V
		Series 74S	2.7	3.4		
Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OL} = 20 mA				0.5	V
Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5.5 V				1	mA
High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 2.7 V				50	μA
Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 0.5 V				−2	mA
Short-circuit output current‡	V_{CC} = MAX		−40		−100	mA
Supply current	V_{CC} = MAX, See Note 1	S54S174, N74S174		90		mA
		S54S175, N74S175		60		

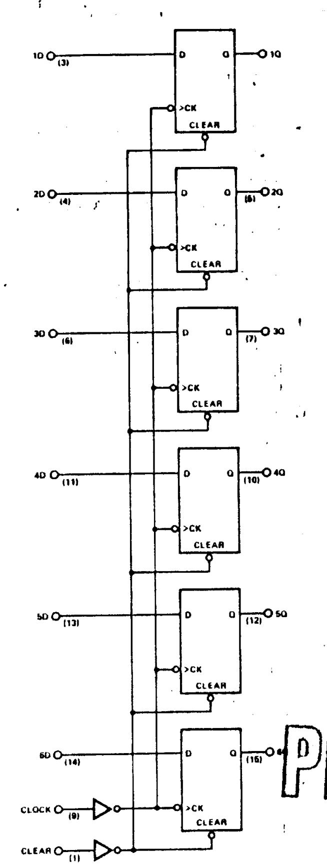
…onditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the …able device type.
…ical values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C.
…re than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short-circuit should not exceed one second.
With all outputs open and 4.5 V applied to all data and clear inputs, I_{CC} is measured after a momentary ground, then 4.5 V, is applied to clock.

…ING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

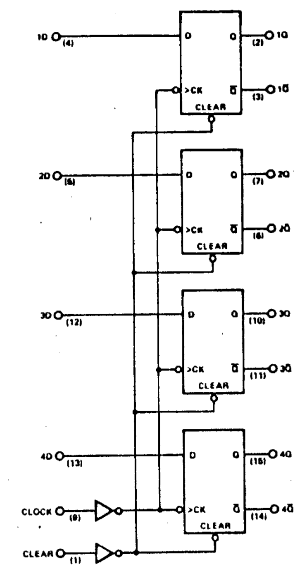
PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
Maximum input clock frequency	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 280 Ω, See Note 2	75	110		MHz
Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level $\overline{Q}$ output from clear (S54S175, N74S175 only)			13		ns
Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level Q output from clear			13		ns
Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output from clock			9		ns
Propagation time, high-to-low-level output from clock			11		ns

…CTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAMS

S54S174, N74S174



S54S175, N74S175



Dynamic input activated by a transition from a high level to a low level.

4-BIT BIDIRECTIONAL UNIVERSAL SHIFT REGISTERS

S54S19… N74S194

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

…N

…formance bidirectional shift registers are functionally …ally identical to the N54194 and S74194, however, …al shift frequency of 110 megahertz the Schottky-…ons can be used in very high speed systems, or can be …r the N54194/S74194 to upgrade the performance of …systems. The universal shift register has four distinct …ation, namely:

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

	MODE CONTROL	
	S1	S0
…(side) Load	H	H
…in the direction Q_A toward Q_D)	L	H
…the direction Q_D toward Q_A)	H	L
…ite) data	L	L

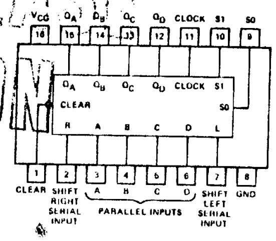
…oad mode, data is loaded into the associated flip-flop …the outputs after the positive transition of the clock …oading, serial data flow is inhibited. Shift right is …ynchronously with the rising edge of the clock pulse …and S1 is low. Serial data for this mode is entered at …ata input. When S0 is low and S1 is high, data shifts …ly and new data is entered at the shift-left serial …circulated when both mode control inputs are low. …bility the mode controls can be changed independ-…

…hift registers are compatible with most other TTL …amilies. All inputs are buffered to lower the drive …one normalized Series 54S/74S load, and input …minimize switching transients to simplify system …equivalent of 46 gates on the monolithic chip, …sipation is less than 10 milliwatts per equivalent

…characterized fo…ation over the full military …of −55°C to 12…he S74S194 is characterized…

PIN CONFIGURATION

J OR B DUAL IN-LINE OR W FLAT PACKAGE (TOP VIEW)



Positive Logic: See description

FEATURES

- SCHOTTKY-CLAMPED TO ACHIEVE TYPICAL MAXIMUM SHIFT FREQUENCY OF 110 MHz
- FUNCTIONALLY AND MECHANICALLY IDENTICAL TO N54194, S74194 AND CAN BE USED TO UPGRADE EXISTING SYSTEMS WITH SIGNIFICANT IMPROVEMENT IN SPEED
- FULLY COMPATIBLE WITH MOST OTHER TTL AND DTL CIRCUITS
- N54S194 OPERATES OVER FULL MILITARY TEMPERATURE RANGE OF −55°C TO 125°C
- FOR USE IN HIGH-PERFORMANCE: ACCUMULATORS/PROCESSORS, SERIAL-TO-PARALLEL AND

…RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER			54S194 MIN	54S194 NOM	54S194 MAX	74S194 MIN	74S194 NOM	74S194 MAX
Supply voltage, V_{CC}			4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25
High-level output current, I_{OH}					-1			-1
Low-level output current, I_{OL}					20			20
Clock frequency, f_{clock}			0		70	0		70
Width of clock pulse, $t_{w(clock)}$			7			7		
Width of clear pulse, $t_{w(clear)}$			12			12		
Setup time, t_{setup}	PA	Mode control	8			8		
		Serial and parallel data	5			5		
		Clear inactive-state	9			9		
Hold time at any input, t_{hold}			3			3		
Operating free-air temperature, T_A			-55		125	0		70

…ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS over recommended operating free-air temperature range (unless otherwise noted)

	PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS*		54S194 MIN	54S194 TYP**	54S194 MAX	74S194 MIN	74S194 TYP**	74S194 MAX
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage			2			2		
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage					0.8			0.8
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = −18mA			-1.5			-1.5
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8V,	V_{IH} = 2V, I_{OH} = −1mA	2.5	3.4		2.7	3.4	
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8V,	V_{IH} = 2V, I_{OL} = 20mA			0.5			0.5
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5V			1			
I_{IH}	High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.4V			50			50
I_{IL}	Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.4V			-2			-2
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current†	V_{CC} = MAX		-40		-100	-40		-100
I_{CC}	Supply current	V_{CC} = MAX,	See Note 2		85	135		85	135
		V_{CC} = MAX, T_A = 125°C, See Note 2	SN54S194N SN54S194W			99 110			

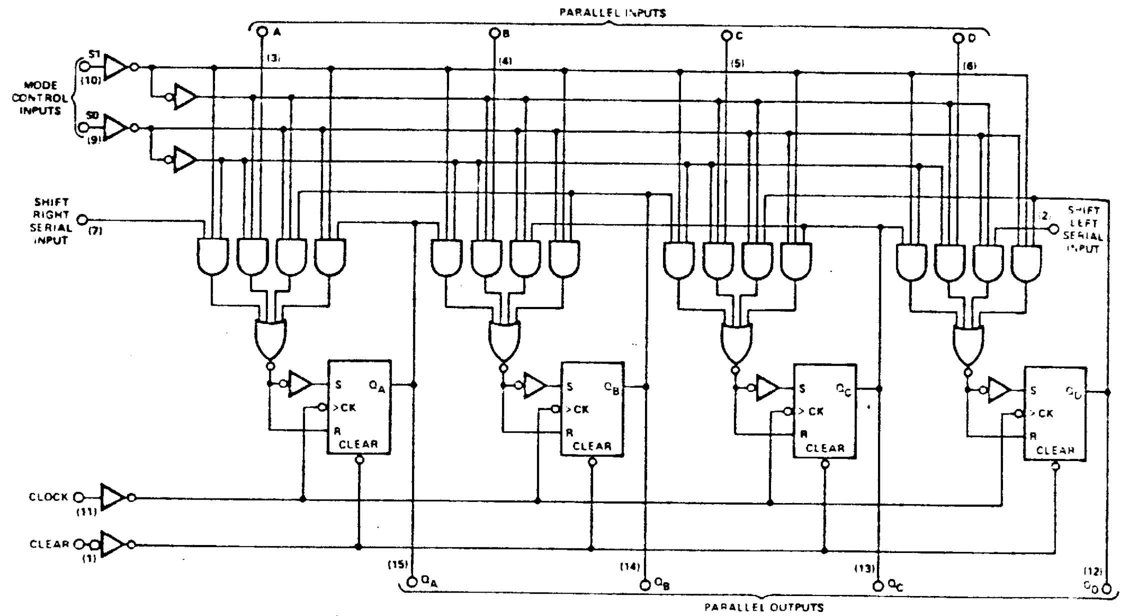
* For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions.
** All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C.
† Not more than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of short-circuit should not exceed one second.
Note 2: With all outputs open, inputs A through D grounded, and 4.5V applied to S0, S1, clear, and the serial inputs, I_{CC} is tested momentarily GND, then 4.5V, applied to clock.

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C

	PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX
f_{max}	Maximum clock frequency	C_L = 15pF, R_L = 280Ω, See Figure 1	70	105	
t_{PHL}	Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output from clear			12.5	18
t_{PLH}	Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output from clock		4	8	1…

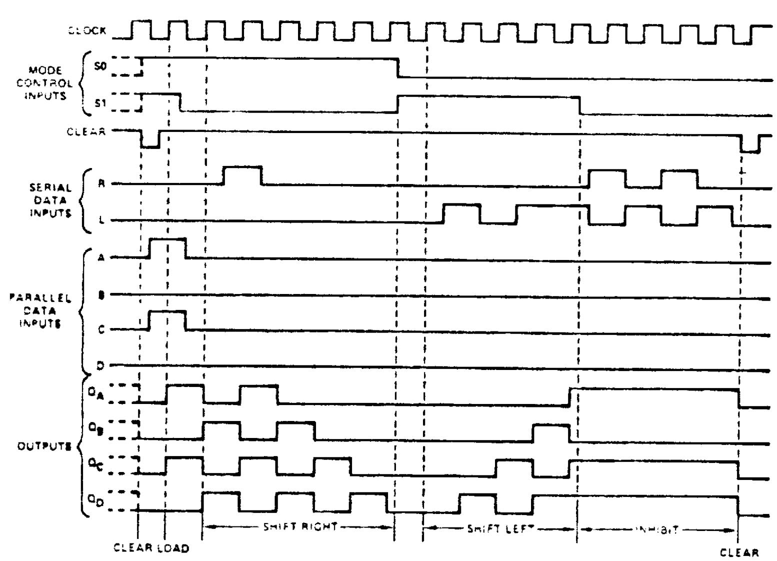
SIGNETICS 4-BIT BIDIRECTIONAL UNIVERSAL SHIFT REGISTERS ■ S54S194, N74S194

FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAM



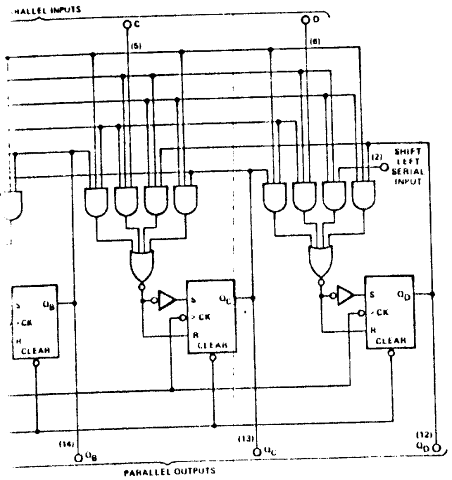
. . . Dynamic input activated by a transition from a high level to a low level.

TYPICAL CLEAR, LOAD, RIGH-SHIFT, INHIBIT, AND CLEAR SEQUENCES



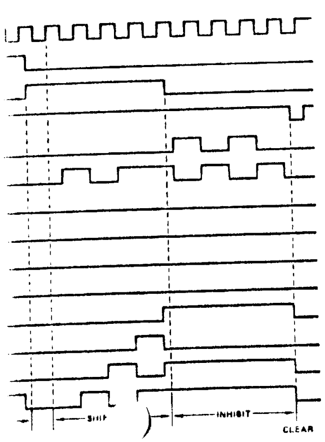
74195 74LS257

...IFT REGISTER... S54S194, N74S194



...high level to a low level.

...UENCES



Signetics

4-BIT PARALLEL-ACCESS SHIFT REGISTERS S54S195 N74S195

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

DESCRIPTION

These high-performance 4-bit registers feature a 110-megahertz typical maximum shift-frequency which makes them particularly attractive for very high-speed data processing systems. As the pin assignments are the same as the S54195 and N74195, existing systems can in most cases be upgraded merely by utilizing the Schottky-clamped versions. The registers have two modes of operation:

Parallel (Broadside) Load
Shift (In the direction Q_A toward Q_D)

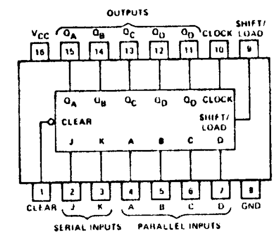
Parallel loading is accomplished by applying the four bits of data and taking the shift/load control input low. The data is loaded into the associated flip-flop and appears at the outputs after the positive transition of the clock input. During loading, serial data flow is inhibited.

Shifting is accomplished synchronously when the shift/load control input is high. Serial data for this mode is entered at the J-$\overline{K}$ inputs. These inputs permit the first stage to perform as a J-$\overline{K}$, D-, or T-type flip-flop as shown in the function table.

These shift registers are fully compatible with other TTL families. All inputs are buffered to lower the drive requirements to one normalized Series 54S/74S load, including the clock input. The S54S195 is characterized for operation over the full military temperature range of −55°C to 125°C; the N74S195 is characterized for operation from 0°C to 70°C.

PIN CONFIGURATION

J OR B DUAL-IN-LINE OR W FLAT PACKAGE (TOP VIEW)



Positive Logic: See function table

FEATURES

- SCHOTTKY-CLAMPED TO ACHIEVE TYPICAL M... SHIFT FREQUENCY OF 110 MHz
- FUNCTIONALLY AND MECHANICALLY IDENT... N54195, S74195 AND CAN BE USED TO UPGRA... ING DESIGNS WITH SIGNIFICANT IMPROVE... SPEED
- FULLY COMPATIBLE WITH OTHER TTL CIRCUI...
- N54S195 OPERATES OVER FULL MILITARY TEMPERATURE RANGE OF −55°C TO 125°C
- USE IN HIGH-PERFORMANCE:
  ACCUMULATORS/PROCESSORS
  SERIAL-TO-PARALLEL,
  PARALLEL-TO-SERIAL CONVERTERS

FUNCTION TABLE

INPUTS									OUTPUTS				
CLEAR	SHIFT/LOAD	CLOCK	SERIAL		PARALLEL				Q_A	Q_B	Q_C	Q_D	$\overline{Q}_D$
			J	$\overline{K}$	A	B	C	D					
L	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	L	L	L	L	H
H	L	↑	X	X	A	B	C	D	A	B	C	D	$\overline{D}$
H	H	L	X	X	X	X	X	X	Q_{A0}	Q_{B0}	Q_{C0}	Q_{D0}	$\overline{Q}_{D0}$
H	H	↑	L	H	X	X	X	X	Q_{A0}	Q_{A0}	Q_{B0}	Q_{C0}	$\overline{Q}_{C0}$
H	H	↑	L	L	X	X	X	X	L	Q_{A0}	Q_{B0}	Q_{C0}	$\overline{Q}_{C0}$
H	H	↑	H	H	X	X	X	X	H	Q_{A0}	Q_{B0}	Q_{C0}	$\overline{Q}_{C0}$
H	H	↑	H	L	X	X	X	X	$\overline{Q}_{A0}$	Q_{A0}	Q_{B0}	Q_{B0}	$\overline{Q}_{C0}$

H = high level (steady state)
L = low level (steady state)
X = irrelevant (any input, including tran...)
↑ = transition from low to high level

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL, MSI SERIES ■ S54S195,

NDED OPERA IDITIONS

PARAMETER		54195 MIN	54195 NOM	54195 MAX	74195 MIN	74195 NOM	74195 MAX	UNIT
voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
...l output current, I_{OH}				-800			-800	μA
...l output current, I_{OL}				16			16	mA
...quency, f_{clock}		0		30	0		30	MHz
... clock input pulse, $t_{w(clock)}$		16			16			ns
... clear input pulse, $t_{w(clear)}$		12			12			ns
...me, t_{setup} (see Figure 1)	Shift/load	25			25			ns
	Serial and parallel data	15			15			ns
	Clear inactive-state	25			25			ns
...d release time, $t_{release}$ (see Figure 1)				10			10	ns
...l parallel data hold time, t_{hold} (see Figure 1)		0			0			ns
...g free-air temperature, T_A		-55		125	0		70	°C

...AL CHARACTERISTICS over recommended operating free-air temperature range (unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP‡	MAX	UNIT
High-level input voltage			2			V
Low-level input voltage					0.8	V
Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = -12mA				-1.5	V
High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2V, V_{IL} = 0.8V, I_{OH} = -800μA		2.4	3.4		V
Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = ...V, V_{IL} = 0.8V, I_{OL} = ... mA			0.2	0.4	V
Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5...				1	mA
High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 2...				40	μA
Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 0...				-1.6	mA
Short-circuit output current†	V_{CC} = MAX	54195	-20		-57	mA
		74195	-18		-57	mA
Supply current	V_{CC} = MAX, See Not...			39	63	mA

...conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified und...ommended operating conditions for the applicable ...e type

...ypical values are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C.

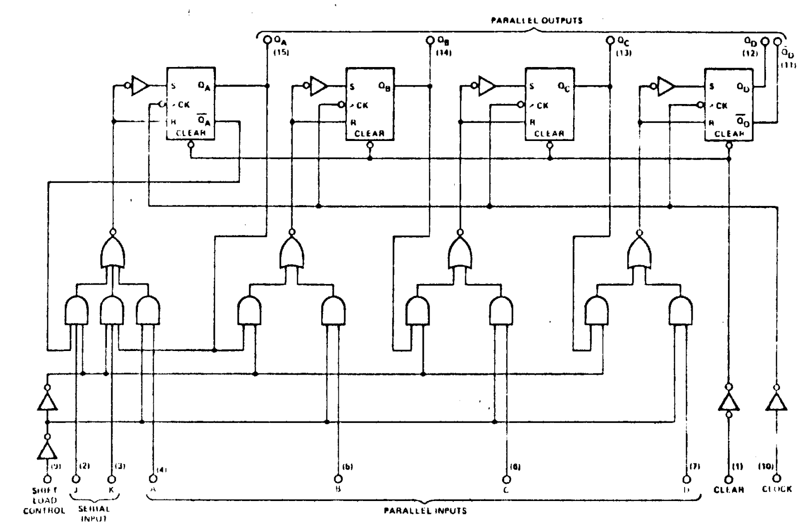
...more than one output should be shorted at a time.

...h all outputs open, shift/load grounded, and 4.5V applied to the J, $\overline{K}$, and d...puts, I_{CC} is measured by applying a momentary ...nd, followed by 4.5V, to clear and then applying a momentary ground, follow... 4.5V, to clock.

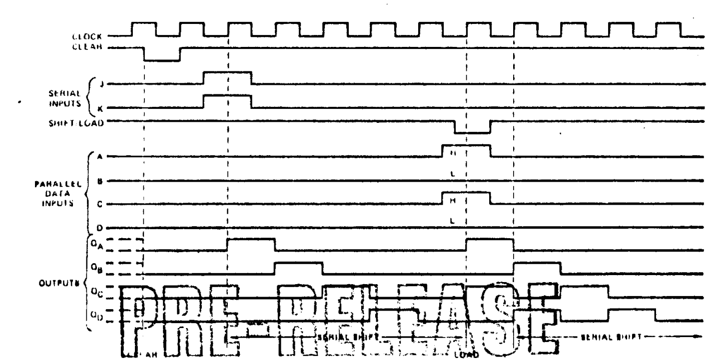
...G CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C

PARAMETER	TEST CO...ONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
Maximum clock frequency	C_L = ...	30	39		MHz
Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output from clear	R_L = ...		19	30	ns
Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output from clock		6	14	22	ns
Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output from clock		7	17	26	...

...CTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAM



TYPICAL CLEAR, SHIFT, AND LOAD SEQUENCES



QUADRUPLE 2-LINE TO 1-LINE DATA SELECTORS/MULTIPLEXERS

S54S257, S54S258, N74S257, N74S258

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

DESCRIPTION

...Schottky-clamped high-performance multiplexers feature ...ate outputs which can interface directly with and drive data ... bus-organized systems. With all but one of the common ... disabled (at a high impedance state) the low impedance of ...e enabled output will drive the bus line to a high or low ...el.

...hree-state output feature means that n-bit (paralleled) data ...s with up to 258 sources can be implemented for data buses. ...permits the use of standard TTL registers for data retention ...out the system.

...ical propagation delay times from data input to output ...only 4.8 nanoseconds for the S54S257, N74S157 and only ...econds for the S54S258, N74S258. Also, to minimize the ...ty that two outputs will attempt to take a common bus to ... logic levels, the output-enable circuitry is designed such ... output disable times are shorter than the output enable ...

FEATURES

- ...STATE OUTPUTS INTERFACE DIRECTLY WITH ...STEM BUS
- ...HOTTKY-CLAMPED FOR SIGNIFICANT IMPROVEMENT ...A-C PERFORMANCE
- ...LLY COMPATIBLE WITH MOST TTL FUNCTIONS IN...UDING MSI
- ...ME PIN ASSIGNMENTS AS S54S157, N74S157 AND ...S158, N74S158
- ...OVIDES BUS INTERFACE FROM MULTIPLE SOURCES ...HIGH-PERFORMANCE SYSTEMS
- ...S257 AND N54S258 ARE GUARANTEED FOR OPERA...N OVER THE FULL MILITARY TEMPERATURE RANGE ...55°C TO 125°C

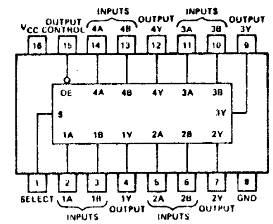
FUNCTION TABLE

INPUTS				OUTPUT Y	
OUTPUT CONTROL	SELECT	A	B	N54S257 S74S257	N54S258 S74S258
H	X	X	X	Z	Z
L	L	L	X	L	H
L	L	H	X	H	L
L	H	X	L	L	H
L	H	X	H	H	L

PIN CONFIGURATION

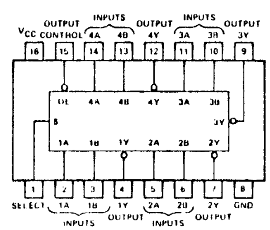
J OR B DUAL IN-LINE OR W FLAT PACKAGE (TOP VIEW)

S54S257, N74S257



Positive Logic: See function table

S54S258, N74S258



Positive Logic: See function table

SIGNETICS QUADRUPLE 2-LINE TO 1-LINE ■ S54S257, S54S258, N74S2...

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		S54S257, S54S258 MIN	NOM	MAX	N74S257, N74S258 MIN	NOM	MAX
Supply voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.[illegible]
Normalized fan-out from each output, N	High logic level						[illegible]
	Low logic level			40			
High-level output current, I_{OH}				10			[illegible]
Operating free-air temperature, T_A				2			6[illegible]
		−55		125	0		7[illegible]

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER			TEST CONDITIONS*	S54S257, S54S258 MIN	TYP**	MAX	N74S257, N74S258 MIN	TYP**
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage			2			2	
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage					0.8		
V_I	Input clamp voltage		V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = −18 mA			−1.2		
V_{OH}	High level output voltage		V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OH} = MAX, Series 54S	2.5	3.4			
			Series 74S	2.4	3.2		2.5 / 2.4	3.4 / 3.2
V_{OL}	Low level output voltage		V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OL} = 20 mA			0.5		
$I_{O(off)}$	Off state (high-impedance state) output current		V_{CC} = MAX, V_O = 2.4 V			50		
			V_{CC} = MAX, V_O = 0.4 V			−50		
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage		V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5.5 V			1		
I_{IH}	High level input current	S input	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 2.7 V			100		
		Any other				50		
I_{IL}	Low level input current	S input	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 0.5 V			−4		
		Any other				−2		
I_{OS}	Short circuit output current‡		V_{CC} = MAX	−40		−100	−40	
I_{CC}	Supply current	All outputs high	V_{CC} = MAX, See Note 1		44	68		36
		All outputs low			60	93		52
		All outputs off			64	99		56

*For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the applicable device type.
**All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C.
‡Not more than one output should be shorted at a time and duration of the short circuit test should not exceed one second.
NOTE 1: I_{CC} is measured with all outputs open and all possible inputs grounded while achieving the stated output conditions.

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C

PARAMETER	FROM (INPUT)	TO (OUTPUT)	TEST CONDITIONS	S54S257, N74S257 MIN	TYP	MAX	S54S258, N74S258 MIN	TYP	MAX
t_{PLH}	Data	Any	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 280 Ω, See Note 4		5	7.5		4	6
t_{PHL}					4.5	6.5		4	6
t_{PLH}	Select	Any			8.5			8	12
t_{PHL}					8.5			7.5	12
t_{ZH}	Output Control	Any			13	19.5		13	19.5
t_{ZL}					14	21		14	21
t_{HZ}	Output Control	Any	C_L = 5 pF, See Note 2		5.5	8.5		5.5	8.5
t_{LZ}					9	14		9	14

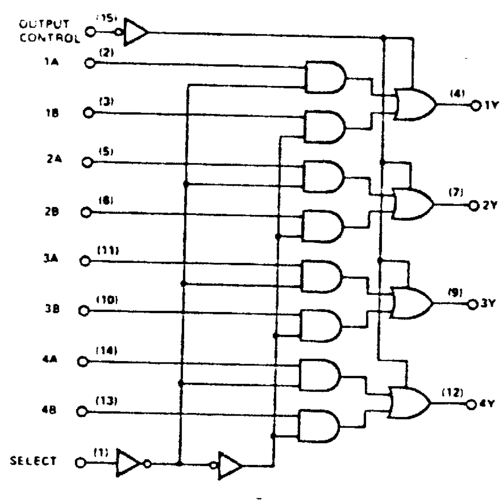
■ Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output
■ Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output
■ Output enable time to high level
■ Output enable time to low level
■ Output disable time from high level
■ Output disable time from low level
2: Load circuit and waveforms are shown on page 2-293

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

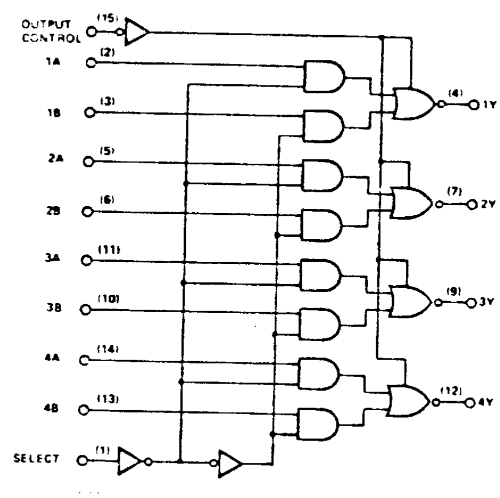
SIGNETICS QUADRUPLE 2-LINE TO 1-LINE ▪ S54S257, S54S258, N74S257, N74S258

FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAMS

S54S257, N74S257



S54S258, N74S258



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

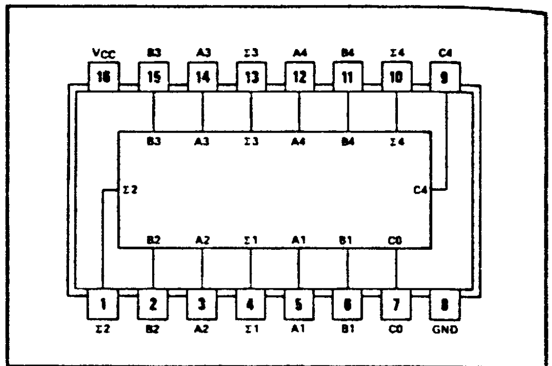
TTL MSI

TYPES SN54283, SN74283 4-BIT BINARY FULL ADDERS WITH FAST CARRY

BULLETIN NO. DL-S 7211832, DECEMBER 1972

- Full-Carry Look-Ahead across the Four Bits
- Typical Add or Subtract Times:
  23 ns (Two 8-bit Words)
  43 ns (Two 16-Bit Words)
- Systems Achieve Partial Look-Ahead Performance with the Economy of Ripple Carry
- Supply Voltage and Ground on Corner Pins to Simplify P-C Board Layout

J OR N DUAL-IN-LINE OR W FLAT PACKAGE (TOP VIEW)



positive logic: see SN5483A/SN7483A function table

description

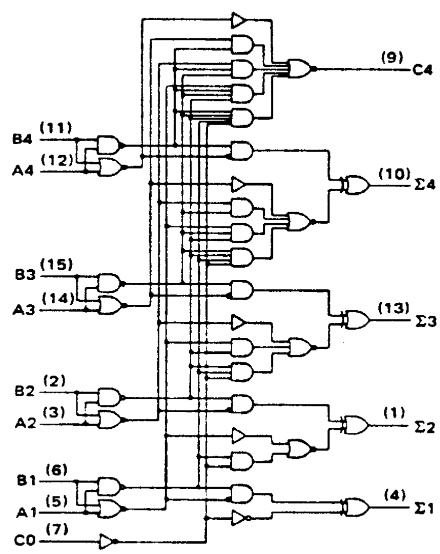
The SN54283 and SN74283 adders are electrically and functionally identical to the SN5483A and SN7483A, respectively. Only the arrangement of the terminals has been changed in the SN54283 and SN74283.

These improved 4-bit full adders/subtractors feature full look-ahead across four bits to generate the carry term in typically 10 nanoseconds. This capability provides the system designer with parital look-ahead performance at the economy and reduced package count of a ripple-carry implementation.

These full adders are designed so that levels of the input and output, including the carry, are in their true form. Thus the end-around carry is accomplished without the need for level inversion.

Power dissipation is typically 310 mW. Delay times through the package are 10 ns and 16 ns respectively from carry-in to carry-out and data-in to data-out. The SN54283 is characterized for operation over the full military temperature range of −55°C to 125°C. The SN74283 is characterized for 0°C to 70°C operation.

functional block diagram



function table and schematics of inputs and outputs

Same as SN5483A/SN7483A, see pages 198 and 199.

absolute maximum ratings over operating free-air temperature range (unless otherwise noted)

Supply voltage, V_{CC} (see Note 1)		7 V
Input voltage		5.5 V
Interemitter voltage (see Note 2)		5.5 V
Operating free-air temperature range:	SN54283	−55°C to 125°C
	SN74283	0°C to 70°C
Storage temperature range		−65°C to 150°C

NOTES: 1. Voltage values, except interemitter voltage, are with respect to network ground terminal.
2. This is the voltage between two emitters of a multiple-emitter transistor. For this circuit, this rating applies between the following pairs: A1 and B1, A2 and B2, A3 and B3, A4 and B4.

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS INCORPORATED
POST OFFICE BOX 5012 • DALLAS, TEXAS 75222

PRE-RELEASE

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

TYPES SN54283, SN74283
4-BIT BINARY FULL ADDERS WITH FAST CARRY

recommended operating conditions

		SN54283 MIN	SN54283 NOM	SN54283 MAX	SN74283 MIN	SN74283 NOM	SN74283 MAX	UNIT
Supply Voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
High-level output current, I_{OH}	Any output except C4			−800			−800	μA
	Output C4			−400			−400	μA
Low-level output current, I_{OL}	Any output except C4			16			16	mA
	Output C4			8			8	mA
Operating free-air temperature, T_A		−55		125	0		70	°C

electrical characteristics over recommended operating free-air temperature range (unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER			TEST CONDITIONS†		SN54283 MIN	SN54283 TYP‡	SN54283 MAX	SN74283 MIN	SN74283 TYP‡	SN74283 MAX	UNIT
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage				2			2			V
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage						0.8			0.8	V
V_I	Input clamp voltage		V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = −12 mA				−1.5			−1.5	V
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage		V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OH} = MAX		2.4	3.6		2.4	3.6		V
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage		V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OL} = MAX			0.2	0.4		0.2	0.4	V
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage		V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5.5 V				1			1	mA
I_{IH}	High-level input current		V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 2.4 V				40			40	μA
I_{IL}	Low-level input current		V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 0.4 V				−1.6			−1.6	mA
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current§	Any output except C4	V_{CC} = MAX		−20		−55	−18		−55	mA
		Output C4			−20		−70	−18		−70	mA
I_{CC}	Supply current		V_{CC} = MAX, Outputs open	All B low, other inputs at 4.5 V		56			56		mA
				All inputs at 4.5 V		66	99		66	110	mA

†For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the applicable device type.
‡All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C.
§Only one output should be shorted at a time.

switching characteristics, V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C

PARAMETER¶	FROM (INPUT)	TO (OUTPUT)	TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
t_{PLH}	C0	Any Σ	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 400 Ω, See Note 3		14	21	ns
t_{PHL}					12	21	
t_{PLH}	A_i or B_i	Σ_i			16	24	ns
t_{PHL}					16	24	
t_{PLH}	C0	C4	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 780 Ω, See Note 3		9	14	ns
t_{PHL}					11	16	
t_{PLH}	A_i or B_i	C4			9	14	ns
t_{PHL}					11	16	

¶t_{PLH} ≡ Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output
t_{PHL} ≡ Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output
NOTE 3: Load circuit and voltage waveforms are shown on page 148.

PRINTED IN U.S.A.

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
INCORPORATED
POST OFFICE BOX 5012 • DALLAS, TEXAS 75222

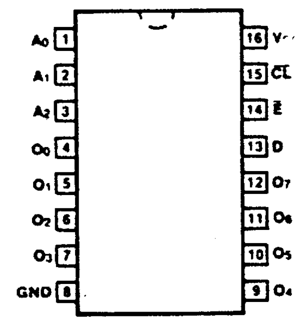
9334
93L34

8-BIT ADDRESSABLE LATCH

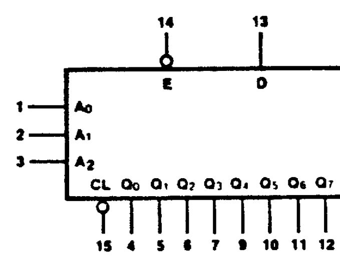
DESCRIPTION — The '34 is an 8-bit addressable latch designed for general purpose storage applications in digital systems. It is a multifunctional device capable of storing single line data in eight addressable latches, and being a one-of-eight decoder and demultiplexer with active level HIGH outputs. The device also incorporates an active LOW common clear for resetting all latches, as well as, an active LOW enable.

- SERIAL TO PARALLEL CAPABILITY
- EIGHT BITS OF STORAGE WITH OUTPUT OF EACH BIT AVAILABLE
- RANDOM (ADDRESSABLE) DATA ENTRY
- ACTIVE HIGH DEMULTIPLEXING OR DECODING CAPABILITY
- EASILY EXPANDABLE
- COMMON CONDITIONAL CLEAR

CONNECTION DIAGRAMS
PINOUT A



LOGIC SYMBOL



V_{CC} = Pin 16
GND = Pin 8

ORDERING CODE: See Section 9

PKGS	PIN OUT	COMMERCIAL GRADE $V_{CC} = +5.0\ V \pm 5\%$, $T_A = 0°C$ to $+70°C$	MILITARY GRADE $V_{CC} = +5.0\ V \pm 10\%$, $T_A = -55°C$ to $+125°C$	PKG TYPE
Plastic DIP (P)	A	9334PC, 93L34PC		9B
Ceramic DIP (D)	A	9334DC, 93L34DC	9334DM, 93L34DM	6B
Flatpak (F)	A	9334FC, 93L34FC	9334FM, 93L34FM	4L

INPUT LOADING/FAN-OUT: See Section 3 for U.L. definitions

PIN NAMES	DESCRIPTION	93XX (U.L.) HIGH/LOW	93L (U.L.) HIGH/LOW
$A_0 - A_3$	Address Inputs	1.0/1.0	0.5/0.25
D	Data Input	1.0/1.0	0.5/0.25
$\overline{E}$	Enable Input (Active LOW)	1.5/1.5	0.75/0.38
$\overline{CL}$	Clear Input (Active LOW)	1.0/1.0	0.5/0.25
$Q_0 - Q_7$	Parallel Latch Outputs	18/6.0	10/5.0 (3.0)

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION — The '34 has four modes of operation which are shown in the Mode Select Table. In the addressable latch mode, data on the data line (D) is written into the addressed latch. The addressed latch will follow the Data input with all non-addressed latches remaining in their previous states. In the memory mode, all latches remain in their previous state and are unaffected by the data or address inputs. To eliminate the possibility of entering erroneous data into the latches, the Enable should be held HIGH while the Address lines are changing. In the 1-of-8 decoding or demultiplexing mode, the addressed output will follow the state of the D input with all other outputs in the LOW state. In the clear mode all outputs are LOW and unaffected by the address and data inputs. When operating the '34 as an addressable latch, changing more than one bit of the address could impose a transient wrong address. Therefore, this should only be done while in the memory mode.

MODE SELECT TABLE

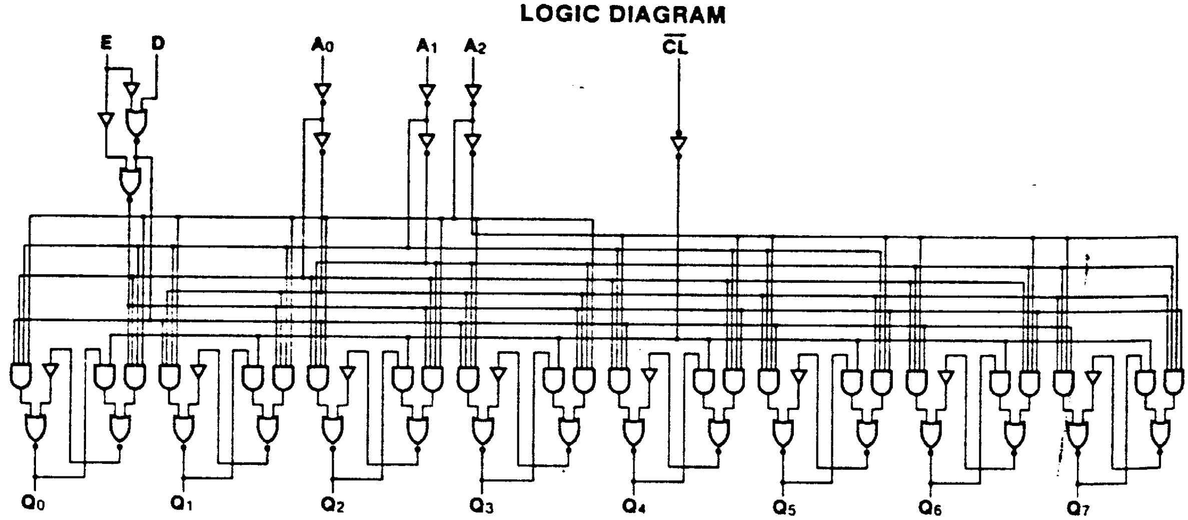
$\overline{E}$	$\overline{CL}$	MODE
L	H	Addressable Latch
H	H	Memory
L	L	Active HIGH 8-Channel Demultiplexer
H	L	Clear

TRUTH TABLE

INPUTS					OUTPUTS								MODE
$\overline{CL}$	$\overline{E}$	A_0	A_1	A_2	Q_0	Q_1	Q_2	Q_3	Q_4	Q_5	Q_6	Q_7	
L	H	X	X	X	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	Clear
L	L	L	L	L	D	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	Demultiplex
L	L	H	L	L	L	D	L	L	L	L	L	L	
L	L	L	H	L	L	L	D	L	L	L	L	L	
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
L	L	H	H	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	D	
H	H	X	X	X	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Memory
H	L	L	L	L	D	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Addressable Latch
H	L	H	L	L	Q_{t-1}	D	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	
H	L	L	H	L	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	D	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
H	L	H	H	H	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	D	

H = HIGH Voltage Level L = LOW Voltage Level X = Immaterial Q_{t-1} = Previous Output State

LOGIC DIAGRAM



DC CHARACTERISTICS OVER OPERATING TEMPERATURE RANGE (unless otherwise specified)

SYMBOL	PARAMETER		93XX Min	93XX Max	93L Min	93L Max	UNITS	CONDITIONS
I_{CC}	Power Supply Current	XM		86		21	mA	V_{CC} = Max
		XC		86		26		

AC CHARACTERISTICS: V_{CC} = +5.0 V, T_A = +25°C (See Section 3 for waveforms and load configurations)

SYMBOL	PARAMETER	93XX C_L = 15 pF Min	93XX C_L = 15 pF Max	93L C_L = 15 pF Min	93L C_L = 15 pF Max	UNITS	CONDITIONS
t_{PLH} t_{PHL}	Propagation Delay $\overline{E}$ to Q_n		23 24		45 42	ns	Figs. 3-1, 3-9
t_{PLH} t_{PHL}	Propagation Delay D to Q_n		28 24		65 45	ns	Figs. 3-1, 3-5
t_{PLH} t_{PHL}	Propagation Delay A_n to Q_n		35 35		66 66	ns	Figs. 3-1, 3-20
t_{PHL}	Propagation Delay $\overline{CL}$ to Q_n		40		55	ns	Figs. 3-1, 3-10

AC OPERATING REQUIREMENTS: V_{CC} = +5.0 V, T_A = +25°C

SYMBOL	PARAMETER	93XX Min	93XX Max	93L Min	93L Max	UNITS	CONDITIONS
t_s (H)	Setup Time HIGH, D to $\overline{E}$	20		45		ns	Fig. 3-13
t_h (H)	Hold Time HIGH, D to $\overline{E}$	0		-5.0		ns	
	Setup Time LOW, D to $\overline{E}$	17		45		ns	
t_h (L)	Hold Time LOW, D to $\overline{E}$	0		-7.0		ns	
t_s (H) t_s (L)	Setup Time HIGH or LOW A_n to $\overline{E}$	5.0 5.0		10 10		ns	Fig. 3-21
t_w (L)	$\overline{E}$ Pulse Width LOW	17		26		ns	
t_w (L)	$\overline{CL}$ Pulse Width LOW			35		ns	Fig. 3-17

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

DESCRIPTION

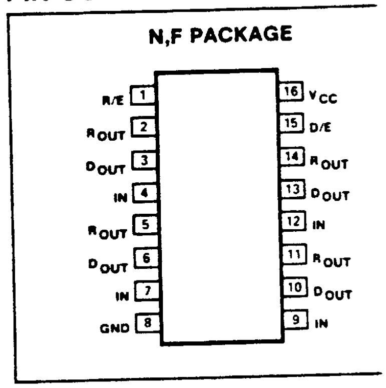
The 8T26A/28 consists of four pairs of 3-State logic elements configured as Quad Bus Drivers/Receivers along with separate buffered receiver enable and driver enable lines. This single IC Quad Transceiver design distinguishes the 8T26A/28 from conventional multi-IC implementations. In addition, the 8T26/28's ultra high speed while driving heavy bus capacitance (300pF) makes these devices particularly suitable for memory systems and bidirectional data buses.

Both the Driver and Receiver gates have 3-State outputs and low-current PNP inputs 3-State outputs provide the high switching speeds of totempole TTL circuits while offering the bus capability of open collector gates. PNP inputs reduce input loading to 200μA maximum.

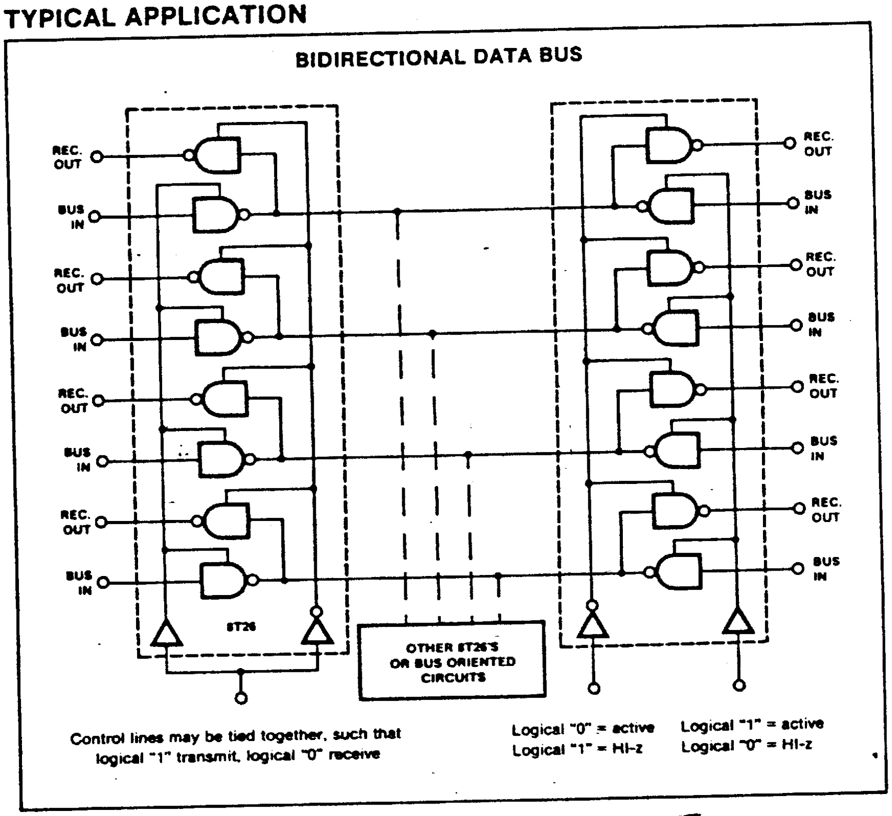
APPLICATIONS

- **Half-duplex data transmission**
- **Memory interface buffers**
- **Data routing in bus oriented systems**
- **High current drivers**
- **MOS/CMOS-to-TTL interface**

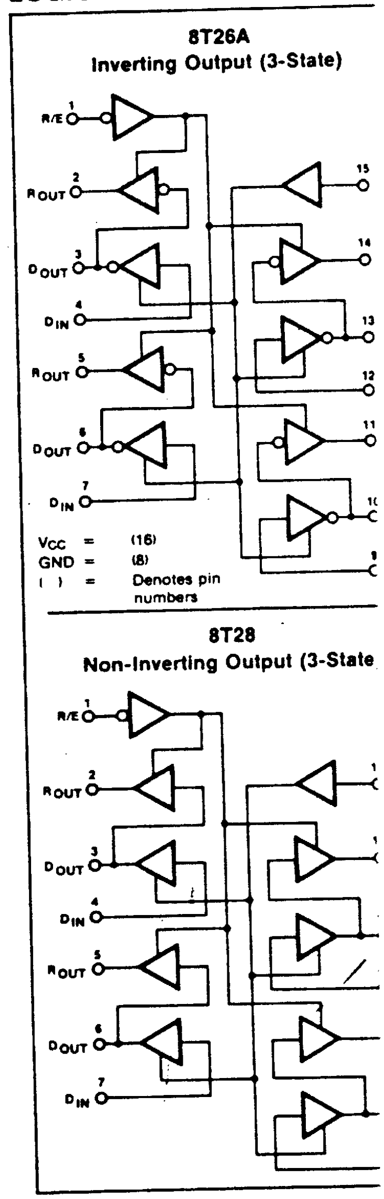
PIN CONFIGURATION



TYPICAL APPLICATION



LOGIC DIAGRAM



signetics

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

	PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	8T26A Min	8T26A Typ	8T26A Max	8T28 Min	8T28 Typ	8T28 Max	UNIT
	Input voltage								
V_{IL}	Low			N/A			N/A		
V_{IH}	High			N/A			N/A		
V_{IC}	Clamp	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{IN} = -12mA			-1.0			-1.0	V
	Output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN							
V_{OL}	Low								
	Drive	I_{OL} = 48mA			0.5			0.5	V
	Receive	I_{OL} = 20mA			0.5			0.5	V
	Input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_{IN} = 0.4V							
I_{IL}	Low								
	Drive (low level)				-200			-200	mA
	Disabled (low level)				-25			-25	mA
	Receive				-200			-200	mA

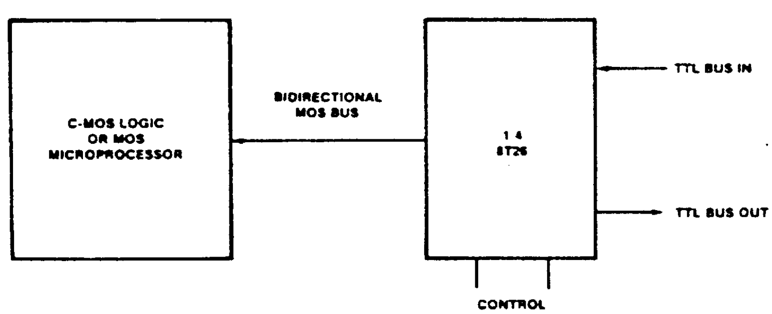
NOTE
Output sink current is supplied through a resistor to ground.

AC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

	PARAMETER	TO	FROM	TEST CONDITIONS	8T26A Min	8T26A Typ	8T26A Max	8T28 Min	8T28 Typ	8T28 Max	UNIT
	Propagation delay										
t_{ON}		R_{OUT}	D_{OUT}	C_L = 30pF			14			17	ns
		D_{OUT}	D_{IN}	C_L = 300pF			14			17	ns
t_{OFF}		R_{OUT}	D_{OUT}	C_L = 30pF			14			17	ns
		D_{OUT}	D_{IN}	C_L = 300pF			14			17	ns
	Data enable to data output			C_L = 300pF							
t_{PZL}		0	High Z				25			28	ns
t_{PZL}		High Z	0				20			23	ns
	Receive enable to receive output			C_L = 30pF							
t_{PZL}		0	High Z				20			23	ns
t_{PLZ}		High Z	0				15			18	ns

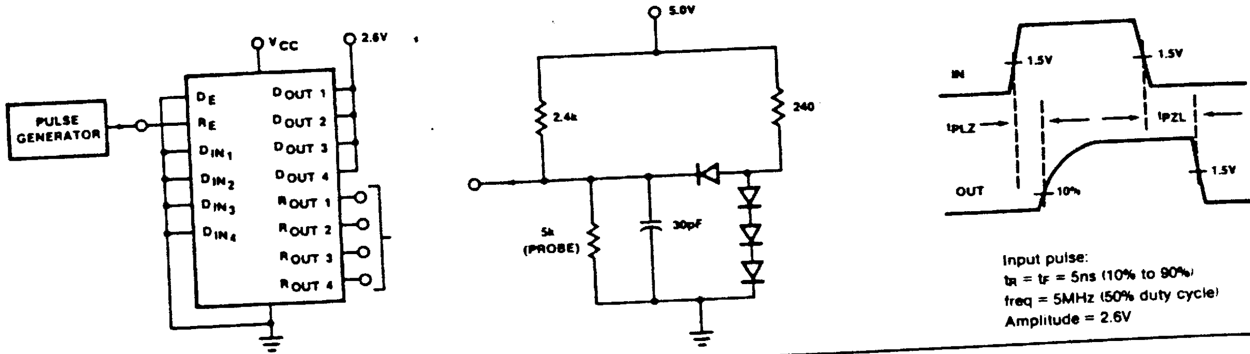
TYPICAL APPLICATION

BIDIRECTIONAL MOS
CMOS to TTL Interface

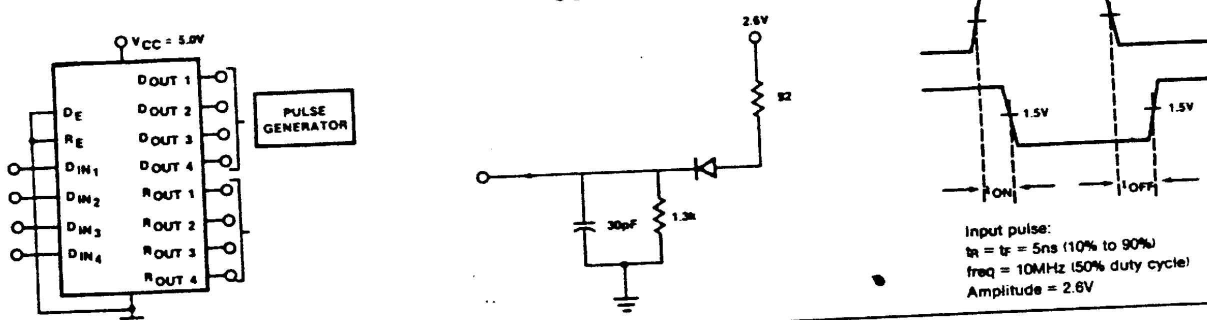


AC TEST CIRCUITS AND WAVEFORMS

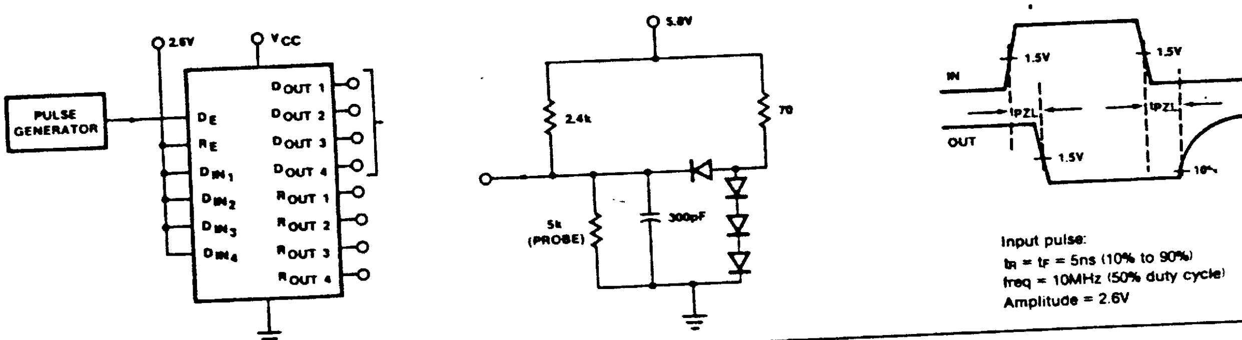
PROPAGATION DELAY
RECEIVE ENABLE TO RECEIVE OUTPUT



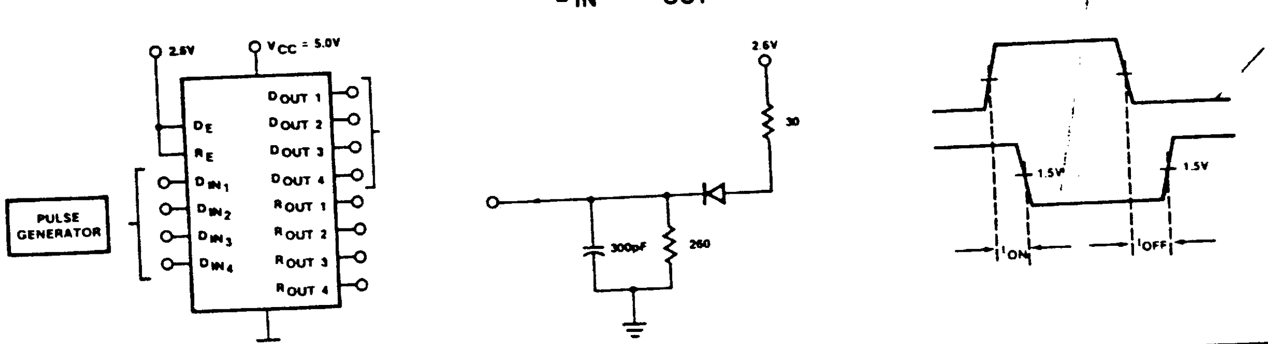
D_{OUT} TO R_{OUT}



DATA ENABLE TO DATA OUTPUT



D_{IN} TO D_{OUT}



8T95 8T96 8T97 8T98

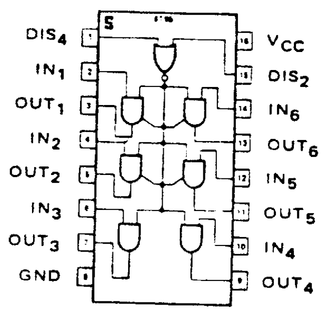
SPECIFICATION

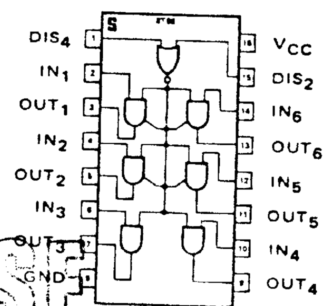
DIGITAL 8T SERIES INTERFACE TTL/MSI

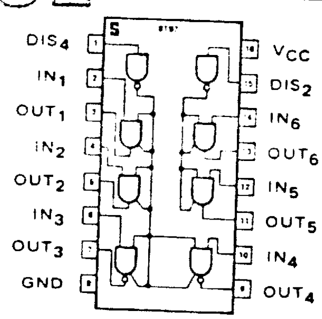
... of the Tri-State Bus Interface Elements described ... has low current PNP inputs and is designed with ... TTL technology for ultra high speed. The devices ... to convert TTL/DTL or MOS/CMOS to tri-state ... bus levels. For maximum systems flexibility the 8T95 and 8T97 do so without logic inversion, whereas, the 8T96 and 8T98 provide the logical complement of the input. The ... and 8T96 feature a common control line for all six ..., whereas, the 8T97 and 8T98 have control lines for ... devices from one input and two from another input.

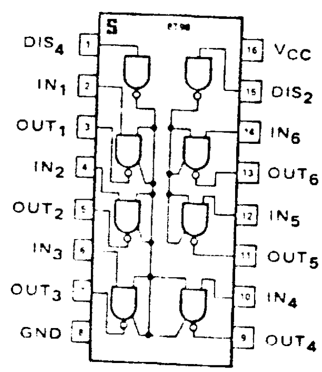
(Top View)

B, F PACKAGES









FEATURES

- LOW CURRENT PNP INPUTS (400μA)
- HIGH SPEED SHOTTKY TTL DESIGN (TYP. 8ns)
- TTL-DTL, MOS/CMOS COMPATIBLE
- LOW POWER DISSIPATION
  - 8T95/97 TYP. 325mW
  - 8T96/98 TYP. 295mW
- HIGH SPEED REPLACEMENTS FOR
  - DM 8095 = 8T95
  - DM 8096 = 8T96
  - DM 8097 = 8T97
  - DM 8098 = 8T98

8T95

DISABLE DIS_1	INPUT DIS_2	INPUT	OUTPUT
0	0	0	0
0	0	1	1
0	1	x	H-z
1	0	x	H-z
1	1	x	H-z

8T96

DISABLE DIS_1	INPUT DIS_2	INPUT	OUTPUT
0	0	0	1
0	0	1	0
0	1	x	H-z
1	0	x	H-z
1	1	x	H-z

8T97			
DISABLE DIS4	INPUT DIS2	INPUT	OUTPUT
0	0	0	0
0	0	1	1
x	1	x	H-z*
1	x	x	H-z**

8T98			
DISABLE DIS4	INPUT DIS2	INPUT	OUTPUT
0	0	0	1
0	0	1	0
x	1	x	H-z*
1	x	x	H-z**

*Output 5-6 only **Output 1-4 only x = Irrelevant

Over Recommended Voltage and Temperature Range

CHARACTERISTIC	LIMITS MIN.	TYP.	MAX.	UNITS	TEST CONDITIONS		NOTES
"1" Input Voltage	2.0			V	V_{CC} = Min T_A = 25°C		
"0" Input Voltage			0.8	V	V_{CC} = Min T_A = 25°C		
"1" Output Voltage	2.4			V	V_{CC} = Min, I_0 = −5.2 mA		6
"0" Output Voltage			0.5	V	I_{out} = 48 mA		7
State Input Current			−40	μA	V_{CC} = Max	V_{in} = 0.5V, DIS = 2.0V	
State Output Current			40	μA	V_{CC} = Max	V_o = 2.4V	
			−40	μA		V_o = 0.5V	
"1" Input Current			40	μA	V_{CC} = Max	V_{in} = 2.4V	
"0" Input Current			−400	μA	V_{CC} = Max	V_{IN} = 0.5V, DIS = 0.5V	
Short Circuit Current	−40	−80	−115	mA	V_{CC} = Max	V_o = 0V	9, 10
Current (device) 8T95/97		65	98mA	mA	V_{CC} = Max		
8T96/98		59	89mA	mA			
Voltage Rating	5.5			V	I_{in} = 1 mA		
Clamp Voltage			−1.5	V	V_{CC} = Min	I_{in} = −12 mA	
V_{CC} Clamp Voltage			1.5	V	V_{CC} = 0V	I_o = 12 mA	

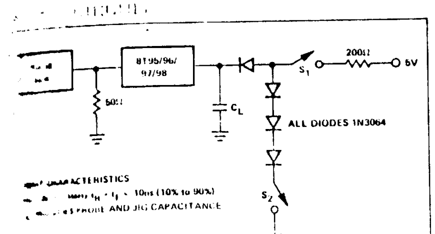
T_A = 25°C and V_{CC} = 5.0V

CHARACTERISTIC		LIMITS MIN.	TYP.	MAX.	UNITS	TEST CONDITIONS	NOTES
Propagation Delays (All Devices) Data Inputs to Data Outputs	t_{on}		5			See AC Test Figures	
	t_{off}		6				
Disable to Outputs Logic "1" to High Z	t_{PIH}		4		ns		
Logic "0" to High Z	t_{POH}		6		ns		
High Z to Logic "1"	t_{PHI}		10		ns		
High Z to Logic "0"	t_{PHO}		12		ns		

NOTES

1. All voltage measurements are referenced to the ground terminal. Terminals not specifically referenced are left electrically open.
2. All measurements are taken with ground pin tied to zero volts.
3. Positive current is defined as into the terminal referenced.
4. Positive logic definition: "UP" level = "1"; "DOWN" = "0".
5. Precautionary measures should be taken to ensure current limiting in accordance with Absolute Maximum Ratings should the isolation diodes become forward biased.
6. Output source current is supplied through a resist
7. Output sink current is supplied through a resis
8. Refer to AC Test Figures and Test Table.
9. V_{CC} = 5.25V.
10. Not more than one output should be shorted at a ti

PRE-RELEASE VERSION



	S_1	S_2
t_{on}	Closed	Closed
t_{off}	Closed	Closed
t_{0H}	Closed	Closed
t_{1H}	Closed	Closed
t_{H0}	Closed	Open

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

TIMER **555**

LINEAR INTEGRATED CIRCUITS

DESCRIPTION

The SE 555 monolithic timing circuit is a highly stable controller capable of producing accurate time delays, or oscillation. Additional terminals are provided for triggering or resetting if desired. In the time delay mode of operation, the time is precisely controlled by one external resistor and capacitor. For a stable operation as an oscillator, the free running frequency and the duty cycle are both accurately controlled with two external resistors and one capacitor. The circuit may be triggered and reset on falling waveforms, and the output structure can source or sink up to 200mA or drive TTL circuits.

FEATURES

- TIMING FROM MICROSECONDS THROUGH HOURS
- OPERATES IN BOTH ASTABLE AND MONOSTABLE MODES
- ADJUSTABLE DUTY CYCLE
- HIGH CURRENT OUTPUT CAN SOURCE OR SINK 200mA
- OUTPUT CAN DRIVE TTL
- TEMPERATURE STABILITY OF 0.005% PER °C
- NORMALLY ON AND NORMALLY OFF OUTPUT

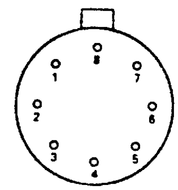
APPLICATIONS

- PRECISION TIMING
- PULSE GENERATION
- SEQUENTIAL TIMING
- TIME DELAY GENERATION
- PULSE WIDTH MODULATION
- PULSE POSITION MODULATION
- MISSING PULSE DETECTOR

PIN CONFIGURATIONS (Top View)

T PACKAGE

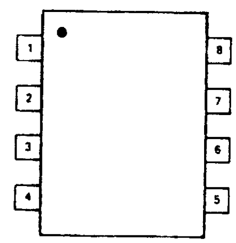
1. Ground
2. Trigger
3. Output
4. Reset



5. Control Voltage
6. Threshold
7. Discharge
8. V_{CC}

ORDER PART NOS. SE555T/NE555T

V PACKAGE

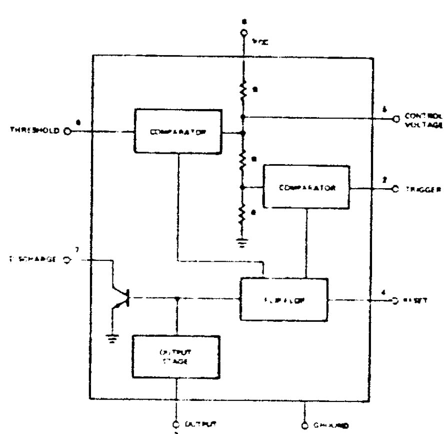


ORDER PART NOS. SE555V/NE555V

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Supply Voltage	+18V
Power Dissipation	600 mW
Operating Temperature Range	
NE555	0°C to +70°C
SE555	−55°C to +125°C
Storage Temperature Range	−65°C to +150°C
Lead Temperature (Soldering, 60 seconds)	+300°C

BLOCK DIAGRAM



NETICS TIMER ■ 555

SIGNETICS

CTRICAL ... ACTERISTICS $T_A = 25°C$, V_{CC} = +5V to +15 unless otherwise specified

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	SE 555 MIN	SE 555 TYP	SE 555 MAX	NE 555 MIN	NE 555 TYP	NE 555 MAX
Supply Voltage		4.5		18	4.5		16
Supply Current	V_{CC} = 5V $R_L = \infty$		3	5		3	6
	V_{CC} = 15V $R_L = \infty$		10	12		10	15
	Low State, Note 1						
Timing Error(Monostable)	R_A, R_B = 1KΩ to 100KΩ						
Initial Accuracy	C = 0.1 μF Note 2		0.5	2		1	
Drift with Temperature			30	100		50	
Drift with Supply Voltage			0.05	0.2		0.1	
Threshold Voltage			2/3			2/3	
Trigger Voltage	V_{CC} = 15V	4.8	5	5.2		5	
Timing Error(Astable)	V_{CC} = 5V	1.45	1.67	1.9		1.67	
Trigger Current			0.5			0.5	
Reset Voltage		0.4	0.7	1.0	0.4	0.7	1.0
Reset Current			0.1			0.1	
Threshold Current	Note 3		0.1	.25		0.1	.25
Control Voltage Level	V_{CC} = 15V	9.6	10	10.4	9.0	10	11
	V_{CC} = 5V	2.9	3.33	3.8	2.6	3.33	4
Output Voltage (low)	V_{CC} = 15V						
	I_{SINK} = 10mA		0.1	0.15		0.1	.25
	I_{SINK} = 50mA		0.4	0.5		0.4	.75
	I_{SINK} = 100mA		2.0	2.2		2.0	2.5
	I_{SINK} = 200mA		2.5			2.5	
	V_{CC} = 5V						
	I_{SINK} = 8mA		0.1	0.25			
	I_{SINK} = 5mA					.25	.35
Output Voltage Drop (low)							
	I_{SOURCE} = 200mA		12.5			12.5	
	V_{CC} = 15V						
	I_{SOURCE} = 100mA						
	V_{CC} = 15V	13.0	13.3		12.75	13.3	
	V_{CC} = 5V	3.0	3.3		2.75	3.3	
Rise Time of Output			100			100	
Fall Time of Output			100			100	

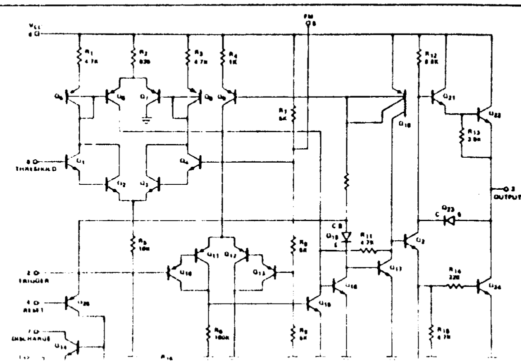
ES

...pply Current when output high typically 1mA less.

...sted at V_{CC} = 5V and V_{CC} = 15V

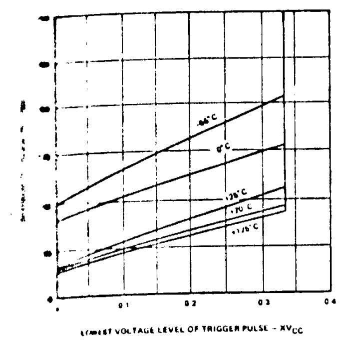
...is will determine the maximum value of $R_A + R_B$. For 15V operation, the max total R = 20 megohm.

...IVALENT CIRCUIT (Shown for One Side Only)

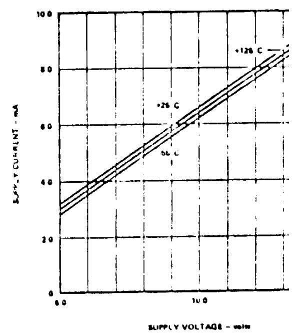


...ACTERISTICS

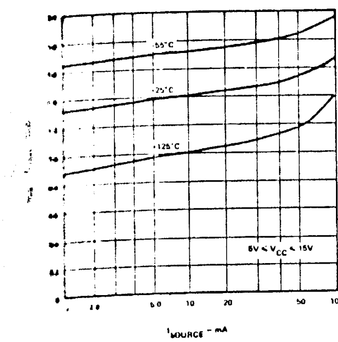
MINIMUM PULSE WIDTH REQUIRED FOR TRIGGERING



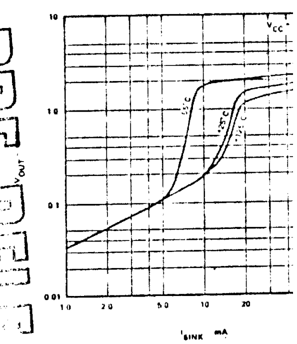
SUPPLY CURRENT vs SUPPLY VOLTAGE



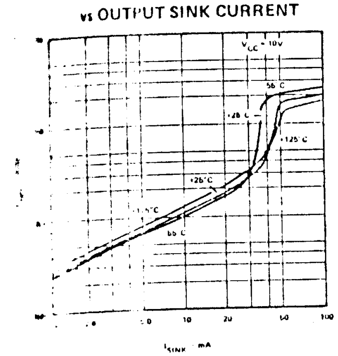
LOW OUTPUT VOLTAGE vs OUTPUT SINK CURRENT



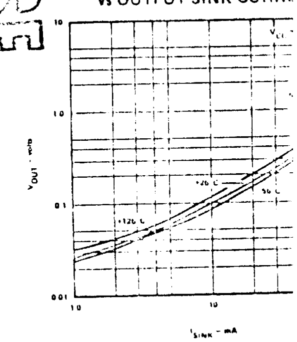
HIGH OUTPUT VOLTAG vs OUTPUT SOURCE CURRENT



LOW OUTPUT VOLTAGE vs OUTPUT SINK CURRENT



LOW OUTPUT VOLTAG vs OUTPUT SINK CURRE



DESCRIPTION

The SA/SE/NE558 and 559 Quad Timers are monolithic timing devices which can be used to produce four entirely independent timing functions. The 558 output sinks current whereas the 559 sources current. These highly stable, general purpose controllers can be used in a monostable mode to produce accurate time delays, from microseconds to hours. In the time delay mode of operation, the time is precisely controlled by one external resistor and one capacitor. Astable operation can be achieved by using two of the four timer sections.

The four timing sections in the 558 and 559 are edge triggered; therefore, when connected in tandem for sequential timing applications, no coupling capacitors are required. Output current capability of 100mA is provided in both devices.

FEATURES

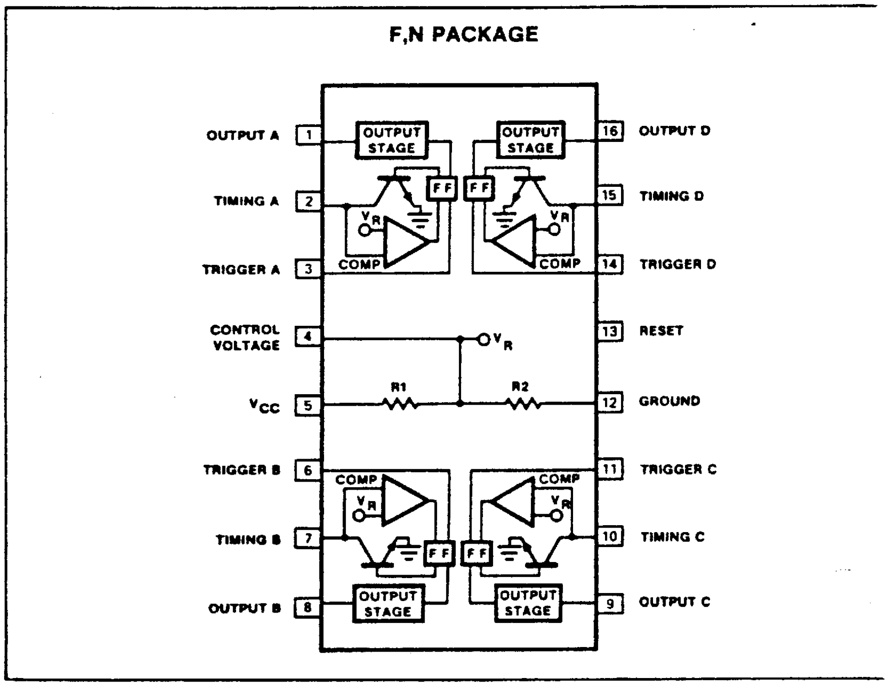
- **100mA output current per section**
- **Edge triggered (no coupling capacitor)**
- **Output independent of trigger conditions**
- **Wide supply voltage range 4.5V to 18V**
- **Timer intervals from microseconds to hours**
- **Time period equals RC**
- **Military qualifications pending**

APPLICATIONS

- **Sequential timing**
- **Time delay generation**
- **Precision timing**
- **Industrial controls**
- **Quad one-shot**

RE-RELEASE VERSION

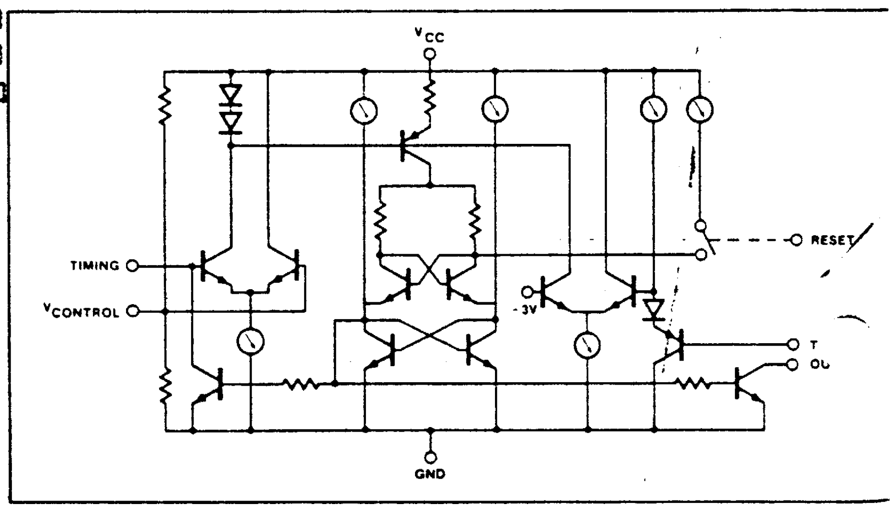
PIN CONFIGURATION



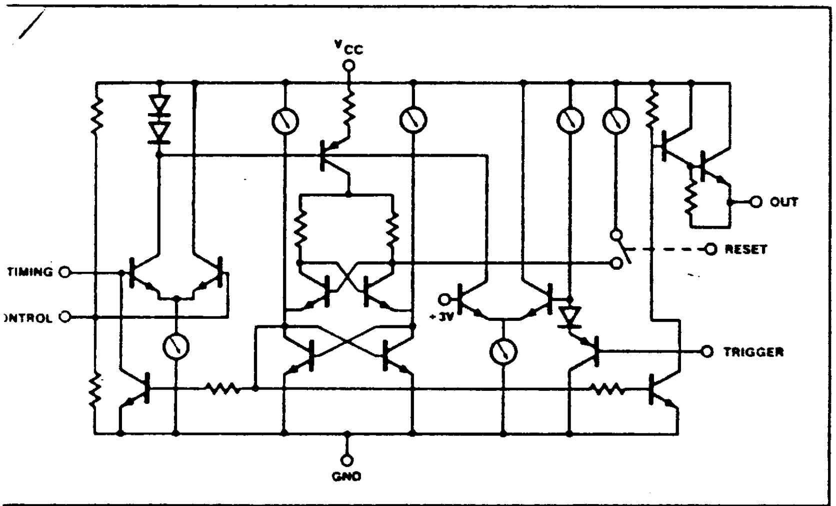
ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

PARAMETER	RATING	UNIT
Supply voltage		
SE558, SE559	+18	V
NE558, NE559	+16	V
SA558, SA559	+16	V
Power dissipation	1.25	W
Operating temperature range		
NE558, NE559	0 to +70	°C
SA558, SA559	-40 to +85	°C
SE558, SE559	-55 to +125	°C
Storage temperature range	-65 to +150	°C
Lead temperature (soldering, 60sec)	+300	°C

558 EQUIVALENT CIRCUIT



EQUIVALENT CIRCUIT



CTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

$T_A = 25°C$, V_{CC} = +5V to +15V unless otherwise specified.

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	SE558/SE559			NE558/NE559 SA558/SA559			UNIT
		Min	Typ	Max	Min	Typ	Max	
Supply voltage		4.5		18	4.5		16	V
Supply current (558) (559) ing accuracy (T = RC)	V_{CC} = Reset = 15V V_{CC} = Reset = 15V R = 2kΩ to 100kΩ C = 1μF		21 9	32 16		27 12	36 18	mA mA
Initial accuracy Drift with temperature Drift with supply voltage			1.0 150 0.1	3		2 150 0.1		% ppm/°C %/V
Trigger voltage[1] Trigger current	V_{CC} = 15V Trigger = 0V	0.8	1.5 5	2.4 30	0.8	1.5 5	2.4 100	V μA
Reset voltage[2] Reset current	 Reset	0.8	1.5 50	2.4 300	0.8	1.5 50	2.4	V μA
Threshold voltage Threshold leakage			0.63 15			0.63 15		xV_{CC} nA
Output voltage (558)[3]	I_L = 10mA I_L = 100mA		0.1 0.7	0.2 1.5		0.1 1.0	0.4 2.0	V V
Output voltage (559)[4]	I_L = 10mA I_L = 100mA	13 12.5	13.6 13.3		12.5 12.0	13.3 13.0		V V
Output leakage Propagation delay (558) (559)			10 1.0 0.4			10 1.0 0.4		nA μs μs
Risetime of output Falltime of output	I_L = 100mA I_L = 100mA		100 100			100 100		ns ns

s
trigger functions only on the falling edge of the trigger pulse only after previously ng high. After reset the trigger must be brought high and then low to implement gering.
reset below 0.8 volts, outputs set low and trigger inhibited. For reset above 2.4 s, trigger enabled.
558 output structure is open collector which requires a pull up resistor to V_{CC} to current. The output is normally low sinking current.
559 output structure is a darlington emitter follower which requires a pull down stor to ground to source current. The output is normally low and sources current when switched high.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

GENERAL PURPOSE OPERATIONAL AMPLIFIER μA741

LINEAR INTEGRATED CIRCUITS

DESCRIPTION

...A741 is a high performance operational amplifier with ... open loop gain, internal compensation, high common ... range and exceptional temperature stability. The ...41 is short-circuit protected and allows for nulling of ... voltage.

FEATURES

- INTERNAL FREQUENCY COMPENSATION
- SHORT CIRCUIT PROTECTION
- OFFSET VOLTAGE NULL CAPABILITY
- EXCELLENT TEMPERATURE STABILITY
- HIGH INPUT VOLTAGE RANGE
- NO LATCH-UP

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

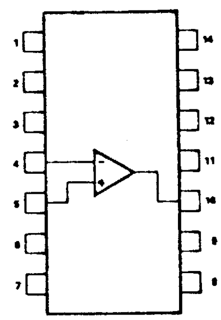
	μA741C	μA741
Supply Voltage	±18V	±22V
Internal Power Dissipation (Note 1)	500mW	500mW
Differential Input Voltage	±30V	±30V
Input Voltage (Note 2)	±15V	±15V
Voltage between Offset Null and V−	±0.5V	±0.5V
Operating Temperature Range	0°C to +70°C	-55°C to +125°C
Storage Temperature Range	-65°C to +150°C	-65°C to +150°C
Lead Temperature (Solder, 60 sec)	300°C	300°C
Output Short Circuit Duration (Note 3)	Indefinite	Indefinite

Notes

1. Rating applies for case temperatures to 125°C; derate linearly at ... mW/°C for ambient temperatures above +75°C.
2. For supply voltages less than ±15V, the absolute maximum input voltage is equal to the supply voltage.
3. Short circuit may be to ground or either supply. Rating applies to +125°C case temperature or +75°C ambient temperature.

PIN CONFIGURATIONS (TOP VIEW)

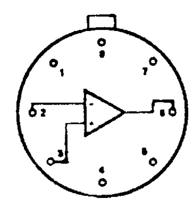
A PACKAGE



1. NC
2. NC
3. Offset Null
4. Inv. Input
5. Non-Inv. Input
6. V−
7. NC
8. NC
9. Offset Null
10. Output
11. V+
12. NC
13. NC
14. NC

ORDER PART NO. μA741CA

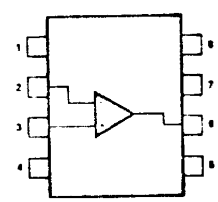
T PACKAGE



1. Offset Null
2. Inverting Input
3. Non-Inverting Input
4. V−
5. Offset Null
6. Output
7. V+
8. NC

ORDER PART NOS. μA741T/μA741CT

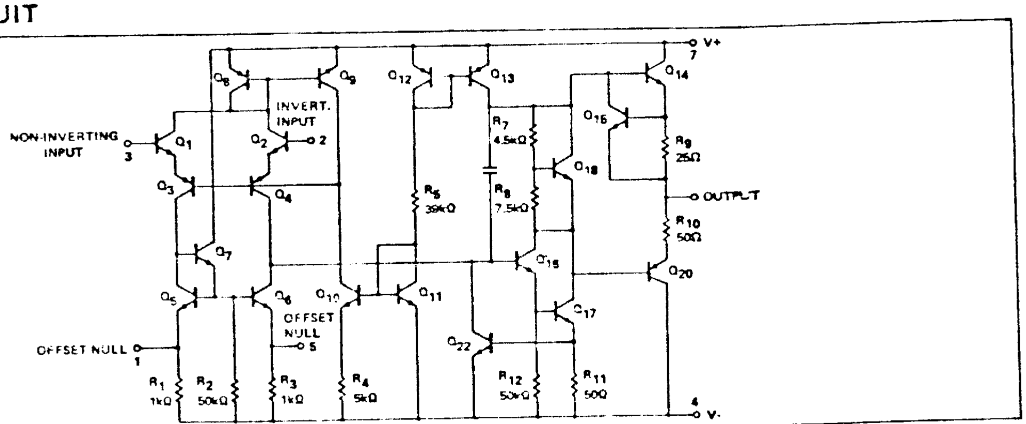
V PACKAGE



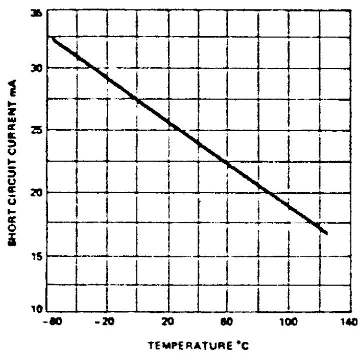
1. Offset Null
2. Inv. Input
3. Non-Inv. Input
4. V−
5. Offset Null
6. Output
7. V+
8. NC

ORDER PART NO. μA741CV

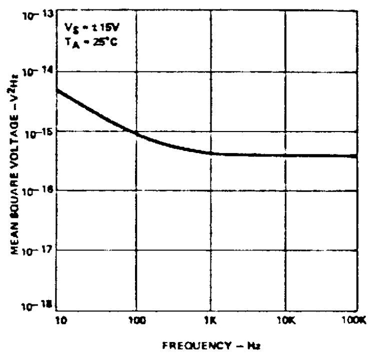
EQUIVALENT CIRCUIT



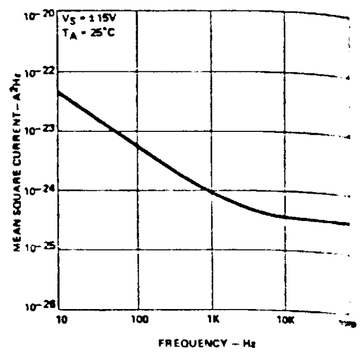
OUTPUT SHORT-CIRCUIT CURRENT AS A FUNCTION OF AMBIENT TEMPERATURE



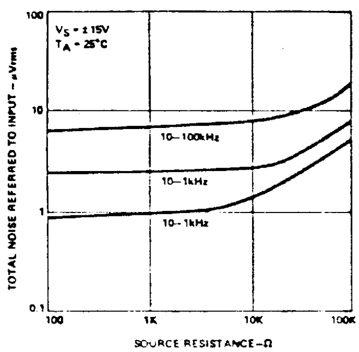
INPUT NOISE VOLTAGE AS A FUNCTION OF FREQUENCY



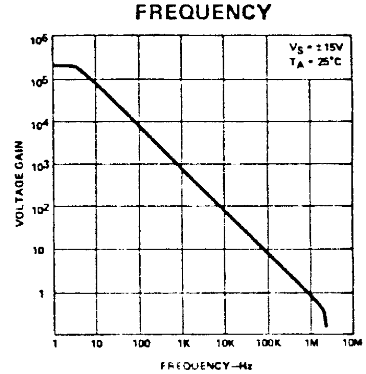
INPUT NOISE CURRENT AS A FUNCTION OF FREQUENCY



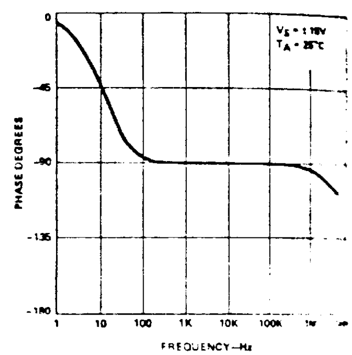
BROADBAND NOISE FOR VARIOUS BANDWIDTHS



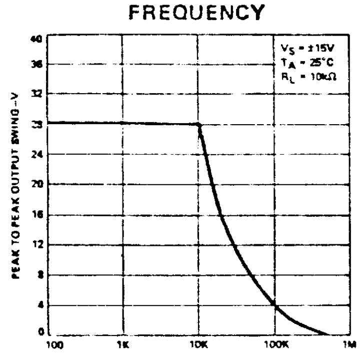
OPEN LOOP VOLTAGE GAIN AS A FUNCTION OF FREQUENCY



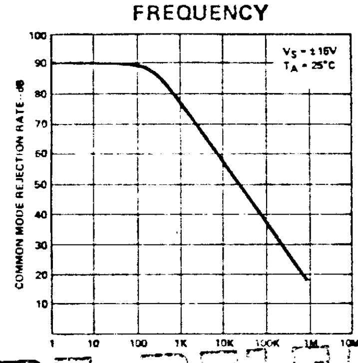
OPEN LOOP PHASE RESPONSE AS A FUNCTION OF FREQUENCY



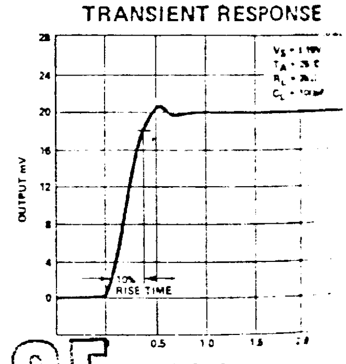
OUTPUT VOLTAGE SWING AS A FUNCTION OF FREQUENCY



COMMON MODE REJECTION RATIO AS A FUNCTION OF FREQUENCY



TRANSIENT RESPONSE



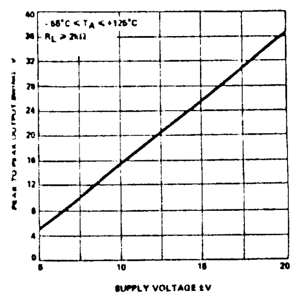
ERISTICS (V_S = ± T_A = 25°C unless otherwise specified)

	MIN.	TYP.	MAX.	UNITS	TEST CONDITIONS
µA741C					
		2.0	6.0	mV	$R_S < 10k\Omega$
		20	200	nA	
		80	500	nA	
	0.3	2.0		MΩ	
		1.4		pF	
inge		±15		mV	
	±12	±13		V	
io	70	90		dB	$R_S \le 10k\Omega$
io		10	150	µV/V	$R_S \le 10k\Omega$
	20,000	200,000			$R_L > 2k\Omega$, $V_{out} = \pm 10V$
	±12	±14		V	$R_L > 10k\Omega$
	±10	±13		V	$R_L > 2k\Omega$
		75		Ω	
		25		mA	
		1.4	2.8	mA	
		50	85	mW	
i)					$V_{in} = 20mV$, $R_L = 2k\Omega$, $C_L \le 100pF$
		0.3		µs	
		5.0		%	
		0.5		V/µs	$R_L > 2k\Omega$
pply					
			7.5	mV	
			300	nA	
			800	nA	
	15,000				$R_L > 2k\Omega$, $V_{out} = \pm 10V$
	±10	±13		V	$R_L > 2k\Omega$
µA741					
		1.0	5.0	mV	$R_S < 10k\Omega$
		10	200	nA	
		80	500	nA	
	0.3	2.0		MΩ	
		1.4		pF	
nge		±15		mV	
	50,000	200,000			$R_L > 2k\Omega$, $V_{out} = \pm 10V$
		75		Ω	
		25		mA	
		1.4	2.8	mA	
		50	85	mW	
)					$V_{in} = 20mV$, $R_L = 2k\Omega$, $C_L \le 100pF$
		0.3		µs	
		5.0		%	
		0.5		V/µs	$R_L > 2k\Omega$
ply					
		1.0	6.0	mV	$R_S < 10k\Omega$
		7.0	200	nA	$T_A = +125°C$
		20	500	nA	$T_A = -55°C$
		0.03	0.5	µA	$T_A = +125°C$
		0.3	1.5	µA	$T_A = -55°C$
	±12	±13		V	
	70	90		dB	$R_S \le 10k\Omega$
		10	150	µV/V	$R_S \le 10k\Omega$
	25,000				$R_L > 2k\Omega$, $V_{out} = \pm 10V$
	±12	±14		V	$R_L > 10k\Omega$
	±10	±13		V	$R_L > 2k\Omega$
		1.5	2.5	mA	$T_A = +125°C$
		2.0	3.3	mA	$T_A = -55°C$
		45	75	mW	$T_A = +125°C$
		45	100	mW	$T_A = -55°C$

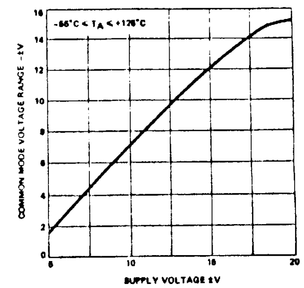
PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PICAL CHARA   RISTIC CURVES

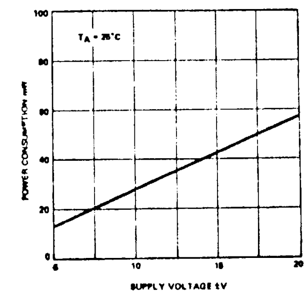
OUTPUT VOLTAGE SWING AS A FUNCTION OF SUPPLY VOLTAGE



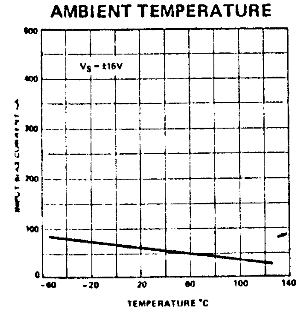
INPUT COMMON MODE VOLTAGE RANGE AS A FUNCTION OF SUPPLY VOLTAGE



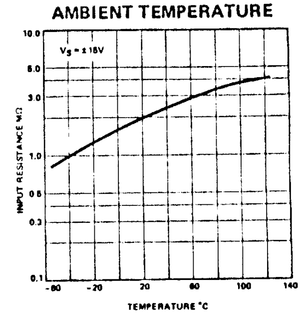
POWER CONSUMPTION AS A FUNCTION OF SUPPLY VOLTAGE



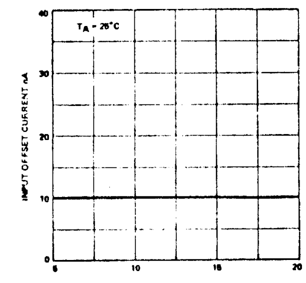
INPUT BIAS CURRENT AS A FUNCTION OF AMBIENT TEMPERATURE



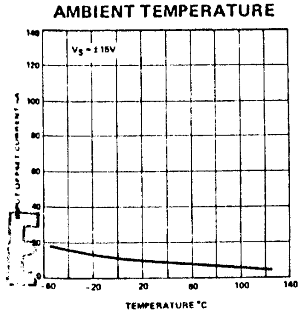
INPUT RESISTANCE AS A FUNCTION OF AMBIENT TEMPERATURE



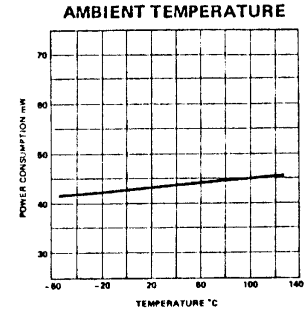
INPUT OFFSET CURRENT AS A FUNCTION OF SUPPLY VOLTAGE



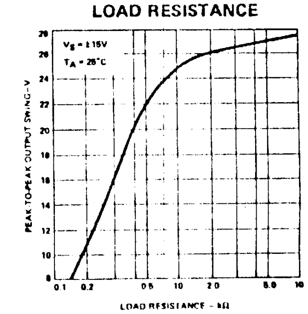
INPUT OFFSET CURRENT AS A FUNCTION OF AMBIENT TEMPERATURE



POWER CONSUMPTION AS A FUNCTION OF AMBIENT TEMPERATURE



OUTPUT VOLTAGE SWING AS A FUNCTION OF LOAD RESISTANCE



6-133

signetics

64X8X5 CHARACTER GENERATOR

SILICON GATE MOS 2500 SERIES

DESCRIPTION

The Signetics 2513 is a high speed 2560-bit Static ROM organized as 64x8x5. A standard 7x5 dot matrix fits well in the 2513. The product uses +5V, −5V and −12V power supplies, TTL level interface signals and Tri-State Outputs for direct, low cost interfacing with TTL, DTL, CMOS and 2500 Series MOS.

FEATURES

- 450 ns TYPICAL ACCESS TIME
- STATIC OPERATION
- TTL/DTL COMPATIBLE INPUTS
- +5, -5, -12V POWER SUPPLIES
- TRI-STATE OUTPUT CONTROLLED BY CHIP ENABLE FOR BUSSING CAPABILITY
- 2513/CM2140 ASCII FONT STANDARD (7 X 5)
- 24-PIN DIP
- P-MOS SILICON GATE TECHNOLOGY

APPLICATIONS

RASTER SCAN CRT DISPLAYS (ROW OUTPUT)
PRINTER CHARACTER GENERATOR
PANEL DISPLAYS AND BILLBOARDS
MICRO-PROGRAMMING
CODE CONVERSION

PROCESS TECHNOLOGY

The use of Signetics' P channel Silicon Gate Process allows the design and production of higher functional density and operating speed than other techniques.

SILICONE PACKAGING

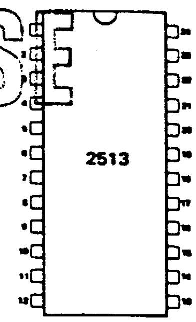
Low cost silicone DIP packaging is implemented and reliability is assured by the use of Signetics unique silicon gate MOS process technology. Unlike the standard metal gate MOS process the silicon material over the gate oxide passivates the MOS transistors. In addition, Signetics proprietary surface passivation and silicone packaging techniques result in an MOS circuit with inherent high reliability, superior moisture resistance, and ionic contamination barriers.

BIPOLAR COMPATIBILITY

All inputs of the 2513 can be driven directly by standard TTL voltage levels. The data output buffers are capable of sinking a minimum of 1.6 mA, sufficient to drive one standard TTL load.

PIN CONFIGURATION (Top View)

N/I PACKAGE



1. V_{GG}	24. V_{CC}
2. NC	23. NC
3. NC	22. Address 9
4. Out 1	21. Address 8
5. Out 2	20. Address 7
6. Out 3	19. Address 6
7. Out 4	18. Address 5
8. Out 5	17. Address 4
9. NC	16. Address 3
10. Ground	15. Address 2
11. Chip Enable	14. Address 1
12. V_{DD}	13. NC

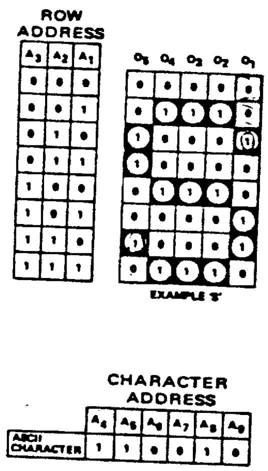
PART IDENTIFICATION TABLE

PART	ORGANIZATION	PROGRAM
2513N/I CM2140	64X8X5	ASCII Font
2513N/I CMXXXX	64X7X5 64X8X5	Custom

N PACKAGE = 24 PIN SILICONE DIP

I PACKAGE = 24 PIN CERAMIC DIP

CHARACTER FORMAT



MAXIMUM GUARANTEED RATINGS(1)

Operating Ambient Temperature	0°C to 70°C
Storage Temperature	-65°C to +150°C
Package Power Dissipation(2) @T_A 70°C	730mW
Input(3) and Supply Voltages with respect to V_{CC}	+0.3 to -20V

NOTES

1. Stresses above those listed under "Maximum Guaranteed Rating" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or at any other condition above those indicated in the operational sections of this specification is not implied.
2. For operating at elevated temperatures the device must be derated based on a +150°C maximum junction temperature and a thermal resistance of 110°C/W junction to ambient.
3. All inputs are protected against static charge.
4. Parameters are valid over operating temperature range unless specified.
5. All voltage measurements are referenced to ground.
6. Manufacturer reserves the right to make design and process changes and improvements.
7. Typical values are at +25°C and nominal supply voltages.
8. Guaranteed input levels are stated for worst case conditions including a ±5% variation in V_{CC} and a temperature variation of 0°C to +70°C. Actual input requirements with respect to V_{CC} are V_{IH} = V_{CC} - 1.85V and V_{IL} = V_{CC} - 4.15V.

CHARACTERISTICS

= 0°C to +70°C; V_{CC} = +5V ±5%; V_{DD} = −5V ±5%; V_{GG} = −12V ±5% unless otherwise noted. (Notes 4, 5, 6, 7)

SYMBOL	TEST	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT	CONDITIONS
I_{LI}	Input Load Current		10	500	nA	V_{IN} = -5.5V T_A = 25°C
I_{LO}	Output Leakage Current		10	1000	nA	V_{OUT} = -5.5V T_A = 25°C V_{CE} = V_{CC}
I_{DD}	V_{DD} Power Supply Current		12	15	mA	Outputs Open
I_{GG}	V_{GG} Power Supply Current		10	15	mA	Outputs Open V_{CE} = V_{CC}
V_{IL}	Input Logic "0"			+0.6	V	Note 8
V_{IH}	Input Logic "1"	+3.4		5.3	V	Note 8

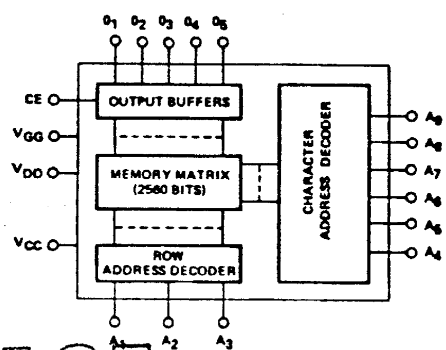
SIGNETICS 64 X 8 X 5 CHARACTER GENERATOR ■ 2513

AC CHARACTERISTICS

T_A = 0°C to +70°C; V_{CC} = 5V ±5%; V_{DD} = −5V ±5%; V_{GG} = −12V ±5%; unless otherwise noted.

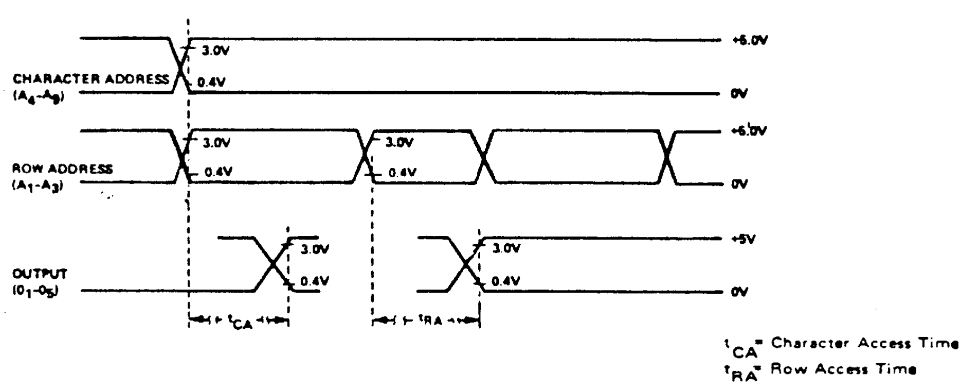
SYMBOL	TEST	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT	CONDITIONS
V_{OL}	Output Logic "Zero"	-5		0.4	V	One TTL Load
V_{OH}	Output Logic "One"	3.0			V	One TTL Load
t_{CA}(CM2140)	Character Access Time		500	600	ns	See AC Test Setup
t_{RA}	Row Access Time (A_1 – A_3)		450	500	ns	See AC Test Setup
t_{CE}	Chip Enable to Output		150		ns	
C_{IN}	Address Input Capacitance			10	pF	f = 1 MHz, V_{IH} = V_{CC}, 25mV p – p

BLOCK DIAGRAM



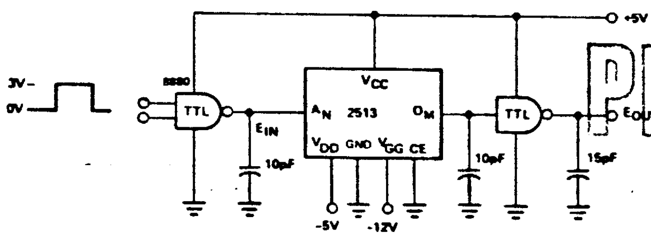
CE	OUTPUT
0	DATA
1	OPEN

TIMING DIAGRAM



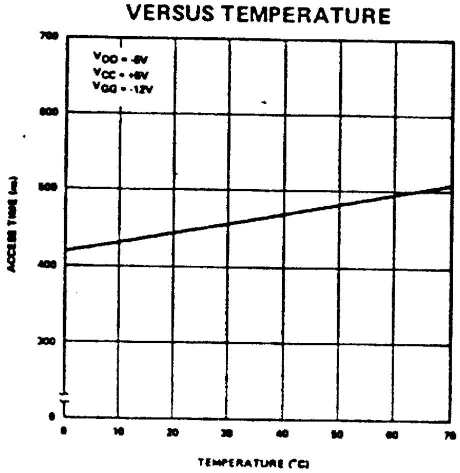
7-42

EST SETUP

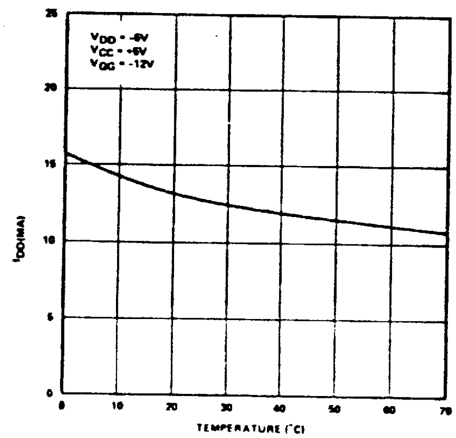


CAL CHARACTERISTIC CURVES

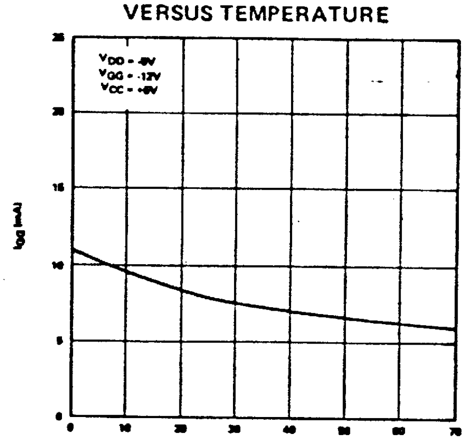
TYPICAL ACCESS TIME
VERSUS TEMPERATURE



V_{DD} POWER SUPPLY CURRENT
VERSUS TEMPERATURE

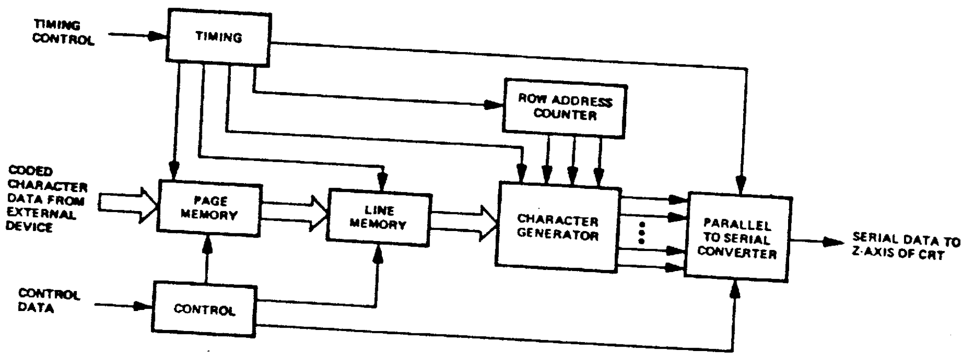


V_{GG} POWER SUPPLY CURRENT
VERSUS TEMPERATURE



SIGNETICS 64 X 8 X 5 CHARACTER GENERATOR ▪ 2513

APPLICATIONS INFORMATION

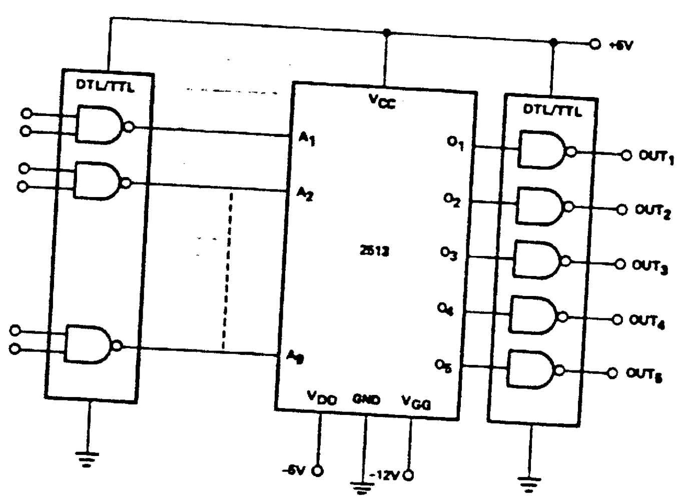


APPLICATION INFORMATION

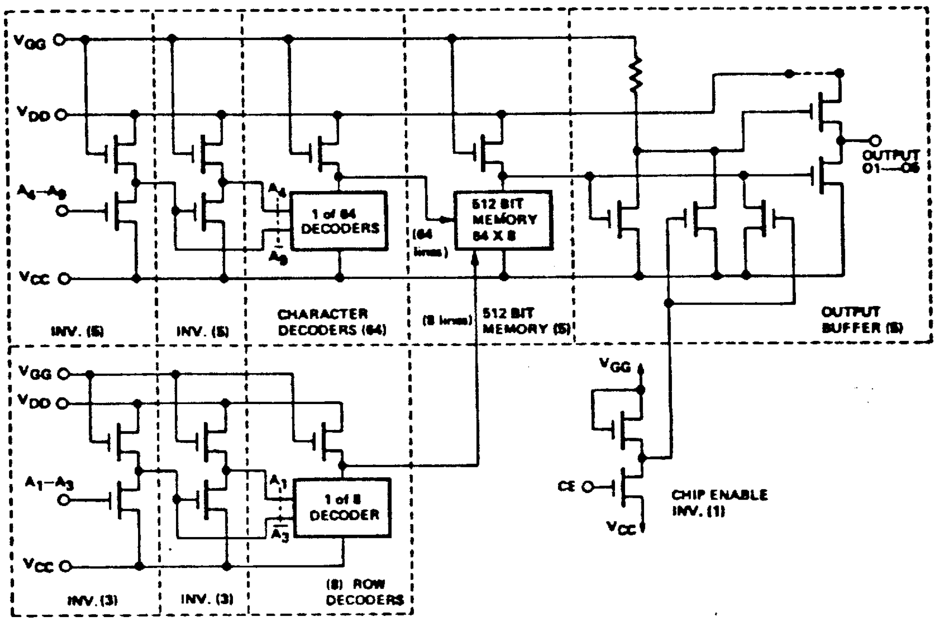
CHARACTER GENERATOR: The 2513 IS DESIGNED TO PROVIDE THE INFORMATION NEEDED TO CONVERT THE CHARACTER CODES INTO A DOT MATRIX FOR DISPLAY.
PAGE MEMORY: THIS MEMORY CONTAINS CHARACTER CODES. TYPICALLY, IT CONTAINS THE SAME NUMBER OF CHARACTER CODES AS THE NUMBER OF CHARACTERS ON A FULL SCREEN.
LINE MEMORY: THIS MEMORY CONTAINS THE CHARACTER CODES FOR ONE LINE OF THE CRT DISPLAY.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

DTL/TTL INTERFACING



OSS-SECTION



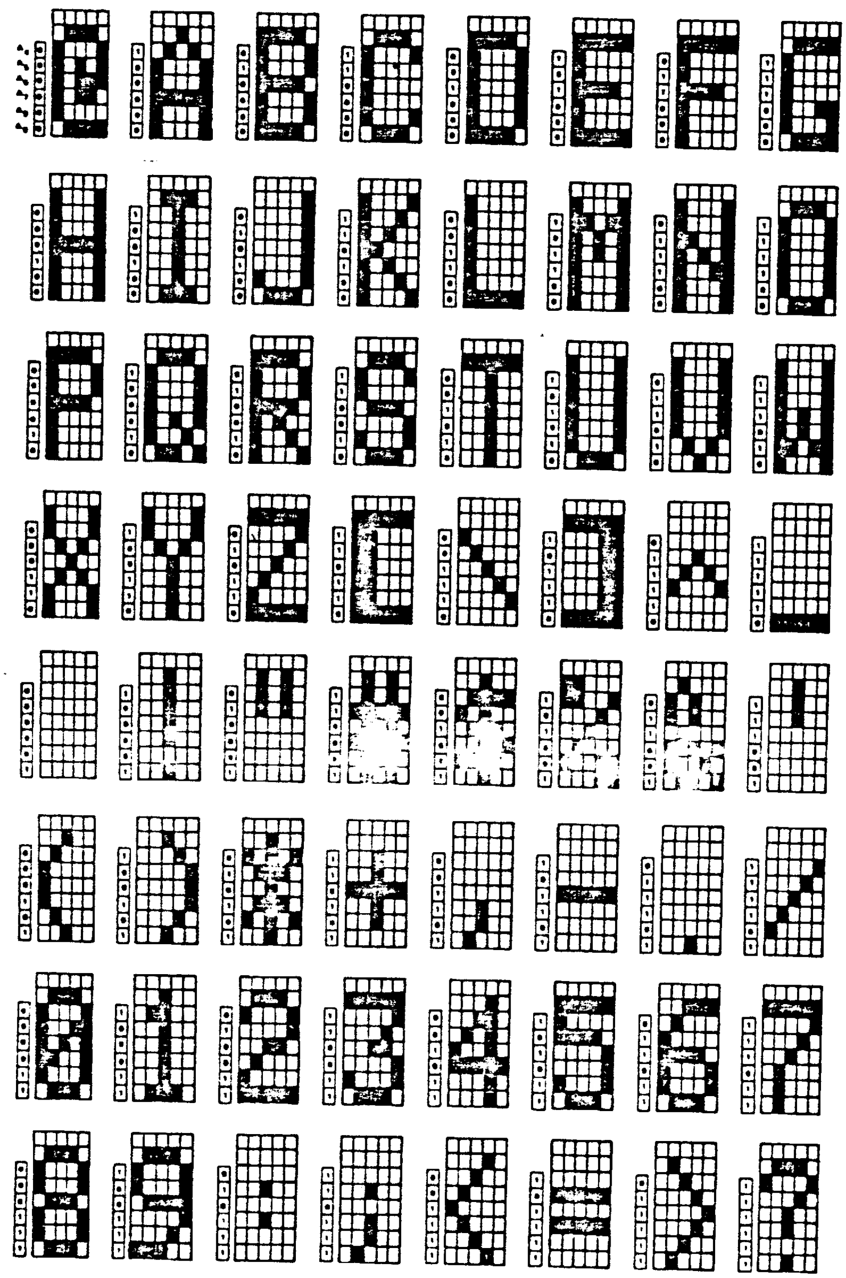
PRE-RELEASE VERSION

SIGNETICS 64 X 8 X 5 CHARACTER GENERATOR ■ 2513

ASCII CHARACTER FONT

2513N/CM2140

PRE-RELEASE VERSION



intel®

2316A/4316A/8316A*
16K (2K × 8) ROM

- Single +5 Volts Power Supply Voltage
- Guaranteed 850ns Access Time
- Directly TTL Compatible—All Inputs and Outputs
- Three Programmable Chip Select Inputs for Easy Memory Expansion
- Three-State Output—OR-Tie Capability
- Fully Decoded—On Chip Address Decode
- Inputs Protected—All Inputs Have Protection Against Static Charge

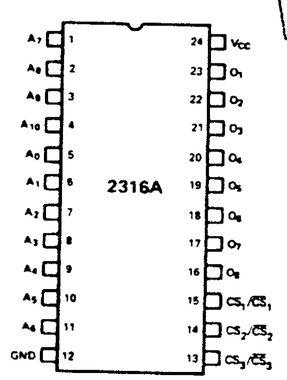
The Intel 2316A is a 16,384 bit static MOS read only memory organized as 2048 words by 8 bits. This ROM is designed for memory applications where high performance, large bit storage, and simple interfacing are important design objectives.

The inputs and outputs are fully TTL compatible. This device operates with a single +5V power supply. The three chip select inputs are programmable. Any combination of active high or low level chip select inputs can be defined by the designer and the desired chip select logic level is fixed during the masking process. These three programmable chip select inputs, as well as OR-tie compatibility on the outputs, facilitates easy memory expansion.

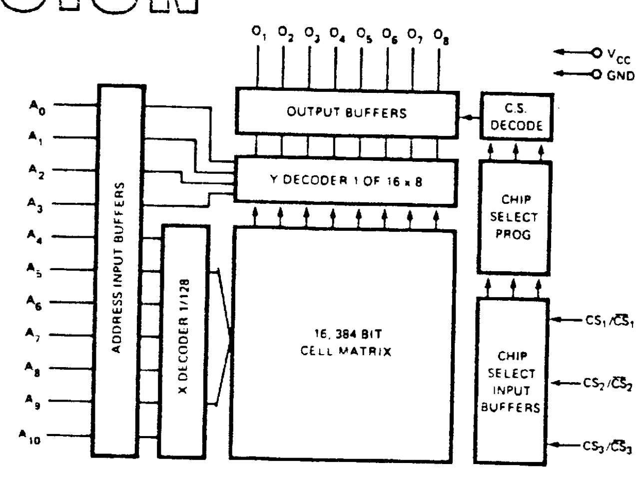
The 2316A read only memory is fabricated with N-channel silicon gate technology. This technology provides the designer with high performance, easy-to-use MOS circuits. Only a single +5V power supply is needed and all devices are directly TTL compatible.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PIN CONFIGURATION



BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN NAMES

A_0-A_{10}	ADDRESS INPUTS
O_1-O_8	DATA OUTPUTS
CS_1-CS_3	PROGRAMMABLE CHIP SELECT INPUTS

*All 4316A and 8316A specifications are identical to the 2316A specifications.

2316A

A.C. Characteristics

$T_A = 0°C$ to $+70°C$, $V_{CC} = +5V \pm 5\%$ unless otherwise specified

SYMBOL	PARAMETER	LIMITS			UNIT
		MIN.	TYP.[1]	MAX.	
t_A	Address to Output Delay Time		400	850	nS
t_{CO}	Chip Select to Output Enable Delay Time			300	nS
t_{DF}	Chip Deselect to Output Data Float Delay Time	0		300	nS

CONDITIONS OF TEST FOR A.C. CHARACTERISTICS

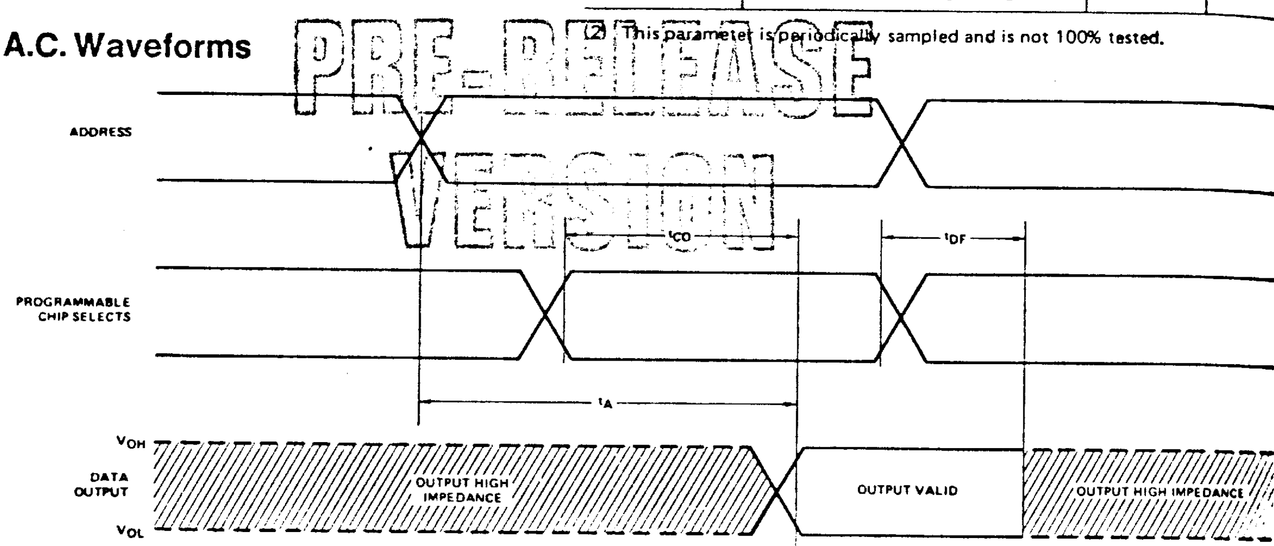
Output Load . . . 1 TTL Gate, and C_{LOAD} = 100 pF
Input Pulse Levels . . . . 0.8 to 2.0V
Input Pulse Rise and Fall Times . (10% to 90%) 20 nS
Timing Measurement Reference Level
Input 1.5V
Output . . . . 0.45V to 2.2V

CAPACITANCE[2] $T_A = 25°C, f = 1$ MHz

SYMBOL	TEST	LIMITS	
		TYP.	MAX.
C_{IN}	All Pins Except Pin Under Test Tied to AC Ground	4 pF	10 pF
C_{OUT}	All Pins Except Pin Under Test Tied to AC Ground	8 pF	15 pF

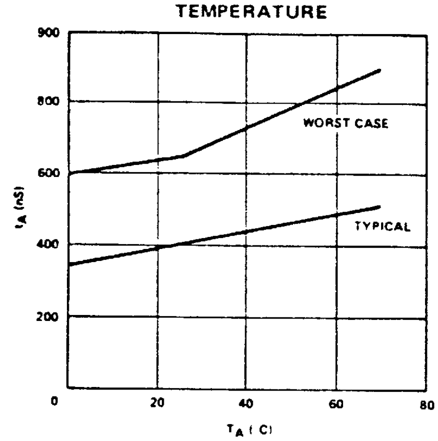
(2) This parameter is periodically sampled and is not 100% tested.

A.C. Waveforms

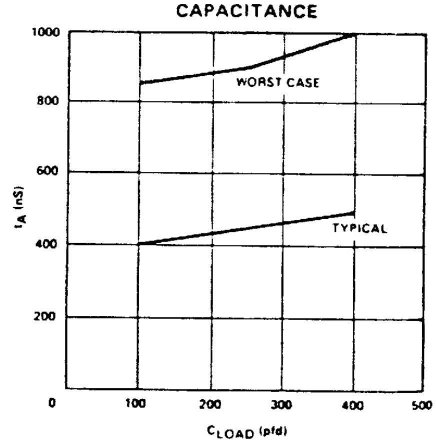


Typical A.C. Characteristics

ACCESS TIME VS. AMBIENT TEMPERATURE



ACCESS TIME VS. LOAD CAPACITANCE



2316A

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS*

Ambient Temperature Under Bias . . . . -10°C to 80°C
Storage Temperature . . . . -65°C to +150°C
Voltage On Any Pin With Respect
To Ground . . . . -0.5V to +7V
Power Dissipation . . . . 1.0 Watt

*COMMENT: Stresses above those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions above those indicated in the operational sections of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

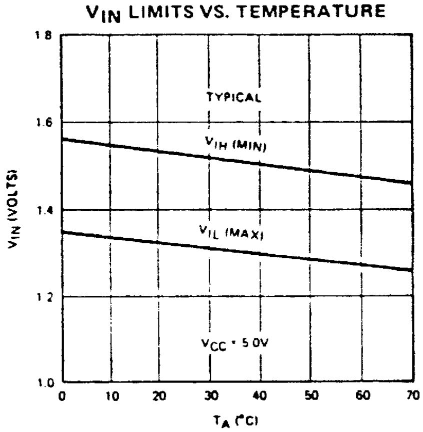
D.C. AND OPERATING CHARACTERISTICS $T_A = 0°C$ to $+70°C$, $V_{CC} = 5V \pm 5\%$ unless otherwise specified

SYMBOL	PARAMETER	LIMITS MIN.	TYP.(1)	MAX.	UNIT	TEST CONDITIONS
I_{LI}	Input Load Current (All Input Pins)		1	10	μA	V_{IN} = 0 to 5.25V
I_{LOH}	Output Leakage Current			10	μA	CS = 2.2V, V_{OUT} = 4.0V
I_{LOL}	Output Leakage Current			-20	μA	CS = 2.2V, V_{OUT} = 0.45V
I_{CC}	Power Supply Current		40	98	mA	All inputs 5.25V Data Out Open
V_{IL}	Input "Low" Voltage	-0.5		0.8	V	
V_{IH}	Input "High" Voltage	2.0		V_{CC}+1.0V	V	
V_{OL}	Output "Low" Voltage			0.45	V	I_{OL} = 2.0 mA
V_{OH}	Output "High" Voltage	2.2			V	I_{OH} = -100 μA

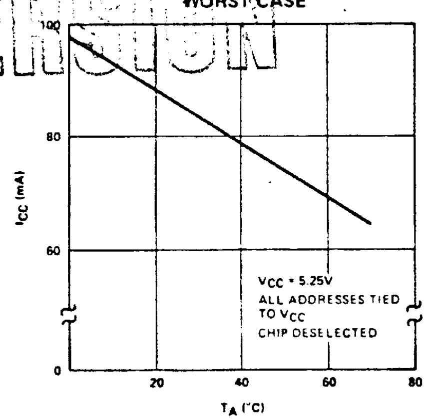
(1) Typical values for T_A = 25°C and nominal supply voltage.

TYPICAL D.C. CHARACTERISTICS

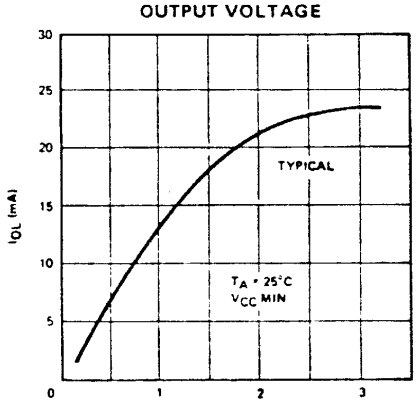
V_{IN} LIMITS VS. TEMPERATURE



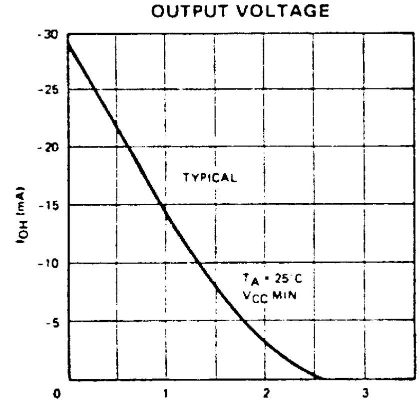
STATIC I_{CC} VS. AMBIENT TEMPERATURE WORST CASE



OUTPUT SINK CURRENT VS. OUTPUT VOLTAGE



OUTPUT SOURCE CURRENT VS. OUTPUT VOLTAGE



REV.	ZONE	ECO #	REVISION	APPD
A		655	INITIAL RELEASE	

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

This ENGINEERING RELEASE
This revision supersedes all previous versions.
Please destroy all old copies.
NOTICE OF PROPRIETARY PROPERTY
The information contained herein is the
proprietary property of Apple Computer, Inc.
The possessor agrees to the following:
(i) To maintain this document in confidence.
(ii) Not to reproduce or copy it.
(iii) Not to reveal or publish it in whole or part.

ENGINEERING SPECIFICATION

P/N 333-0001

DESCRIPTION: IC, Ram 16,384 X 1, 4116 type.

Part is to have a 200nS, or less access time (trac).

Specification Sheet of a typical RAM is to be filed under
Apple P/N 333-0001.

DRAWING NUMBER 333-0001-A SH 1 OF 13

TOLERANCES UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES. DECIMALS .X ± .XX ± .XXX ± ANGLES XX.X ± FRACTIONS ± DIMENSIONS IN PARENTHESIS ARE IN MILLIMETERS.	DRAWN BY C. Brown DATE 3-25-81	apple computer inc.
	CHECKED BY P. Baum DATE 3/31/81	TITLE IC, Ram, 16K, 200NS, WO/Logo, WO/burn-in
	APPROVED BY P. Baum DATE 4/1/81	
	RELEASED BY DATE 4/15/81	SIZE A / DRAWING NUMBER 333-0001-A
MATERIAL:		
NEXT ASSY. / FINISH:		SCALE: / SHEET 1 OF 13

PRE RELEASE VERSION

MOSTEK

16,384 X 1-BIT DYNAMIC RAM

MK4116(P/N)-2/3

FEATURES

- Recognized industry standard 16-pin configuration from MOSTEK
- 150ns access time, 375ns cycle (MK 4116-2)
  200ns access time, 375ns cycle (MK 4116-3)
- ± 10% tolerance on all power supplies (+12V, ±5V)
- Low power: 462mW active, 20mW standby (max)
- Output data controlled by $\overline{CAS}$ and unlatched at end of cycle to allow two dimensional chip selection and extended page boundary
- Common I/O capability using "early write" operation
- Read-Modify-Write, $\overline{RAS}$-only refresh, and Page-mode capability
- All inputs TTL compatible, low capacitance, and protected against static charge
- 128 refresh cycles
- ECL compatible on VBB power supply (-5.7V)

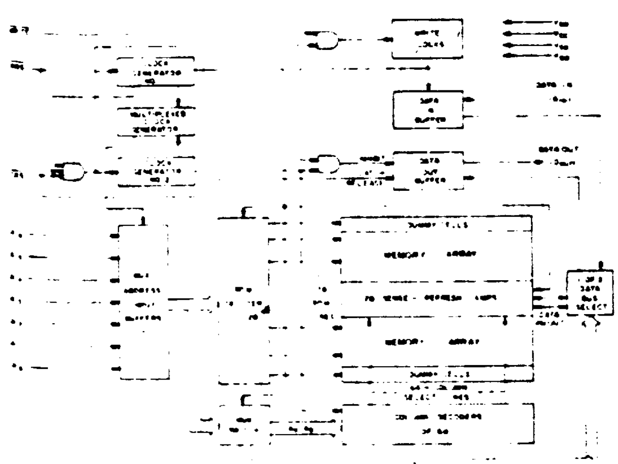
DESCRIPTION

The MK 4116 is a new generation MOS dynamic random access memory circuit organized as 16,384 words by 1 bit. As a state-of-the-art MOS memory device, the MK 4116 (16K RAM) incorporates advanced circuit techniques designed to provide wide operating margins, both internally and to the system user, while achieving performance levels in speed and power previously seen only in MOSTEK's high performance MK 4027 (4K RAM).

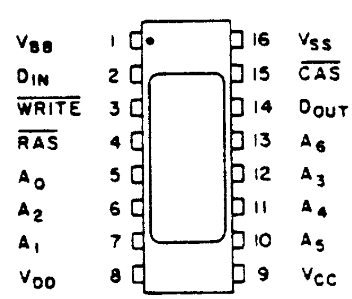
The technology used to fabricate the MK 4116 is MOSTEK's double-poly, N-channel silicon gate, POLY II® process. This process, coupled with the use of a single transistor dynamic storage cell, provides the maximum possible circuit density and reliability, while maintaining high performance capability. The use of dynamic circuitry throughout, including sense amplifiers, assures that power dissipation is minimized without any sacrifice in speed or operating margin. These factors combine to make the MK 4116 a truly superior RAM product.

Multiplexed address inputs (a feature pioneered by MOSTEK for its 4K RAMS) permits the MK 4116 to be packaged in a standard 16-pin DIP. This recognized industry standard package configuration, while compatible with widely available automated testing and insertion equipment, provides highest possible system bit densities and simplifies system upgrade from 4K to 16K RAMs for new generation applications. Non-critical clock timing requirements allow use of the multiplexing technique while maintaining high performance.

FUNCTIONAL DIAGRAM



PIN CONNECTIONS



PIN NAMES

A_0-A_6	ADDRESS INPUTS
$\overline{CAS}$	COLUMN ADDRESS STROBE
D_{IN}	DATA IN
D_{OUT}	DATA OUT
$\overline{RAS}$	ROW ADDRESS STROBE
$\overline{WRITE}$	READ/WRITE INPUT
V_{BB}	POWER (-5V)
V_{CC}	POWER (+5V)
V_{DD}	POWER (+12V)
V_{SS}	GROUND

P/N 333-

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS*

Voltage on any pin relative to V_{BB} . . . . −0.5V to +20V
Voltage on V_{DD}, V_{CC} supplies relative to V_{SS} . . . . −1.0V to +15.0V
$V_{BB}-V_{SS}$ ($V_{DD}-V_{SS}$ >0V) 0V
Operating temperature, T_A (Ambient) . . . . 0°C to + 70°C
Storage temperature (Ambient) Ceramic . . . . −55°C to + 150°C
Storage temperature, (Ambient) Plastic . . . . −55°C to +125°C
Short circuit output current 50mA
Power dissipation . . . . 1 Watt

*Stresses greater than those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions above those indicated in the operational sections of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect reliability.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

RECOMMENDED DC OPERATING CONDITIONS

(0°C ≤ T_A ≤ 70°C)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
Supply Voltage	V_{DD}	10.8	12.0	13.2	Volts	2
	V_{CC}	4.5	5.0	5.5	Volts	2,3
	V_{SS}	0	0	0	Volts	2
	V_{BB}	−4.5	−5.0	−5.7	Volts	2
Input High (Logic 1) Voltage, $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$, $\overline{WRITE}$	V_{IHC}	2.4	–	7.0	Volts	2
Input High (Logic 1) Voltage, all inputs except $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$ $\overline{WRITE}$	V_{IH}	2.2	–	7.0	Volts	2
Input Low (Logic 0) Voltage, all inputs	V_{IL}	−1.0	–	.8	Volts	2

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

(0°C ≤ TA ≤ 70°C) (VDD = 12.0V ± 10%; VCC = 5.0V ±10%; -5.7V ≤ VBB ≤ -4.5V; VSS = 0V)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MIN	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
OPERATING CURRENT Average power supply operating current ($\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$ cycling; t_{RC} = t_{RC} Min	I_{DD1} I_{CC1} I_{BB1}		35 200	mA μA	4 5
STANDBY CURRENT Power supply standby current ($\overline{RAS}$ = V_{IHC}, D_{OUT} = High Impedance)	I_{DD2} I_{CC2} I_{BB2}	−10	1.5 10 100	mA μA μA	
REFRESH CURRENT Average power supply current, refresh mode ($\overline{RAS}$ cycling, $\overline{CAS}$ = V_{IHC}; t_{RC} = t_{RC} Min	I_{DD3} I_{CC3} I_{BB3}	−10	25 10 200	mA μA μA	4
PAGE MODE CURRENT Average power supply current, page-mode operation ($\overline{RAS}$ = V_{IL}, $\overline{CAS}$ cycling; t_{PC} = t_{PC} Min	I_{DD4} I_{CC4} I_{BB4}		27 200	mA μA	4 5
INPUT LEAKAGE Input leakage current, any input (V_{BB} = −5V, 0V ≤ V_{IN} ≤ +7.0V, all other pins not under test = 0 volts)	$I_{I(L)}$	−10	10	μA	
OUTPUT LEAKAGE Output leakage current (D_{OUT} is disabled, 0V ≤ V_{OUT} ≤ +5.5V)	$I_{O(L)}$	−10	10	μA	
OUTPUT LEVELS Output high (Logic 1) voltage (I_{OUT} = −5mA)	V_{OH}	2.4		Volts	3
Output low (Logic 0) voltage (I_{OUT} = 4.2 mA)	V_{OL}		0.4	Volts	

NOTES:

1. T_A is specified here for operation at frequencies to $t_{RC} \geq t_{RC}$ (min). Operation at higher cycle rates with reduced ambient temperatures and higher power dissipation is permissible, however, provided AC operating parameters are met. See figure 1 for derating curve.
2. All voltages referenced to V_{SS}.
3. Output voltage will swing from V_{SS} to V_{CC} when activated with no current loading. For purposes of maintaining data in standby mode, V_{CC} may be reduced to V_{SS} without affecting refresh operations or data retention. However, the V_{OH} (min) specification is not guaranteed in this mode.
4. I_{DD1}, I_{DD3}, and I_{DD4} depend on cycle rate. See figures 2,3, and 4 for I_{DD} limits at other cycle rates.
5. I_{CC1} and I_{CC4} depend upon output loading. During readout of high level data V_{CC} is connected through a low impedance (135 Ω typ) to data out. At all other times I_{CC} consists of leakage currents only.

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS AND RECOMMENDED AC OPERATING CONDITIONS (6,7,8)

$(0°C \leq T_A \leq 70°C)^1$ (V_{DD} = 12.0V ± 10%; V_{CC} = 5.0V ±10%, V_{SS} = 0V, V_{BB} = −5.7V ≤ V_{BB} ≤ −4.5V)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MK 4116-2 MIN	MK 4116-2 MAX	MK 4116-3 MIN	MK 4116-3 MAX	UNITS	NOTES
Random read or write cycle time	t_{RC}	375		375		ns	9
Read-write cycle time	t_{RWC}	375		375		ns	9
Read modify write cycle time	t_{RMW}	320		405		ns	9
Page mode cycle time	t_{PC}	170		225		ns	9
Access time from $\overline{RAS}$	t_{RAC}		150		200	ns	10,12
Access time from $\overline{CAS}$	t_{CAC}		100		135	ns	11,12
Output buffer turn-off delay	t_{OFF}	0	40	0	50	ns	13
Transition time (rise and fall)	t_T	3	35	3	50	ns	8
$\overline{RAS}$ precharge time	t_{RP}	100		120		ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ pulse width	t_{RAS}	150	10,000	200	10,000	ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ hold time	t_{RSH}	100		135		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ hold time	t_{CSH}	150		200		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ pulse width	t_{CAS}	100	10,000	135	10,000	ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ to $\overline{CAS}$ delay time	t_{RCD}	20	50	25	65	ns	14
$\overline{CAS}$ to $\overline{RAS}$ precharge time	t_{CRP}	−20		−20		ns	
Row Address set-up time	t_{ASR}	0		0		ns	
Row Address hold time	t_{RAH}	20		25		ns	
Column Address set-up time	t_{ASC}	−10		−10		ns	
Column Address hold time	t_{CAH}	45		55		ns	
Column Address hold time referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{AR}	95		120		ns	
Read command set-up time	t_{RCS}	0		0		ns	
Read command hold time	t_{RCH}	0		0		ns	
Write command hold time	t_{WCH}	45		55		ns	
Write command hold time referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{WCR}	95		120		ns	
Write command pulse width	t_{WP}	45		55		ns	
Write command to $\overline{RAS}$ lead time	t_{RWL}	50		70		ns	
Write command to $\overline{CAS}$ lead time	t_{CWL}	50		70		ns	
Data-in set-up time	t_{DS}	0		0		ns	15
Data-in hold time	t_{DH}	45		55		ns	15
Data-in hold time referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{DHR}	95		120		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ precharge time (for page-mode cycle only)	t_{CP}	60		80		ns	
Refresh period	t_{REF}		2		2	ms	
$\overline{WRITE}$ command set-up time	t_{WCS}	-20		-20		ns	16
$\overline{CAS}$ to $\overline{WRITE}$ delay	t_{CWD}	60		80		ns	16
$\overline{RAS}$ to $\overline{WRITE}$ delay	t_{RWD}	110		145		ns	16

NOTES (Continued)

6. Several cycles are required after power-up before proper device operation is achieved. Any 8 cycles which perform refresh are adequate for this purpose.
7. AC measurements assume t_T = 5ns.
8. V_{IHC} (min) or V_{IH} (min) and V_{IL} (max) are reference levels for measuring timing of input signals. Also transition times are measured between V_{IHC} or V_{IH} and V_{IL}.

The specifications for t_{RC} (min), t_{RMW} (min) and t_{RWC} (min) are used only to indicate cycle time at which proper operation over the full temperature range (0°C ≤ T_A ≤ 70°C) is assured.

10. Assumes that $t_{RCD} \leq t_{RCD}$ (Max). If t_{RCD} is greater than the maximum recommended value shown in this table, t_{RAC} will increase by the amount that t_{RCD} exceeds the value shown.
11. Assumes that t_{RCD} ≥ t_{RCD} (max).
12. Measured with a load equivalent to 2 TTL loads and 100pF.
13. t_{OFF} (max) defines the time at which the output achieves the open circuit condition and is not referenced to output voltage levels.
14. Operation within the t_{RCD} (max) limit insures that t_{RAC} (max) can be met. t_{RCD} (max) is specified as a reference point only if t_{RCD} is greater than the specified t_{RCD} (max) limit, then access time is controlled exclusively by t_{CAC}.
15. These parameters are referenced to CAS leading edge in early write cycles and to WRITE leading edge in delayed write or read-modify-write cycles.
16. t_{WCS}, t_{CWD} and t_{RWD} are restrictive operating parameters in read write and read modify write cycles only. If $t_{WCS} \geq t_{WCS}$ (min), the cycle is an early write cycle and the data out pin will remain open circuit (high impedance) throughout the entire cycle. If $t_{CWD} \geq t_{CWD}$ (min) and $t_{RWD} \geq t_{RWD}$ (min), the cycle is a read-write cycle and the data out will contain data read from the selected cell. If neither of the above sets of conditions is satisfied the condition of the data out (at access time) is indeterminate.
17. Effective capacitance calculated from the equation C = [illegible] V with [illegible] 3 volts and power supplies at nominal levels.
18. CAS [illegible] V_{IHC} to disable DOUT.

123

AC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

($0°C \leq T_A \leq 70°C$) (V_{DD} = 12.0V ± 10%; V_{SS} = 0V; V_{BB} = -5.7V ≤ VBB ≤ -4.5V)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	TYP	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
Input Capacitance (A_0–A_6), D_{IN}	C_{I1}	4	5	pF	17
Input Capacitance $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$, $\overline{WRITE}$	C_{I2}	8	10	pF	17
Output Capacitance (D_{OUT})	C_O	5	7	pF	17,18

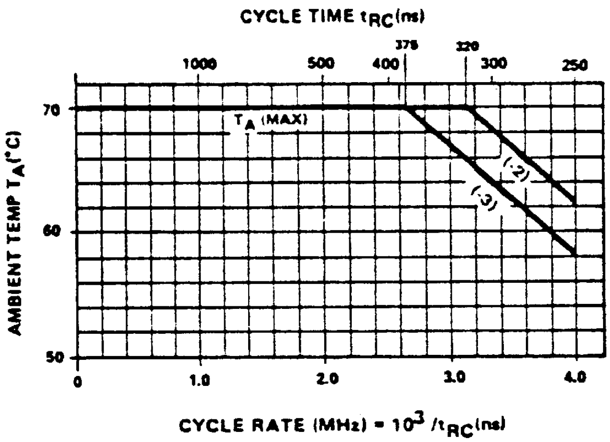


Fig. 1 Maximum ambient temperature versus cycle rate for extended frequency operation. T_A (max) for operation at cycling rates greater than 2.66 MHz (t_{CYC}<375ns) is determined by T_A (max)° C = 70–9.0 x (cycle rate MHz –2.66) for -3. T_A (max) °C = 70 – 9.0 x cycle rate MHz –3.125MHz) for -2 only.

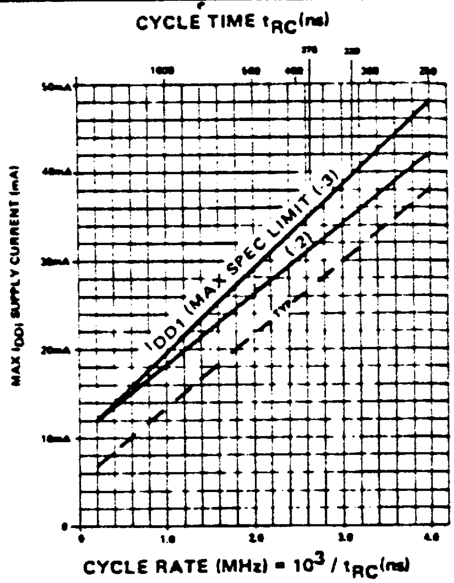


Fig. 2 Maximum I_{DD1} versus cycle rate for device operation at extended frequencies. I_{DD1} (max) curve is defined by the equation:

I_{DD1} (max) mA = 10 + 9.4 x cycle rate (MHz) for -3
I_{DD1} (max) mA = 10 + 8.0 x cycle rate (MHz) for -2

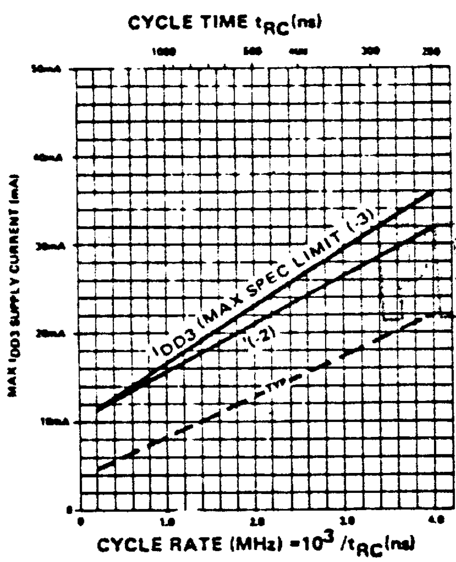


Fig. 3 Maximum I_{DD3} versus cycle rate for device operation at extended frequencies. I_{DD3} (max) curve is defined by the equation:

I_{DD3}(max) mA = 10 + 6.5 x cycle rate (MHz) for -3
I_{DD3}(max) mA = 10 + 5.5 x cycle rate (MHz) for -2

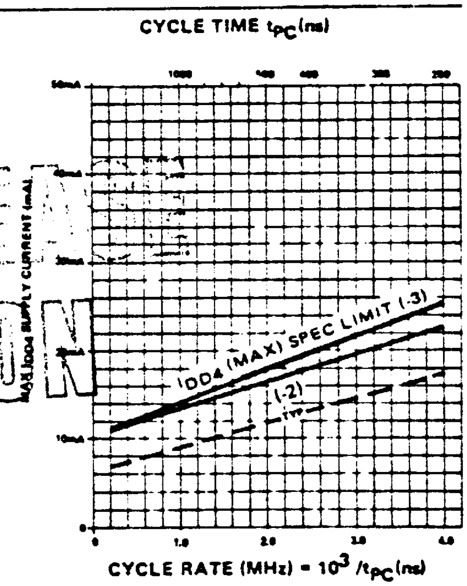
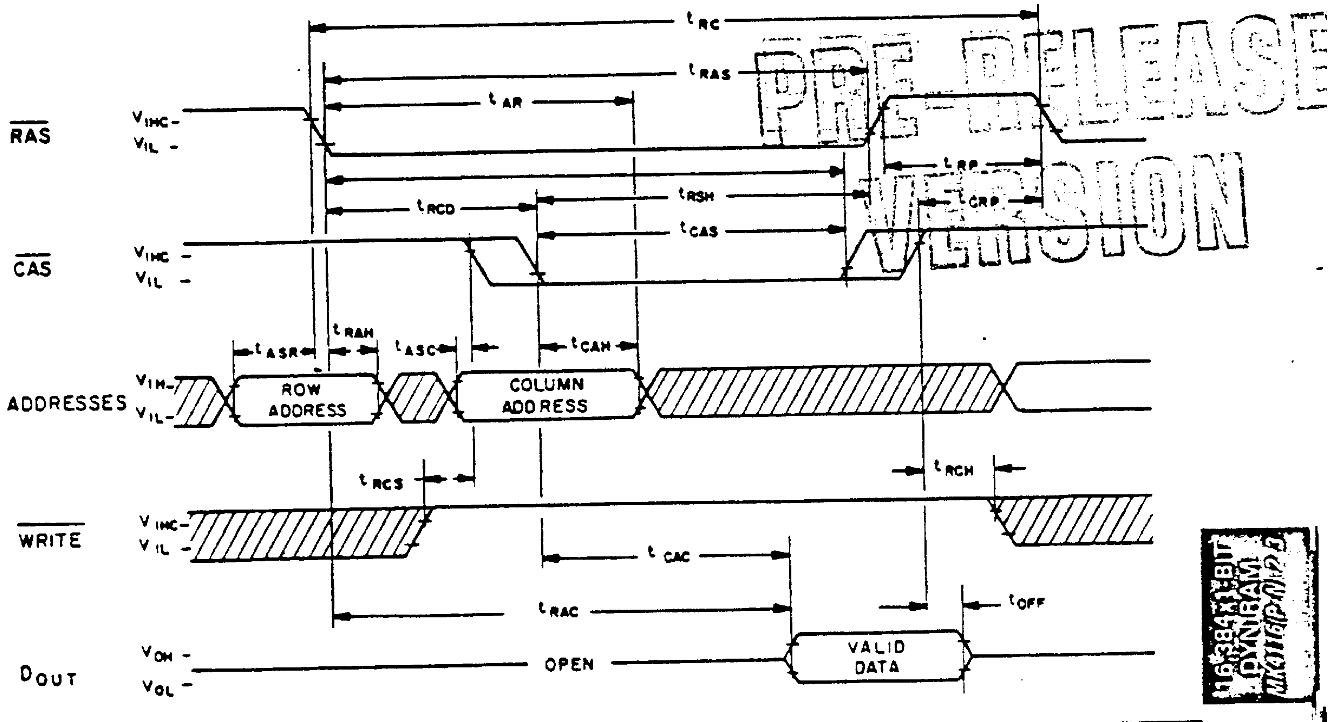


Fig. 4 Maximum I_{DD4} versus cycle rate for device operation in page mode. I_{DD4} (max) curve is defined by the equation:

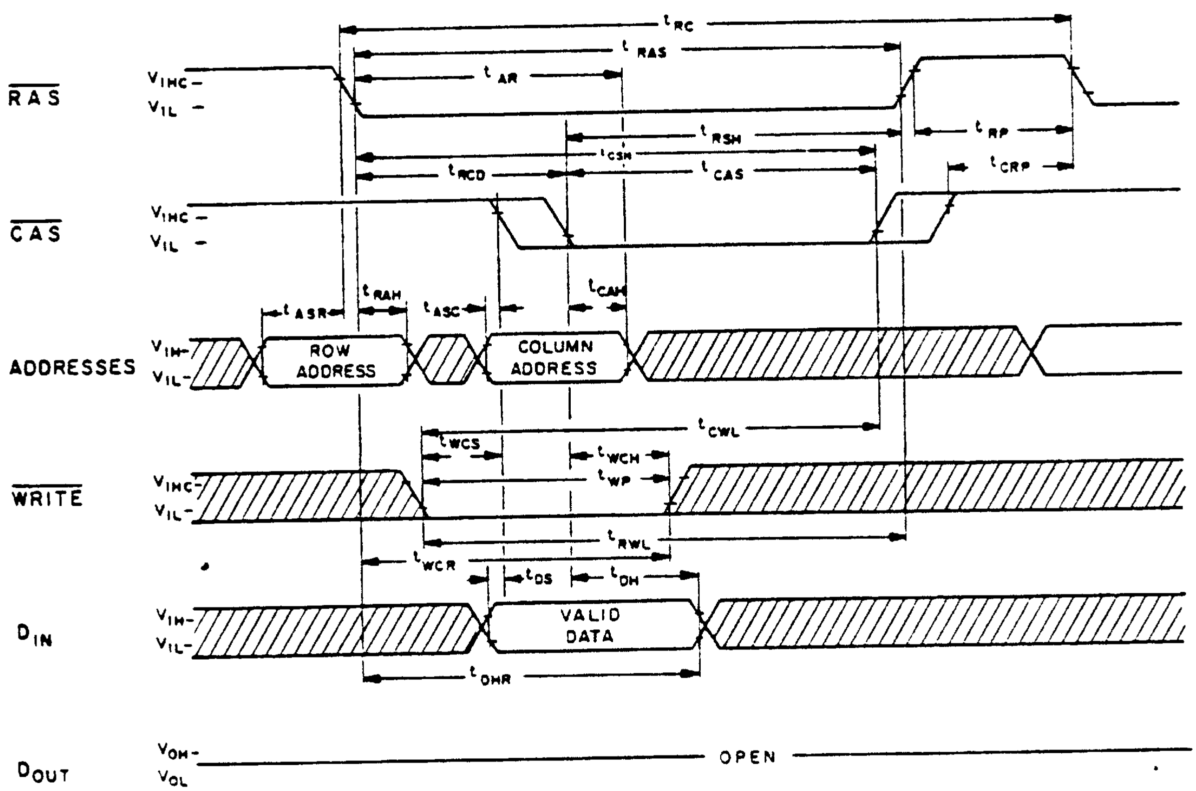
I_{DD4} (max) mA = 10 + 3.75 x cycle rate (MHz) for -3
I_{DD4} (max) mA = 10 + 3.2 x cycle rate (MHz) for -2

READ CYCLE

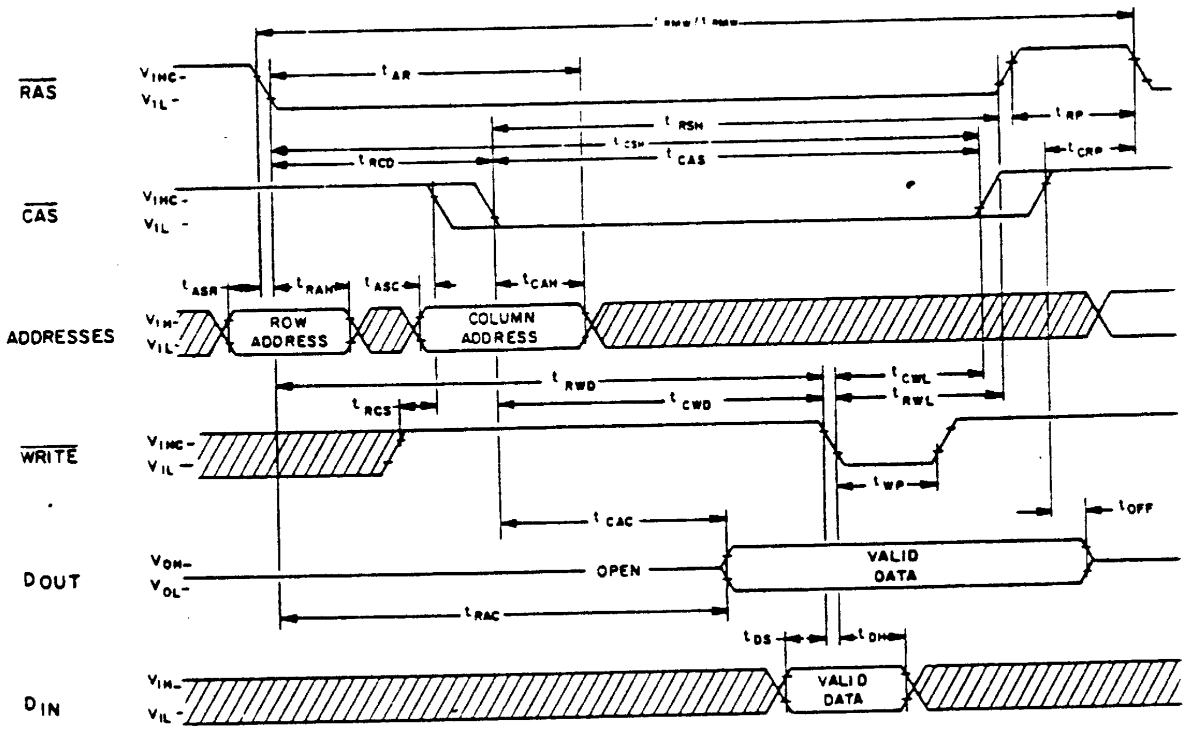


16,384 x 1-BIT DYNAMIC RAM

WRITE CYCLE (EARLY WRITE)

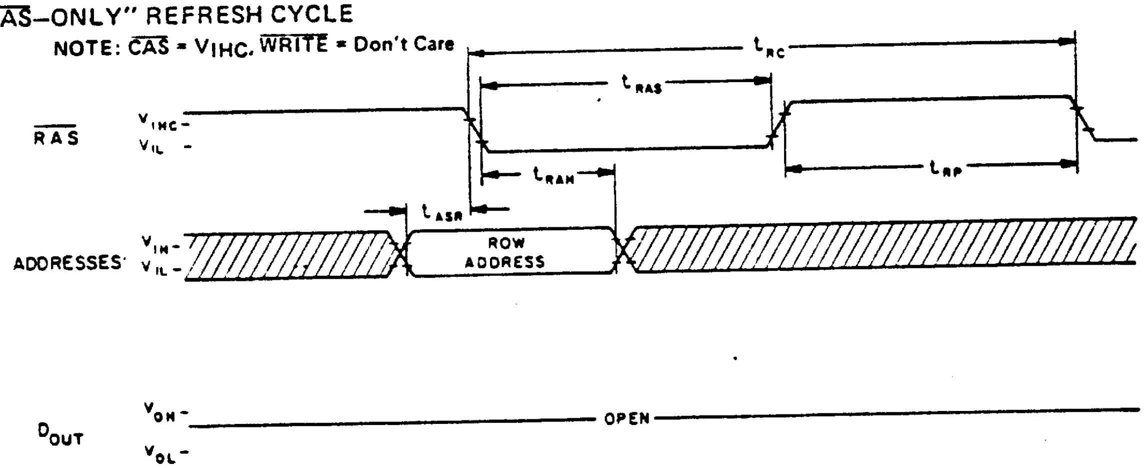


READ–WRITE/READ–MODIFY–WRITE CYCLE



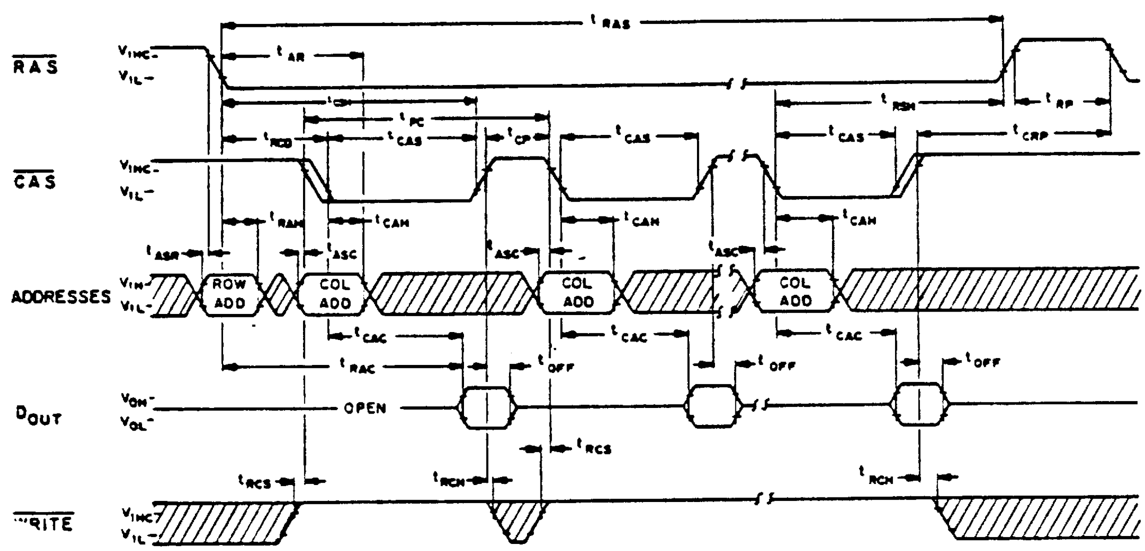
"RAS–ONLY" REFRESH CYCLE

NOTE: CAS = VIHC, WRITE = Don't Care

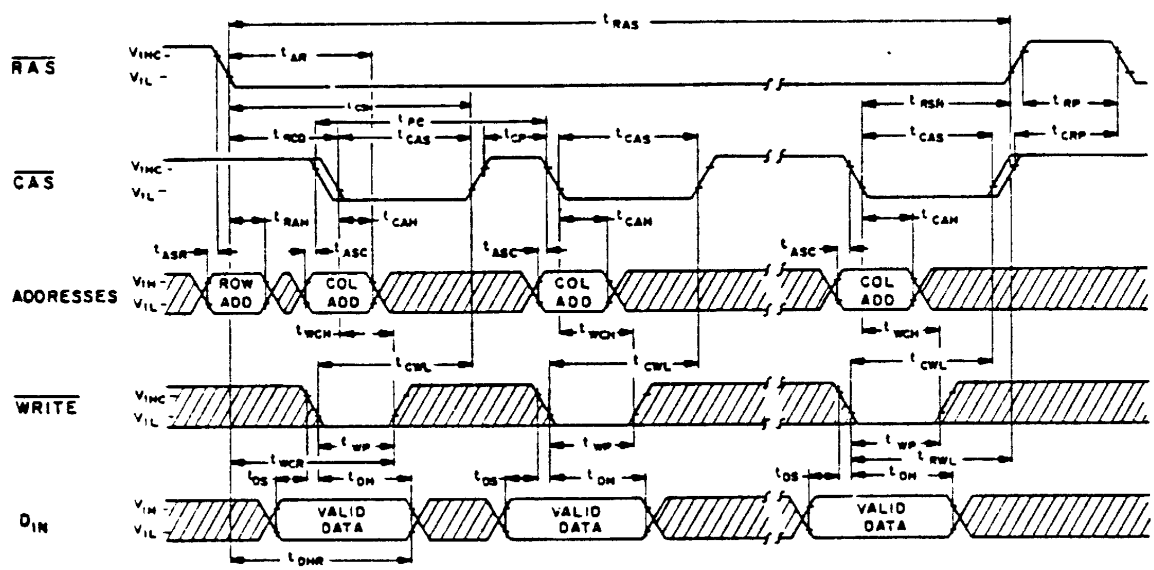


PRE-RELEASE VERSION

AGE MODE READ CYCLE



AGE MODE WRITE CYCLE



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

DESCRIPTION (continued)

System oriented features include ± 10% tolerance on all power supplies, direct interfacing capability with high performance logic families such as Schottky TTL, maximum input noise immunity to minimize "false triggering" of the inputs (a common cause of soft errors), on-chip address and data registers which eliminate the need for interface registers, and two chip select methods to allow the user to determine the appropriate speed/power characteristics of his memory system. The MK 4116 also incorporates several flexible timing/operating modes. In addition to the usual read, write, and read-modify-write cycles, the MK 4116 is capable of delayed write cycles, page-mode operation and RAS-only refresh. Proper control of the clock inputs(RAS, CAS and WRITE) allows common I/O capability, two dimensional chip selection, and extended page boundaries (when operating in page mode).

ADDRESSING

The 14 address bits required to decode 1 of the 16,384 cell locations within the MK 4116 are multiplexed onto the 7 address inputs and latched into the on-chip address latches by externally applying two negative going TTL-level clocks. The first clock, the Row Address Strobe (RAS), latches the 7 row address bits into the chip. The second clock, the Column Address Strobe (CAS), subsequently latches the 7 column address bits into the chip. Each of these signals, RAS and CAS, triggers a sequence of events which are controlled by different delayed internal clocks. The two clock chains are linked together logically in such a way that the address multiplexing operation is done outside of the critical path timing sequence for read data access. The later events in the CAS clock sequence are inhibited until the occurence of a delayed signal derived from the RAS clock chain. This "gated CAS" feature allows the CAS clock to be externally activated as soon as the Row Address Hold Time specification (t_{RAH}) has been satisfied and the address inputs have been changed from Row address to Column address information.

Note that CAS can be activated at any time after t_{RAH} and it will have no effect on the worst case data access time (t_{RAC}) up to the point in time when the delayed row clock no longer inhibits the remaining sequence of column clocks. Two timing endpoints result from the internal gating of CAS which are called t_{RCD} (min) and t_{RCD} (max). No data storage or reading errors will result if CAS is applied to the MK 4116 at a point in time beyond the t_{RCD} (max) limit. However, access time will then be determined exclusively by the access time from CAS (t_{CAC}) rather than from RAS (t_{RAC}), and access time from RAS will be lengthened by the amount that t_{RCD} exceeds the t_{RCD} (max) limit.

DATA INPUT/OUTPUT

Data to be written into a selected cell is latched into an on-chip register by a combination of WRITE and CAS while RAS is active. The later of the signals (WRITE or CAS) to make its negative transition is the strobe for the Data In (D_{IN}) register. This permits several options in the write cycle timing. In a write cycle, if the WRITE input is brought low (active) prior to CAS, the D_{IN} is strobed by CAS, and the set-up and hold times are referenced to CAS. If the input data is not available at CAS time or if it is desired that the cycle be a read-write cycle, the WRITE signal will be delayed until after CAS has made its negative transition. In this "delayed write cycle" the data input set-up and hold times are referenced to the negative edge of WRITE rather than CAS. (To illustrate this feature, D_{IN} is referenced to WRITE in the timing diagrams depicting the read-write and page-mode write cycles while the "early write" cycle diagram shows D_{IN} referenced to CAS).

Data is retrieved from the memory in a read cycle by maintaining WRITE in the inactive or high state throughout the portion of the memory cycle in which CAS is active (low). Data read from the selected cell will be available at the output within the specified access time.

DATA OUTPUT CONTROL

The normal condition of the Data Output (D_{OUT}) of the MK 4116 is the high impedance (open-circuit) state. That is to say, anytime CAS is at a high level, the D_{OUT} pin will be floating. The only time the output will turn on and contain either a logic 0 or logic 1 is at access time during a read cycle. D_{OUT} will remain valid from access time until CAS is taken back to the inactive (high level) condition.

If the memory cycle in progress is a read, read-modify write, or a delayed write cycle, then the data output will go from the high impedance state to the active condition, and at access time will contain the data read from the selected cell. This output data is the same polarity (not inverted) as the input data. Once having gone active, the output will remain valid until CAS is taken to the precharge (logic 1) state,whether or not RAS goes into precharge.

If the cycle in progress is an "early-write" cycle (WRITE active before CAS goes active), then the output pin will maintain the high impedance state throughout the entire cycle. Note that with this type of output configuration, the user is given full control of the D_{OUT} pin simply by controlling the placement of WRITE command during a write cycle, and the pulse width of the Column Address Strobe during read operations. Note also that even though data is not latched at the output, data can remain valid from access time until the beginning of a subsequent cycle without paying any penalty in overall memory cycle time (stretching the cycle).

This type of output operation results in some very significant system implications.

Common I/O Operation — If all write operations are handled in the "early write" mode, then D_{IN} can be connected directly to D_{OUT} for a common I/O data bus.

Data Output Control — D_{OUT} will remain valid during a read cycle from t_{CAC} until CAS goes back to a high level (precharge), allowing data to be valid from one cycle up until a new memory cycle begins with no penalty in cycle time. This also makes the RAS/CAS clock timing relationship very flexible.

Two Methods of Chip Selection — Since D_{OUT}

is not latched, CAS is not required to turn off the outputs of unselected memory devices in a matrix. This means that both CAS and/or RAS can be decoded for chip selection. If both RAS and CAS are decoded, then a two dimensional (X,Y) chip select array can be realized.

Extended Page Boundary — Page-mode operation allows for successive memory cycles at multiple column locations of the same row address. By decoding CAS as a page cycle select signal, the page boundary can be extended beyond the 128 column locations in a single chip. (See page-mode operation).

OUTPUT INTERFACE CHARACTERISTICS

The three state data output buffer presents the data output pin with a low impedance to V_{CC} for a logic 1 and a low impedance to V_{SS} for a logic 0. The effective resistance to V_{CC} (logic 1 state) is 420 Ω maximum and 135Ω typically. The resistance to V_{SS} (logic 0 state) is 95 Ω maximum and 35 Ω typically. The separate V_{CC} pin allows the output buffer to be powered from the supply voltage of the logic to which the chip is interfaced. During battery standby operation, the V_{CC} pin may have power removed without affecting the MK 4116 refresh operation. This allows all system logic except the RAS timing circuitry and the refresh address logic to be turned off during battery standby to conserve power.

PAGE MODE OPERATION

The "Page Mode" feature of the MK 4116 allows for successive memory operations at multiple column locations of the same row address with increased speed without an increase in power. This is done by strobing the row address into the chip and maintaining the RAS signal at a logic 0 throughout all successive memory cycles in which the row address is common. This "page-mode" of operation will not dissipate the power associated with the negative going edge of RAS. Also, the time required for strobing in a new row address is eliminated, thereby decreasing the access and cycle times.

The page boundary of a single MK 4116 is limited to the 128 column locations determined by all combinations of the 7 column address bits. However, in system applications which utilize more than 16,384 data words, (more than one 16K memory block), the page boundary can be extended by using CAS rather than RAS as the chip select signal. RAS is applied to all devices to latch the row address into each device and then CAS is decoded and serves as a page cycle select signal. Only those devices which receive both RAS and CAS signals will execute a read or write cycle.

REFRESH

Refresh of the dynamic cell matrix is accomplished by performing a memory cycle at each of the 128 row addresses within each 2 millisecond time interval. Although any normal memory cycle will perform the refresh operation, this function is most easily accomplished with "RAS-only" cycles. RAS-only refresh results in a substantial reduction in operating power. This reduction in power is reflected in the I_{DD3} specification.

POWER CONSIDERATIONS

Most of the circuitry used in the MK 4116 is dynamic and most of the power drawn is the result of an address strobe edge. Consequently, the dynamic power is primarily a function of operating frequency rather than active duty cycle (refer to the MK 4116 current waveforms in figure 5). This current characteristic of the MK 4116 precludes inadvertent burn out of the device in the event that the clock inputs become shorted to ground due to system malfunction.

Although no particular power supply noise restriction exists other than the supply voltages remain within the specified tolerance limits, adequate decoupling should be provided to suppress high frequency noise resulting from the transient current of the device. This insures optimum system performance and reliability. Bulk capacitance requirements are minimal since the MK 4116 draws very little steady state (DC) current.

In system applications requiring lower power dissipation, the operating frequency (cycle rate) of the MK 4116 can be reduced and the (guaranteed maximum) average power dissipation of the device will be lowered in accordance with the I_{DD1} (max) spec limit curve illustrated in figure 2. NOTE: The MK 4116 family is guaranteed to have a maximum IDD1 requirement of 35mA @ 375ns cycle (320ns cycle for the -2) with an ambient temperature range from 0° to 70°C. A lower operating frequency, for example 1 microsecond cycle, results in a reduced maximum Idd1 requirement of under 20mA with an ambient temperature range from 0° to 70°C.

It is possible the MK4116 family (-2 and 3 speed selections for example) at frequencies higher than specified, provided all AC operating parameters are met. Operation at shorter cycle times (<tRC min) results in higher power dissipation and, therefore, a reduction in ambient temperature is required. Refer to Figure 1 for derating curve.

NOTE: Additional power supply tolerance has been included on the VBB supply to allow direct interface capability with both -5V systems -5.2V ECL systems.

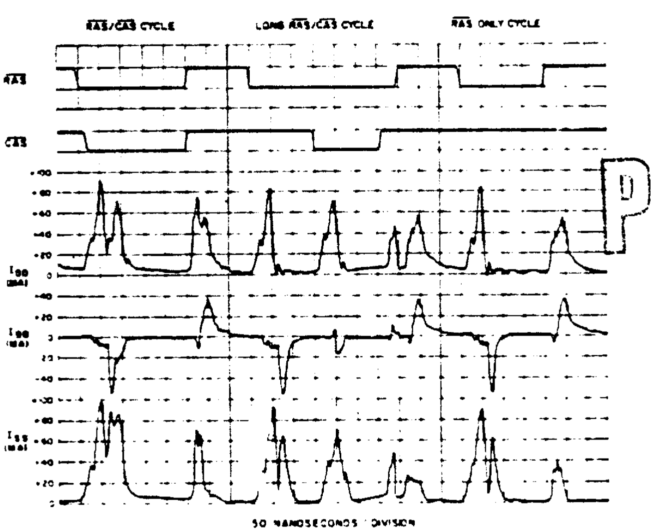


Fig. 5 Typical Current Waveforms

Although $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ and/or $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ can be decoded and used as a chip select signal for the MK 4116, overall system power is minimized if the Row Address Strobe ($\overline{\text{RAS}}$) is used for this purpose. All unselected devices (those which do not receive a $\overline{\text{RAS}}$) will remain in a low power (standby) mode regardless of the state of $\overline{\text{CAS}}$.

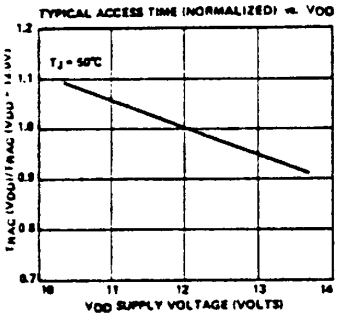
POWER UP

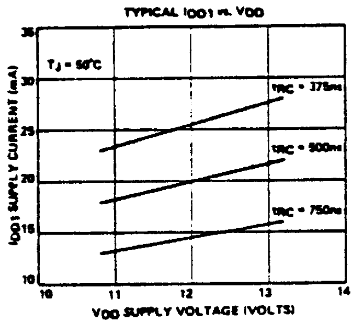
The MK 4116 requires no particular power supply sequencing so long as the Absolute Maximum Rating Conditions are observed. However, in order to insure compliance with the Absolute Maximum Ratings, MOSTEK recommends sequencing of power supplies such that V_{BB} is applied first and removed last. V_{BB} should never be more positive than V_{SS} when power is applied to V_{DD}.

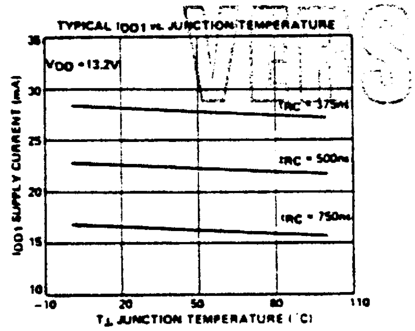
Under system failure conditions in which one or more supplies exceed the specified limits significant additional margin against catastrophic device failure may be achieved by forcing $\overline{\text{RAS}}$ and $\overline{\text{CAS}}$ to the inactive state (high level).

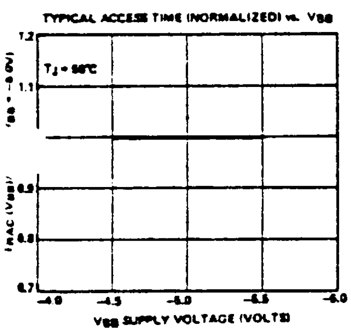
After power is applied to the device, the MK 4116 requires several cycles before proper device operation is achieved. Any 8 cycles which perform refresh are adequate for this purpose.

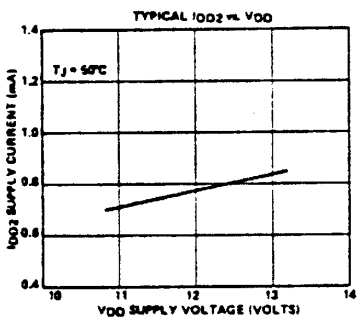
TYPICAL CHARACTERISTICS

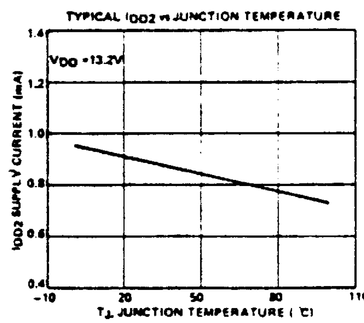


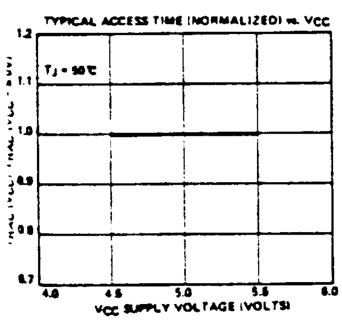


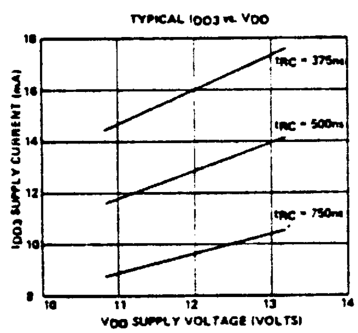


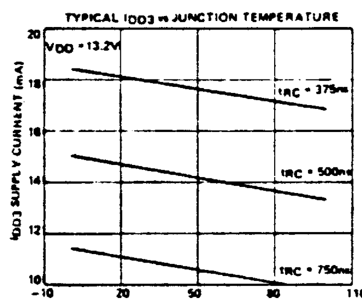


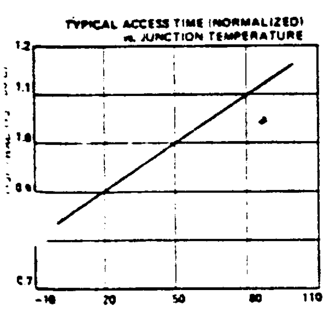


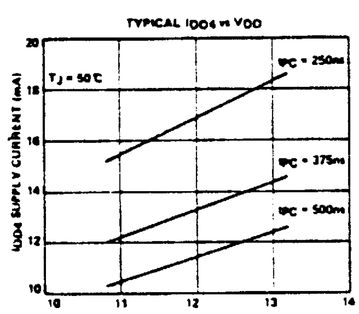


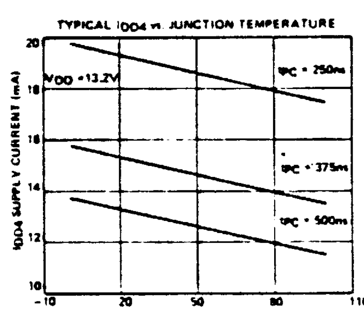


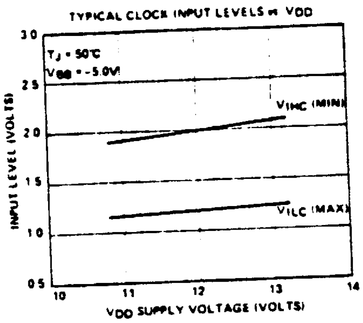


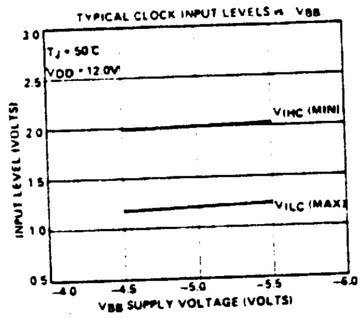


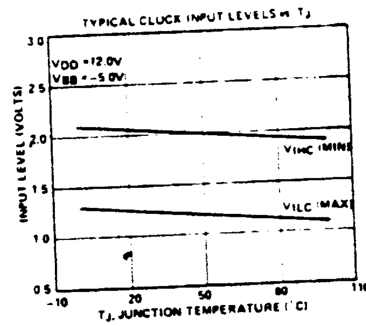


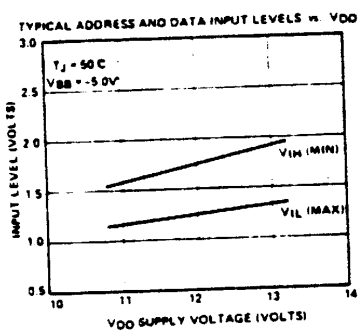


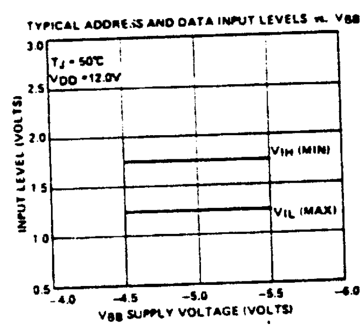


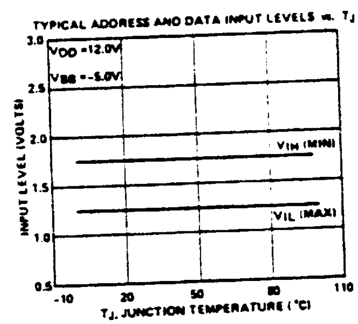

TYPICAL CLOCK INPUT LEVELS vs VDD
TJ = 50°C
VBB = -5.0V
VIHC (MIN)
VILC (MAX)
INPUT LEVEL (VOLTS)
VDD SUPPLY VOLTAGE (VOLTS)


TYPICAL CLOCK INPUT LEVELS vs VBB
TJ = 50°C
VDD = 12.0V
VIHC (MIN)
VILC (MAX)
INPUT LEVEL (VOLTS)
VBB SUPPLY VOLTAGE (VOLTS)


TYPICAL CLOCK INPUT LEVELS vs TJ
VDD = 12.0V
VBB = -5.0V
VIHC (MIN)
VILC (MAX)
INPUT LEVEL (VOLTS)
TJ, JUNCTION TEMPERATURE (°C)


TYPICAL ADDRESS AND DATA INPUT LEVELS vs VDD
TJ = 50°C
VBB = -5.0V
VIH (MIN)
VIL (MAX)
INPUT LEVEL (VOLTS)
VDD SUPPLY VOLTAGE (VOLTS)


TYPICAL ADDRESS AND DATA INPUT LEVELS vs VBB
TJ = 50°C
VDD = 12.0V
VIH (MIN)
VIL (MAX)
INPUT LEVEL (VOLTS)
VBB SUPPLY VOLTAGE (VOLTS)


TYPICAL ADDRESS AND DATA INPUT LEVELS vs TJ
VDD = 12.0V
VBB = -5.0V
VIH (MIN)
VIL (MAX)
INPUT LEVEL (VOLTS)
TJ, JUNCTION TEMPERATURE (°C)

REV.	ZONE	ECO #	REVISION	APPD
A		655	INITIAL RELEASE	

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ENGINEERING RELEASE,
This revision supersedes all previous versions.
Please destroy all old copies.
NOTICE OF PROPRIETARY PROPERTY
The information contained herein is the
proprietary property of Apple Computer, Inc.
The possessor agrees to the following:
(i) To maintain this document in confidence.
(ii) Not to reproduce or copy it.
(iii) Not to reveal or publish it in whole or part.

ENGINEERING SPECIFICATION

P/N 333-0002

DESCRIPTION: IC, Ram 32,768 X 1, MK4332.

Part is to have a 200nS. or less assess time (trac).

Specification Sheet of a MK4332 RAM is to be filed under
Apple P/N 333-0002.

DRAWING NUMBER 333-0002-A SH 1 OF 13

TOLERANCES		
UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES.		
DECIMALS	.X ±	
	.XX ±	
	.XXX ±	
ANGLES	XX.X ±	
FRACTIONS	±	
DIMENSIONS IN PARENTHESIS ARE IN MILLIMETERS.		

		DATE
DRAWN BY	C. Brown	3-15-81
CHECKED BY	P. Brown	3/30/81
APPROVED BY	P. Quinn	4/1/81
RELEASED BY		4/15/81

apple computer inc.

TITLE
IC, Ram, 32K, 200NS, WO/Logo, WO/burn-in

MATERIAL:

FINISH:

NEXT ASSY.

SIZE A

DRAWING NUMBER 333-0002-A

SCALE:

SHEET 1 OF 13

PRELIMINARY

MOSTEK®

32,768 x 1-BIT DYNAMIC RAM

MK4332(P)-3

FEATURES

- Utilizes two industry standard MK 4116 devices in an 18-pin package configuration
- 200ns access time, 375ns cycle (MK 4116-3)
- Separate $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$ Clocks
- ± 10% tolerance on all power supplies (+12V,±5V)
- Low power: 482mW active, 40mW standby (max)
- Output data controlled by $\overline{CAS}$ and unlatched at end of cycle to allow two dimensional chip selection and extended page boundary
- Common I/O capability using "early write" operation
- Read-Modify-Write, $\overline{RAS}$-only refresh, and Page-mode capability
- All inputs TTL compatible,low capacitance, and protected against static charge
- 128 refresh cycles for each MK 4116 device in the dual density configuration
- Pin compatible to MK 4116 and MK 4164

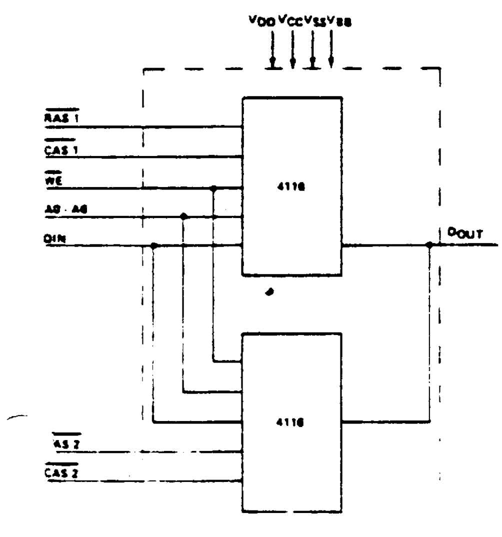
DESCRIPTION

The MK 4332 is a new generation MOS dynamic random access memory circuit organized as 32,768 words by 1 bit. As a state-of-the-art MOS memory device, the MK4332 (32K RAM) incorporates advanced circuit techniques designed to provide wide operating margins, both internally and to the system user .

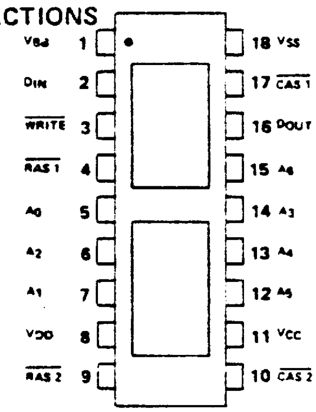
The technology used to fabricate the MK 4332 is MOSTEK's double-poly, N-channel silicon gate, POLY II® process. This process, coupled with the use of a single transistor dynamic storage cell, provides the maximum possible circuit density and reliability, while maintaining high performance capability. The use of dynamic circuitry throughout, including sense amplifiers, assures that power dissipation is minimized without any sacrifice in speed or operating margin. These factors combine to make the MK 4332 a truly superior RAM product.

Multiplexed address inputs (a feature pioneered by MOSTEK for its 4K RAMS) permits the MK 4332 to be packaged in a standard 18-pin DIP. This standard package configuration, is compatible with widely available automated testing and insertion equipment, and it provides the highest possible system bit densities and simplifies system upgrade from 16K to 64K RAMs for new generation applications. Non-critical clock timing requirements allow use of the multiplexing technique while maintaining high performance.

FUNCTIONAL DIAGRAM



PIN CONNECTIONS



PIN NAMES

A0-A6	ADDRESS INPUTS
$\overline{CAS}$	COLUMN ADDRESS STROBE
DIN	DATA IN
DOUT	DATA OUT
$\overline{RAS}$	ROW ADDRESS STROBE
$\overline{WRITE}$	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]

P/N

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS*

Voltage on any pin relative to V_{BB} .... −0.5V to +20V
Voltage on V_{DD}, V_{CC} supplies relative to V_{SS} .... −1.0V to +15.0V
$V_{BB}-V_{SS}$ ($V_{DD}-V_{SS}>0V$) 0V
Operating temperature, T_A (Ambient) .... 0°C to + 70°C
Storage temperature (Ambient) .... −65°C to + 150°C
Short circuit output current 50mA
Power dissipation .... 1 Watt

*Stresses greater than those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions above those indicated in the operational sections of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect reliability.

RECOMMENDED DC OPERATING CONDITIONS[6]

($0°C \le T_A \le 70°C$)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
Supply Voltage	V_{DD} V_{CC} V_{SS} V_{BB}	10.8 4.5 0 −4.5	12.0 5.0 0 −5.0	13.2 5.5 0 −5.7	Volts Volts Volts Volts	2 2,3 2 2
Input High (Logic 1) Voltage, $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$, $\overline{WRITE}$	V_{IHC}	2.4	–	7.0	Volts	2
Input High (Logic 1) Voltage, all inputs except $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$ $\overline{WRITE}$	V_{IH}	2.2	–	7.0	Volts	2
Input Low (Logic 0) Voltage, all inputs	V_{IL}	−1.0	–	.8	Volts	2

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

($0°C \le T_A \le 70°C$) (V_{DD} = 12.0V ± 10%; V_{CC} = 5.0V ± 10%; −5.7V ≤ V_{BB} ≤ −4.5V; V_{SS} = 0V)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MIN	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
OPERATING CURRENT Average power supply operating current ($\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$ cycling; $t_{RC} = t_{RC}$ Min)	I_{DD1} I_{CC1} I_{BB1}		36.5 300	mA µA	4,19 5 19
STANDBY CURRENT Power supply standby current ($\overline{RAS} = V_{IHC}$, D_{OUT} = High Impedance)	I_{DD2} I_{CC2} I_{BB2}	−20	3.0 20 200	mA µA µA	
REFRESH CURRENT Average power supply current, refresh mode ($\overline{RAS}$ cycling, $\overline{CAS} = V_{IHC}$; $t_{RC} = t_{RC}$ Min)	I_{DD3} I_{CC3} I_{BB3}	−20	26.5 20 300	mA µA µA	4, 19 19
PAGE MODE CURRENT Average power supply current, page-mode operation ($\overline{RAS} = V_{IL}$, $\overline{CAS}$ cycling; $t_{PC} = t_{PC}$ Min)	I_{DD4} I_{CC4} I_{BB4}		28.5 300	mA µA	4,19 5 19
INPUT LEAKAGE Input leakage current, any input (V_{BB} = −5V, 0V ≤ V_{IN} ≤ +7.0V, all other pins not under test = 0 volts)	$I_{I(L)}$	−20	20	µA	
OUTPUT LEAKAGE Output leakage current (D_{OUT} is disabled, 0V ≤ V_{OUT} ≤ +5.5V)	$I_{O(L)}$	−20	20	µA	
OUTPUT LEVELS Output high (Logic 1) voltage (I_{OUT} = −5mA)	V_{OH}	2.4		Volts	3
Output low (Logic 0) voltage (I_{OUT} = 4.2 mA)	V_{OL}		0.4	Volts	

NOTES:

1. T_A is specified here for operation at frequencies to $t_{RC} \ge t_{RC}$ (min). Operation at higher cycle rates with reduced ambient temperatures and higher power dissipation is permissible, however, provided AC operating parameters are met. See figure 1 for derating curve.
2. All voltages referenced to V_{SS}.
3. Output voltage will swing from V_{SS} to V_{CC} when activated with no current loading. For purposes of maintaining data in standby mode, V_{CC} may be reduced to V_{SS} without affecting refresh operations or data retention. However, the V_{OH} (min) specification is not guaranteed in this mode.
4. I_{DD1}, I_{DD3}, and I_{DD4} depend on cycle rate. See figures 2,3, and 4 for I_{DD} limits at other cycle rates.
5. I_{CC1} and I_{CC4} depend upon output loading. During readout of high level data V_{CC} is connected through a low impedance (135 Ω typ) to data out. At all other times I_{CC} consists of leakage currents only.

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS AND RECOMMENDED AC OPERATING CONDITIONS (6,7,8)

(0°C < T_A < 70°C)[1] (V_{DD} = 12.0V ± 10%; V_{CC} = 5.0V ± 10%, V_{SS} = 0V, -5.7V < V_{BB} < -4.5V)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MK 4332 MIN	MK 4332 MAX	UNITS	NOTES
Random read or write cycle time	t_{RC}	375		ns	9
Read-write cycle time	t_{RWC}	375		ns	9
Read modify write cycle time	t_{RMW}	405		ns	9
Page mode cycle time	t_{PC}	225		ns	9
Access time from $\overline{RAS}$	t_{RAC}		200	ns	10,12
Access time from $\overline{CAS}$	t_{CAC}		135	ns	11,12
Output buffer turn-off delay	t_{OFF}	0	50	ns	13
Transition time (rise and fall)	t_T	3	50	ns	8
$\overline{RAS}$ precharge time	t_{RP}	120		ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ pulse width	t_{RAS}	200	10,000	ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ hold time	t_{RSH}	135		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ hold time	t_{CSH}	200		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ pulse width	t_{CAS}	135	10,000	ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ to $\overline{CAS}$ delay time	t_{RCD}	25	65	ns	14
[illegible] to $\overline{RAS}$ precharge time	t_{CRP}	−20		ns	
[illegible] Address set-up time	t_{ASR}	0		ns	
Row Address hold time	t_{RAH}	25		ns	
Column Address set-up time	t_{ASC}	−10		ns	
Column Address hold time	t_{CAH}	55		ns	
Column Address hold time referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{AR}	120		ns	
Read command set-up time	t_{RCS}	0		ns	
Read command hold time	t_{RCH}	0		ns	
Write command hold time	t_{WCH}	55		ns	
Write command hold time referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{WCR}	120		ns	
Write command pulse width	t_{WP}	55		ns	
Write command to $\overline{RAS}$ lead time	t_{RWL}	70		ns	
Write command to $\overline{CAS}$ lead time	t_{CWL}	70		ns	
Data-in set-up time	t_{DS}	0		ns	15
Data-in hold time	t_{DH}	55		ns	15
Data-in hold time referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{DHR}	120		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ precharge time (for page-mode cycle only)	t_{CP}	80		ns	
Refresh period	t_{REF}		2	ms	
$\overline{WRITE}$ command set-up time	t_{WCS}	−20		ns	16
$\overline{CAS}$ to $\overline{WRITE}$ delay	t_{CWD}	80		ns	16
$\overline{RAS}$ to $\overline{WRITE}$ delay	t_{RWD}	145		ns	16

PRE-RELEASE

32768 x 1-BIT DYNAMIC RAM

NOTES (Continued)

6. Several cycles are required after power up before proper device operation is achieved. Any 8 cycles which perform refresh are adequate for this purpose.
7. AC measurements assume t_T = 5ns.
8. V_{IHC} (min) or V_{IH} (min) and V_{IL} (max) are reference levels for measuring timing of input signals. Also, transition times are measured between V_{IHC} or V_{IH} and V_{IL}.
9. The specifications for t_{RC} (min), t_{RMW} (min) and t_{RWC} (min) are used only to indicate cycle time at which proper operation over the full temperature range (0°C ≤ T_A ≤ 70°C) is assured.
10. Assumes that t_{RCD} ≤ t_{RCD} (max). If t_{RCD} is greater than the maximum recommended value shown in this table, t_{RAC} will increase by the amount that t_{RCD} exceeds the value shown.
11. Assumes that t_{RCD} ≥ t_{RCD} (max).
12. Measured with a load equivalent to 2 TTL loads and 100pF.
13. t_{OFF} (max) defines the time at which the output achieves the open circuit condition and is not referenced to output voltage levels.
14. Operation within the t_{RCD} (max) limit insures that t_{RAC} (max) can be met. t_{RCD} (max) is specified as a reference point only; if t_{RCD} is greater than the specified t_{RCD} (max) limit, then access time is controlled exclusively by t_{CAC}.
15. These parameters are referenced to $\overline{CAS}$ leading edge in early write cycles and to $\overline{WRITE}$ leading edge in delayed write or read modify write cycles.
16. t_{WCS}, t_{CWD} and t_{RWD} are restrictive operating parameters in read write and read modify write cycles only. If t_{WCS} ≥ t_{WCS} (min), the cycle is an early write cycle and the data out pin will remain open circuit (high impedance) throughout the entire cycle. If t_{CWD} ≥ t_{CWD} (min) and t_{RWD} ≥ t_{RWD} (min), the cycle is a read-write cycle and the data out will contain data read from the selected cell. If neither of the above sets of conditions is satisfied the condition of the data out (at access time) is indeterminate.
17. Effective capacitance calculated from the equation $C = \frac{I \Delta t}{\Delta V}$ with ΔV = 3 volts and power supplies at nominal levels.
18. $\overline{CAS}$ = V_{IHC} to disable D_{OUT}.
19. One 16K RAM is active while the other is in standby mode.

AC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

($0°C \leq T_A \leq 70°C$) (V_{DD} = 12.0V ± 10%; V_{SS} = 0V; $-5.7V \leq V_{BB} \leq -4.5V$)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	TYP	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
Input Capacitance (A_0–A_6), D_{IN}	C_{I1}	8	10	pF	17
Input Capacitance $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$,	C_{I2}	8	10	pF	17
Output Capacitance (D_{OUT})	C_O	10	14	pF	17, 18
Input Capacitance $\overline{WRITE}$	C_{I3}	16	20	pF	17

AC Characteristics and Timing Diagrams of MK4116-3.

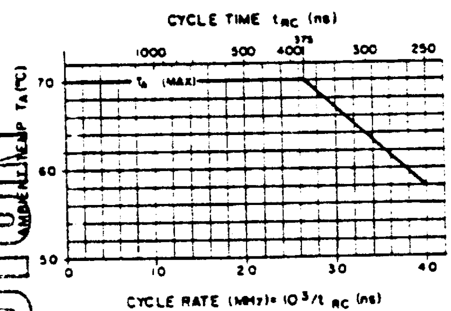


Fig. 1 Maximum ambient temperature versus cycle rate for extended frequency operation. T_A (max) for operation at cycling rates greater than 2.66 MHz (t_{CYC}<375ns) is determined by T_A (max)° C = 70–9.0 x (cycle rate MHz –2.66) for -3.

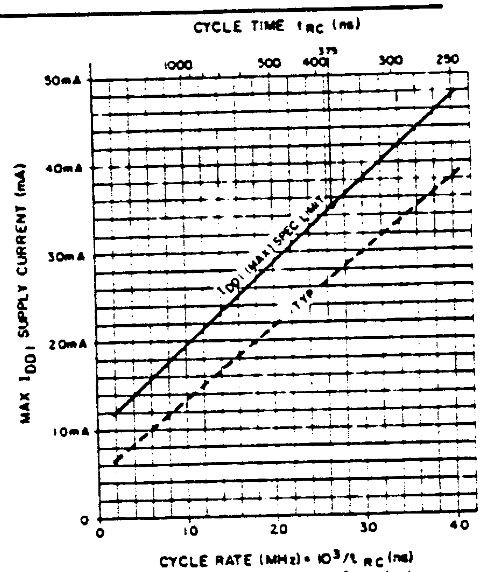


Fig. 2 Maximum I_{DD1} versus cycle rate for device operation at extended frequencies. I_{DD1} (max) curve is defined by the equation:

I_{DD1} (max) mA = 10 + 9.4 x cycle rate [MHz] for -3

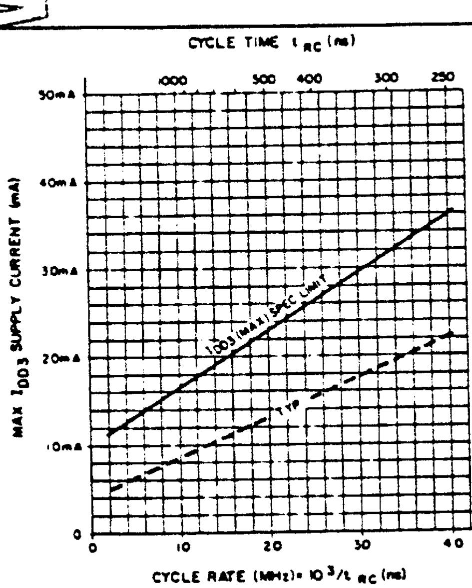


Fig. 3 Maximum I_{DD3} versus cycle rate for device operation at extended frequencies. I_{DD3} (max) curve is defined by the equation:

I_{DD3}(max) mA = 10 + 6.5 x cycle rate [MHz] for -3

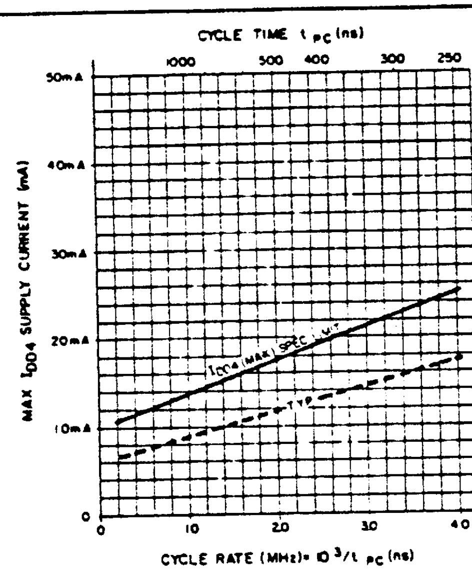
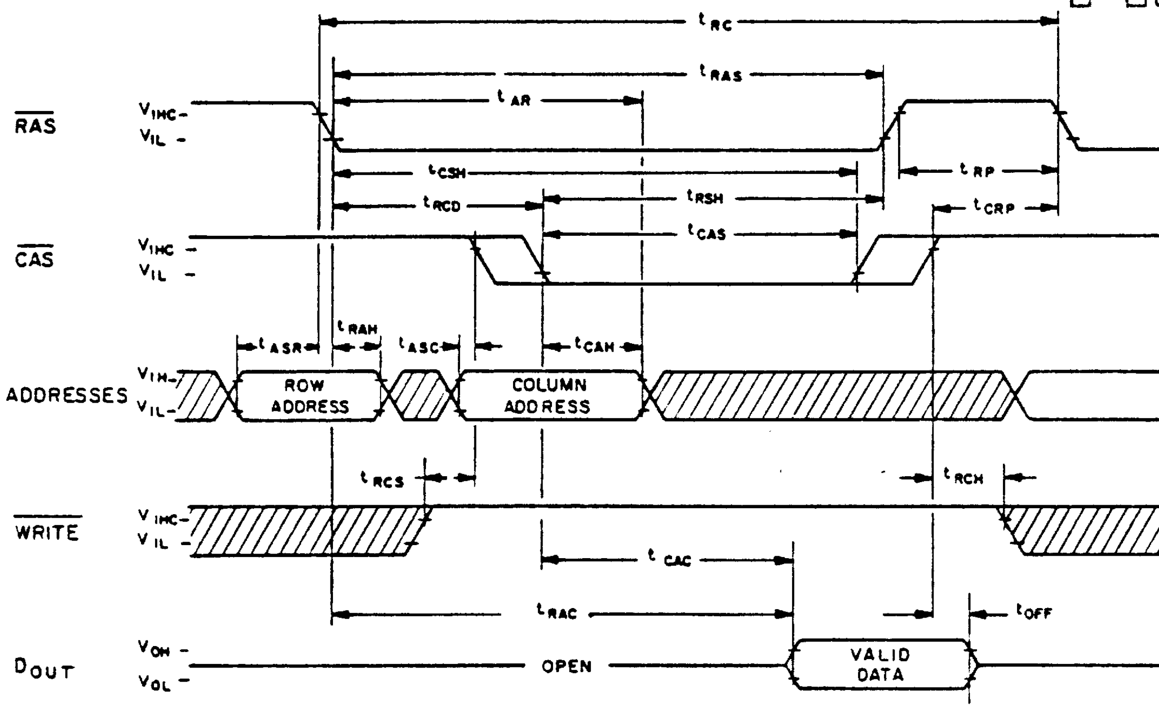


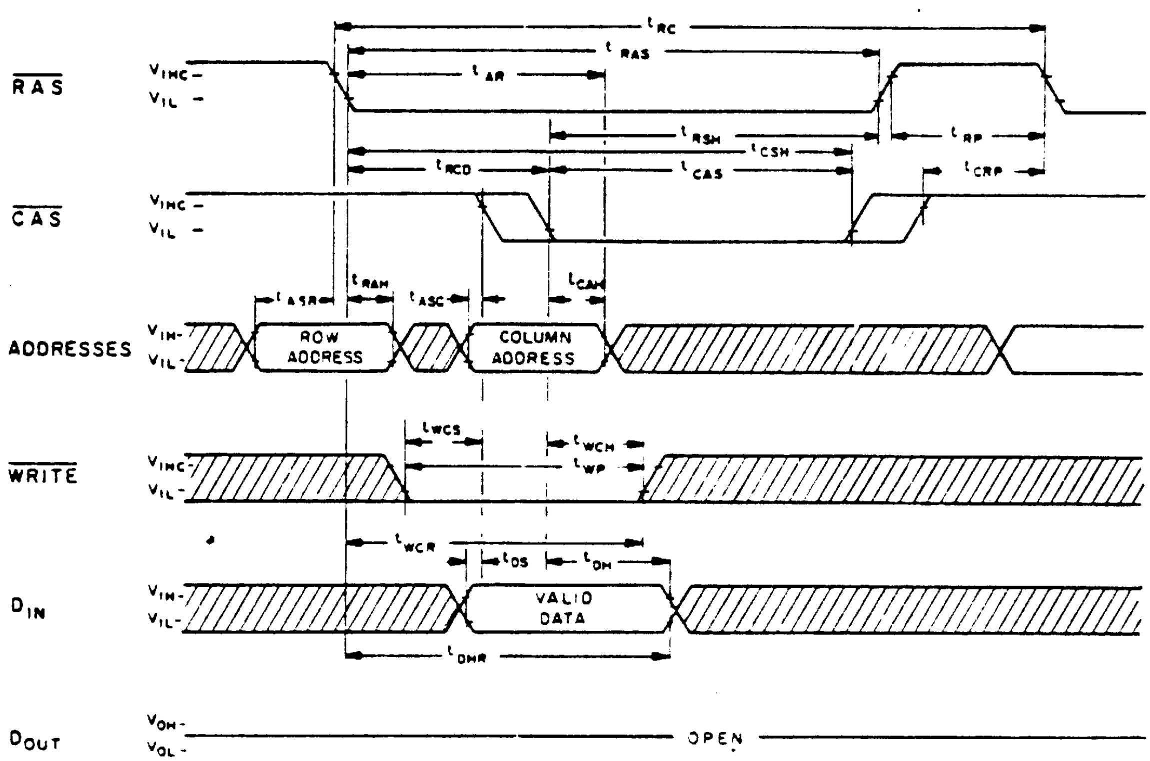
Fig. 4 Maximum I_{DD4} versus cycle rate for device operation in page mode. I_{DD4} (max) curve is defined by the equation:

I_{DD4} (max) mA = 10 + 3.75 x cycle rate [MHz] for -3

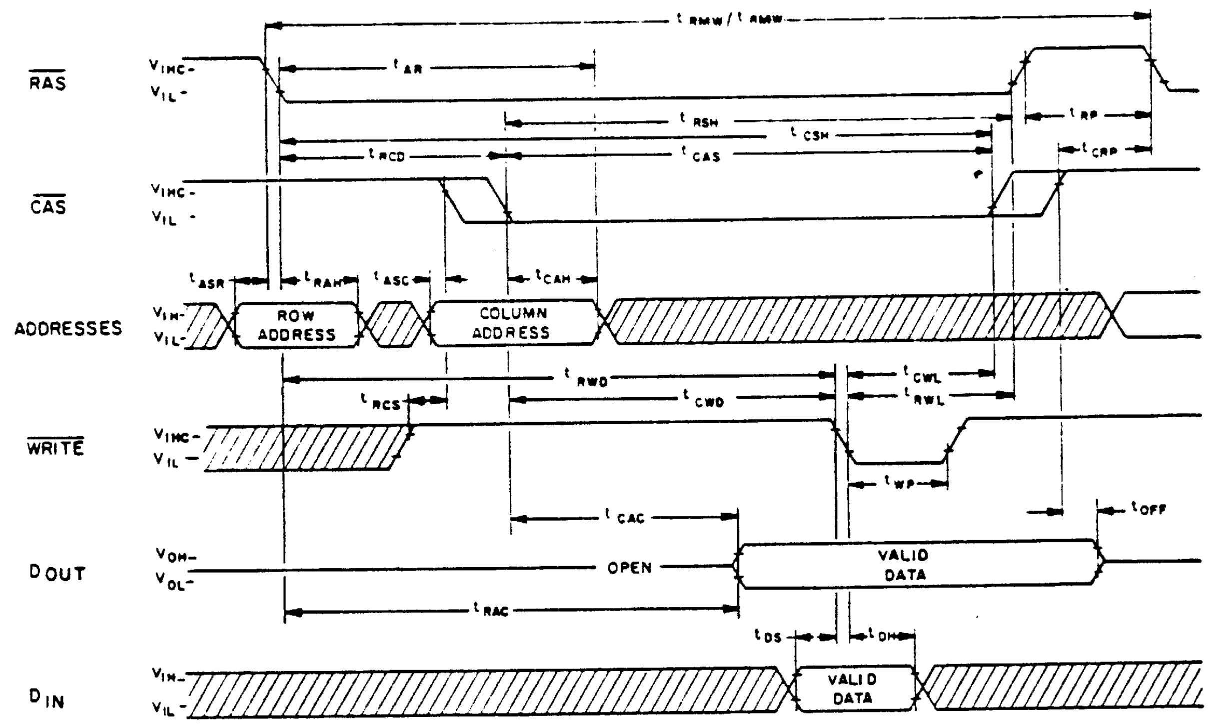
READ CYCLE



WRITE CYCLE (EARLY WRITE)

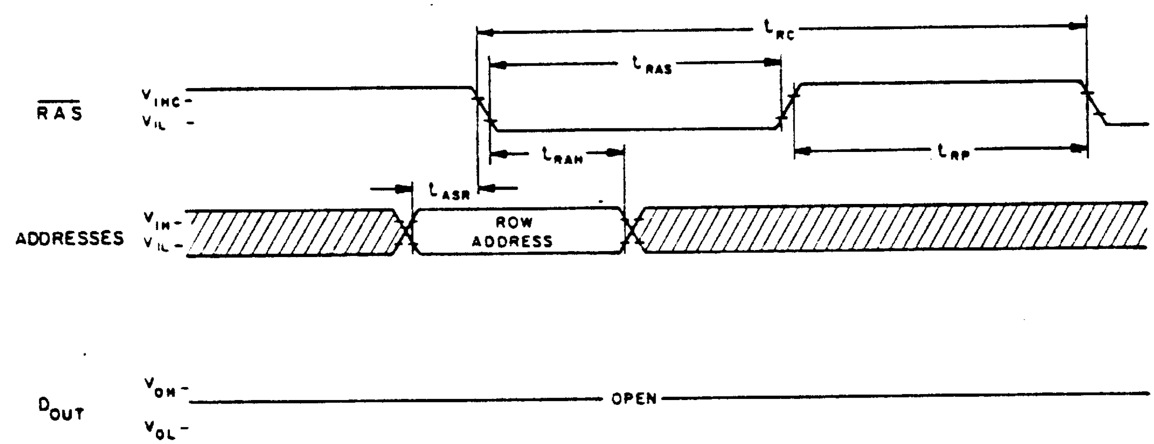


READ–WRITE/READ–MODIFY–WRITE CYCLE

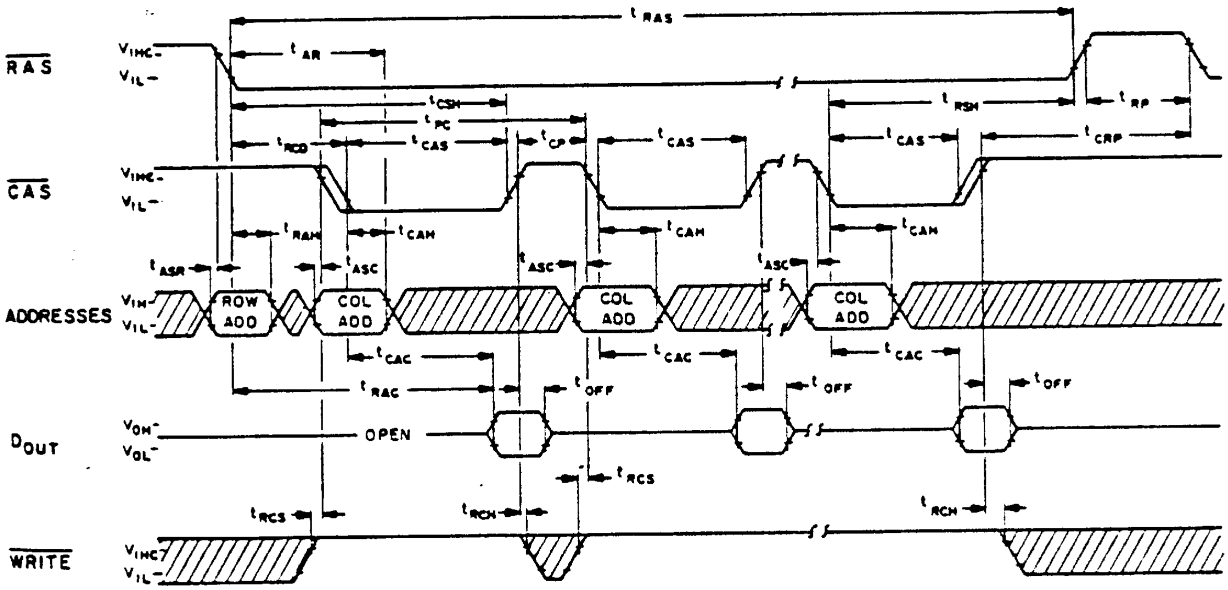


"RAS–ONLY" REFRESH CYCLE

NOTE: CAS = VIHC, WRITE = Don't Care

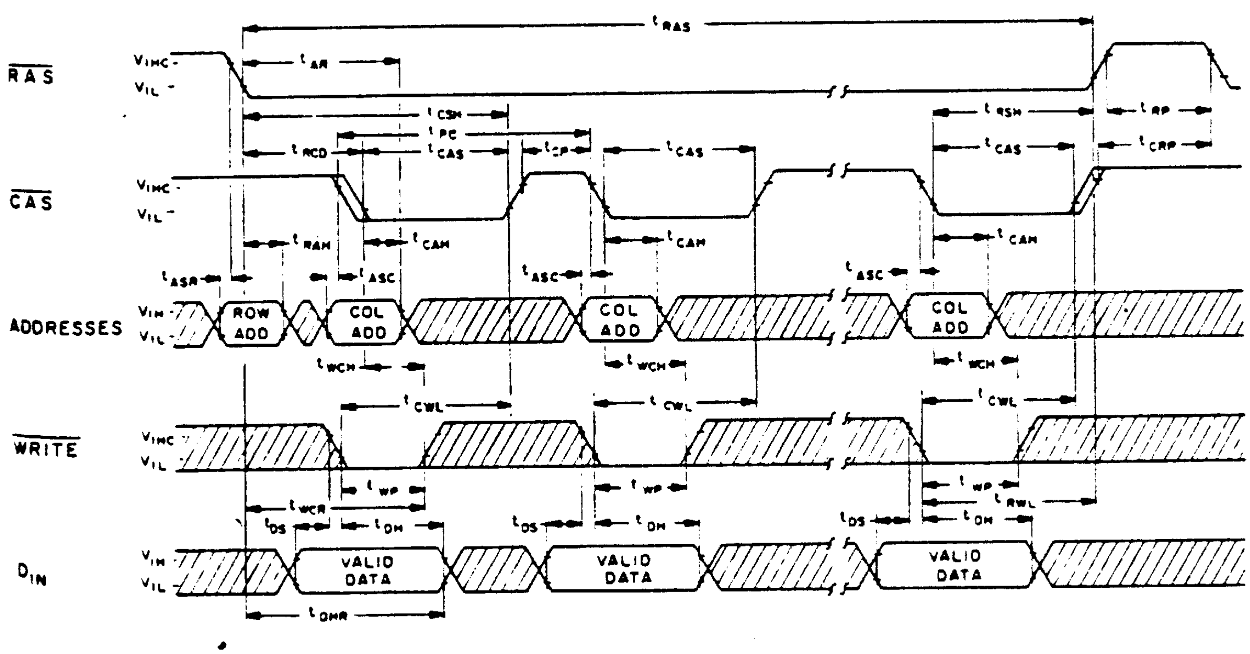


PAGE MODE READ CYCLE



32,768x1-BIT DYNRAM

PAGE MODE WRITE CYCLE



DESCRIPTION (continued)

System oriented features include ± 10% tolerance on all power supplies, direct interfacing capability with high performance logic families such as Schottky TTL, maximum input noise immunity to minimize "false triggering" of the inputs (a common cause of soft errors), on-chip address and data registers which eliminate the need for interface registers, and two chip select methods. The MK 4332 also incorporates several flexible timing/operating modes. In addition to the usual read, write, and read-modify-write cycles, the MK 4332 is capable of delayed write cycles, page-mode operation and RAS-only refresh. Proper control of the clock inputs(RAS, CAS and WRITE) allows common I/O capability, two dimensional chip selection, and extended page boundaries (when operating in page mode).

ADDRESSING

User access of a unique memory location is accomplished by multiplexing 14 address bits onto 7 address inputs and by proper control of the RAS and CAS clocks in a manner identical to operation of the MK 4116 in a memory array board. The 14 address bits required to decode 1 of the 16,384 cell locations within each MK 4116 are multiplexed onto the 7 address inputs and latched into the on-chip address latches by externally applying two negative going TTL-level clocks. The first clock, the Row Address Strobe (RAS), latches the 7 row address bits into the chip. The second clock, the Column Address Strobe (CAS), subsequently latches the 7 column address bits into the chip. Each of these signals, RAS and CAS, triggers a sequence of events which are controlled by different delayed internal clocks. The two clock chains are linked together logically in such a way that the address multiplexing operation is done outside of the critical path timing sequence for read data access. The later events in the CAS clock sequence are inhibited until the occurence of a delayed signal derived from the RAS clock chain. This "gated CAS" feature allows the CAS clock to be externally activated as soon as the Row Address Hold Time specification (t_{RAH}) has been satisfied and the address inputs have been changed from Row address to Column address information.

Note that CAS can be activated at any time after t_{RAH} and it will have no effect on the worst case data access time (t_{RAC}) up to the point in time when the delayed row clock no longer inhibits the remaining sequence of column clocks. Two timing endpoints result from the internal gating of CAS which are called t_{RCD} (min) and t_{RCD} (max). No data storage or reading errors will result if CAS is applied to the MK 4332 at a point in time beyond the t_{RCD} (max) limit. However, access time will then be determined exclusively by the access time from CAS (t_{CAC}) rather than from RAS (t_{RAC}), and access time from RAS will be lengthened by the amount that t_{RCD} exceeds the t_{RCD} (max) limit.

DATA INPUT/OUTPUT

Data to be written into a selected cell is latched into an on-chip register by a combination of WRITE and CAS while RAS is active. The later of the signals (WRITE or CAS) to make its negative transition is the strobe for the Data In (D_{IN}) register. This permits several options in the write cycle timing. In a write cycle, if the WRITE input is brought low (active) prior to CAS, the D_{IN} is strobed by CAS, and the set-up and hold times are referenced to CAS. If the input data is not available at CAS time or if it is desired that the cycle be a read-write cycle, the WRITE signal will be delayed until after CAS has made its negative transition. In this "delayed write cycle" the data input set-up and hold times are referenced to the negative edge of WRITE rather than CAS. (To illustrate this feature, D_{IN} is referenced to WRITE in the timing diagrams depicting the read-write and page-mode write cycles while the "early write" cycle diagram shows D_{IN} referenced to CAS).

Data is retrieved from the memory in a read cycle by maintaining WRITE in the inactive or high state throughout the portion of the memory cycle in which CAS is active (low). Data read from the selected cell will be available at the output within the specified access time.

DATA OUTPUT CONTROL

The normal condition of the Data Output (D_{OUT}) of the MK 4332 is the high impedance (open-circuit) state. That is to say, anytime CAS is at a high level, the D_{OUT} pin will be floating. The only time the output will turn on and contain either a logic 0 or logic 1 is at access time during a read cycle. D_{OUT} will remain valid from access time until CAS is taken back to the inactive (high level) condition.

Since the outputs to both 16K devices are tied together, care must be taken with the timing relationships of the two devices. Both devices must cannot be activated at the same time as a data output conflict can occur.

If the memory cycle in progress is a read, read-modify write, or a delayed write cycle, then the data output will go from the high impedance state to the active condition, and at access time will contain the dat read from the selected cell. This output data is th same polarity (not inverted) as the input data. Onc having gone active, the output will remain valid until CAS is taken to the precharge (logic 1) state, whether or not RAS goes into precharge.

If the cycle in progress is an "early-write" cycle (WRITE active before CAS goes active), then the output pin will maintain the high impedance state throughout the entire cycle. Note that with this type of output configuration, the user is given full control of the D_{OUT} pin simply by controlling the placement of WRITE command during a write cycle, and the pulse width of the Column Address Strobe during read operations. Note also that even though data is not latched at the output, data can remain valid from access time until the beginning of a subsequent cycle without paying any penalty in overall memory cycle time (stretching the cycle).

This type of output operation results in some very significant system implications.

Common I/O Operation – If all write operations are handled in the "early write" mode, then D_{IN} can be connected directly to D_{OUT} for a common I/O data bus.

Data Output Control – D_{OUT} will remain valid during a read cycle from t_{CAC} until CAS goes back to a high level (precharge), allowing data to be valid from one cycle up until a new memory cycle begins with no penalty in cycle time. This also makes the RAS/CAS clock timing relationship very flexible.

Two Methods of Chip Selection — Since D_{OUT} is not latched, CAS is not required to turn off the outputs of unselected memory devices in a matrix. This means that both CAS and/or RAS can be decoded for chip selection. If both RAS and CAS are decoded, then a two dimensional (X,Y) chip select array can be realized.

Extended Page Boundary — Page-mode operation allows for successive memory cycles at multiple column locations of the same row address. By decoding CAS as a page cycle select signal, the page boundary can be extended beyond the 128 column locations in a single chip. (See page-mode operation).

OUTPUT INTERFACE CHARACTERISTICS

The three state data output buffer presents the data output pin with a low impedance to V_{CC} for a logic 1 and a low impedance to V_{SS} for a logic 0. The effective resistance to V_{CC} (logic 1 state) is 420 Ω maximum and 135Ω typically. The resistance to V_{SS} (logic 0 state) is 95 Ω maximum and 35 Ω typically. The separate V_{CC} pin allows the output buffer to be powered from the supply voltage of the logic to which the chip is interfaced. During battery standby operation, the V_{CC} pin may have power removed without affecting the MK 4332 refresh operation. This allows all system logic except the RAS timing circuitry and the refresh address logic to be turned off during battery standby to conserve power.

PAGE MODE OPERATION

The "Page Mode" feature of the MK 4332 allows for successive memory operations at multiple column locations of the same row address with increased speed without an increase in power. This is done by strobing the row address into the chip and maintaining the RAS signal at a logic 0 throughout all successive memory cycles in which the row address is common. This "page-mode" of operation will not dissipate the power associated with the negative going edge of RAS. Also, the time required for strobing in a new row address is eliminated, thereby decreasing the access and cycle times.

The page boundary of a single MK 4116 is limited to the 128 column locations determined by all combinations of the 7 column address bits. However, the page boundary of the MK4332 can be extended by using CAS rather than RAS as the chip select signal. RAS is applied to all devices to latch the row address into each device and then CAS is decoded and serves as a page cycle select signal. Only those devices which receive both RAS and CAS signals will execute a read or write cycle.

REFRESH

Refresh of the MK4116 is accomplished by performing a memory cycle at each of the 128 row addresses within each 2 millisecond time interval. Each MK4116 in the MK4332 Assembly must receive all 128 refresh cycles within the 2ms time interval in order to completely refresh all 32,768 memory cells. Although any normal memory cycle will perform the refresh operation, this function is most easily accomplished with "RAS-only" cycles. RAS-only refresh resuls in a substantial reduction in operating power. This reduction in power is reflected in the I_{DD3} specification.

POWER CONSIDERATIONS

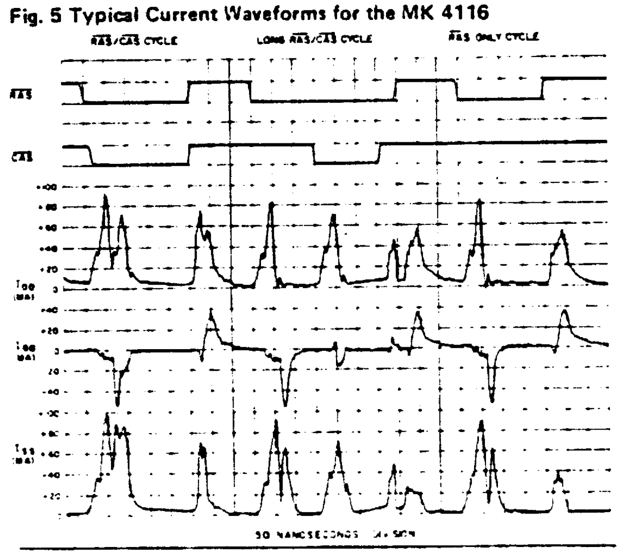
Most of the circuitry used in the MK 4332 is dynamic and most of the power drawn is the result of an address strobe edge. Consequently, the dynamic power is primarily a function of operating frequency rather than active duty cycle (refer to the MK 4116 current waveforms in figure 5). This current characteristic of the MK 4332 precludes inadvertent burn out of the device in the event that the clock inputs become shorted to ground due to system malfunction.

Although no particular power supply noise restriction exists other than the supply voltages remain within the specified tolerance limits, adequate decoupling should be provided to suppress high frequency noise resulting from the transient current of the device. This insures optimum system performance and reliability. Bulk capacitance requirements are minimal since the MK 4332 draws very little steady state (DC) current.

In system applications requiring lower power dissipation the operating frequency (cycle rate) of the MK 4332 can be reduced and the (guaranteed maximum) average power dissipation of the device will be lowered in accordance with the I_{DD1} (max) spec limit curve illustrated in figure 2. NOTE: The MK 4332 family is guaranteed to have a maximum I_{DD1} requirement of 36.5mA @ 375ns cycle with an ambient temperature range from 0° to 70°C. A lower operating frequency, for example 1 microsecond cycle, results in a reduced maximum I_{DD1} requirement of under 20mA with an ambient temperature range from 0° to 70°C.

NOTE: Additional power supply tolerance has been included on the V_{BB} supply to allow direct interface capability with both −5V systems −5.2V ECL systems.

Fig. 5 Typical Current Waveforms for the MK 4116



Although $\overline{RAS}$ and/or $\overline{CAS}$ can be decoded and used as a chip select signal for the MK 4116, overall system power is minimized if the Row Address Strobe ($\overline{RAS}$) is used for this purpose. All unselected devices (those which do not receive a $\overline{RAS}$) will remain in a low power (standby) mode regardless of the state of $\overline{CAS}$.

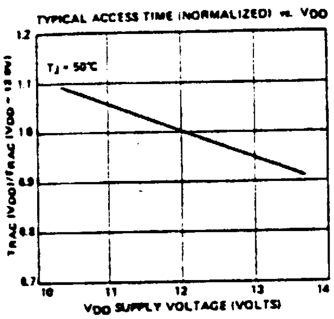
POWER UP

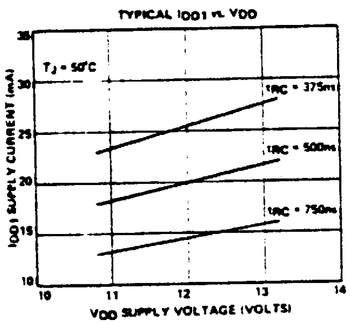
The MK 4332 requires no particular power supply sequencing so long as the Absolute Maximum Rating Conditions are observed. However, in order to insure compliance with the Absolute Maximum Ratings, MOSTEK recommends sequencing of power supplies such that V_{BB} is applied first and removed las V_{BB} should never be more positive than V_{SS} whe power is applied to V_{DD}.

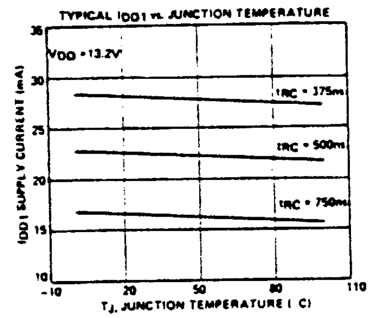
Under system failure conditions in which one or mo supplies exceed the specified limits significant add tional margin against catastrophic device failure ma be achieved by forcing $\overline{RAS}$ and $\overline{CAS}$ to the inacti state (high level).

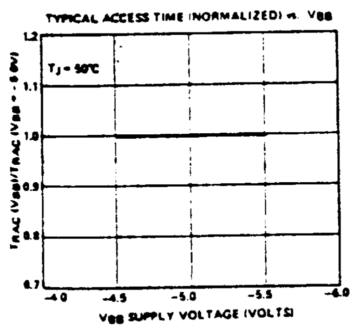
After power is applied to the device, the MK 43 requires several cycles before proper device operati is achieved. Any 8 cycles which perform refre are adequate for this purpose. Each MK 4116 devi must receive the 8 initialization cycles.

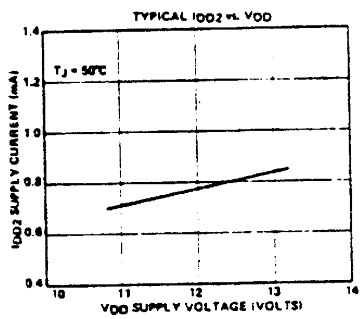
TYPICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE MK 4116

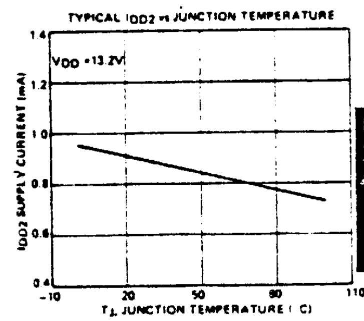


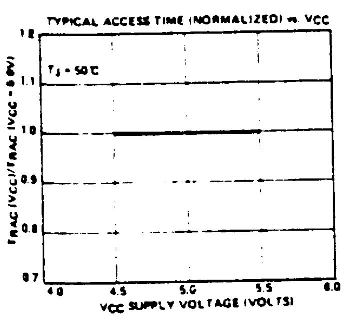


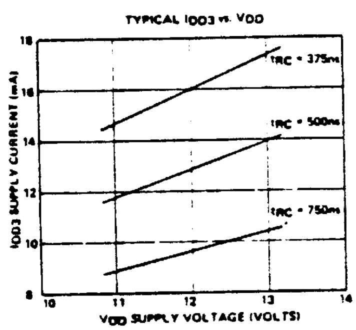


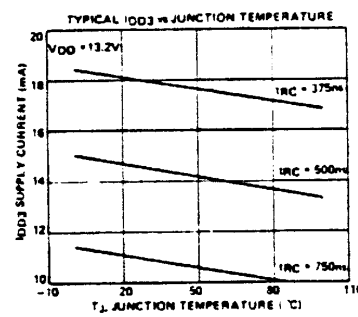


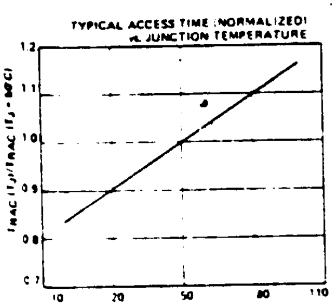


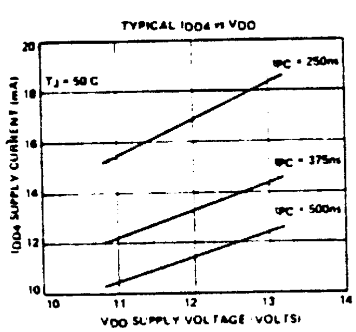


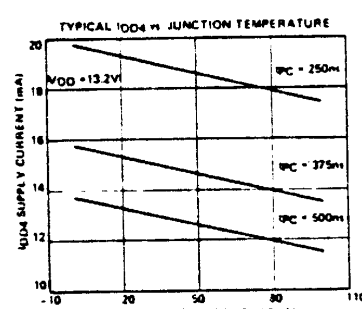


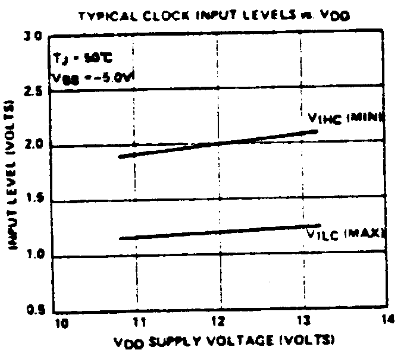


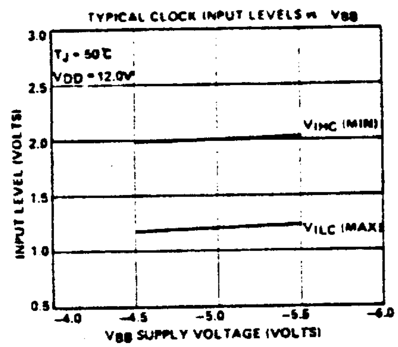


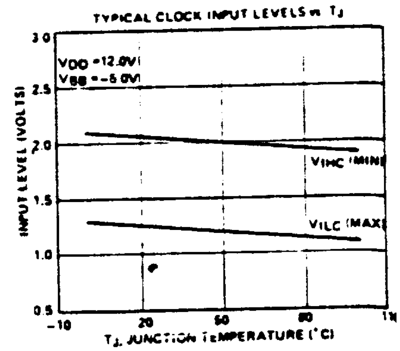


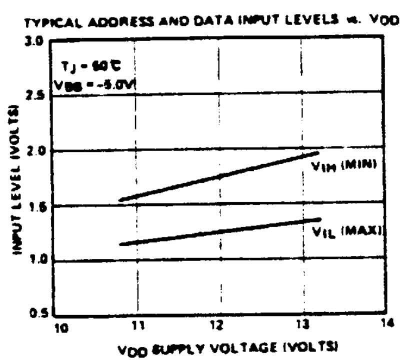


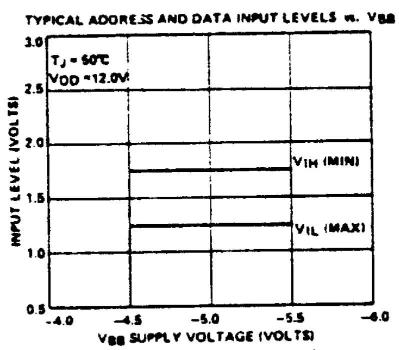


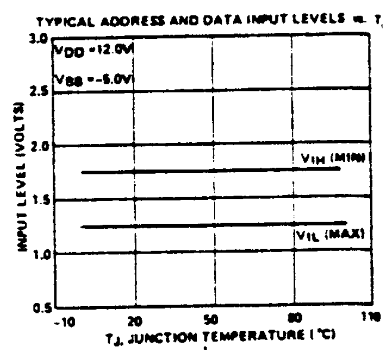












PRÉ-RELEASE
VERSION

REV.	ZONE	ECO #	REVISION	APPD
A		655	INITIAL RELEASE	

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ENGINEERING RELEASE.
This revision supersedes all previous versions.
Please destroy all old copies.
NOTICE OF PROPRIETARY PROPERTY
The information contained herein is the proprietary property of Apple Computer, Inc.
The possessor agrees to the following:
(i) To maintain this document in confidence.
(ii) Not to reproduce or copy it.
(iii) Not to reveal or publish it in whole or pa

ENGINEERING SPECIFICATION

P/N 333-0007

DESCRIPTION: IC, Ram, 65,536 X 1, 4164 type, 128 cycle, refresh.

Part is to have a 200nS, or less access time (trac).

Specification Sheet of a typical 4164 RAM is to be filied under Apple P/N 333-0007.

DRAWING NUMBER 333-0007-A

SH 1 OF 7

TOLERANCES
UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES.
DECIMALS .X ± ___ .XX ± ___ .XXX ± ___
ANGLES XX.X ± ___
FRACTIONS ± ___
DIMENSIONS IN PARENTHESIS ARE IN MILLIMETERS.

	BY	DATE
DRAWN BY	C. Brown	3-25-81
CHECKED BY	P. Baum	3/30/81
APPROVED BY	P. Ginn	4/1/81
RELEASED BY	[illegible]	4/15/81

apple computer inc.

TITLE
IC, Ram, 64K, 200NS, 128 cycle, refresh, WO/Logo, WO/burn-in

SIZE A

DRAWING NUMBER 333-0007-A

MATERIAL:

FINISH:

NEXT ASSY.

SCALE:

SHEET 1 OF 7

VERSION

NEC Microcomputers, Inc.

NEC

μPD4164-1
μPD4164-2
μPD4164-3

PRELIMINARY

65,536 x 1 BIT DYNAMIC RANDOM ACCESS MEMORY

DESCRIPTION

The NEC μPD4164 is a 65,536 words by 1 bit Dynamic N-Channel MOS RAM designed to operate from a single +5V power supply. The negative-voltage substrate bias is internally generated — its operation is both automatic and transparent.

The μPD4164 utilizes a double-poly-layer N-channel silicon gate process which provides high storage cell density, high performance and high reliability.

The μPD4164 uses a single transistor dynamic storage cell and advanced dynamic circuitry throughout, including the 512 sense amplifiers, which assures that power dissipation is minimized. Refresh characteristics have been chosen to maximize yield (low cost to user) while maintaining compatibility between Dynamic RAM generations.

The μPD4164 three-state output is controlled by $\overline{CAS}$, independent of $\overline{RAS}$. After a valid read or read-modify-write cycle, data is held on the output by holding $\overline{CAS}$ low. The data out pin is returned to the high impedance state by returning $\overline{CAS}$ to a high state. The μPD4164 hidden refresh feature allows $\overline{CAS}$ to be held low to maintain output data while $\overline{RAS}$ is used to execute $\overline{RAS}$ only refresh cycles.

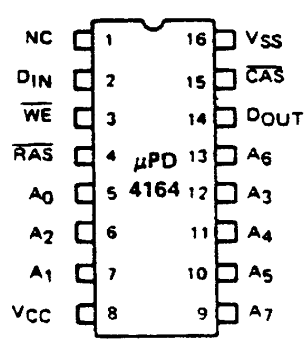
Refreshing is accomplished by performing $\overline{RAS}$ only refresh cycles, hidden refresh cycles, or normal read or write cycles on the 128 address combinations of A_0 through A_6 during a 2 ms period.

Multiplexed address inputs permit the μPD4164 to be packaged in the standard 16 pin dual-in-line package. The 16 pin package provides the highest system bit densities and is compatible with widely available automated handling equipment.

FEATURES

- High Memory Density
- Multiplexed Address Inputs
- Single +5V Supply
- On Chip Substrate Bias Generator
- Access Time: μPD4164-1 — 250 ns
  μPD4164-2 — 200 ns
  μPD4164-3 — 150 ns
- Read, Write Cycle Time: μPD4164-1 — 410 ns
  μPD4164-2 — 335 ns
  μPD4164-3 — 270 ns
- Low Power Dissipation: 250 mW (Active); 28 mW (Standby)
- Non-Latched Output is Three-State, TTL Compatible
- Read, Write, Read-Write; Read-Modify-Write, RAS Only Refresh, and Page Mode Capability
- All Inputs TTL Compatible, and Low Input Capacitance
- 128 Refresh Cycles (A_0-A_6 Pins for Refresh Address)
- CAS Controlled Output Allows Hidden Refresh
- Available in Both Ceramic and Plastic 16 Pin Packages

PIN CONFIGURATION



PIN NAMES

A_0-A_7	Address Inputs
$\overline{RAS}$	Row Address Strobe
$\overline{CAS}$	Column Address Strobe
$\overline{WE}$	Write Enable
D_{IN}	Data Input
D_{OUT}	Data Output
V_{CC}	Power Supply (+5V)
V_{SS}	Ground
NC	No Connection

µPD4164

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS*

Operating Temperature . . . . 0°C to +70°C
Storage Temperature (Ceramic Package) . . . . −55°C to +150°C
(Plastic Package) . . . . −55°C to +125°C
Supply Voltages On Any Pin Except V_{CC} . . . . −1 to +7 Volts ①
Supply Voltage V_{CC} . . . . −0.5 to +7 Volts ①
Short Circuit Output Current . . . . 50 mA
Power Dissipation . . . . 1 Watt

Note: ① Relative to V_{SS}

COMMENT: Stress above those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions above those indicated in the operational sections of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

*T_a = 25°C

DC CHARACTERISTICS

T_a = 0° to 70°C ① : V_{CC} = +5V ± 10%; V_{SS} = 0V

PARAMETER	SYMBOL		LIMITS MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT	TEST CONDITIONS
Supply Voltage	V_{CC}		4.5	5.0	5.5	V	All Voltages Referenced to V_{SS}
	V_{SS}		0	0	0	V	
High Level Input Voltage, ($\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$, $\overline{WE}$)	V_{IHC}		2.4		5.5	V	
High Level Input Voltage, All Inputs Except $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$, $\overline{WE}$	V_{IH}		2.4		5.5	V	
Low Level Input Voltage, All Inputs	V_{IL}		-2.0		0.8	V	
Operating Current Average Power Supply Operating Current; $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$ Cycling; t_{RC} = t_{RC} (Min.)	I_{CC1}	µPD4164-1			45	mA	②
		µPD4164-2			50		
		µPD4164-3			60		
Standby Current Power Supply Standby Current ($\overline{RAS}$ = V_{IHC}, D_{OUT} = Hi-Impedance)	I_{CC2}				5.0	mA	
Refresh Current Average Power Supply Current, Refresh Mode; $\overline{RAS}$ Cycling, $\overline{CAS}$ = V_{IHC}, t_{RC} = t_{RC} (Min.)	I_{CC3}	µPD4164-1			35	mA	②
		µPD4164-2			40		
		µPD4164-3			45		
Page Mode Current Average Power Supply Current, Page Mode Operation $\overline{RAS}$ = V_{IL}; $\overline{CAS}$ Cycling t_{PC} = t_{PC} (Min.)	I_{CC4}	µPD4164-1			35	mA	②
		µPD4164-2			40		
		µPD4164-3			45		
Input Leakage Current Any Input V_{IN} = 0 to +5.5 Volts, All Other Pins Not Under Test = 0V	$I_{I(L)}$		-10		10	µA	
Output Leakage Current D_{OUT} is Disabled, V_{OUT} = 0 to +5.5 Volts	$I_{O(L)}$		-10		10	µA	
Output Levels High Level Output Voltage (I_{OUT} = 5 mA)	V_{OH}		2.4		V_{CC}	V	
Low Level Output Voltage (I_{OUT} = 4.2 mA)	V_{OL}		0		0.4	V	

Notes: ① T_a is specified here for operation at frequencies to $t_{RC} \geq t_{RC}$ (min). Operation at higher cycle rates with reduced ambient temperatures and high power dissipation is permissible, however, provided AC operating parameters are met.
② I_{CC1}, I_{CC3} and I_{CC4} depend on output loading and cycle rates. Specified rates are obtained with the output open.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

µPD4164

AC CHARACTERISTICS

$T_a = 0°$ to $+70°C$ ①; $V_{CC} = +5V \pm 10\%$; $V_{SS} = 0V$ ③ ④

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	LIMITS µPD4164-1 MIN	µPD4164-1 MAX	µPD4164-2 MIN	µPD4164-2 MAX	µPD4164-3 MIN	µPD4164-3 MAX	UNIT	TEST CONDITIONS
Random Read or Write Cycle Time	t_{RC}	410		335		270		ns	⑤
Read Write Cycle Time	t_{RWC}	465		335		270		ns	⑤
Page Mode Cycle Time	t_{PC}	275		225		170		ns	
Access Time from $\overline{RAS}$	t_{RAC}		250		200		150	ns	⑥ ⑧
Access Time from $\overline{CAS}$	t_{CAC}		165		135		100	ns	⑦ ⑧
Output Buffer Turn-Off Delay	t_{OFF}	0	60	0	50	0	40	ns	⑨
Transition Time (Rise and Fall)	t_T	3	50	3	50	3	50	ns	④
$\overline{RAS}$ Precharge Time	t_{RP}	150		120		100		ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ Pulse Width	t_{RAS}	250	10,000	200	10,000	150	10,000	ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ Hold Time	t_{RSH}	165		135		100		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ Pulse Width	t_{CAS}	165	10,000	135	10,000	100	10,000	ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ Hold Time	t_{CSH}	250		200		150		ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ to $\overline{CAS}$ Delay Time	t_{RCD}	35	85	30	65	25	50	ns	⑩
$\overline{CAS}$ to $\overline{RAS}$ Precharge Time	t_{CRP}	0		0		0		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ Precharge Time	t_{CPN}	35		30		25		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ Precharge Time (For Page Mode Cycle Only)	t_{CP}	100		80		60		ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ Precharge $\overline{CAS}$ Hold Time	t_{RPC}	0		0		0		ns	
Row Address Set-Up Time	t_{ASR}	0		0		0		ns	
Row Address Hold Time	t_{RAH}	25		20		15		ns	
Column Address Set-Up Time	t_{ASC}	0		0		0		ns	
Column Address Hold Time	t_{CAH}	75		55		45		ns	
Column Address Hold Time Referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{AR}	160		120		95		ns	
Read Command Set-Up Time	t_{RCS}	0		0		0		ns	
Read Command Hold Time Referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{RRH}	30		25		20		ns	⑬
Read Command Hold Time	t_{RCH}	0		0		0		ns	⑬
Write Command Hold Time	t_{WCH}	75		55		45		ns	
Write Command Hold Time Referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{WCR}	160		120		95		ns	
Write Command Pulse Width	t_{WP}	75		55		45		ns	
Write Command to $\overline{RAS}$ Lead Time	t_{RWL}	100		55		45		ns	
Write Command to $\overline{CAS}$ Lead Time	t_{CWL}	100		55		45		ns	
Data-In Set-Up Time	t_{DS}	0		0		0		ns	⑪
Data-In Hold Time	t_{DH}	75		55		45		ns	⑪
Data-In Hold Time Referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{DHR}	160		120		95		ns	
Refresh Period	t_{REF}		2		2		2	ms	
$\overline{WRITE}$ Command Set-Up Time	t_{WCS}	-20		-20		-20		ns	⑫
$\overline{CAS}$ to $\overline{WRITE}$ Delay	t_{CWD}	115		80		60		ns	⑫
$\overline{RAS}$ to $\overline{WRITE}$ Delay	t_{RWD}	200		145		110		ns	⑫

Notes:
① T_a is specified here for operation at frequencies to $t_{RC} \geq t_{RC}$ (min). Operation at higher cycle rates with reduced ambient temperatures and higher power dissipation is permissible, however, provided AC operating parameters are met.
② An initial pause of 100 µs is required after power-up followed by any 8 $\overline{RAS}$ cycles before proper device operation is achieved.
③ AC measurements assume $t_T = 5$ ns.
④ V_{IHC} (min) or V_{IH} (min) and V_{IL} (max) are reference levels for measuring timing of input signals. Also, transition times are measured between V_{IHC} or V_{IH} and V_{IL}.
⑤ The specifications for t_{RC} (min) and t_{RWC} (min) are used only to indicate cycle times at which proper operation over the full temperature range ($0°C \leq T_a \leq 70°C$) is assured.
⑥ Assumes that $t_{RCD} \leq t_{RCD}$ (max). If t_{RCD} is greater than the maximum recommended value shown in this table, t_{RAC} will increase by the amount that t_{RCD} exceeds the values shown.
⑦ Assumes that $t_{RCD} \geq t_{RCD}$ (max).
⑧ Measured with a load equivalent to 2 TTL loads and 100 pF.
⑨ t_{OFF} (max) defines the time at which the output achieves the open circuit condition and is not referenced to output voltage levels.
⑩ Operation within the t_{RCD} (max) limit ensures that t_{RAC} (max) can be met, t_{RCD} (max) is specified as a reference point only, if t_{RCD} is greater than the specified t_{RCD} (max) limit, then access time is controlled exclusively by t_{CAC}.
⑪ These parameters are referenced to $\overline{CAS}$ leading edge in early write cycles and to $\overline{WRITE}$ leading edge in delayed write or read-modify-write cycles.
⑫ t_{WCS}, t_{CWD} and t_{RWD} are restrictive operating parameters in read-write and read-modify-write cycles only. If $t_{WCS} \geq t_{WCS}$ (min), the cycle is an early write cycle and the data output will remain open circuit throughout the entire cycle. If $t_{CWD} \geq t_{CWD}$ (min) and $t_{RWD} \geq t_{RWD}$ (min), the cycle is a read-write and the data output will contain data read from the selected cell. If neither of the above conditions are met the condition of the data out (at access time and until $\overline{CAS}$ goes back to V_{IH}) is indeterminate.
⑬ Either t_{RRH} or t_{RCH} must be satisfied for a read cycle.

3

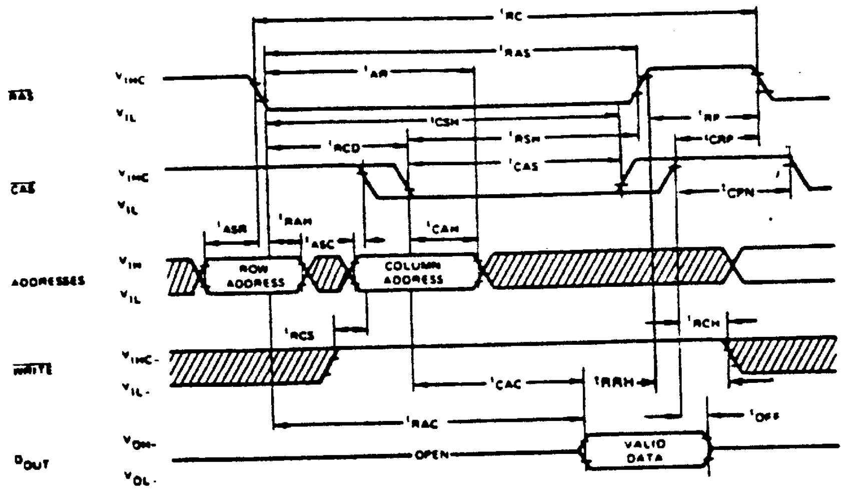
PRE-RELEASE VERSION

P9

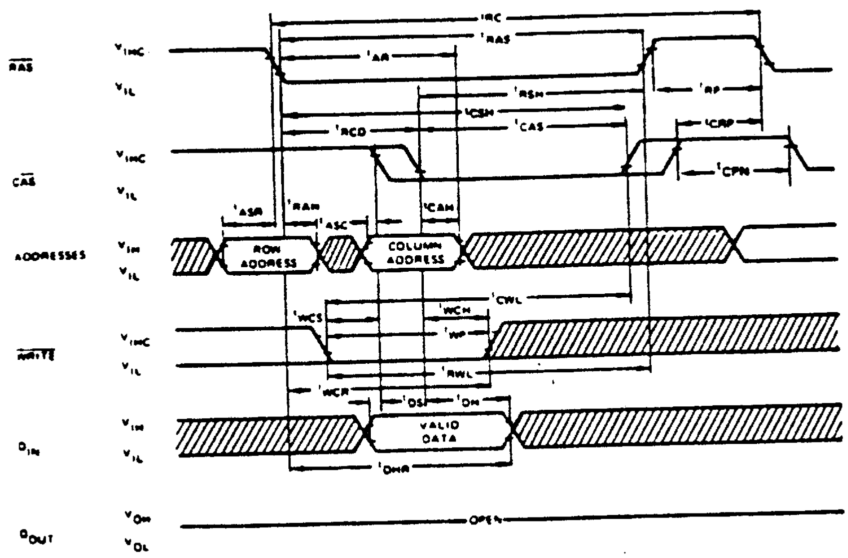
μPD4164

TIMING WAVEFORMS

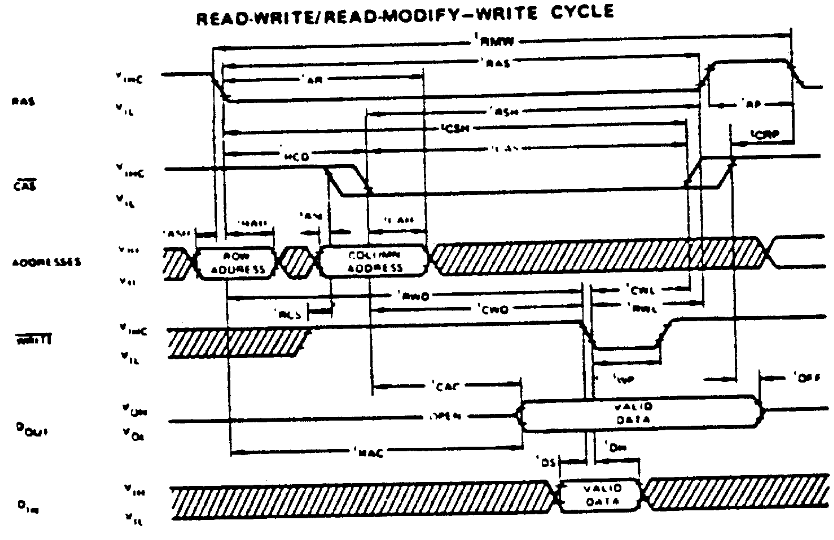
READ CYCLE



WRITE CYCLE (EARLY WRITE)

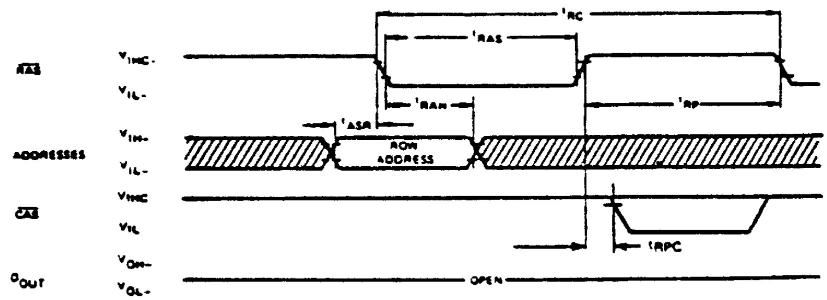


READ-WRITE/READ-MODIFY-WRITE CYCLE

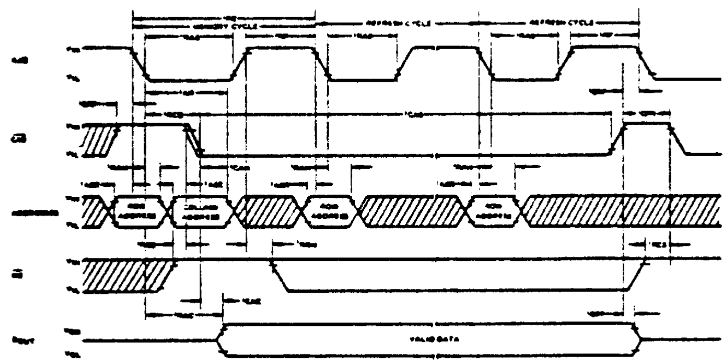


TIMING WAVEFORMS (CONT.)

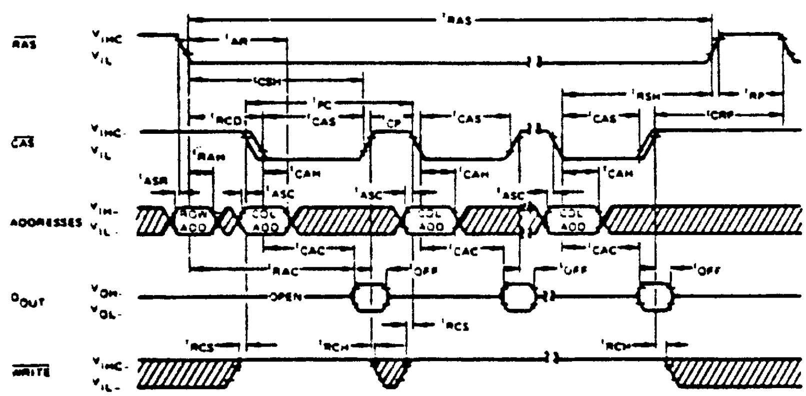
"RAS-ONLY" REFRESH CYCLE



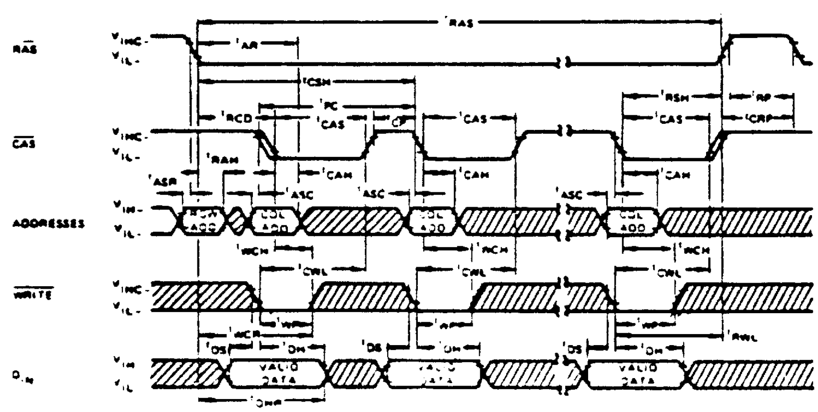
HIDDEN REFRESH CYCLE



PAGE MODE READ CYCLE



PAGE MODE WRITE CYCLE



μPD4164

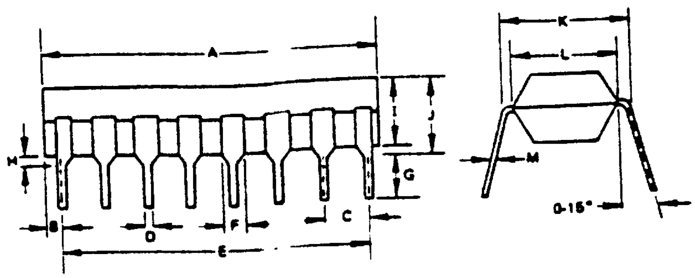
CAPACITANCE

T_a = 0° to +70°C; V_{CC} = +5V ± 10%; V_{SS} = 0V

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	LIMITS MIN	LIMITS TYP	LIMITS MAX	UNIT	TEST CONDITIONS
Input Capacitance (A_0-A_7), D_{IN}	C_{I1}		5	6	pF	
Input Capacitance $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$, $\overline{WRITE}$	C_{I2}			10	pF	
Output Capacitance (D_{OUT})	C_O			7	pF	

PACKAGE OUTLINES

μPD4164C

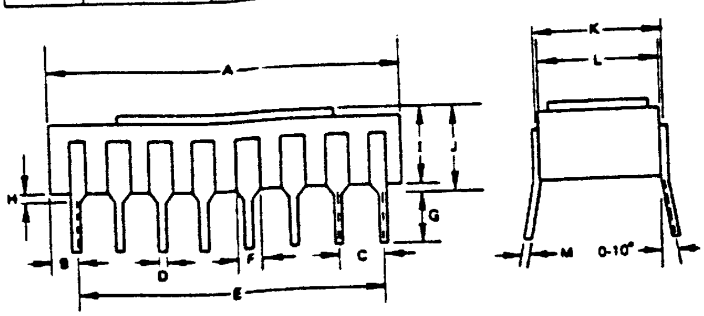


Plastic

ITEM	MILLIMETERS	INCHES
A	19.4 MAX	0.76 MAX
B	0.83	0.03
C	2.54	0.10
D	0.5	0.02
E	17.78	0.70
F	1.3	0.051
G	2.54 MIN	0.10 MIN
H	0.5 MIN	0.02 MIN
I	4.05 MAX	0.16 MAX
J	4.55 MAX	0.18 MAX
K	7.62	0.30
L	6.4	0.25
M	0.25 +0.10 −0.05	0.01

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

μPD4164D



Ceramic

ITEM	MILLIMETERS	INCHES
A	20.5 MAX	0.81 MAX
B	1.38	0.05
C	2.54	0.10
D	0.5	0.02
E	17.78	0.70
F	1.3	0.051
G	3.5 MIN	0.14 MIN
H	0.5 MIN	0.02 MIN
I	4.6 MAX	0.18 MAX
J	5.1 MAX	0.20 MAX
K	7.6	0.30
L	7.3	0.29
M	0.27	0.01

4164DS-9-80-CAT

Bidirectional Transceiver

General Description

The DP7304B/DP8304B are 8-bit TRI-STATE® Schottky transceivers. They provide bidirectional drive for bus-oriented microprocessor and digital communications systems. Straight through bidirectional transceivers are featured, with 16 mA drive capability on the A ports and 48 mA bus drive capability on the B ports. PNP inputs are incorporated to reduce input loading.

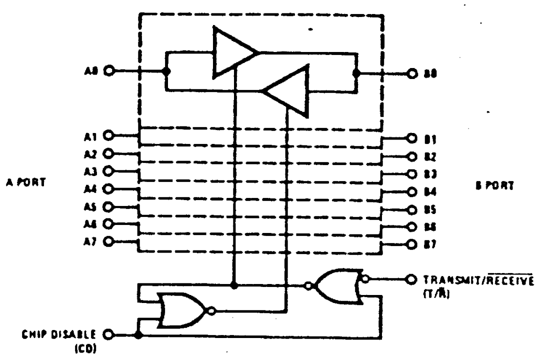
Transmit/$\overline{\text{Receive}}$ inputs determine the direction of logic signals through the bidirectional transceiver. The Chip Disable input disables both A and B ports by placing them in a TRI-STATE condition.

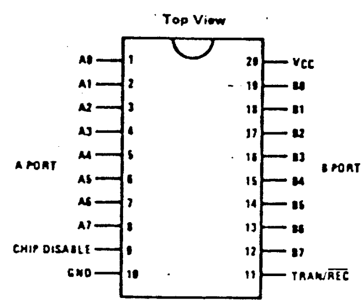
The output high voltage (V_{OH}) is specified at V_{CC} - 1.15 V minimum to allow interfacing with MOS, CMOS, TTL, ROM, RAM, or microprocessors.

Features

- 8 Bit Bidirectional Data Flow Reduced System Package Count
- Bidirectional TRI-STATE Inputs/Outputs Interface with Bus-Oriented Systems
- PNP Inputs Reduce Input Loading
- Output High Voltage Interfaces with TTL, MOS, and CMOS
- 48 mA/300 pF Bus Drive Capability
- Pinouts Simplify System Interconnections
- Transmit/$\overline{\text{Receive}}$ and Chip Disable Simplify Control Logic
- Compact 20-Pin Dual-In-Line Package
- Low I_{CC} Power (8 mA per bidirectional bit)

Logic and Connection Diagrams





Dual-In-Line Package
Order Numbers: DP8304BN, DP8304BJ, DP7304BJ
See NS Package J20A or N20A

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Logic Table

Inputs		Resulting Conditions	
Chip Disable	Transmit/$\overline{\text{Receive}}$	A Port	B Port
0	0	OUT	IN
0	1	IN	OUT
1	X	TRI-STATE	TRI-STATE

X = Don't Care

P/N 315-8304-00
ECO 449
DATE 6/80
INITIATED BY
APPROVED BY
RELEASED BY 7-3-80

SHEET 1 OF 4

Absolute Maximum Ratings (Note 1)

Supply Voltage	7V
Input Voltage	5.5V
Output Voltage	5.5V
Storage Temperature	−65°C to +150°C
Lead Temperature (soldering, 10 seconds)	300°C
Power Dissipation	
Cavity Package (J)	730 mW at 125°C
Molded Package (N)	600 mW at 70°C

Recommended Operating Conditions

	Min	Max	Units
Supply Voltage (V_{CC})			
DP7304B	4.5	5.5	V
DP8304B	4.75	5.25	V
Temperature (T_A)			
DP7304B	−55	125	°C
DP8304B	0	70	°C

Electrical Characteristics (Notes 2 and 3)

Parameter		Conditions		Min	Typ	Max	Units
A Port (A0–A7)							
V_{IH}	Logical "1" Input Voltage	CD = 0.8V, T/$\bar{R}$ = 2.0V		2.0			V
V_{IL}	Logical "0" Input Voltage	CD = 0.8V, T/$\bar{R}$ = 2.0V	DP8304B			0.8	V
			DP7304B			0.7	V
V_{OH}	Logical "1" Output Voltage	CD = 0.8V, T/$\bar{R}$ = 0.8V,	I_{OH} = −0.4 mA	V_{CC}−1.15	V_{CC}−0.7		V
			I_{OH} = −3 mA	2.7	3.95		V
V_{OL}	Logical "0" Output Voltage	CD = T/$\bar{R}$ = 0.8V	I_{OL} = 16 mA (8304B)		0.35	0.5	V
			I_{OL} = 8 mA (both)		0.3	0.4	V
I_{OS}	Output Short Circuit Current	CD = 0.8V, T/$\bar{R}$ = 0.8V, V_O = 0V, V_{CC} = max, Note 4		−10	−38	−75	mA
I_{IH}	Logical "1" Input Current	CD = 0.8V, T/$\bar{R}$ = 2.0V, V_{IH} = 2.7V			0.1	80	µA
I_I	Input Current at Maximum Input Voltage	CD = 2.0V, V_{CC} = max, V_{IH} = 5.25V				1	mA
I_{IL}	Logical "0" Input Current	CD = 0.8V, T/$\bar{R}$ = 2.0V, V_{IL} = 0.4V			−70	−200	µA
V_{CLAMP}	Input Clamp Voltage	CD = 2.0V, I_{IN} = −12 mA			−0.7	−1.5	V
I_{OD}	Output/Input TRI-STATE Current	CD = 2.0V	V_{IN} = 0.4V			−200	µA
			V_{IN} = 4.0V			80	µA
B Port (B0–B7)							
V_{IH}	Logical "1" Input Voltage	CD = 0.8V, T/$\bar{R}$ = 0.8V		2.0			V
V_{IL}	Logical "0" Input Voltage	CD = 0.8V, T/$\bar{R}$ = 0.8V	DP8304B			0.8	V
			DP7304B			0.7	V
V_{OH}	Logical "1" Output Voltage	CD = 0.8V, T/$\bar{R}$ = 2.0V	I_{OH} = −0.4 mA	V_{CC}−1.15	V_{CC}−0.8		V
			I_{OH} = −5 mA	2.7	3.9		V
			I_{OH} = −10 mA	2.4	3.6		V
V_{OL}	Logical "0" Output Voltage	CD = 0.8V, T/$\bar{R}$ = 2.0V	I_{OL} = 20 mA		0.3	0.4	V
			I_{OL} = 48 mA		0.4	0.5	V
I_{OS}	Output Short Circuit Current	CD = 0.8V, T/$\bar{R}$ = 2.0V, V_O = 0V, V_{CC} = max, Note 4		−25	−50	−150	mA
I_{IH}	Logical "1" Input Current	CD = 0.8V, T/$\bar{R}$ = 0.8V, V_{IH} = 2.7V			0.1	80	µA
I_I	Input Current at Maximum Input Voltage	CD = 2.0V, V_{CC} = max, V_{IH} = 5.25V				1	mA
I_{IL}	Logical "0" Input Current	CD = 0.8V, T/$\bar{R}$ = 0.8V, V_{IL} = 0.4V			−70	−200	µA
V_{CLAMP}	Input Clamp Voltage	CD = 2.0V, I_{IN} = −12 mA			−0.7	−1.5	V
I_{OD}	Output/Input TRI-STATE Current	CD = 2.0V	V_{IN} = 0.4V			−200	µA
			V_{IN} = 4.0V			+200	µA

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

315-8304-00 SHT 2

Electrical Characteristics (cont'd.) (Notes 2 and 3)

Parameter		Conditions		Min	Typ	Max	Units
Control Inputs CD, T/R̄							
V_{IH}	Logical "1" Input Voltage			2.0			V
V_{IL}	Logical "0" Input Voltage					0.8	V
I_{IH}	Logical "1" Input Current	$V_{IH} = 2.7V$			0.5	20	μA
I_I	Input Current at Maximum Input Voltage	V_{CC} = max, $V_{IH} = 5.25V$				1.0	mA
I_{IL}	Logical "0" Input Current	$V_{IL} = 0.4V$	T/R̄		–0.1	–0.25	mA
			CD		–0.25	–0.5	mA
V_{CLAMP}	Input Clamp Voltage	$I_{IN} = -12\,mA$			–0.8	–1.5	V
Power Supply Current							
I_{CC}	Power Supply Current	CD = 2.0V, V_{IN} = 0.4V, V_{CC} = max			60	100	mA
		CD = V_{INA} = 0.4V, T/R = 2V, V_{CC} = max			80	130	mA

Switching Characteristics $V_{CC} = 5V$, $T_A = 25°C$

Parameter		Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
A Port Data/Mode Specifications						
t_{PDHLA}	Propagation Delay to a Logical "0" from B Port to A Port	CD = 0.4V, T/R = 0.4V (figure A), R1 = 1k, R2 = 5k, C1 = 30 pF		14	18	ns
t_{PDLHA}	Propagation Delay to a Logical "1" from B Port to A Port	CD = 0.4V, T/R = 0.4V (figure A) R1 = 1k, R2 = 5k, C1 = 30 pF		13	18	ns
t_{PLZA}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "0" to TRI-STATE from CD to A Port	B0 to B7 = 0.4V, T/R = 0.4V (figure C) S3 = 1, R5 = 1k, C4 = 15 pF		11	15	ns
t_{PHZA}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "1" to TRI-STATE from CD to A Port	B0 to B7 = 2.4V, T/R = 0.4V (figure C) S3 = 0, R5 = 1k, C4 = 15 pF		8	15	ns
t_{PZLA}	Propagation Delay from TRI-STATE to a Logical "0" from CD to A Port	B0 to B7 = 0.4V, T/R = 0.4V (figure C) S3 = 1, R5 = 1k, C4 = 30 pF		27	35	ns
t_{PZHA}	Propagation Delay from TRI-STATE to a Logical "1" from CD to A Port	B0 to B7 = 2.4V, T/R = 0.4V (figure C) S3 = 0, R5 = 5k, C4 = 30 pF		19	25	ns
B Port Data/Mode Specifications						
t_{PDHLB}	Propagation Delay to a Logical "0" from A Port to B Port	CD = 0.4V, T/R = 2.4V (figure A)				
		R1 = 100 Ω, R2 = 1k, C1 = 300 pF		18	23	ns
		R1 = 667 Ω, R2 = 5k, C1 = 45 pF		11	18	ns
t_{PDLHB}	Propagation Delay to a Logical "1" from A Port to B Port	CD = 0.4V, T/R = 2.4V (figure A)				
		R1 = 100 Ω, R2 = 1k, C1 = 300 pF		16	23	ns
		R1 = 667 Ω, R2 = 5k, C1 = 45 pF		11	18	ns
t_{PLZB}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "0" to TRI-STATE from CD to B Port	A0 to A7 = 0.4V, T/R = 2.4V (figure C) S3 = 1, R5 = 1k, C4 = 15 pF		13	18	ns
t_{PHZB}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "1" to TRI-STATE from CD to B Port	A0 to A7 = 2.4V, T/R = 2.4V (figure C) S3 = 0, R5 = 1k, C4 = 15 pF		8	15	ns
t_{PZLB}	Propagation Delay from TRI-STATE to a Logical "0" from CD to B Port	A0 to A7 = 0.4V, T/R = 2.4V (figure C)				
		S3 = 1, R5 = 100 Ω, C4 = 300 pF		32	40	ns
		S3 = 1, R5 = 667 Ω, C4 = 45 pF		16	22	ns
t_{PZHB}	Propagation Delay from TRI-STATE to a Logical "1" from CD to B Port	A0 to A7 = 2.4V, T/R = 2.4V (figure C)				
		S3 = 0, R5 = 1k, C4 = 300 pF		26	35	ns
		S3 = 0, R5 = 5k, C4 = 45 pF		14	22	ns

Switching Characteristics (cont'd.) $V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C$

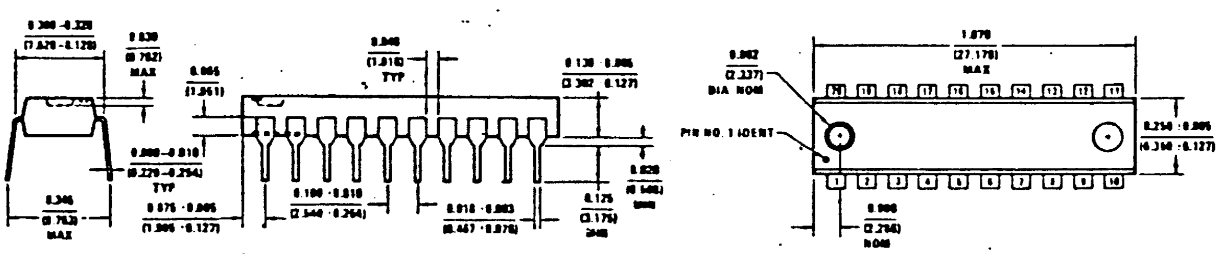
Parameter		Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
Transmit/Receive Mode Specifications						
t_{PHZR}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "1" to TRI-STATE from T/R to A Port	CD = 0.4V (figure B) S1 = 1, R4 = 100 Ω, C3 = 300 pF S2 = 0, R3 = 1k, C2 = 15 pF		7	12	ns
t_{PLZR}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "0" to TRI-STATE from T/R to A Port	CD = 0.4V (figure B) S1 = 0, R4 = 1k, C3 = 300 pF S2 = 1, R3 = 1k, C2 = 15 pF		10	14	ns
t_{PHZT}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "1" to TRI-STATE from T/R to B Port	CD = 0.4V (figure B) S1 = 0, R4 = 1k, C3 = 15 pF S2 = 1, R3 = 5k, C2 = 30 pF		16	22	ns
t_{PLZT}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "0" to TRI-STATE from T/R to B Port	CD = 0.4V (figure B) S1 = 1, R4 = 1k, C3 = 15 pF S2 = 0, R3 = 1k, C2 = 30 pF		17	22	ns
t_{PRL}	Propagation Delay from Transmit Mode to a Logical "0," T/R to A Port	$t_{PRL} = t_{PHZT} + t_{PDHLA}$		25	40	ns
t_{PRH}	Propagation Delay from Transmit Mode to a Logical "1," T/R to A Port	$t_{PRH} = t_{PLZT} + t_{PDLHA}$		30	40	ns
t_{PTL}	Propagation Delay from Receive Mode to a Logical "0," T/R to B Port	$t_{PTL} = t_{PHZR} + t_{PDHLB}$		25	35	ns
t_{PTH}	Propagation Delay from Receive Mode to a Logical "1," T/R to B Port	$t_{PTH} = t_{PLZR} + t_{PDLHB}$		26	35	ns

Note 1: "Absolute Maximum Ratings" are those values beyond which the safety of the device cannot be guaranteed. They are not meant to imply that the devices should be operated at these limits. The tables of "Electrical Characteristics" provide conditions for actual device operation.

Note 2: Unless otherwise specified, min/max limits apply across the supply and temperature range listed in the table of Recommended Operating Conditions. All typical values given are for $V_{CC} = 5V$ and $T_A = 25°C$.

Note 3: All currents into device pins are positive; all currents out of device pins are negative. All voltages are referenced to ground unless otherwise specified.

Note 4: Only one output at a time should be shorted.



20-Lead Molded DIP (N)

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

REV.	ZONE	ECO #	REVISION	APPD
00		352	INITIAL RELEASE	
B			PRE-PRODUCTION RELEASE - Sh. 9 all unspecified XY locations were "0"	
B		500	ECO RELEASE; Sh. 3 - added part identification.	

ENGINEERING RELEASE.
This revision supersedes all previous versions.
Please destroy all old copies.

NOTICE OF PROPRIETARY PROPERTY
The information contained herein is the proprietary property of Apple Computer, Inc.
The possessor agrees to the following:
(i) To maintain this document in confidence.
(ii) Not to reproduce or copy it.
(iii) Not to reveal or publish it in whole or part.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

DRAWING NUMBER 331-0931- B
SH 1 OF 9

TOLERANCES
UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES.
DECIMALS .X ± —
.XX ± —
.XXX ± —
ANGLES XX.X ± —
FRACTIONS ± —
DIMENSIONS IN PARENTHESIS ARE IN MILLIMETERS.

DRAWN BY: Dave Jones DATE: 3-17-80
CHECKED BY DATE
APPROVED BY DATE
RELEASED BY DATE

apple computer inc.

TITLE: KEYBOARD, ENCODER

605-0105
NEXT ASSY.

MATERIAL: N.A.
FINISH: N.A.

SIZE: A
DRAWING NUMBER: 331-0931- B
SCALE: N.A.
SHEET 1 OF 9

ELECTRICAL SPECS

Minimum Ratings

1) VDD & VGG (w/respect to Vcc): -20V to + 0.3V
2) Logic input voltages (w/respect to Vcc): -20 to +03V
3) Storage temp: -65°C to 150°C
4) Operating temp range: 0°C to +70°C

NOTE: Exceeding these ratings could cause permanent damage. Functional operation of this device at these conditions is not inplied - operating ranges are specified under "standard conditions" listed next.

STANDARD CONDITIONS

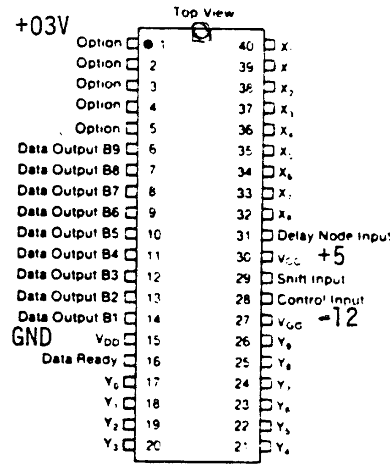
Vcc = +5 volts ± 0.5 volts

VGG = 12 volts ± 1.0 volts VDD = GND

(Vcc = substrate voltage)

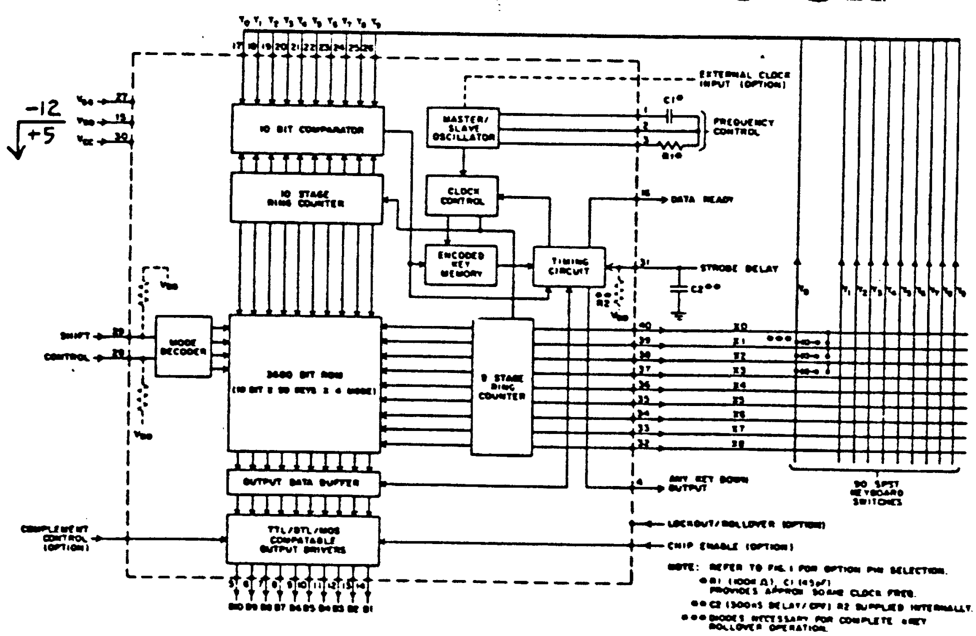
Operating temperature (Ta) = 0°C to +70°C

PIN CONFIGURATION
40 LEAD DUAL IN LINE



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

BLOCK DIAGRAM



apple computer inc.

SIZE	DRAWING NUMBER
A	331-0931- B
SCALE:	SHEET 2 OF 9

CUSTOM CODING INFORMATION

The custom coding information for the Keyboard Encoder ROM should be transmitted in the form of 80 column punched cards. Each ROM pattern requires 92 cards (1 title card, 1 circuit option card and 90 ROM pattern cards). (See Note 1)

If it is not possible to supply punched cards, then the Truth Table should be completed (See Note 1). However, there would be a substantial savings in both the coding charge and turn-around time if punched cards were used. Upon receipt of the punched cards or the Truth Table, vendor will prepare a computer-generated Truth Table which will be returned to the used for verification.

OPTIONS USED: Pins 1, 2, & 3 External Clock
Pin 4 AKO

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PART IDENTIFICATION

Part shall be marked with part number and revision.

apple computer inc.	SIZE A	DRAWING NUMBER 331-0931-B
	SCALE: N.A.	SHEET 3 OF 9

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Characteristics	Sym	Min	Typ**	Max	Units	Conditions
Clock Frequency	f	10	50	100	kHz	See Block diagram footnote* for typical R-C values
External Clock Width		7	—	—	μs	
Data & Clock Input (Shift, Control, Complement Control, Lockout/Rollover, Chip Enable & External Clock)						
Logic "0" Level	V_{IL}	V_{GG}	—	+0.8	V	
Logic "1" Level	V_{IH}	$V_{CC}-1.5$	—	$V_{CC}+0.3$	V	
Shift & Control Input Current	I_{LK}	75	95	120	μA	V_{I} = +5V
X Output (X_0-X_8)						
Logic "1" Output Current	I_{XH}	40	170	400	μA	V_{OUT} = V_{CC} (See Note 2)
		600	1300	2500	μA	V_{OUT} = $V_{CC}-1.3V$
		900	1600	3500	μA	V_{OUT} = $V_{CC}-2.0V$
		1500	3800	6000	μA	V_{OUT} = $V_{CC}-5V$
		3000	6000	10000	μA	V_{OUT} = $V_{CC}-10V$
Logic "0" Output Current	I_{XL}	8	15	50	μA	V_{OUT} = V_{CC}
		6	11	35	μA	V_{OUT} = $V_{CC}-1.3V$
		5	10	30	μA	V_{OUT} = $V_{CC}-2.0V$
		2	5	15	μA	V_{OUT} = $V_{CC}-5V$
		—	0.5	5	μA	V_{OUT} = $V_{CC}-10V$
Y Input (Y_0-Y_9)						
Trip Level	V_{T}	$V_{CC}-5$	$V_{CC}-3$	$V_{CC}-2$	V	Y Input Going Positive (See Note 2)
Hysteresis	ΔV_{T}	0.5	0.9	1.4	V	(See Note 1)
Selected Y Input Current	I_{YS}	18	36	100	μA	V_{IN} = V_{CC}
		14	28	90	μA	V_{IN} = $V_{CC}-1.3V$
		13	25	80	μA	V_{IN} = $V_{CC}-2.0V$
		6	12	60	μA	V_{IN} = $V_{CC}-5V$
		—	1	30	μA	V_{IN} = $V_{CC}-10V$
Unselected Y Input Current	I_{YU}	9	18	50	μA	V_{IN} = V_{CC}
		7	14	45	μA	V_{IN} = $V_{CC}-1.3V$
		6	13	40	μA	V_{IN} = $V_{CC}-2.0V$
		3	6	30	μA	V_{IN} = $V_{CC}-5V$
		—	0.5	15	μA	V_{IN} = $V_{CC}-10V$
Input Capacitance	C_{IN}	—	3	10	pF	at 0V (All Inputs)
X-Y Precharge Characteristics	ϕP	1500	3500	5000	μA	V = V_{CC}
		200	600	1500	μA	V = $V_{CC}-5$ (See Note 2)
Switch Characteristics						
Minimum Switch Closure	—	—	—	—	—	See Timing Diagram
Contact Closure Resistance	Z_{CC}	—	—	300	Ω	
	Z_{CO}	1 × 10⁷	—	—	Ω	
Strobe Delay						
Trip Level (Pin 31)	V_{ST}	$V_{CC}-4$	$V_{CC}-3$	$V_{CC}-2$	V	
Hysteresis	V_{SH}	0.5	0.9	1.4	V	(See Note 1)
Quiescent Voltage (Pin 31)		−3	−5	−9	V	With Internal Switched Resistor
Data Output (B1-B10), Any Key Down Output, Data Ready						
Logic "0"	—	—	—	0.4	V	I_{OL} = 1.6m A
Logic "1"	—	$V_{CC}-1$	—	—	V	I_{OH} = 1.0m A
	—	$V_{CC}-2$	—	—	V	I_{OH} = 2.2m A
Power						
I_{CC}	—	—	8	12	mA	V_{CC} = +5V
I_{GG}	—	—	8	12	mA	V_{GG} = −12V

**Typical values are at +25°C and nominal voltages

NOTE
1 Hysteresis is defined as the amount of return required to unlatch an input
2 Precharge of X outputs and Y inputs occurs during each scanned clock cycle

apple computer inc.

SIZE	DRAWING NUMBER
A	331-0931-B
SCALE:	SHEET 4 OF 9

OPERATION

The Encoder contains (see Block Diagram), a 3600 bit ROM, 9-stage and 10-stage ring counters, a 10 bit comparator, timing circuitry, a 90 bit memory to store the location of encoded keys for n key rollover operation, an externally controllable delay network for eliminating the effect of contact bounce, an output data buffer, and TTL/DTL/MOS compatible output drivers.

The ROM portion of the chip is a 360 by 10 bit memory arranged into four 90-word by 10-bit groups. The appropriate levels on the Shift and Control Inputs selects one of the four 90-word groups; the 90-individual word locations are addressed by the two ring counters. Thus, the ROM address is formed by combining the Shift and Control Inputs with the two ring counters.

The external outputs of the 9-stage ring counter and the external inputs to the 10-bit comparator are wired to the keyboard to form an X-Y matrix with the 90-keyboard switches as the crosspoints. In the standby condition, when no key is depressed, the two ring counters are clocked and sequentially address the ROM, thereby scanning the key switches for key closures.

When a key is depressed, a single path is completed between one output of the 9-stage ring counter (X0 thru X8) and one input of the 10-bit comparator (Y_0-Y_9). After a number of clock cycles, a condition will occur where a level on the selected path to the comparator matches a level on the corresponding comparator input from the 10-stage ring counter.

N KEY ROLLOVER

— When a match occurs, and the key has not been encoded, the switch bounce delay network is enabled. If the key is still depressed at the end of the selected delay time, the code for the depressed key is transferred to the output data buffer, the data ready signal appears, a one is stored in the encoded key memory and the scan sequence is resumed. If a match occurs at another key location, the sequence is repeated thus encoding the next key. If the match occurs for an already encoded key, the match is not recognized. The code of the last key encoded remains in the output data buffer.

N KEY LOCKOUT

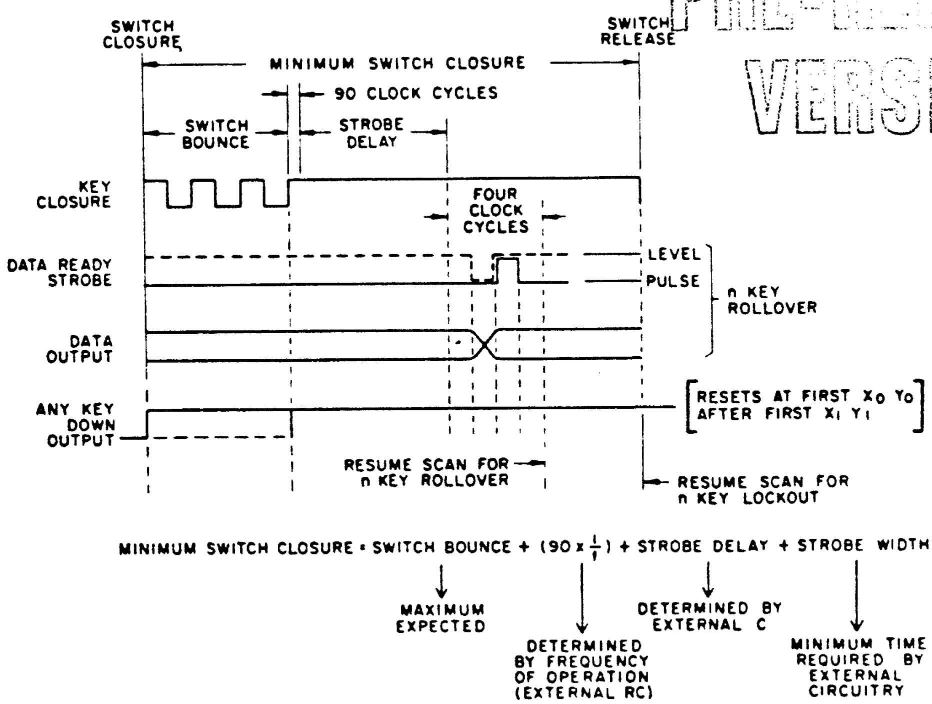
— When a match occurs, the delay network is enabled. If the key is still depressed at the end of the selected delay time, the code for the depressed key is transferred to the output data buffer, the data ready signal appears and the remaining keys are locked out by halting the scan sequence. The scan sequence is resumed upon key release. The output data buffer stores the code of the last key encoded.

SPECIAL PATTERNS

— Since the selected coding of each key and all the options are defined during the manufacture of the chip, the coding and options can be changed to fit any particular application of the keyboard. Up to 360 codes of up to 10 bits can be programmed into the Encoder ROM covering most popular codes such as ASCII, EBCDIC, Selectric, etc., as well as many specialized codes. The ASCII code in conjunction with internal oscillator, 10 data outputs and any key down output, is available as a standard pattern (See Figure 2).

TIMING DIAGRAM

PRE-RELEASE VERSION



apple computer inc.	SIZE A	DRAWING NUMBER 331-0931-B
	SCALE:	SHEET 5 OF 9

SYMBOL	MODE N	MODE S	MODE C	MODE SC
@		X1 Y8 X0 Y8		
A		X0 Y2		X1 Y7
B		X5 Y3		X2 Y7
C		X2 Y3		X3 Y7
D		X2 Y2		X4 Y7
E		X2 Y1		X5 Y7
F		X3 Y2		X6 Y7
G		X4 Y2		X7 Y7
H	X0 Y5	X0 Y5 X5 Y2	X0 Y5	X0 Y5
I		X7 Y1		X0 Y4
J		X6 Y2		X6 Y6
K		X7 Y2		X3 Y6
L	X2 Y6	X2 Y6 X8 Y2	X2 Y6	X2 Y6
M		X7 Y3		X3 Y5
N		X6 Y3		X4 Y5
O		X8 Y1		
P		X6 Y6		X0 Y7 X0 Y?
Q		X0 Y1		X1 Y3
R		X3 Y1		X2 Y3
S		X1 Y2		X4 Y3
T		X4 Y1		X5 Y3
U		X0 Y1		X6 Y3
V		X4 Y3		X7 Y3
W		X1 Y1		X6 Y5
X		X1 Y3		X8 Y2
Y		X5 Y1		X5 Y6
Z		X0 Y3		X5 Y5
a	X0 Y2		X0 Y2	
b	X5 Y3		X5 Y3	
c	X2 Y3		X2 Y3	
d	X2 Y2		X2 Y2	
e	X2 Y1		X2 Y1	
f	X3 Y2		X3 Y2	
g	X4 Y2		X4 Y2	
h	X5 Y2		X5 Y2	
i	X7 Y1		X7 Y1	
j	X6 Y2		X6 Y2	
k	X7 Y2 X2 Y9		X7 Y2	
l	X8 Y2		X8 Y2	
m	X7 Y3 X1 Y6		X7 Y3	
n	X6 Y3 X1 Y8		X6 Y3	
o	X8 Y1		X8 Y1	
p	X6 Y6 X0 Y8		X6 Y6	
q	X0 Y1		X0 Y1	
r	X3 Y1		X3 Y1	
s	X1 Y2		X1 Y2	
t	X4 Y1		X4 Y1	
u	X6 Y1		X6 Y1	
v	X4 Y3		X4 Y3	
w	X1 Y1		X1 Y1	
x	X1 Y3		X1 Y3	
y	X5 Y1		X5 Y1	
z	X0 Y3		X0 Y3	
[		X8 Y6 X2 Y9		X4 Y6 X8 Y6
\				X1 Y1
]	X8 Y6	X1 Y6	X8 Y6	X8 Y1
^		X1 Y9		X2 Y4
_	X4 Y7 X8 Y7		X4 Y7 X8 Y7	X4 Y7
{	X3 Y6	X3 Y6	X3 Y6	
|	X4 Y5	X4 Y5	X4 Y5	
~				X6 Y4
DEL			X2 Y9	X2 Y9
NULL	X5 Y7	X5 Y7	X5 Y7 X0 Y9	X5 Y7 X0 Y8

SYMBOL	MODE N	MODE S	MODE C	MODE SC
SOH			X0 Y9	X5 Y0 X0 Y9
STX			X1 Y9	X4 Y0 X1 Y9
ETX	X4 Y4	X4 Y4	X4 Y4	X4 Y4 X6 Y0
EOT				X4 Y?
ENQ				X3 Y?
ACK			X2 Y8	X2 Y1 X2 Y8
BEL			X3 Y8	X6 Y1 X3 Y8
BS				X3 Y4
HT	X0 Y4	X0 Y4	X0 Y4 X0 Y9	X8 Y9
LF	X7 Y6	X7 Y6	X7 Y6	
VT	X3 Y7	X3 Y7	X3 Y7	X3 Y7
FF	X7 Y8		X7 Y8	X7 Y8
CR	X3 Y5	X3 Y5	X3 Y5 X1 Y6	X1 Y6
SO	X0 Y7		X0 Y7 X1 Y8	X0 Y7 X1 Y8
SI	X1 Y7	X1 Y7	X1 Y7	X1 Y7
DLE				X0 Y1
DC1				X5 Y1
DC2				X6 Y7
DC3				X2 Y?
DC4				X3 Y0
NAK				X2 Y0
SYN				X5 Y4
ETB				X1 Y0
CAN	X3 Y4		X3 Y4	
EM				X8 Y0
SUB				X0 Y0
ESC				X7 Y?
FS				X? Y4
GS				X7 Y4
RS	X1 Y4	X1 Y4	X1 Y4	
US	X2 Y7	X2 Y7	X2 Y7	X2 Y?
SP	X3 Y3 X4 Y9	X4 Y9 X3 Y3	X4 Y9 X3 Y3	X4 Y5 [illegible]
!	X5 Y9	X5 Y9 X0 Y9	X5 Y9	X5 Y5
"	X3 Y9	X3 Y9 X7 Y5 X1 Y9	X3 Y9	X3 Y9 X7 Y5
#	X6 Y9	X6 Y9 X2 Y0	X6 Y9	X6 Y9
$	X2 Y5	X2 Y5 X3 Y0	X2 Y5	X2 Y5
%	X1 Y5	X1 Y5 X4 Y0	X1 Y5	X1 Y5
&	X6 Y8	X6 Y0 X6 Y8 X2 Y8	X6 Y8	X6 Y8
'	X7 Y5	X3 Y8	X7 Y5	X7 Y4
(	X7 Y9	X7 Y4 X3 Y4 X0 Y0	X7 Y9	X7 Y9
)	X4 Y8	X4 Y8 X6 Y7 X8 Y9	X4 Y8	X4 Y8
*	X5 Y8	X5 Y8 X7 Y0 X5 Y4	X5 Y8	X5 Y8
+	X0 Y6	X0 Y6 X5 Y6 X7 Y7	X0 Y6	X0 Y6 X7 Y7
,	X8 Y3	X8 Y3	X8 Y3	X8 Y3
—	X2 Y4	X2 Y4 X8 Y7	X2 Y4	X8 Y7
.	X8 Y4	X8 Y4	X8 Y4	X8 Y4
/	X7 Y4		X7 Y4	
0	X6 Y7 X8 Y8	X8 Y8	X6 Y7 X8 Y8	X8 Y8
1	X0 Y0 X0 Y9		X0 Y0	
2	X1 Y0 X1 Y9		X1 Y0	
3	X2 Y6		X2 Y0	
4	X3 Y0		X3 Y0	
5	X4 Y0		X4 Y0	
6	X5 Y0 X2 Y8		X5 Y0	
7	X6 Y0 X3 Y8		X0 Y0	
8	X7 Y0		X7 Y0	
9	X8 Y0 X8 Y9		X8 Y0	
:	X5 Y4	X8 Y5	X5 Y4	X8 Y5
;	X8 Y5 X5 Y6		X8 Y5 X5 Y6	
<	X6 Y5	X7 Y8 X6 Y5 X0 Y0	X6 Y5	
=	X6 Y4 X7 Y7	X7 Y7 X6 Y4 X4 Y7	X6 Y4	
>	X5 Y5	X5 Y5 X5 Y0 X8 Y7	X5 Y5	
?	X4 Y6	X4 Y6 X7 Y4	X4 Y6	

Note 1. Bits 1 to 6 and bit 8 of the Encoder correspond to bits 1 to 7 of ASC II

Note 2 Codes 0000011 and 0011111 are not present in the standard Encoder pattern.

Fig.2 STANDARD Encoder CODE ASSIGNMENTS ASCII CODE

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

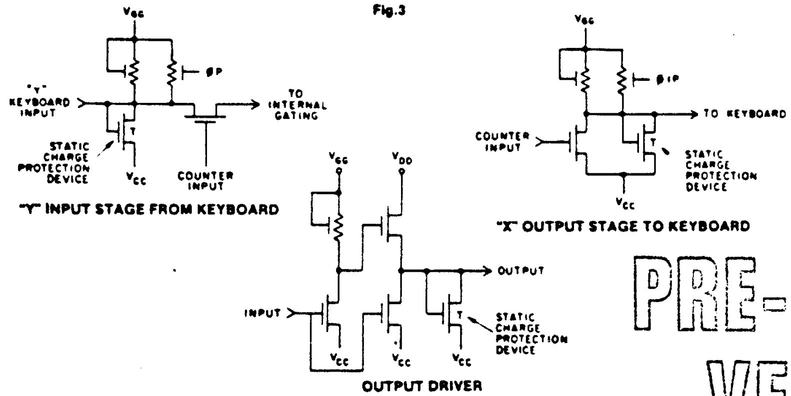
OPTIONS PROVIDED WITH STANDARD ENCODER

- Device Marking: Encoder
- Internal Oscillator on Pin Nos. 1, 2, 3.
- Any Key Output on Pin No. 4.
  Any Key Output True (Logic 1) During Key Depression.
- Output Data Bit B10 on Pin No. 5.
- N-Key Rollover Only.
- True Outputs Only.
- Pulse Data Ready Signal
- Internal Resistor to V_{DD} on Shift/Control Pin
- Plastic Package

apple computer inc.

SIZE	DRAWING NUMBER
A	331-0931-B
SCALE:	SHEET 6 OF 9

Fig.3



NOTE. Output driver capable of driving one TTL load with no external resistor.
Capable of driving two TTL loads using an external 6.8KΩ resistor to V_{cc}.

TYPICAL CHARACTERISTIC CURVES

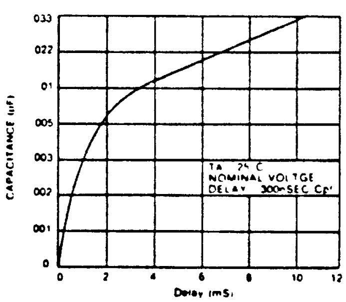


Fig.4 STROBE DELAY vs. C_1

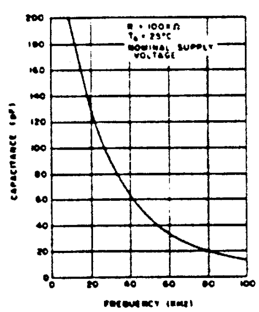


Fig.5 OSCILLATOR FREQUENCY vs. C_2

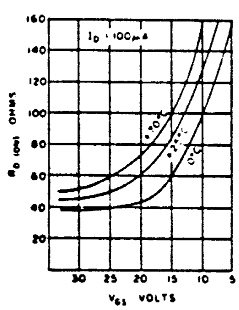


Fig.6 TYPICAL OUTPUT ON RESISTANCE (R_{DON}) vs. GATE BIAS VOLTAGE (V_{GS})

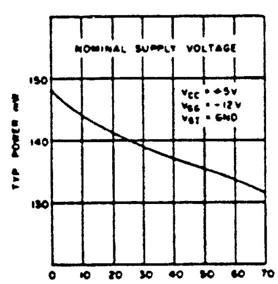


Fig.7 TYPICAL POWER CONSUMPTION (mW)

apple computer inc.	SIZE A	DRAWING NUMBER 331-0931-B
	SCALE:	SHEET 7 OF 9

LOC XY	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX
	NORMAL			SHIFT			CONTROL			SHT/CTR		
00	3	110011011	1B3	#	110001010	0A3	3	110011011	1B3	#	110001010	0A3
01	4	001011011	1B4	$	001001010	0A4	4	001011011	1B4	$	001001010	0A4
02	5	101011011	1B5	%	101001010	0A5	5	101011011	1B5	%	101001010	0A5
03	6	011011011	1B6	&	011001010	0A6	6	011011011	1B6	&	011001010	0A6
04	7	111011011	1B7	,	111001010	0A7	7	111011011	1B7	,	111001010	0A7
05	8	000111011	1B8	(	000101010	0A8	8	000111011	1B8	(	000101010	0A8
06	9	100111011	1B9	)	100101010	0A9	9	100111011	1B9	)	100101010	0A9
07	Ø	000011011	1B0	Ø	000011011	1B0	Ø	000011011	1B0	Ø	000011011	1B0
08	:	010111011	1BA	*	010101010	0AA	:	010111011	1BA	*	010101010	0AA
09	-	101101010	0AD	=	101111011	1BD	-	101101010	0AD	=	101111011	1BD
10	Q	100010111	1D1	Q	100010101	151	DC1	100010001	111	DC1	100010001	111
11	W	111010111	1D7	W	111010101	157	ETB	111010001	117	ETB	111010001	117
12	E	101000110	0C5	E	101000100	045	ENQ	101000000	105	ENQ	101000000	005
13	R	010010111	1D2	R	010010101	152	DC2	010010001	112	DC2	010010001	112
14	T	001010111	1D4	T	001010101	154	DC4	001010001	114	DC4	001010001	114
15	Y	100110111	1D9	Y	100110101	159	EM	100110001	119	EM	100110001	119
16	U	101010111	1D5	U	101010101	155	NAK	101010001	115	NAK	101010001	115
17	I	100100110	0C9	I	100100100	049	HT	100100000	009	HT	100100000	009
18	O	111100110	0CF	O	111100100	04F	SI	111100000	00F	SI	111100000	00F
19	P	000010111	1D0	@	000000101	140	DLE	000010001	110	NUL	000000000	000
20	D	001000110	0C4	D	001000100	044	EOT	001000000	004	EOT	001000000	004
21	F	011000110	0C6	F	011000100	046	ACK	011000000	006	ACK	011000000	006
22	G	111000110	0C7	G	111000100	047	BEL	111000000	007	BEL	111000000	007
23	H	000100110	0C8	H	000100100	048	BS	000100000	008	BS	000100000	008
24	J	010100110	0CA	J	010100100	04A	LF	010100000	00A	LF	010100000	00A
25	K	110100110	0CB	K	110100100	04B	VT	110100000	00B	VT	110100000	00B
26	L	001100110	0CC	L	001100100	04C	FF	001100000	00C	FF	001100000	00C
27	;	110111011	1BB	+	110101010	0AB	;	110111011	1BB	+	110101010	0AB
28	BS	000100000	008	BS	000100000	008	BS	000100000	008	BS	000100000	008
29	NAK	101010001	115	NAK	101010001	115	NAK	101010001	115	NAK	101010001	115
30	Z	010110111	1DA	Z	010110101	15A	SUB	010110001	11A	SUB	010110001	11A
31	X	000110111	1D8	X	000110101	158	CAN	000110001	118	CAN	000110001	118
32	C	110000110	0C3	C	110000100	043	ETX	110000000	003	ETX	110000000	003
33	V	011010111	1D6	V	011010101	156	SYN	011010001	116	SYN	011010001	116
34	B	010000110	0C2	B	010000100	042	STX	010000000	002	STX	010000000	002

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

apple computer inc.

SIZE A | DRAWING NUMBER 331-0931-B

SCALE: | SHEET 8 OF 9

LOC XY	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX
	NORMAL			SHIFT			CONTROL			SHT/CTR		
35	N	011100110	0CE	^	011110100	05E	SO	011100000	00E	RS	011110001	11E
36	M	101100110	0CD	]	101110100	05D	CR	101100000	00D	GS	101110001	11D
37	,	001101010	0AC	<	001111011	1BC	,	001101010	0AC	<	001111011	1BC
38	.	011101010	0AE	>	011111011	1BE	.	011101010	0AE	>	011111011	1BE
39	/	111101010	0AF	?	111111011	1BF	/	111101010	0AF	?	111111011	1BF
40	S	110010111	1D3	S	110010101	153	DC3	110010001	113	DC3	110010001	113
41	2	010011011	1B2	"	010001010	0A2	2	010011011	1B2	"	010001010	0A2
42	1	100011011	1B1	!	100001010	0A1	1	100011011	1B1	!	100001010	0A1
43	ESC	110110001	11B	ESC	110110001	11B	ESC	110110001	11B	ESC	110110001	11B
44	A	100000110	0C1	A	100000100	041	SOH	100000000	001	SOH	100000000	001
45	SP	000001010	0A0	SP	000001010	0A0	SP	000001010	0A0	SP	000001010	0A0
49	CR	101100000	00D	CR	101100000	00D	CR	101100000	00D	CR	101100000	00D
56	Ø	000011011	1B0	Ø	000011011	1B0	Ø	000011011	1B0	Ø	000011011	1B0
57	4	001011011	1B4	4	001011011	1B4	4	001011011	1B4	4	001011011	1B4
58	8	000111011	1B8	8	000111011	1B8	8	000111011	1B8	8	000111011	1B8
59	+	110101010	0AB	+	110101010	0AB	+	110101010	0AB	+	110101010	0AB
66	1	100011011	1B1	1	100011011	1B1	1	100011011	1B1	1	100011011	1B1
67	5	101011011	1B5	5	101011011	1B5	5	101011011	1B5	5	101011011	1B5
68	9	100111011	1B9	9	100111011	1B9	9	100111011	1B9	9	100111011	1B9
69	-	101101010	0AD	-	101101010	0AD	-	101101010	0AD	-	101101010	0AD
76	2	010011011	1B2	2	010011011	1B2	2	010011011	1B2	2	010011011	1B2
77	6	011011011	1B6	6	011011011	1B6	6	011011011	1B6	6	011011011	1B6
78	.	011101010	0AE	.	011101010	0AE	.	011101010	0AE	.	011101010	0AE
79	CR	101100000	00D	CR	101100000	00D	CR	101100000	00D	CR	101100000	00D
86	3	110011011	1B3	3	110011011	1B3	3	110011011	1B3	3	110011011	1B3
87	7	111011011	1B7	7	111011011	1B7	7	111011011	1B7	7	111011011	1B7
88	,	001101010	0AC	,	001101010	0AC	,	001101010	0AC	,	001101010	0AC

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

NOTES:

1. Pin option assisgnments Pin 1, Pin 2, Pin 3 = Internal Oscillator   Pin 4 = AKO.
2. Non-specified X-Y locations to be filled as follows: HEX 2AØ (negative logic)

B1	B2	B3	B4	B5	B6	B7	B8	B9	B10
0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	1

3. Output to be negative logic, ie "1" = low output (0.4V), "0" = high output (2.4V)
4. ASCII bit weight: B1 = Pin 14 (LSB), B2 = Pin 13, B3 = Pin 12, B4 = Pin 11, B5 = Pin 10, B6 = Pin 9, B7 = Pin 8, B8 = Pin 8, B8 = Pin 7, B9 = Pin 6 (MSB)
5. Reference document 050-0021 (Logic, Number Pad Style Keyboard).
6. B10 = "Ø" in all locations.

apple computer inc.

SIZE A | DRAWING NUMBER 331-0931-B

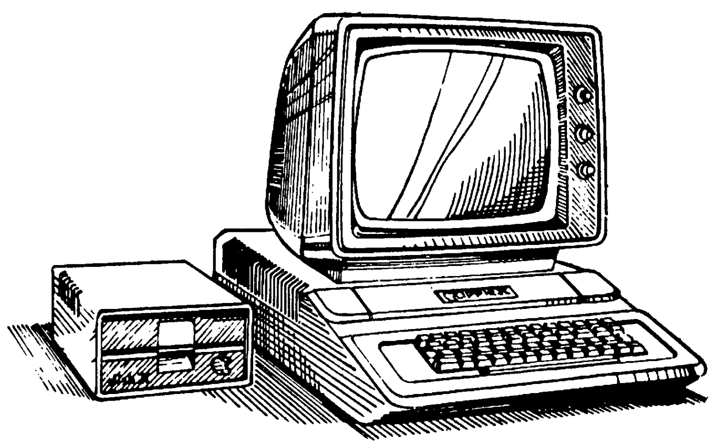
SCALE: | SHEET 9 OF 9

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS
LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

APPENDIX A
6502 INSTRUCTIONS



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

6502 MICROPROCESSOR INSTRUCTIONS

ADC	Add Memory to Accumulator with Carry
AND	"AND" Memory with Accumulator
ASL	Shift Left One Bit (Memory or Accumulator)
BCC	Branch on Carry Clear
BCS	Branch on Carry Set
BEQ	Branch on Result Zero
BIT	Test Bits in Memory with Accumulator
BMI	Branch on Result Minus
BNE	Branch on Result not Zero
BPL	Branch on Result Plus
BRK	Force Break
BVC	Branch on Overflow Clear
BVS	Branch on Overflow Set
CLC	Clear Carry Flag
CLD	Clear Decimal Mode
CLI	Clear Interrupt Disable Bit
CLV	Clear Overflow Flag
CMP	Compare Memory and Accumulator
CPX	Compare Memory and Index X
CPY	Compare Memory and Index Y
DEC	Decrement Memory by One
DEX	Decrement Index X by One
DEY	Decrement Index Y by One
EOR	"Exclusive-Or" Memory with Accumulator
INC	Increment Memory by One
INX	Increment Index X by One
INY	Increment Index Y by One
JMP	Jump to New Location
JSR	Jump to New Location Saving Return Address
LDA	Load Accumulator with Memory
LDX	Load Index X with Memory
LDY	Load Index Y with Memory
LSR	Shift Right one Bit (Memory or Accumulator)
NOP	No Operation
ORA	"OR" Memory with Accumulator
PHA	Push Accumulator on Stack
PHP	Push Processor Status on Stack
PLA	Pull Accumulator from Stack
PLP	Pull Processor Status from Stack
ROL	Rotate One Bit Left (Memory or Accumulator)
ROR	Rotate One Bit Right (Memory or Accumulator)
RTI	Return from Interrupt
RTS	Return from Subroutine
SBC	Subtract Memory from Accumulator with Borrow
SEC	Set Carry Flag
SED	Set Decimal Mode
SEI	Set Interrupt Disable Status
STA	Store Accumulator in Memory
STX	Store Index X in Memory
STY	Store Index Y in Memory
TAX	Transfer Accumulator to Index X
TAY	Transfer Accumulator to Index Y
TSX	Transfer Stack Pointer to Index X
TXA	Transfer Index X to Accumulator
TXS	Transfer Index X to Stack Pointer
TYA	Transfer Index Y to Accumulator

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

THE FOLLOWING NOTATION APPLIES TO THIS SUMMARY:

A	Accumulator
X, Y	Index Registers
M	Memory
$\bar{C}$	Borrow
P	Processor Status Register
S	Stack Pointer
✓	Change
—	No Change
+	Add
∧	Logical AND
-	Subtract
⊻	Logical Exclusive Or
↑	Transfer From Stack
↓	Transfer To Stack
→	Transfer To
←	Transfer To
V	Logical OR
PC	Program Counter
PCH	Program Counter High
PCL	Program Counter Low
OPER	Operand
#	Immediate Addressing Mode

FIGURE 1 ASL-SHIFT LEFT ONE BIT OPERATION

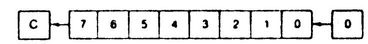


FIGURE 2 ROTATE ONE BIT LEFT (MEMORY OR ACCUMULATOR)

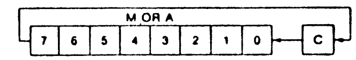
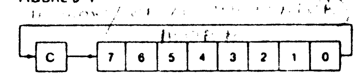


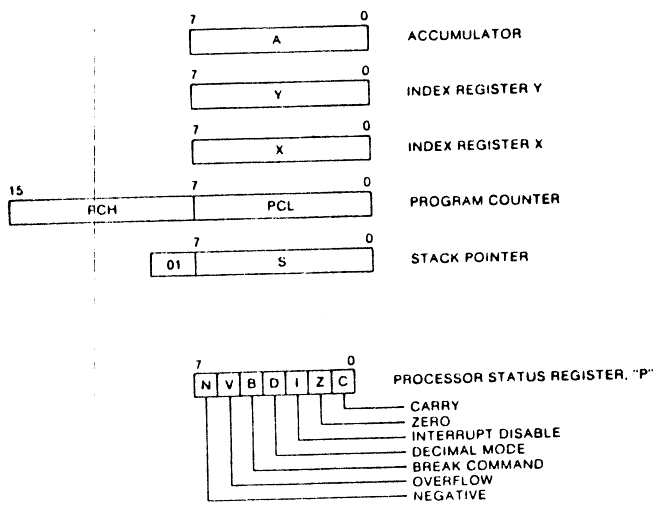
FIGURE 3



NOTE 1. BIT — TEST BITS

Bit 6 and 7 are transferred to the status register. If the result of A ∧ M is zero then Z=1, otherwise Z=0

PROGRAMMING MODEL



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

INSTRUCTION CODES

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg N Z C I D V
ADC Add memory to accumulator with carry	A·M·C → A C	Immediate	ADC #Oper	69	2	√√√- - √
		Zero Page	ADC Oper	65	2	
		Zero Page X	ADC Oper,X	75	2	
		Absolute	ADC Oper	6D	3	
		Absolute X	ADC Oper,X	7D	3	
		Absolute Y	ADC Oper,Y	79	3	
		(Indirect X)	ADC (Oper,X)	61	2	
		(Indirect) Y	ADC (Oper),Y	71	2	
AND "AND" memory with accumulator	A ∧ M → A	Immediate	AND #Oper	29	2	√√- - - -
		Zero Page	AND Oper	25	2	
		Zero Page X	AND Oper,X	35	2	
		Absolute	AND Oper	2D	3	
		Absolute X	AND Oper,X	3D	3	
		Absolute Y	AND Oper,Y	39	3	
		(Indirect X)	AND (Oper,X)	21	2	
		(Indirect) Y	AND (Oper),Y	31	2	
ASL Shift left one bit (Memory or Accumulator)	(See Figure 1)	Accumulator	ASL A	0A	1	√√√- - -
		Zero Page	ASL Oper	06	2	
		Zero Page X	ASL Oper,X	16	2	
		Absolute	ASL Oper	0E	3	
		Absolute X	ASL Oper,X	1E	3	
BCC Branch on carry clear	Branch on C=0	Relative	BCC Oper	90	2	- - - - - -
BCS Branch on carry set	Branch on C=1	Relative	BCS Oper	B0	2	- - - - - -
BEQ Branch on result zero	Branch on Z=1	Relative	BEQ Oper	F0	2	- - - - - -
BIT Test bits in memory with accumulator	A ∧ M, M_7 → N, M_6 → V	Zero Page	BIT* Oper	24	2	M_7√- - - M_6
		Absolute	BIT* Oper	2C	3	
BMI Branch on result minus	Branch on N=1	Relative	BMI Oper	30	2	- - - - - -
BNE Branch on result not zero	Branch on Z=0	Relative	BNE Oper	D0	2	- - - - - -
BPL Branch on result plus	Branch on N=0	Relative	BPL oper	10	2	- - - - - -
BRK Force Break	Forced Interrupt PC+2 ↓ P ↓	Implied	BRK*	00	1	- - - 1 - -
BVC Branch on overflow clear	Branch on V=0	Relative	BVC Oper	50	2	- - - - - -

Note 1: Bits 6 and 7 are transferred to the status register. If the result of A ∧ M is zero then Z = 1, otherwise Z = 0

Note 2: A BRK command cannot be masked by setting I

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg N Z C I D V
BVS Branch on overflow set	Branch on V=1	Relative	BVS Oper	70	2	------
CLC Clear carry flag	0 → C	Implied	CLC	18	1	---0--
CLD Clear decimal mode	0 → D	Implied	CLD	D8	1	-0---
CLI	0 → I	Implied	CLI	58	1	--0--
CLV Clear overflow flag	0 → V	Implied	CLV	B8	1	0-----
CMP Compare memory and accumulator	A — M	Immediate	CMP #Oper	C9	2	√√√---
		Zero Page	CMP Oper	C5	2	
		Zero Page, X	CMP Oper,X	D5	2	
		Absolute	CMP Oper	CD	3	
		Absolute X	CMP Oper,X	DD	3	
		Absolute,Y	CMP Oper,Y	D9	3	
		(Indirect,X)	CMP (Oper,X)	C1	2	
		(Indirect) Y	CMP (Oper),Y	D1	2	
CPX Compare memory and index X	X — M	Immediate	CPX #Oper	E0	2	√√√---
		Zero Page	CPX Oper	E4	2	
		Absolute	CPX Oper	EC	3	
CPY Compare memory and index Y	Y — M	Immediate	CPY #Oper	C0	2	√√√---
		Zero Page	CPY Oper	C4	2	
		Absolute	CPY Oper	CC	3	
DEC Decrement memory by one	M — 1 → M	Zero Page	DEC Oper	C6	2	√√----
		Zero Page,X	DEC Oper,X	D6	2	
		Absolute	DEC Oper	CE	3	
		Absolute X	DEC Oper,X	DE	3	
DEX Decrement index X by one	X — 1 → X	Implied	DEX	CA	1	√√----
DEY Decrement index Y by one	Y — 1 → Y	Implied	DEY	88	1	√√----

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg N Z C I D V
EOR "Exclusive-Or" memory with accumulator	A ⊻ M → A	Immediate	EOR #Oper	49	2	√√----
		Zero Page	EOR Oper	45	2	
		Zero Page,X	EOR Oper,X	55	2	
		Absolute	EOR Oper	4D	3	
		Absolute X	EOR Oper,X	5D	3	
		Absolute Y	EOR Oper,Y	59	3	
		(Indirect,X)	EOR (Oper,X)	41	2	
		(Indirect) Y	EOR (Oper),Y	51	2	
INC Increment memory by one	M + 1 → M	Zero Page	INC Oper	E6	2	√√----
		Zero Page,X	INC Oper,X	F6	2	
		Absolute	INC Oper	EE	3	
		Absolute,X	INC Oper,X	FE	3	
INX Increment index X by one	X + 1 → X	Implied	INX	E8	1	√√----
INY Increment index Y by one	Y + 1 → Y	Implied	INY	C8	1	√√----
JMP Jump to new location	(PC+1) → PCL (PC+2) → PCH	Absolute	JMP Oper	4C	3	------
		Indirect	JMP (Oper)	6C	3	
JSR Jump to new location saving return address	PC+2 ↓, (PC+1) → PCL (PC+2) → PCH	Absolute	JSR Oper	20	3	------
LDA Load accumulator with memory	M → A	Immediate	LDA #Oper	A9	2	√√----
		Zero Page	LDA Oper	A5	2	
		Zero Page,X	LDA Oper,X	B5	2	
		Absolute	LDA Oper	AD	3	
		Absolute,X	LDA Oper,X	BD	3	
		Absolute,Y	LDA Oper,Y	B9	3	
		(Indirect,X)	LDA (Oper,X)	A1	2	
		(Indirect),Y	LDA (Oper),Y	B1	2	
LDX Load index X with memory	M → X	Immediate	LDX #Oper	A2	2	√√----
		Zero Page	LDX Oper	A6	2	
		Zero Page,Y	LDX Oper,Y	B6	2	
		Absolute	LDX Oper	AE	3	
		Absolute,Y	LDX Oper,Y	BE	3	
LDY Load index Y with memory	M → Y	Immediate	LDY #Oper	A0	2	√√----
		Zero Page	LDY Oper	A4	2	
		Zero Page,X	LDY Oper,X	B4	2	
		Absolute	LDY Oper	AC	3	
		Absolute,X	LDY Oper,X	BC	3	

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg N Z C I D V
LSR Shift right one bit (memory or accumulator)	(See Figure 1)	Accumulator	LSR A	4A	1	0√√---
		Zero Page	LSR Oper	46	2	
		Zero Page,X	LSR Oper,X	56	2	
		Absolute	LSR Oper	4E	3	
		Absolute,X	LSR Oper,X	5E	3	
NOP No operation	No Operation	Implied	NOP	EA	1	------
ORA "OR" memory with accumulator	A V M → A	Immediate	ORA #Oper	09	2	√√----
		Zero Page	ORA Oper	05	2	
		Zero Page,X	ORA Oper,X	15	2	
		Absolute	ORA Oper	0D	3	
		Absolute,X	ORA Oper,X	1D	3	
		Absolute,Y	ORA Oper,Y	19	3	
		(Indirect,X)	ORA (Oper,X)	01	2	
		(Indirect),Y	ORA (Oper),Y	11	2	
PHA Push accumulator on stack	A↓	Implied	PHA	48	1	------
PHP Push processor status on stack	P↓	Implied	PHP	08	1	------
PLA Pull accumulator from stack	A↑	Implied	PLA	68	1	√√----
PLP Pull processor status from stack	P↑	Implied	PLP	28	1	From Stack
ROL Rotate one bit left (memory or accumulator)	(See Figure 2)	Accumulator	ROL A	2A	1	√√√---
		Zero Page	ROL Oper	26	2	
		Zero Page,X	ROL Oper,X	36	2	
		Absolute	ROL Oper	2E	3	
		Absolute,X	ROL Oper,X	3E	3	
ROR Rotate one bit right (memory or accumulator)	(See Figure 3)	Accumulator	ROR A	6A	1	√√√---
		Zero Page	ROR Oper	66	2	
		Zero Page,X	ROR Oper,X	76	2	
		Absolute	ROR Oper	6E	3	
		Absolute,X	ROR Oper,X	7E	3	

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg N Z C I D V
RTI Return from interrupt	P↑ PC↑	Implied	RTI	40	1	From Stack
RTS Return from subroutine	PC↑, PC+1 → PC	Implied	RTS	60	1	------
SBC Subtract memory from accumulator with borrow	A - M - C̄ → A	Immediate	SBC #Oper	E9	2	√√√--√
		Zero Page	SBC Oper	E5	2	
		Zero Page,X	SBC Oper,X	F5	2	
		Absolute	SBC Oper	ED	3	
		Absolute,X	SBC Oper,X	FD	3	
		Absolute,Y	SBC Oper,Y	F9	3	
		(Indirect,X)	SBC (Oper,X)	E1	2	
		(Indirect),Y	SBC (Oper),Y	F1	2	
SEC Set carry flag	1 → C	Implied	SEC	38	1	--1---
SED Set decimal mode	1 → D	Implied	SED	F8	1	----1-
SEI Set interrupt disable status	1 → I	Implied	SEI	78	1	---1--
STA Store accumulator in memory	A → M	Zero Page	STA Oper	85	2	------
		Zero Page,X	STA Oper,X	95	2	
		Absolute	STA Oper	8D	3	
		Absolute,X	STA Oper,X	9D	3	
		Absolute,Y	STA Oper,Y	99	3	
		(Indirect,X)	STA (Oper,X)	81	2	
		(Indirect),Y	STA (Oper),Y	91	2	
STX Store index X in memory	X → M	Zero Page	STX Oper	86	2	------
		Zero Page,Y	STX Oper,Y	96	2	
		Absolute	STX Oper	8E	3	
STY Store index Y in memory	Y → M	Zero Page	STY Oper	84	2	------
		Zero Page,X	STY Oper,X	94	2	
		Absolute	STY Oper	8C	3	
TAX Transfer accumulator to index X	A → X	Implied	TAX	AA	1	√√----
TAY Transfer accumulator to index Y	A → Y	Implied	TAY	A8	1	√√----
TSX Transfer stack pointer to index X	S → X	Implied	TSX	BA	1	√√----

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg. N Z C I D V
TXA Transfer index X to accumulator	X → A	Implied	TXA	8A	1	√√----
TXS Transfer index X to stack pointer	X → S	Implied	TXS	9A	1	------
TYA Transfer index Y to accumulator	Y → A	Implied	TYA	98	1	√√----

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

HEX OPERATION CODES

00 — BRK
01 — ORA — (Indirect, X)
02 — NOP
03 — NOP
04 — NOP
05 — ORA — Zero Page
06 — ASL — Zero Page
07 — NOP
08 — PHP
09 — ORA — Immediate
0A — ASL — Accumulator
0B — NOP
0C — NOP
0D — ORA — Absolute
0E — ASL — Absolute
0F — NOP
10 — BPL
11 — ORA — (Indirect), Y
12 — NOP
13 — NOP
14 — NOP
15 — ORA — Zero Page, X
16 — ASL — Zero Page, X
17 — NOP
18 — CLC
19 — ORA — Absolute, Y
1A — NOP
1B — NOP
1C — NOP
1D — ORA — Absolute, X
1E — ASL — Absolute, X
1F — NOP
20 — JSR
21 — AND — (Indirect, X)
22 — NOP
23 — NOP
24 — BIT — Zero Page
25 — AND — Zero Page
26 — ROL — Zero Page
27 — NOP
28 — PLP
29 — AND — Immediate
2A — ROL — Accumulator
2B — NOP
2C — BIT — Absolute
2D — AND — Absolute
2E — ROL — Absolute
2F — NOP
30 — BMI
31 — AND — (Indirect), Y
32 — NOP
33 — NOP
34 — NOP
35 — AND — Zero Page, X
36 — ROL — Zero Page, X
37 — NOP
38 — SEC
39 — AND — Absolute, Y
3A — NOP
3B — NOP
3C — NOP
3D — AND — Absolute, X
3E — ROL — Absolute, X
3F — NOP
40 — RTI
41 — EOR — (Indirect, X)
42 — NOP
43 — NOP
44 — NOP
45 — EOR — Zero Page
46 — LSR — Zero Page
47 — NOP
48 — PHA
49 — EOR — Immediate
4A — LSR — Accumulator
4B — NOP
4C — JMP — Absolute
4D — EOR — Absolute
4E — LSR — Absolute
4F — NOP
50 — BVC
51 — EOR (Indirect), Y
52 — NOP
53 — NOP
54 — NOP
55 — EOR — Zero Page, X
56 — LSR — Zero Page, X
57 — NOP
58 — CLI
59 — EOR — Absolute, Y
5A — NOP
5B — NOP
5C — NOP
5D — EOR — Absolute, X
5E — LSR — Absolute, X
5F — NOP
60 — RTS
61 — ADC — (Indirect, X)
62 — NOP
63 — NOP
64 — NOP
65 — ADC — Zero Page
66 — ROR — Zero Page
67 — NOP
68 — PLA
69 — ADC — Immediate
6A — ROR — Accumulator
6B — NOP
6C — JMP — Indirect
6D — ADC — Absolute
6E — ROR — Absolute
6F — NOP
70 — BVS
71 — ADC — (Indirect), Y
72 — NOP
73 — NOP
74 — NOP
75 — ADC — Zero Page, X
76 — ROR — Zero Page, X
77 — NOP
78 — SEI
79 — ADC — Absolute, Y
7A — NOP
7B — NOP
7C — NOP
7D — ADC — Absolute, X NOP
7E — ROR — Absolute, X NOP
7F — NOP
80 — NOP
81 — STA — (Indirect, X)
82 — NOP
83 — NOP
84 — STY — Zero Page
85 — STA — Zero Page
86 — STX — Zero Page
87 — NOP
88 — DEY
89 — NOP
8A — TXA
8B — NOP
8C — STY — Absolute

8D — STA — Absolute
8E — STX — Absolute
8F — NOP
90 — BCC
91 — STA — (Indirect), Y
92 — NOP
93 — NOP
94 — STY — Zero Page, X
95 — STA — Zero Page, X
96 — STX — Zero Page, Y
97 — NOP
98 — TYA
99 — STA — Absolute, Y
9A — TXS
9B — NOP
9C — NOP
9D — STA — Absolute, X
9E — NOP
9F — NOP
A0 — LDY — Immediate
A1 — LDA — (Indirect, X)
A2 — LDX — Immediate
A3 — NOP
A4 — LDY — Zero Page
A5 — LDA — Zero Page
A6 — LDX — Zero Page
A7 — NOP
A8 — TAY
A9 — LDA — Immediate
AA — TAX
AB — NOP
AC — LDY — Absolute
AD — Absolute
AE — LDX — Absolute
AF — NOP
B0 — BCS
B1 — LDA — (Indirect), Y
B2 — NOP
B3 — NOP
B4 — LDY — Zero Page, X
B5 — LDA — Zero Page, X
B6 — LDX — Zero Page, Y
B7 — NOP
B8 — CLV
B9 — LDA — Absolute, Y
BA — TSX
BB — NOP
BC — LDY — Absolute, X
BD — LDA — Absolute, X
BE — LDX — Absolute, Y
BF — NOP
C0 — CPY — Immediate
C1 — CMP — (Indirect, X)
C2 — NOP
C3 — NOP
C4 — CPY — Zero Page
C5 — CMP — Zero Page
C6 — DEC — Zero Page
C7 — NOP
C8 — INY
C9 — CMP — Immediate
CA — DEX
CB — NOP
CC — CPY — Absolute
CD — CMP — Absolute
CE — DEC — Absolute
CF — NOP
D0 — BNE
D1 — CMP — (Indirect), Y
D2 — NOP
D3 — NOP
D4 — NOP
D5 — CMP — Zero Page, X
D6 — DEC — Zero Page, X
D7 — NOP
D8 — CLD
D9 — CMP — Absolute, Y
DA — NOP
DB — NOP
DC — NOP
DD — CMP — Absolute, X
DE — DEC — Absolute, X
DF — NOP
E0 — CPX — Immediate
E1 — SBC — (Indirect, X)
E2 — NOP
E3 — NOP
E4 — CPX — Zero Page
E5 — SBC — Zero Page
E6 — INC — Zero Page
E7 — NOP
E8 — INX
E9 — SBC — Immediate
EA — NOP
EB — NOP
EC — CPX — Absolute
ED — SBC — Absolute
EE — INC — Absolute
EF — NOP
F0 — BEQ
F1 — SBC — (Indirect), Y
F2 — NOP
F3 — NOP
F4 — NOP
F5 — SBC — Zero Page, X
F6 — INC — Zero Page, X
F7 — NOP
F8 — SED
F9 — SBC — Absolute, Y
FA — NOP
FB — NOP
FC — NOP
FD — SBC — Absolute, X
FE — INC — Absolute, X
FF — NOP

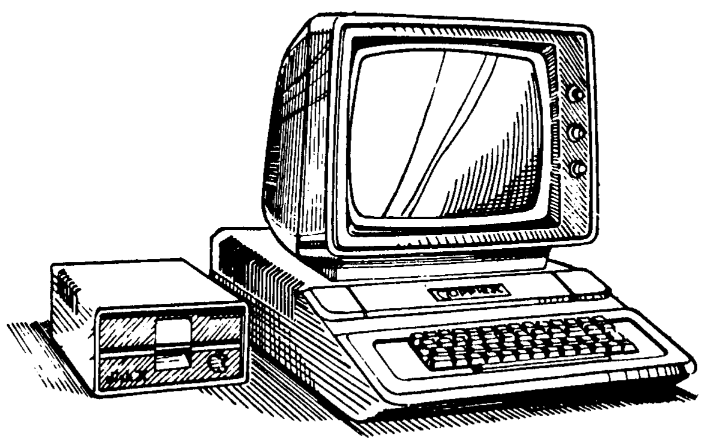
PRE-RELEASE
VERSION

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS
LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

APPENDIX A
ROM LISTING -- AUTOSTART MONITOR (1978)



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

AUTOSTART ROM LISTING

```
0000               ********************************
0000               *
0000               * APPLE II
0000               * MONITOR II
0000               *
0000               * COPYRIGHT 1978 BY
0000               * APPLE COMPUTER, INC.
0000               *
0000               * ALL RIGHTS RESERVED
0000               *
0000               * STEVE WOZNIAK
0000               *
0000               ********************************
0000               *
0000               * MODIFIED NOV 1978
0000               * BY JOHN A
0000               *
0000               ********************************
F800                       ORG $F800
F800                       OBJ $2000
F800               ********************************
F800               LOC0    EQU $00
F800               LOC1    EQU $01
F800               WNDLFT  EQU $20
F800               WNDWDTH EQU $21
F800               WNDTOP  EQU $22
F800               WNDBTM  EQU $23
F800               CH      EQU $24
F800               CV      EQU $25
F800               GBASL   EQU $26
F800               GBASH   EQU $27
F800               BASL    EQU $28
F800               BASH    EQU $29
F800               BAS2L   EQU $2A
F800               BAS2H   EQU $2B
F800               H2      EQU $2C
F800               LMNEM   EQU $2C
F800               V2      EQU $2D
F800               RMNEM   EQU $2D
F800               MASK    EQU $2E
F800               CHKSUM  EQU $2E
F800               FORMAT  EQU $2E
F800               LASTIN  EQU $2F
F800               LENGTH  EQU $2F
F800               SIGN    EQU $2F
F800               COLOR   EQU $30
F800               MODE    EQU $31
F800               INVFLG  EQU $32
F800               PROMPT  EQU $33
F800               YSAV    EQU $34
F800               YSAV1   EQU $35
F800               CSWL    EQU $36
F800               CSWH    EQU $37
F800               KSWL    EQU $38
F800               KSWH    EQU $39
F800               PCL     EQU $3A
F800               PCH     EQU $3B
F800               A1L     EQU $3C
F800               A1H     EQU $3D
F800               A2L     EQU $3E
F800               A2H     EQU $3F
F800               A3L     EQU $40
F800               A3H     EQU $41
F800               A4L     EQU $42
F800               A4H     EQU $43
F800               A5L     EQU $44
F800               A5H     EQU $45
```



```
F800               ACC     EQU $45      ; NOTE OVERLAP WITH A5H!
F800               XREG    EQU $46
F800               YREG    EQU $47
F800               STATUS  EQU $48
F800               SPNT    EQU $49
F800               RNDL    EQU $4E
F800               RNDH    EQU $4F
F800               PICK    EQU $95
F800               IN      EQU $0200
F800               BRKV    EQU $3F0     ; NEW VECTOR FOR BRK
F800               SOFTEV  EQU $3F2     ; VECTOR FOR WARM START
F800               PWREDUP EQU $3F4     ; THIS MUST = EOR #$A5 OF SOFTEV+1
F800               AMPERV  EQU $3F5     ; APPLESOFT & EXIT VECTOR
F800               USRADR  EQU $03F8
F800               NMI     EQU $03FB
F800               IRQLOC  EQU $3FE
F800               LINE1   EQU $400
F800               MSLOT   EQU $07F8
F800               IOADR   EQU $C000
F800               KBD     EQU $C000
F800               KBDSTRB EQU $C010
F800               TAPEOUT EQU $C020
F800               SPKR    EQU $C030
F800               TXTCLR  EQU $C050
F800               TXTSET  EQU $C051
F800               MIXCLR  EQU $C052
F800               MIXSET  EQU $C053
F800               LOWSCR  EQU $C054
F800               HISCR   EQU $C055
F800               LORES   EQU $C056
F800               HIRES   EQU $C057
F800               SETAN0  EQU $C058
F800               CLRAN0  EQU $C059
F800               SETAN1  EQU $C05A
F800               CLRAN1  EQU $C05B
F800               SETAN2  EQU $C05C
F800               CLRAN2  EQU $C05D
F800               SETAN3  EQU $C05E
F800               CLRAN3  EQU $C05F
F800               TAPEIN  EQU $C060
F800               PADDL0  EQU $C064
F800               PTRIG   EQU $C070
F800               CLRROM  EQU $CFFF
F800               BASIC   EQU $E000
F800               BASIC2  EQU $E003
F800                       PAGE
F800: 4A           PLOT    LSR A
F801: 08                   PHP
F802: 20 47 F8             JSR GBASCALC
F805: 28                   PLP
F806: A9 0F                LDA #$0F
F808: 90 02                BCC RTMASK
F80A: 69 E0                ADC #$E0
F80C: 85 2E        RTMASK  STA MASK
F80E: B1 26        PLOT1   LDA (GBASL),Y
F810: 45 30                EOR COLOR
F812: 25 2E                AND MASK
F814: 51 26                EOR (GBASL),Y
F816: 91 26                STA (GBASL),Y
F818: 60                   RTS
F819: 20 00 F8     HLINE   JSR PLOT
F81C: C4 2C        HLINE1  CPY H2
F81E: B0 11                BCS RTS1
F820: C8                   INY
F821: 20 0E F8             JSR PLOT1
F824: 90 F6                BCC HLINE1
F826: 69 01        VLINEZ  ADC #$01
F828: 48           VLINE   PHA
F829: 20 00 F8             JSR PLOT
F82C: 68                   PLA
F82D: C5 2D                CMP V2
F82F: 90 F5                BCC VLINEZ
F831: 60           RTS1    RTS
```

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

```
F832  A0 2F       CLRSCR   LDY #$2F
F834  D0 02                BNE CLRSC2
F836  A0 27       CLRTOP   LDY #$27
F838  84 2D       CLRSC2   STY V2
F83A  A0 27                LDY #$27
F83C  A9 00       CLRSC3   LDA #$00
F83E  85 30                STA COLOR
F840  20 28 F8             JSR VLINE
F843  88                   DEY
F844  10 F6                BPL CLRSC3
F846  60                   RTS
F847                       PAGE
F847  48          GBASCALC PHA
F848  4A                   LSR A
F849  29 03                AND #$03
F84B  09 04                ORA #$04
F84D  85 27                STA GBASH
F84F  68                   PLA
F850  29 18                AND #$18
F852  90 02                BCC GBCALC
F854  69 7F                ADC #$7F
F856  85 26       GBCALC   STA GBASL
F858  0A                   ASL A
F859  0A                   ASL A
F85A  05 26                ORA GBASL
F85C  85 26                STA GBASL
F85E  60                   RTS
F85F  A5 30                LDA COLOR
F861  18                   CLC
F862  69 03                ADC #$03
F864  29 0F       SETCOL   AND #$0F
F866  85 30                STA COLOR
F868  0A                   ASL A
F869  0A                   ASL A
F86A  0A                   ASL A
F86B  0A                   ASL A
F86C  05 30                ORA COLOR
F86E  85 30                STA COLOR
F870  60                   RTS
F871  4A          SCRN     LSR A
F872  08                   PHP
F873  20 47 F8             JSR GBASCALC
F876  B1 26                LDA (GBASL),Y
F878  28                   PLP
F879  90 04       SCRN2    BCC RTMSKZ
F87B  4A                   LSR A
F87C  4A                   LSR A
F87D  4A                   LSR A
F87E  4A                   LSR A
F87F  29 0F       RTMSKZ   AND #$0F
F881  60                   RTS
F882                       PAGE
F882  A6 3A       INSDS1   LDX PCL
F884  A4 3B                LDY PCH
F886  20 96 FD             JSR PRYX2
F889  20 48 F9             JSR PRBLNK
F88C  A1 3A       INSDS2   LDA (PCL,X)
F88E  A8                   TAY
F88F  4A                   LSR A
F890  90 09                BCC IEVEN
F892  6A                   ROR A
F893  B0 10                BCS ERR
F895  C9 A2                CMP #$A2
F897  F0 0C                BEQ ERR
F899  29 87                AND #$87
F89B  4A          IEVEN    LSR A
F89C  AA                   TAX
F89D  BD 62 F9             LDA FMT1,X
F8A0  20 79 F8             JSR SCRN2
F8A3  D0 04                BNE GETFMT
F8A5  A0 80       ERR      LDY #$80
F8A7  A9 00                LDA #$00
F8A9  AA          GETFMT   TAX
```

138

```
F8AA  BD A6 F9             LDA FMT2,X
F8AD  85 2E                STA FORMAT
F8AF  29 03                AND #$03
F8B1  85 2F                STA LENGTH
F8B3  98                   TYA
F8B4  29 8F                AND #$8F
F8B6  AA                   TAX
F8B7  98                   TYA
F8B8  A0 03                LDY #$03
F8BA  E0 8A                CPX #$8A
F8BC  F0 0B                BEQ MNNDX3
F8BE  4A          MNNDX1   LSR A
F8BF  90 08                BCC MNNDX3
F8C1  4A                   LSR A
F8C2  4A          MNNDX2   LSR A
F8C3  09 20                ORA #$20
F8C5  88                   DEY
F8C6  D0 FA                BNE MNNDX2
F8C8  C8                   INY
F8C9  88          MNNDX3   DEY
F8CA  D0 F2                BNE MNNDX1
F8CC  60                   RTS
F8CD  FF FF FF             DFB $FF,$FF,$FF
F8D0                       PAGE
F8D0  20 82 F8    INSTDSP  JSR INSDS1
F8D3  48                   PHA
F8D4  B1 3A       PRNTOP   LDA (PCL),Y
F8D6  20 DA FD             JSR PRBYTE
F8D9  A2 01                LDX #$01
F8DB  20 4A F9    PRNTBL   JSR PRBL2
F8DE  C4 2F                CPY LENGTH
F8E0  C8                   INY
F8E1  90 F1                BCC PRNTOP
F8E3  A2 03                LDX #$03
F8E5  C0 04                CPY #$04
F8E7  90 F2                BCC PRNTBL
F8E9  68                   PLA
F8EA  A8                   TAY
F8EB  B9 C0 F9             LDA MNEML,Y
F8EE  85 2C                STA LMNEM
F8F0  B9 00 FA             LDA MNEMR,Y
F8F3  85 2D                STA RMNEM
F8F5  A9 00       NXTCOL   LDA #$00
F8F7  A0 05                LDY #$05
F8F9  06 2D       PRMN2    ASL RMNEM
F8FB  26 2C                ROL LMNEM
F8FD  2A                   ROL A
F8FE  88                   DEY
F8FF  D0 F8                BNE PRMN2
F901  69 BF                ADC #$BF
F903  20 ED FD             JSR COUT
F906  CA                   DEX
F907  D0 EC                BNE NXTCOL
F909  20 48 F9             JSR PRBLNK
F90C  A4 2F                LDY LENGTH
F90E  A2 06                LDX #$06
F910  E0 03       PRADR1   CPX #$03
F912  F0 1C                BEQ PRADR5
F914  06 2E       PRADR2   ASL FORMAT
F916  90 0E                BCC PRADR3
F918  BD B3 F9             LDA CHAR1-1,X
F91B  20 ED FD             JSR COUT
F91E  BD B9 F9             LDA CHAR2-1,X
F921  F0 03                BEQ PRADR3
F923  20 ED FD             JSR COUT
F926  CA          PRADR3   DEX
F927  D0 E7                BNE PRADR1
F929  60                   RTS
F92A  88          PRADR4   DEY
F92B  30 E7                BMI PRADR2
F92D  20 DA FD             JSR PRBYTE
F930  A5 2E       PRADR5   LDA FORMAT
F932  C9 E8                CMP #$E8
```

139

```
F934: B1 3A     288          LDA (PCL),Y
F936: 90 F2     289          BCC PRADR4
F938            290          PAGE
F93B  20 56 F9  291 RELADR   JSR PCADJ3
F93D  AA        292          TAY
F93C  EB        293          INX
F93D  D0 01     294          DNE PRNTYX
F93F  C8        295          INY
F940  9E        296 PRNTYX   TYA
F941  20 DA FD  297 PRNTAX   JSR PRBYTE
F944  8A        298 PRNTX    TXA
F945  4C DA FD  299          JMP PRBYTE
F948  A2 03     300 PRBLNK   LDX #$03
F94A  A9 A0     301 PRBL2    LDA #$A0
F94C  20 ED FD  302 PRBL3    JSR COUT
F94F  CA        303          DEX
F950  D0 F8     304          BNE PRBL2
F952  60        305          RTS
F953  38        306 PCADJ    SEC
F954  A5 2F     307 PCADJ2   LDA LENGTH
F956  A4 3B     308 PCADJ3   LDY PCH
F958  AA        309          TAX
F959  10 01     310          BPL PCADJ4
F95B  88        311          DEY
F95C  65 3A     312 PCADJ4   ADC PCL
F95E  90 01     313          BCC RTS2
F960  C8        314          INY
F961  60        315 RTS2     RTS
F962  04        316 FMT1     DFB $04
F963  20        317          DFB $20
F964  54        318          DFB $54
F965  30        319          DFB $30
F966  0D        320          DFB $0D
F967  80        321          DFB $80
F968  04        322          DFB $04
F969  90        323          DFB $90
F96A  03        324          DFB $03
F96B  22        325          DFB $22
F96C  54        326          DFB $54
F96D  33        327          DFB $33
F96E  0D        328          DFB $0D
F96F  80        329          DFB $80
F970  04        330          DFB $04
F971  90        331          DFB $90
F972  04        332          DFB $04
F973  20        333          DFB $20
F974  54        334          DFB $54
F975  33        335          DFB $33
F976  0D        336          DFB $0D
F977  80        337          DFB $80
F978  04        338          DFB $04
F979  90        339          DFB $90
F97A  04        340          DFB $04
F97B  20        341          DFB $20
F97C  54        342          DFB $54
F97D  3B        343          DFB $3B
F97E  0D        344          DFB $0D
F97F  80        345          DFB $80
F980  04        346          DFB $04
F981  90        347          DFB $90
F982  00        348          DFB $00
F983  22        349          DFB $22
F984  44        350          DFB $44
F985  33        351          DFB $33
F986  0D        352          DFB $0D
F987  C8        353          DFB $C8
F988  44        354          DFB $44
F989  00        355          DFB $00
F98A  11        356          DFB $11
F98B  22        357          DFB $22
F98C  44        358          DFB $44
F98D  33        359          DFB $33
F98E  0D        360          DFB $0D
```

140

```
F98F  C8        361          DFB $C8
F990  44        362          DFB $44
F991  A9        363          DFB $A9
F992  01        364          DFB $01
F993  22        365          DFB $22
F994  44        366          DFB $44
F995  33        367          DFB $33
F996  0D        368          DFB $0D
F997  80        369          DFB $80
F998  04        370          DFB $04
F999  90        371          DFB $90
F99A  01        372          DFB $01
F99B  22        373          DFB $22
F99C  44        374          DFB $44
F99D  33        375          DFB $33
F99E  0D        376          DFB $0D
F99F  80        377          DFB $80
F9A0  04        378          DFB $04
F9A1  90        379          DFB $90
F9A2  26        380          DFB $26
F9A3  31        381          DFB $31
F9A4  87        382          DFB $87
F9A5  9A        383          DFB $9A
F9A6  00        384 FMT2     DFB $00
F9A7  21        385          DFB $21
F9A8  81        386          DFB $81
F9A9  82        387          DFB $82
F9AA  00        388          DFB $00
F9AB  00        389          DFB $00
F9AC  59        390          DFB $59
F9AD  4D        391          DFB $4D
F9AE  91        392          DFB $91
F9AF  92        393          DFB $92
F9B0  86        394          DFB $86
F9B1  4A        395          DFB $4A
F9B2  85        396          DFB $85
F9B3  9D        397          DFB $9D
F9B4  AC        398 CHAR1    DFB $AC
F9B5  A9        399          DFB $A9
F9B6  AC        400          DFB $AC
F9B7  A3        401          DFB $A3
F9B8  A8        402          DFB $A8
F9B9  A4        403          DFB $A4
F9BA  D9        404 CHAR2    DFB $D9
F9BB  00        405          DFB $00
F9BC  D8        406          DFB $D8
F9BD  A4        407          DFB $A4
F9BE  A4        408          DFB $A4
F9BF  00        409          DFB $00
F9C0  1C        410 MNEML    DFB $1C
F9C1  8A        411          DFB $8A
F9C2  1C        412          DFB $1C
F9C3  23        413          DFB $23
F9C4  5D        414          DFB $5D
F9C5  8B        415          DFB $8B
F9C6  1B        416          DFB $1B
F9C7  A1        417          DFB $A1
F9C8  9D        418          DFB $9D
F9C9  8A        419          DFB $8A
F9CA  1D        420          DFB $1D
F9CB  23        421          DFB $23
F9CC  9D        422          DFB $9D
F9CD  8B        423          DFB $8B
F9CE  1D        424          DFB $1D
F9CF  A1        425          DFB $A1
F9D0  00        426          DFB $00
F9D1  29        427          DFB $29
F9D2  19        428          DFB $19
F9D3  AE        429          DFB $AE
F9D4  69        430          DFB $69
F9D5  A8        431          DFB $A8
F9D6  19        432          DFB $19
F9D7  23        433          DFB $23
```

141

```
F9D8  24               DFB $24
F9D9  53               DFB $53
F9DA  1B               DFB $1B
F9DB  23               DFB $23
F9DC  24               DFB $24
F9DD  53               DFB $53
F9DE  19               DFB $19
F9DF  A1               DFB $A1
F9E0  00               DFB $00
F9E1  1A               DFB $1A
F9E2  5B               DFB $5B
F9E3  5B               DFB $5B
F9E4  A5               DFB $A5
F9E5  69               DFB $69
F9E6  24               DFB $24
F9E7  24               DFB $24
F9E8  AE               DFB $AE
F9E9  AE               DFB $AE
F9EA  A8               DFB $A8
F9EB  AD               DFB $AD
F9EC  29               DFB $29
F9ED  00               DFB $00
F9EE  7C               DFB $7C
F9EF  00               DFB $00
F9F0  15               DFB $15
F9F1  9C               DFB $9C
F9F2  6D               DFB $6D
F9F3  9C               DFB $9C
F9F4  A5               DFB $A5
F9F5  69               DFB $69
F9F6  29               DFB $29
F9F7  53               DFB $53
F9F8  84               DFB $84
F9F9  13               DFB $13
F9FA  34               DFB $34
F9FB  11               DFB $11
F9FC  A5               DFB $A5
F9FD  69               DFB $69
F9FE  23               DFB $23
F9FF  A0               DFB $A0
FA00  D8       MNEMR   DFB $D8
FA01  62               DFB $62
FA02  5A               DFB $5A
FA03  48               DFB $48
FA04  26               DFB $26
FA05  62               DFB $62
FA06  94               DFB $94
FA07  88               DFB $88
FA08  54               DFB $54
FA09  44               DFB $44
FA0A  C8               DFB $C8
FA0B  54               DFB $54
FA0C  68               DFB $68
FA0D  44               DFB $44
FA0E  E8               DFB $E8
FA0F  94               DFB $94
FA10  00               DFB $00
FA11  B4               DFB $B4
FA12  08               DFB $08
FA13  84               DFB $84
FA14  74               DFB $74
FA15  B4               DFB $B4
FA16  28               DFB $28
FA17  6E               DFB $6E
FA18  74               DFB $74
FA19  F4               DFB $F4
FA1A  CC               DFB $CC
FA1B  4A               DFB $4A
FA1C  72               DFB $72
FA1D  F2               DFB $F2
FA1E  A4               DFB $A4
FA1F  8A               DFB $8A
FA20  00               DFB $00
```



```
FA21  AA               DFB $AA
FA22  A2               DFB $A2
FA23  A2               DFB $A2
FA24  74               DFB $74
FA25  74               DFB $74
FA26  74               DFB $74
FA27  72               DFB $72
FA28  44               DFB $44
FA29  68               DFB $68
FA2A  B2               DFB $B2
FA2B  32               DFB $32
FA2C  B2               DFB $B2
FA2D  00               DFB $00
FA2E  22               DFB $22
FA2F  00               DFB $00
FA30  1A               DFB $1A
FA31  1A               DFB $1A
FA32  26               DFB $26
FA33  26               DFB $26
FA34  72               DFB $72
FA35  72               DFB $72
FA36  88               DFB $88
FA37  C8               DFB $C8
FA38  C4               DFB $C4
FA39  CA               DFB $CA
FA3A  26               DFB $26
FA3B  48               DFB $48
FA3C  44               DFB $44
FA3D  44               DFB $44
FA3E  A2               DFB $A2
FA3F  C8               DFB $C8
FA40                   PAGE
FA40  B5 45    IRQ     STA ACC
FA42  68               PLA
FA43  48               PHA
FA44  0A               ASL A
FA45  0A               ASL A
FA46  0A               ASL A
FA47  30 03            BMI BREAK
FA49  6C FE 03         JMP (IRQLOC)
FA4C  28       BREAK   PLP
FA4D  20 4C FF         JSR SAV1
FA50  68               PLA
FA51  85 3A            STA PCL
FA53  68               PLA
FA54  85 3B            STA PCH
FA56  6C F0 03         JMP (BRKV) ;BRKV WRITTEN OVER BY DISK BOOT
FA59  20 82 F8 OLDBRK  JSR INSDS1
FA5C  20 DA FA         JSR RGDSP1
FA5F  4C 65 FF         JMP MON
FA62  D8       RESET   CLD          ; DO THIS FIRST THIS TIME
FA63  20 84 FE         JSR SETNORM
FA66  20 2F FB         JSR INIT
FA69  20 93 FE         JSR SETVID
FA6C  20 89 FE         JSR SETKBD
FA6F  AD 58 C0 INITAN  LDA SETAN0 ; AN0 = TTL HI
FA72  AD 5A C0         LDA SETAN1 ; AN1 = TTL HI
FA75  AD 5D C0         LDA CLRAN2 ; AN2 = TTL LO
FA78  AD 5F C0         LDA CLRAN3 ; AN3 = TTL LO
FA7B  AD FF CF         LDA CLRROM ; TURN OFF EXTNSN ROM
FA7E  2C 10 C0         BIT KBDSTRB ; CLEAR KEYBOARD
FA81  D8       NEWMON  CLD
FA82  20 3A FF         JSR BELL     ; CAUSES DELAY IF KEY BOUNCES
FA85  AD F3 03         LDA SOFTEV+1 ;IS RESET HI
FA88  49 A5            EOR #$A5     ;A FUNNY COMPLEMENT OF THE
FA8A  CD F4 03         CMP PWREDUP ; PWR UP BYTE ???
FA8D  D0 17            BNE PWRUP   ; NO SO PWRUP
FA8F  AD F2 03         LDA SOFTEV  ; YES SEE IF COLD START
FA92  D0 0F            BNE NOFIX   ; HAS BEEN DONE YET?
FA94  A9 E0            LDA #$E0    ; ??
FA96  CD F3 03         CMP SOFTEV+1 ; ??
FA99  D0 08            BNE NOFIX   ; YES SO REENTER SYSTEM
FA9B  A0 03    FIXSEV  LDY #3      ; NO SO POINT AT WARM START
```

```
FA9D: 8C F2 03        STY SOFTEV  ; FOR NEXT RESET
FAA0: 4C 00 E0        JMP BASIC   ; AND DO THE COLD START
FAA3: 6C F2 03  NOFIX JMP (SOFTEV) ; SOFT ENTRY VECTOR
FAA6:           ********************************
FAA6: 20 60 FB  PWRUP  JSR APPLEII
FAA9:           SETPG3 EQU *        ; SET PAGE 3 VECTORS
FAA9: A2 05            LDX #5
FAAB: BD FC FA  SETPLP LDA PWRCON-1,X ; WITH CNTRL B ADRS
FAAE: 9D EF 03         STA BRKV-1,X ; OF CURRENT BASIC
FAB1: CA               DEX
FAB2: D0 F7            BNE SETPLP
FAB4: A9 C8            LDA #$C8   ; LOAD HI SLOT +1
FAB6: 85 00            STX LOC0   ; SETPG3 MUST RETURN X=0
FAB8: 85 01            STA LOC1   ; SET PTR H
FABA: A0 07     SLOOP  LDY #7     ; Y IS BYTE PTR
FABC: C6 01            DEC LOC1
FABE: A5 01            LDA LOC1
FAC0: C9 C0            CMP #$C0   ; AT LAST SLOT YET?
FAC2: F0 D7            BEQ FIXSEV ; YES AND IT CANT BE A DISK
FAC4: 8D F8 07         STA MSLOT
FAC7: B1 00     NXTBYT LDA (LOC0),Y ; FETCH A SLOT BYTE
FAC9: D9 01 FB         CMP DISKID-1,Y ; IS IT A DISK ??
FACC: D0 EC            BNE SLOOP  ; NO SO NEXT SLOT DOWN
FACE: 88               DEY
FACF: 88               DEY        ; YES SO CHECK NEXT BYTE
FAD0: 10 F5            BPL NXTBYT ; UNTIL 4 CHECKED
FAD2: 6C 00 00         JMP (LOC0)
FAD5: EA               NOP
FAD6: EA               NOP
FAD7:           * REGDSP MUST ORG $FAD7
FAD7  20 8E FD  REGDSP JSR CROUT
FADA: A9 45     RGDSP1 LDA #$45
FADC: 85 40            STA A3L
FADE: A9 00            LDA #$00
FAE0: 85 41            STA A3H
FAE2: A2 FB            LDX #$FB
FAE4: A9 A0     RDSP1  LDA #$A0
FAE6: 20 ED FD         JSR COUT
FAE9: BD 1E FA         LDA RTBL-251,X
FAEC: 20 ED FD         JSR COUT
FAEF: A9 BD            LDA #$BD
FAF1: 20 ED FD         JSR COUT
FAF4:           * LDA ACC+5,X
FAF4: B5 4A            DFB $B5,$4A
FAF6: 20 DA FD         JSR PRBYTE
FAF9: E8               INX
FAFA: 30 E8            BMI RDSP1
FAFC: 60               RTS
FAFD: 59 FA     PWRCON DW  OLDBRK
FAFF: 00 E0 45         DFB $00,$E0,$45
FB02: 20 FF 00
FB05: FF        DISKID DFB $20,$FF,$00,$FF
FB06: 03 FF 3C         DFB $03,$FF,$3C
FB09: C1 D0 D0  TITLE  DFB $C1,$D0,$D0
FB0C: CC C5 A0         DFB $CC,$C5,$A0
FB0F: DD DB            DFB $DD,$DB
FB11:           XLTBL  EQU *
FB11: C4 C2 C1         DFB $C4,$C2,$C1
FB14: FF C3            DFB $FF,$C3
FB16: FF FF FF         DFB $FF,$FF,$FF
FB19:           *  MUST ORG $FB19
FB19: C1 D8 D9  RTBL   DFB $C1,$D8,$D9
FB1C: D0 D3            DFB $D0,$D3
FB1E: AD 70 C0  PREAD  LDA PTRIG
FB21:                  LST ON
FB21: A0 00            LDY #$00
FB23: EA               NOP
FB24: EA               NOP
FB25: BD 64 C0  PREAD2 LDA PADDL0,X
FB28: 10 04            BPL RTS2D
FB2A: C8               INY
FB2B: D0 F8            BNE PREAD2
FB2D: 88               DEY
```

144

```
FB2E: 60        RTS2D  RTS
FB2F: A9 00     INIT   LDA #$00
FB31: 85 48            STA STATUS
FB33: AD 56 C0         LDA LORES
FB36: AD 54 C0         LDA LOWSCR
FB39: AD 51 C0  SETTXT LDA TXTSET
FB3C: A9 00            LDA #$00
FB3E: F0 0B            BEQ SETWND
FB40: AD 50 C0  SETGR  LDA TXTCLR
FB43: AD 53 C0         LDA MIXSET
FB46: 20 36 F8         JSR CLRTOP
FB49: A9 14            LDA #$14
FB4B: 85 22     SETWND STA WNDTOP
FB4D: A9 00            LDA #$00
FB4F: 85 20            STA WNDLFT
FB51: A9 28            LDA #$28
FB53: 85 21            STA WNDWDTH
FB55: A9 18            LDA #$18
FB57: 85 23            STA WNDBTM
FB59: A9 17            LDA #$17
FB5B: 85 25     TABV   STA CV
FB5D: 4C 22 FC         JMP VTAB
FB60: 20 58 FC  APPLEII JSR HOME  ; CLEAR THE SCRN
FB63: A0 08            LDY #8
FB65: B9 08 FB  STITLE LDA TITLE-1,Y ; GET A CHAR
FB68: 99 0E 04         STA LINE1+14,Y
FB6B: 88               DEY
FB6C: D0 F7            BNE STITLE
FB6E: 60               RTS
FB6F: AD F3 03  SETPWRC LDA SOFTEV+1
FB72: 49 A5            EOR #$A5
FB74: 8D F4 03         STA PWREDUP
FB77: 60               RTS
FB78:           VIDWAIT EQU *      ; CHECK FOR A PAUSE
FB78: C9 8D            CMP #$8D   ; ONLY WHEN I HAVE A CR
FB7A: D0 18            BNE NOWAIT ; NOT SO, DO REGULAR
FB7C: AC 00 C0         LDY KBD    ; IS KEY PRESSED?
FB7F: 10 13            BPL NOWAIT ; NO
FB81: C0 93            CPY #$93   ; IS IT CTL S ?
FB83: D0 0F            BNE NOWAIT ; NO SO IGNORE
FB85: 2C 10 C0         BIT KBDSTRB ; CLEAR STROBE
FB88: AC 00 C0  KBDWAIT LDY KBD   ; WAIT TILL NEXT KEY TO RESUME
FB8B: 10 FB            BPL KBDWAIT ; WAIT FOR KEYPRESS
FB8D: C0 83            CPY #$83   ; IS IT CONTROL C ?
FB8F: F0 03            BEQ NOWAIT ; YES SO LEAVE IT
FB91: 2C 10 C0         BIT KBDSTRB ; CLR STROBE
FB94: 4C FD FB  NOWAIT JMP VIDOUT ; DO AS BEFORE
FB97:                  PAGE
FB97: 38        ESCOLD SEC        ; INSURE CARRY SET
FB98: 4C 2C FC         JMP ESC1
FB9B: A8        ESCNOW TAY        ; USE CHAR AS INDEX
FB9C: B9 48 FA         LDA XLTBL-$C9,Y ; XLATE IJKM TO CBAD
FB9F: 20 97 FB         JSR ESCOLD ; DO THIS CURSOR MOTION
FBA2: 20 0C FD         JSR RDKEY  ; AND GET NEXT
FBA5: C9 CE     ESCNEW CMP #$CE   ;IS THIS AN N ?
FBA7: B0 EE            BCS ESCOLD ; N OR GREATER DO IT
FBA9: C9 C9            CMP #$C9   ; LESS THAN I ?
FBAB: 90 EA            BCC ESCOLD ; YES SO OLD WAY
FBAD: C9 CC            CMP #$CC   ; IS IT A L ?
FBAF: F0 E6            BEQ ESCOLD ; DO NORMAL
FBB1: D0 E8            BNE ESCNOW ; GO DO IT
FBB3: EA               NOP
FBB4: EA               NOP
FBB5: EA               NOP
FBB6: EA               NOP
FBB7: EA               NOP
FBB8: EA               NOP
FBB9: EA               NOP
FBBA: EA               NOP
```

145

```
FBBB: EA                NOP
FBBC: EA                NOP
FBBD: EA                NOP
FBBE: EA                NOP
FBBF: EA                NOP
FBC0: EA                NOP
FBC1:         *    MUST ORG $FBC1
FBC1: 48        BASCALC PHA
FBC2: 4A                LSR A
FBC3: 29 03             AND #$03
FBC5: 09 04             ORA #$04
FBC7: 85 29             STA BASH
FBC9: 68                PLA
FBCA: 29 18             AND #$18
FBCC: 90 02             BCC BASCLC2
FBCE: 69 7F             ADC #$7F
FBD0: 85 28     BASCLC2 STA BASL
FBD2: 0A                ASL A
FBD3: 0A                ASL A
FBD4: 05 28             ORA BASL
FBD6: 85 28             STA BASL
FBD8: 60                RTS
FBD9: C9 87     BELL1   CMP #$87
FBDB: D0 12             BNE RTS2B
FBDD: A9 40             LDA #$40
FBDF: 20 A8 FC          JSR WAIT
FBE2: A0 C0             LDY #$C0
FBE4: A9 0C     BELL2   LDA #$0C
FBE6: 20 A8 FC          JSR WAIT
FBE9: AD 30 C0          LDA SPKR
FBEC: 88                DEY
FBED: D0 F5             BNE BELL2
FBEF: 60        RTS2B   RTS
FBF0:                   PAGE
FBF0: A4 24     STORADV LDY CH
FBF2: 91 28             STA (BASL),Y
FBF4: E6 24     ADVANCE INC CH
FBF6: A5 24             LDA CH
FBF8: C5 21             CMP WNDWDTH
FBFA: B0 66             BCS CR
FBFC: 60        RTS3    RTS
FBFD: C9 A0     VIDOUT  CMP #$A0
FBFF: B0 EF             BCS STORADV
FC01: A8                TAY
FC02: 10 EC             BPL STORADV
FC04: C9 8D             CMP #$8D
FC06: F0 5A             BEQ CR
FC08: C9 8A             CMP #$8A
FC0A: F0 5A             BEQ LF
FC0C: C9 88             CMP #$88
FC0E: D0 C9             BNE BELL1
FC10: C6 24     BS      DEC CH
FC12: 10 E8             BPL RTS3
FC14: A5 21             LDA WNDWDTH
FC16: 85 24             STA CH
FC18: C6 24             DEC CH
FC1A: A5 22     UP      LDA WNDTOP
FC1C: C5 25             CMP CV
FC1E: B0 0B             BCS RTS4
FC20: C6 25             DEC CV
FC22: A5 25     VTAB    LDA CV
FC24: 20 C1 FB  VTABZ   JSR BASCALC
FC27: 65 20             ADC WNDLFT
FC29: 85 28             STA BASL
FC2B: 60        RTS4    RTS
FC2C: 49 C0     ESC1    EOR #$C0      ; ESC @ ?
FC2E: F0 28             BEQ HOME      ; IF SO DO HOME AND CLEAR
FC30: 69 FD             ADC #$FD      ; ESC-A OR B CHECK
FC32: 90 C0             BCC ADVANCE , A, ADVANCE
FC34: F0 DA             BEQ BS        ; B, BACKSPACE
FC36: 69 FD             ADC #$FD      ; ESC-C OR D CHECK
FC38: 90 2C             BCC LF        ; C, DOWN
FC3A: F0 DE             BEQ UP        ; D, GO UP
```

146

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

```
FC3C: 69 FD             ADC #$FD      ; ESC-E OR F CKECK
FC3E: 90 5C             BCC CLREOL    ; E, CLEAR TO END OF LINE
FC40: D0 E9             BNE RTS4      ; ELSE NOT F,RETURN
FC42: A4 24     CLREOP  LDY CH        ; ESC F IS CLR TO END OF PAGE
FC44: A5 25             LDA CV
FC46: 48        CLEOP1  PHA
FC47: 20 24 FC          JSR VTABZ
FC4A: 20 9E FC          JSR CLEOLZ
FC4D: A0 00             LDY #$00
FC4F: 68                PLA
FC50: 69 00             ADC #$00
FC52: C5 23             CMP WNDBTM
FC54: 90 F0             BCC CLEOP1
FC56: B0 CA             BCS VTAB
FC58: A5 22     HOME    LDA WNDTOP
FC5A: 85 25             STA CV
FC5C: A0 00             LDY #$00
FC5E: 84 24             STY CH
FC60: F0 E4             BEQ CLEOP1
FC62:                   PAGE
FC62: A9 00     CR      LDA #$00
FC64: 85 24             STA CH
FC66: E6 25     LF      INC CV
FC68: A5 25             LDA CV
FC6A: C5 23             CMP WNDBTM
FC6C: 90 B6             BCC VTABZ
FC6E: C6 25             DEC CV
FC70: A5 22     SCROLL  LDA WNDTOP
FC72: 48                PHA
FC73: 20 24 FC          JSR VTABZ
FC76: A5 28     SCRL1   LDA BASL
FC78: 85 2A             STA BAS2L
FC7A: A5 29             LDA BASH
FC7C: 85 2B             STA BAS2H
FC7E: A4 21             LDY WNDWDTH
FC80: 88                DEY
FC81: 68                PLA
FC82: 69 01             ADC #$01
FC84: C5 23             CMP WNDBTM
FC86: B0 0D             BCS SCRL3
FC88: 48                PHA
FC89: 20 24 FC          JSR VTABZ
FC8C: B1 28     SCRL2   LDA (BASL),Y
FC8E: 91 2A             STA (BAS2L),Y
FC90: 88                DEY
FC91: 10 F9             BPL SCRL2
FC93: 30 E1             BMI SCRL1
FC95: A0 00     SCRL3   LDY #$00
FC97: 20 9E FC          JSR CLEOLZ
FC9A: B0 86             BCS VTAB
FC9C: A4 24     CLREOL  LDY CH
FC9E: A9 A0     CLEOLZ  LDA #$A0
FCA0: 91 28     CLEOL2  STA (BASL),Y
FCA2: C8                INY
FCA3: C4 21             CPY WNDWDTH
FCA5: 90 F9             BCC CLEOL2
FCA7: 60                RTS
FCA8: 38        WAIT    SEC
FCA9: 48        WAIT2   PHA
FCAA: E9 01     WAIT3   SBC #$01
FCAC: D0 FC             BNE WAIT3
FCAE: 68                PLA
FCAF: E9 01             SBC #$01
FCB1: D0 F6             BNE WAIT2
FCB3: 60                RTS
FCB4: E6 42     NXTA4   INC A4L
FCB6: D0 02             BNE NXTA1
FCB8: E6 43             INC A4H
FCBA: A5 3C     NXTA1   LDA A1L
FCBC: C5 3E             CMP A2L
FCBE: A5 3D             LDA A1H
FCC0: E5 3F             SBC A2H
FCC2: E6 3C             INC A1L
```

147

```
FCC4:  D0 02     216          BNE RTS4B
FCC6:  E6 3D     217          INC A1H
FCC8:  60        218 RTS4B    RTS
FCC9:            219          PAGE
FCC9:  A0 4B     220 HEADR    LDY #$4B
FCCB:  20 DB FC  221          JSR ZERDLY
FCCE:  D0 F9     222          BNE HEADR
FCD0:  69 FE     223          ADC #$FE
FCD2:  B0 F5     224          BCS HEADR
FCD4:  A0 21     225          LDY #$21
FCD6:  20 DB FC  226 WRBIT    JSR ZERDLY
FCD9:  C8        227          INY
FCDA:  C8        228          INY
FCDB:  88        229 ZERDLY   DEY
FCDC:  D0 FD     230          BNE ZERDLY
FCDE:  90 05     231          BCC WRTAPE
FCE0:  A0 32     232          LDY #$32
FCE2:  88        233 ONEDLY   DEY
FCE3:  D0 FD     234          BNE ONEDLY
FCE5:  AC 20 C0  235 WRTAPE   LDY TAPEOUT
FCE8:  A0 2C     236          LDY #$2C
FCEA:  CA        237          DEX
FCEB:  60        238          RTS
FCEC:  A2 08     239 RDBYTE   LDX #$08
FCEE:  48        240 RDBYT2   PHA
FCEF:  20 FA FC  241          JSR RD2BIT
FCF2:  68        242          PLA
FCF3:  2A        243          ROL A
FCF4:  A0 3A     244          LDY #$3A
FCF6:  CA        245          DEX
FCF7:  D0 F5     246          BNE RDBYT2
FCF9:  60        247          RTS
FCFA:  20 FD FC  248 RD2BIT   JSR RDBIT
FCFD:  88        249 RDBIT    DEY
FCFE:  AD 60 C0  250          LDA TAPEIN
FD01:  45 2F     251          EOR LASTIN
FD03:  10 F8     252          BPL RDBIT
FD05:  45 2F     253          EOR LASTIN
FD07:  85 2F     254          STA LASTIN
FD09:  C0 80     255          CPY #$80
FD0B:  60        256          RTS
FD0C:  A4 24     257 RDKEY    LDY CH
FD0E:  B1 28     258          LDA (BASL),Y
FD10:  48        259          PHA
FD11:  29 3F     260          AND #$3F
FD13:  09 40     261          ORA #$40
FD15:  91 28     262          STA (BASL),Y
FD17:  68        263          PLA
FD18:  6C 38 00  264          JMP (KSWL)
FD1B:  E6 4E     265 KEYIN    INC RNDL
FD1D:  D0 02     266          BNE KEYIN2
FD1F:  E6 4F     267          INC RNDH
FD21:  2C 00 C0  268 KEYIN2   BIT KBD       ; READ KEYBOARD
FD24:  10 F5     269          BPL KEYIN
FD26:  91 28     270          STA (BASL),Y
FD28:  AD 00 C0  271          LDA KBD
FD2B:  2C 10 C0  272          BIT KBDSTRB
FD2E:  60        273          RTS
FD2F:  20 0C FD  274 ESC      JSR RDKEY
FD32:  20 A5 FB  275          JSR ESCNEW
FD35:  20 0C FD  276 RDCHAR   JSR RDKEY
FD38:  C9 9B     277          CMP #$9B
FD3A:  F0 F3     278          BEQ ESC
FD3C:  60        279          RTS
FD3D:            280          PAGE
FD3D:  A5 32     281 NOTCR    LDA INVFLG
FD3F:  48        282          PHA
FD40:  A9 FF     283          LDA #$FF
FD42:  85 32     284          STA INVFLG
FD44:  BD 00 02  285          LDA IN,X
FD47:  20 ED FD  286          JSR COUT
FD4A:  68        287          PLA
FD4B:  85 32     288          STA INVFLG
```

148

```
FD4D:  BD 00 02  289          LDA IN,X
FD50:  C9 88     290          CMP #$88
FD52:  F0 1D     291          BEQ BCKSPC
FD54:  C9 98     292          CMP #$98
FD56:  F0 0A     293          BEQ CANCEL
FD58:  E0 F8     294          CPX #$F8
FD5A:  90 03     295          BCC NOTCR1
FD5C:  20 3A FF  296          JSR BELL
FD5F:  E8        297 NOTCR1   INX
FD60:  D0 13     298          BNE NXTCHAR
FD62:  A9 DC     299 CANCEL   LDA #$DC
FD64:  20 ED FD  300          JSR COUT
FD67:  20 8E FD  301 GETLNZ   JSR CROUT
FD6A:  A5 33     302 GETLN    LDA PROMPT
FD6C:  20 ED FD  303          JSR COUT
FD6F:  A2 01     304          LDX #$01
FD71:  8A        305 BCKSPC   TXA
FD72:  F0 F3     306          BEQ GETLNZ
FD74:  CA        307          DEX
FD75:  20 35 FD  308 NXTCHAR  JSR RDCHAR
FD78:  C9 95     309          CMP #$95
FD7A:  D0 02     310          BNE CAPTST
FD7C:  B1 28     311          LDA (BASL),Y
FD7E:  C9 E0     312 CAPTST   CMP #$E0
FD80:  90 02     313          BCC ADDINP
FD82:  29 DF     314          AND #$DF      ; SHIFT TO UPPER CASE
FD84:  9D 00 02  315 ADDINP   STA IN,X
FD87:  C9 8D     316          CMP #$8D
FD89:  D0 B2     317          BNE NOTCR
FD8B:  20 9C FC  318          JSR CLREOL
FD8E:  A9 8D     319 CROUT    LDA #$8D
FD90:  D0 5B     320          BNE COUT
FD92:  A4 3D     321 PRA1     LDY A1H
FD94:  A6 3C     322          LDX A1L
FD96:  20 8E FD  323 PRYX2    JSR CROUT
FD99:  20 40 F9  324          JSR PRNTYX
FD9C:  A0 00     325          LDY #$00
FD9E:  A9 AD     326          LDA #$AD
FDA0:  4C ED FD  327          JMP COUT
FDA3:            328          PAGE
FDA3:  A5 3C     329 XAM8     LDA A1L
FDA5:  09 07     330          ORA #$07
FDA7:  85 3E     331          STA A2L
FDA9:  A5 3D     332          LDA A1H
FDAB:  85 3F     333          STA A2H
FDAD:  A5 3C     334 MODBCHK  LDA A1L
FDAF:  29 07     335          AND #$07
FDB1:  D0 03     336          BNE DATAOUT
FDB3:  20 92 FD  337 XAM      JSR PRA1
FDB6:  A9 A0     338 DATAOUT  LDA #$A0
FDB8:  20 ED FD  339          JSR COUT
FDBB:  B1 3C     340          LDA (A1L),Y
FDBD:  20 DA FD  341          JSR PRBYTE
FDC0:  20 BA FC  342          JSR NXTA1
FDC3:  90 E8     343          BCC MODBCHK
FDC5:  60        344 RTS4C    RTS
FDC6:  4A        345 XAMPM    LSR A
FDC7:  90 EA     346          BCC XAM
FDC9:  4A        347          LSR A
FDCA:  4A        348          LSR A
FDCB:  A5 3E     349          LDA A2L
FDCD:  90 02     350          BCC ADD
FDCF:  49 FF     351          EOR #$FF
FDD1:  65 3C     352 ADD      ADC A1L
FDD3:  48        353          PHA
FDD4:  A9 BD     354          LDA #$BD
FDD6:  20 ED FD  355          JSR COUT
FDD9:  68        356          PLA
FDDA:  48        357 PRBYTE   PHA
FDDB:  4A        358          LSR A
FDDC:  4A        359          LSR A
FDDD:  4A        360          LSR A
FDDE:  4A        361          LSR A
```

149

```
FDDF: 20 E5 FD           JSR PRHEXZ
FDE2: 68                 PLA
FDE3: 29 0F     PRHEX    AND #$0F
FDE5: 09 B0     PRHEXZ   ORA #$B0
FDE7: C9 BA              CMP #$BA
FDE9: 90 02              BCC COUT
FDEB: 69 06              ADC #$06
FDED: 6C 36 00  COUT     JMP (CSWL)
FDF0: C9 A0     COUT1    CMP #$A0
FDF2: 90 02              BCC COUTZ
FDF4: 25 32              AND INVFLG
FDF6: 84 35     COUTZ    STY YSAV1
FDF8: 48                 PHA
FDF9: 20 78 FB           JSR VIDWAIT ; GO CHECK FOR PAUSE
FDFC: 68                 PLA
FDFD: A4 35              LDY YSAV1
FDFF: 60                 RTS
FE00:                    PAGE
FE00: C6 34     BL1      DEC YSAV
FE02: F0 9F              BEQ XAM8
FE04: CA        BLANK    DEX
FE05: D0 16              BNE SETMDZ
FE07: C9 BA              CMP #$BA
FE09: D0 BB              BNE XAMPM
FE0B: 85 31     STOR     STA MODE
FE0D: A5 3E              LDA A2L
FE0F: 91 40              STA (A3L),Y
FE11: E6 40              INC A3L
FE13: D0 02              BNE RTS5
FE15: E6 41              INC A3H
FE17: 60        RTS5     RTS
FE18: A4 34     SETMODE  LDY YSAV
FE1A: B9 FF 01           LDA IN-1,Y
FE1D: 85 31     SETMDZ   STA MODE
FE1F: 60                 RTS
FE20: A2 01     LT       LDX #$01
FE22: B5 3E     LT2      LDA A2L,X
FE24: 95 42              STA A4L,X
FE26: 95 44              STA A5L,X
FE28: CA                 DEX
FE29: 10 F7              BPL LT2
FE2B: 60                 RTS
FE2C: B1 3C     MOVE     LDA (A1L),Y
FE2E: 91 42              STA (A4L),Y
FE30: 20 B4 FC           JSR NXTA4
FE33: 90 F7              BCC MOVE
FE35: 60                 RTS
FE36: B1 3C     VFY      LDA (A1L),Y
FE38: D1 42              CMP (A4L),Y
FE3A: F0 1C              BEQ VFYOK
FE3C: 20 92 FD           JSR PRA1
FE3F: B1 3C              LDA (A1L),Y
FE41: 20 DA FD           JSR PRBYTE
FE44: A9 A0              LDA #$A0
FE46: 20 ED FD           JSR COUT
FE49: A9 A8              LDA #$A8
FE4B: 20 ED FD           JSR COUT
FE4E: B1 42              LDA (A4L),Y
FE50: 20 DA FD           JSR PRBYTE
FE53: A9 A9              LDA #$A9
FE55: 20 ED FD           JSR COUT
FE58: 20 B4 FC  VFYOK    JSR NXTA4
FE5B: 90 D9              BCC VFY
FE5D: 60                 RTS
FE5E: 20 75 FE  LIST     JSR A1PC
FE61: A9 14              LDA #$14
FE63: 48        LIST2    PHA
FE64: 20 D0 F8           JSR INSTDSP
FE67: 20 53 F9           JSR PCADJ
FE6A: 85 3A              STA PCL
FE6C: 84 3B              STY PCH
FE6E: 68                 PLA
FE6F: 38                 SEC
FE70: E9 01              SBC #$01
FE72: D0 EF              BNE LIST2
FE74: 60                 RTS
FE75:                    PAGE
FE75: 8A        A1PC     TXA
FE76: F0 07              BEQ A1PCRTS
FE78: B5 3C     A1PCLP   LDA A1L,X
FE7A: 95 3A              STA PCL,X
FE7C: CA                 DEX
FE7D: 10 F9              BPL A1PCLP
FE7F: 60        A1PCRTS  RTS
FE80: A0 3F     SETINV   LDY #$3F
FE82: D0 02              BNE SETIFLG
FE84: A0 FF     SETNORM  LDY #$FF
FE86: 84 32     SETIFLG  STY INVFLG
FE88: 60                 RTS
FE89: A9 00     SETKBD   LDA #$00
FE8B: 85 3E     INPORT   STA A2L
FE8D: A2 38     INPRT    LDX #KSWL
FE8F: A0 1B              LDY #KEYIN
FE91: D0 08              BNE IOPRT
FE93: A9 00     SETVID   LDA #$00
FE95: 85 3E     OUTPORT  STA A2L
FE97: A2 36     OUTPRT   LDX #CSWL
FE99: A0 F0              LDY #COUT1
FE9B: A5 3E     IOPRT    LDA A2L
FE9D: 29 0F              AND #$0F
FE9F: F0 06              BEQ IOPRT1
FEA1: 09 C0              ORA #IOADR/256
FEA3: A0 00              LDY #$00
FEA5: F0 02              BEQ IOPRT2
FEA7: A9 FD     IOPRT1   LDA #COUT1/256
FEA9:           IOPRT2   EQU *
FEA9: 94 00              STY LOC0,X ; $94,$00
FEAB: 95 01              STA LOC1,X ; $95,$01
FEAD: 60                 RTS
FEAE: EA                 NOP
FEAF: EA                 NOP
FEB0: 4C 00 E0  XBASIC   JMP BASIC
FEB3: 4C 03 E0  BASCONT  JMP BASIC2
FEB6: 20 75 FE  GO       JSR A1PC
FEB9: 20 3F FF           JSR RESTORE
FEBC: 6C 3A 00           JMP (PCL)
FEBF: 4C D7 FA  REGZ     JMP REGDSP
FEC2: 60        TRACE    RTS
FEC3:           * TRACE  IS GONE
FEC3: EA                 NOP
FEC4: 60        STEPZ    RTS         ; STEP IS GONE
FEC5: EA                 NOP
FEC6: EA                 NOP
FEC7: EA                 NOP
FEC8: EA                 NOP
FEC9: EA                 NOP
FECA: 4C F8 03  USR      JMP USRADR
FECD:                    PAGE
FECD: A9 40     WRITE    LDA #$40
FECF: 20 C9 FC           JSR HEADR
FED2: A0 27              LDY #$27
FED4: A2 00     WR1      LDX #$00
FED6: 41 3C              EOR (A1L,X)
FED8: 48                 PHA
FED9: A1 3C              LDA (A1L,X)
FEDB: 20 ED FE           JSR WRBYTE
FEDE: 20 BA FC           JSR NXTA1
FEE1: A0 1D              LDY #$1D
FEE3: 68                 PLA
FEE4: 90 EE              BCC WR1
FEE6: A0 22              LDY #$22
FEE8: 20 ED FE           JSR WRBYTE
FEEB: F0 4D              BEQ BELL
FEED: A2 10     WRBYTE   LDX #$10
FEEF: 0A        WRBYT2   ASL A
FEF0: 20 D6 FC           JSR WRBIT
```

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

```
FFEC: 17          DFB $17
FFED: 17          DFB $17
FFEE: 2B          DFB $2B
FFEF: 1F          DFB $1F
FFF0: B3          DFB $B3
FFF1: 7F          DFB $7F
FFF2: 5D          DFB $5D
FFF3: CC          DFB $CC
FFF4: B5          DFB $B5
FFF5: FC          DFB $FC
FFF6: 17          DFB $17
FFF7: 17          DFB $17
FFF8: F5          DFB $F5
FFF9: 03          DFB $03
FFFA: FB 03       DW  NMI
FFFC: 62 FA       DW  RESET
FFFE: 40 FA       DW  IRQ

ENDASM
```

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

154

MONITOR ROM LISTING

```
***************************
*                         *
*        APPLE II         *
*     SYSTEM MONITOR      *
*                         *
*    COPYRIGHT 1977 BY    *
*  APPLE COMPUTER, INC.   *
*                         *
*   ALL RIGHTS RESERVED   *
*                         *
*       S. WOZNIAK        *
*        A. BAUM          *
*                         *
***************************
              TITLE        "APPLE II SYSTEM MONITOR"
LOC0     EPZ  $00
LOC1     EPZ  $01
WNDLFT   EPZ  $20
WNDWDTH  EPZ  $21
WNDTOP   EPZ  $22
WNDBTM   EPZ  $23
CH       EPZ  $24
CV       EPZ  $25
GBASL    EPZ  $26
GBASH    EPZ  $27
BASL     EPZ  $28
BASH     EPZ  $29
BAS2L    EPZ  $2A
BAS2H    EPZ  $2B
H2       EPZ  $2C
LMNEM    EPZ  $2C
RTNL     EPZ  $2C
V2       EPZ  $2D
RMNEM    EPZ  $2D
RTNH     EPZ  $2D
MASK     EPZ  $2E
CHKSUM   EPZ  $2E
FORMAT   EPZ  $2E
LASTIN   EPZ  $2F
LENGTH   EPZ  $2F
SIGN     EPZ  $2F
COLOR    EPZ  $30
MODE     EPZ  $31
INVFLG   EPZ  $32
PROMPT   EPZ  $33
YSAV     EPZ  $34
YSAV1    EPZ  $35
CSWL     EPZ  $36
CSWH     EPZ  $37
KSWL     EPZ  $38
KSWH     EPZ  $39
PCL      EPZ  $3A
PCH      EPZ  $3B
XQT      EPZ  $3C
A1L      EPZ  $3C
A1H      EPZ  $3D
A2L      EPZ  $3E
A2H      EPZ  $3F
A3L      EPZ  $40
A3H      EPZ  $41
A4L      EPZ  $42
A4H      EPZ  $43
A5L      EPZ  $44
A5H      EPZ  $45
ACC      EPZ  $45
XREG     EPZ  $46
YREG     EPZ  $47
STATUS   EPZ  $48
```

155

```
FEF3: D0 FA              BNE WRBYT2
FEF5: 60                 RTS
FEF6: 20 00 FE   CRMON   JSR BL1
FEF9: 68                 PLA
FEFA: 68                 PLA
FEFB: D0 6C              BNE MONZ
FEFD: 20 FA FC   READ    JSR RD2BIT
FF00: A9 16              LDA #$16
FF02: 20 C9 FC           JSR HEADR
FF05: 85 2E              STA CHKSUM
FF07: 20 FA FC           JSR RD2BIT
FF0A: A0 24      RD2     LDY #$24
FF0C: 20 FD FC           JSR RDBIT
FF0F: B0 F9              BCS RD2
FF11: 20 FD FC           JSR RDBIT
FF14: A0 3B              LDY #$3B
FF16: 20 EC FC   RD3     JSR RDBYTE
FF19: 81 3C              STA (A1L,X)
FF1B: 45 2E              EOR CHKSUM
FF1D: 85 2E              STA CHKSUM
FF1F: 20 BA FC           JSR NXTA1
FF22: A0 35              LDY #$35
FF24: 90 F0              BCC RD3
FF26: 20 EC FC           JSR RDBYTE
FF29: C5 2E              CMP CHKSUM
FF2B: F0 0D              BEQ BELL
FF2D: A9 C5      PRERR   LDA #$C5
FF2F: 20 ED FD           JSR COUT
FF32: A9 D2              LDA #$D2
FF34: 20 ED FD           JSR COUT
FF37: 20 ED FD           JSR COUT
FF3A: A9 87      BELL    LDA #$87
FF3C: 4C ED FD           JMP COUT
FF3F:                    PAGE
FF3F: A5 48      RESTORE LDA STATUS
FF41: 48                 PHA
FF42: A5 45              LDA A5H
FF44: A6 46      RESTR1  LDX XREG
FF46: A4 47              LDY YREG
FF48: 28                 PLP
FF49: 60                 RTS
FF4A: 85 45      SAVE    STA A5H
FF4C: 86 46      SAV1    STX XREG
FF4E: 84 47              STY YREG
FF50: 08                 PHP
FF51: 68                 PLA
FF52: 85 48              STA STATUS
FF54: BA                 TSX
FF55: 86 49              STX SPNT
FF57: D8                 CLD
FF58: 60                 RTS
FF59: 20 84 FE   OLDRST  JSR SETNORM
FF5C: 20 2F FB           JSR INIT
FF5F: 20 93 FE           JSR SETVID
FF62: 20 89 FE           JSR SETKBD
FF65:                    PAGE
FF65: D8         MON     CLD
FF66: 20 3A FF           JSR BELL
FF69: A9 AA      MONZ    LDA #$AA
FF6B: 85 33              STA PROMPT
FF6D: 20 67 FD           JSR GETLNZ
FF70: 20 C7 FF           JSR ZMODE
FF73: 20 A7 FF   NXTITM  JSR GETNUM
FF76: 84 34              STY YSAV
FF78: A0 17              LDY #$17
FF7A: 88         CHRSRCH DEY
FF7B: 30 E8              BMI MON
FF7D: D9 CC FF           CMP CHRTBL,Y
FF80: D0 F8              BNE CHRSRCH
FF82: 20 BE FF           JSR TOSUB
FF85: A4 34              LDY YSAV
FF87: 4C 73 FF           JMP NXTITM
FF8A: A2 03      DIG     LDX #$03
FF8C: 0A                 ASL A
FF8D: 0A                 ASL A
FF8E: 0A                 ASL A
FF8F: 0A                 ASL A
FF90: 0A         NXTBIT  ASL A
FF91: 26 3E              ROL A2L
FF93: 26 3F              ROL A2H
FF95: CA                 DEX
FF96: 10 F8              BPL NXTBIT
FF98: A5 31      NXTBAS  LDA MODE
FF9A: D0 06              BNE NXTBS2
FF9C:                    *
FF9C: B5 3F              LDA A2H,X
FF9E:                    *
FF9E: 95 3D              STA A1H,X
FFA0:                    *
FFA0: 95 41              STA A3H,X
FFA2: E8         NXTBS2  INX
FFA3: F0 F3              BEQ NXTBAS
FFA5: D0 06              BNE NXTCHR
FFA7: A2 00      GETNUM  LDX #$00
FFA9: 86 3E              STX A2L
FFAB: 86 3F              STX A2H
FFAD: B9 00 02   NXTCHR  LDA IN,Y
FFB0: C8                 INY
FFB1: 49 B0              EOR #$B0
FFB3: C9 0A              CMP #$0A
FFB5: 90 D3              BCC DIG
FFB7: 69 88              ADC #$88
FFB9: C9 FA              CMP #$FA
FFBB: B0 CD              BCS DIG
FFBD: 60                 RTS
FFBE: A9 FE      TOSUB   LDA #GO/256
FFC0: 48                 PHA
FFC1: B9 E3 FF           LDA SUBTBL,Y
FFC4: 48                 PHA
FFC5: A5 31              LDA MODE
FFC7: A0 00      ZMODE   LDY #$00
FFC9: 84 31              STY MODE
FFCB: 60                 RTS
FFCC:                    PAGE
FFCC: BC         CHRTBL  DFB $BC
FFCD: B2                 DFB $B2
FFCE: BE                 DFB $BE
FFCF: B2                 DFB $B2      ; T CMD NOW LIKE USR
FFD0: EF                 DFB $EF
FFD1: C4                 DFB $C4
FFD2: B2                 DFB $B2      ; S CMD NOW LIKE USR
FFD3: A9                 DFB $A9
FFD4: BB                 DFB $BB
FFD5: A6                 DFB $A6
FFD6: A4                 DFB $A4
FFD7: 06                 DFB $06
FFD8: 95                 DFB $95
FFD9: 07                 DFB $07
FFDA: 02                 DFB $02
FFDB: 05                 DFB $05
FFDC: F0                 DFB $F0
FFDD: 00                 DFB $00
FFDE: EB                 DFB $EB
FFDF: 93                 DFB $93
FFE0: A7                 DFB $A7
FFE1: C6                 DFB $C6
FFE2: 99                 DFB $99
FFE3: B2         SUBTBL  DFB $B2
FFE4: C9                 DFB $C9
FFE5: BE                 DFB $BE
FFE6: C1                 DFB $C1
FFE7: 35                 DFB $35
FFE8: 8C                 DFB $8C
FFE9: C4                 DFB $C4
FFEA: 96                 DFB $96
FFEB: AF                 DFB $AF
```

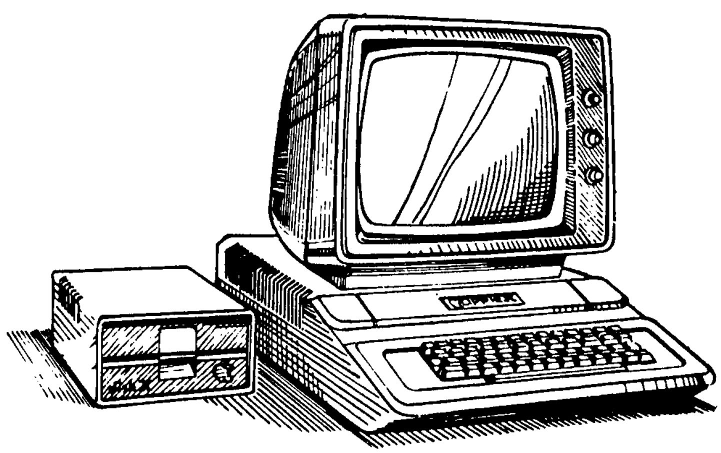
PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS
LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

APPENDIX A
ROM LISTING -- MONITOR (1977)



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

```
                 SPNT     EPZ  $49
                 RNDL     EPZ  $4E
                 RNDH     EPZ  $4F
                 ACL      EPZ  $50
                 ACH      EPZ  $51
                 XTNDL    EPZ  $52
                 XTNDH    EPZ  $53
                 AUXL     EPZ  $54
                 AUXH     EPZ  $55
                 PICK     EPZ  $95
                 IN       EQU  $0200
                 USRADR   EQU  $03F8
                 NMI      EQU  $03FB
                 IRQLOC   EQU  $03FE
                 IOADR    EQU  $C000
                 KBD      EQU  $C000
                 KBDSTRB  EQU  $C010
                 TAPEOUT  EQU  $C020
                 SPKR     EQU  $C030
                 TXTCLR   EQU  $C050
                 TXTSET   EQU  $C051
                 MIXCLR   EQU  $C052
                 MIXSET   EQU  $C053
                 LOWSCR   EQU  $C054
                 HISCR    EQU  $C055
                 LORES    EQU  $C056
                 HIRES    EQU  $C057
                 TAPEIN   EQU  $C060
                 PADDL0   EQU  $C064
                 PTRIG    EQU  $C070
                 BASIC    EQU  $E000
                 BASIC2   EQU  $E003
                          ORG  $F800      ROM START ADDRESS
F800: 4A         PLOT     LSR  A          Y-COORD/2
F801: 08                  PHP             SAVE LSB IN CARRY
F802: 20 47 F8            JSR  GBASCALC   CALC BASE ADR IN GBASL,H
F805: 28                  PLP             RESTORE LSB FROM CARRY
F806: A9 0F               LDA  #$0F       MASK $0F IF EVEN
F808: 90 02               BCC  RTMASK
F80A: 69 E0               ADC  #$E0       MASK $F0 IF ODD
F80C: 85 2E      RTMASK   STA  MASK
F80E: B1 26      PLOT1    LDA  (GBASL),Y  DATA
F810: 45 30               EOR  COLOR       XOR  COLOR
F812: 25 2E               AND  MASK         AND MASK
F814: 51 26               EOR  (GBASL),Y     XOR DATA
F816: 91 26               STA  (GBASL),Y      TO DATA
F818: 60                  RTS
F819: 20 00 F8   HLINE    JSR  PLOT       PLOT SQUARE
F81C: C4 2C      HLINE1   CPY  H2         DONE?
F81E: B0 11               BCS  RTS1        YES, RETURN
F820: C8                  INY              NO, INCR INDEX (X-COORD)
F821: 20 0E F8            JSR  PLOT1      PLOT NEXT SQUARE
F824: 90 F6               BCC  HLINE1     ALWAYS TAKEN
F826: 69 01      VLINEZ   ADC  #$01       NEXT Y-COORD
F828: 48         VLINE    PHA              SAVE ON STACK
F829: 20 00 F8            JSR  PLOT        PLOT SQUARE
F82C: 68                  PLA
F82D: C5 2D               CMP  V2         DONE?
F82F: 90 F5               BCC  VLINEZ      NO,LOOP.
F831: 60         RTS1     RTS
F832: A0 2F      CLRSCR   LDY  #$2F       MAX Y, FULL SCRN CLR
F834: D0 02               BNE  CLRSC2     ALWAYS TAKEN
F836: A0 27      CLRTOP   LDY  #$27       MAX Y, TOP SCRN CLR
F838: 84 2D      CLRSC2   STY  V2         STORE AS BOTTOM COORD
                 *                        FOR VLINE CALLS
F83A: A0 27               LDY  #$27       RIGHTMOST X-COORD (COLUMN)
F83C: A9 00      CLRSC3   LDA  #$0        TOP COORD FOR VLINE CALLS
F83E: 85 30               STA  COLOR      CLEAR COLOR (BLACK)
F840: 20 28 F8            JSR  VLINE      DRAW VLINE
F843: 88                  DEY             NEXT LEFTMOST X-COORD
F844: 10 F6               BPL  CLRSC3     LOOP UNTIL DONE.
F846: 60                  RTS
F847: 48         GBASCALC PHA             FOR INPUT 000DEFGH
F848: 4A                  LSR  A
```

156

```
F849: 29 03               AND  #$03
F84B: 09 04               ORA  #$04       GENERATE GBASH=000001FG
F84D: 85 27               STA  GBASH
F84F: 68                  PLA             AND GBASL=HDEDE000
F850: 29 18               AND  #$18
F852: 90 02               BCC  GBCALC
F854: 69 7F               ADC  #$7F
F856: 85 26      GBCALC   STA  GBASL
F858: 0A                  ASL  A
F859: 0A                  ASL  A
F85A: 05 26               ORA  GBASL
F85C: 85 26               STA  GBASL
F85E: 60                  RTS
F85F: A5 30      NXTCOL   LDA  COLOR      INCREMENT COLOR BY 3
F861: 18                  CLC
F862: 69 03               ADC  #$03
F864: 29 0F      SETCOL   AND  #$0F       SETS COLOR=17*A MOD 16
F866: 85 30               STA  COLOR
F868: 0A                  ASL  A          BOTH HALF BYTES OF COLOR EQ
F869: 0A                  ASL  A
F86A: 0A                  ASL  A
F86B: 0A                  ASL  A
F86C: 05 30               ORA  COLOR
F86E: 85 30               STA  COLOR
F870: 60                  RTS
F871: 4A         SCRN     LSR  A          READ SCREEN Y-COORD/2
F872: 08                  PHP             SAVE LSB (CARRY)
F873: 20 47 F8            JSR  GBASCALC   CALC BASE ADDRESS
F876: B1 26               LDA  (GBASL),Y  GET BYTE
F878: 28                  PLP             RESTORE LSB FROM CARRY
F879: 90 04      SCRN2    BCC  RTMSKZ     IF EVEN, USE LO H
F87B: 4A                  LSR  A
F87C: 4A                  LSR  A
F87D: 4A                  LSR  A          SHIFT HIGH HALF BYTE DOWN
F87E: 4A                  LSR  A
F87F: 29 0F      RTMSKZ   AND  #$0F       MASK 4-BITS
F881: 60                  RTS
F882: A6 3A      INSDS1   LDX  PCL        PRINT PCL,H
F884: A4 3B               LDY  PCH
F886: 20 96 FD            JSR  PRYX2
F889: 20 48 F9            JSR  PRBLNK     FOLLOWED BY A BLANK
F88C: A1 3A               LDA  (PCL,X)    GET OP CODE
F88E: A8         INSDS2   TAY
F88F: 4A                  LSR  A          EVEN/ODD TEST
F890: 90 09               BCC  IEVEN
F892: 6A                  ROR  A          BIT 1 TEST
F893: B0 10               BCS  ERR        XXXXXX11 INVALID OP
F895: C9 A2               CMP  #$A2
F897: F0 0C               BEQ  ERR        OPCODE $99 INVALID
F899: 29 87               AND  #$87       MASK BITS
F89B: 4A         IEVEN    LSR  A          LSB INTO CARRY FOR L/R TEST
F89C: AA                  TAX
F89D: BD 62 F9            LDA  FMT1,X     GET FORMAT INDEX BYTE
F8A0: 20 79 F8            JSR  SCRN2      R/L H-BYTE ON CARRY
F8A3: D0 04               BNE  GETFMT
F8A5: A0 80      ERR      LDY  #$80       SUBSTITUTE $80 FOR INVALID O
F8A7: A9 00               LDA  #$0        SET PRINT FORMAT INDEX TO 0
F8A9: AA         GETFMT   TAX
F8AA: BD A6 F9            LDA  FMT2,X     INDEX INTO PRINT FORMAT TABL
F8AD: 85 2E               STA  FORMAT     SAVE FOR ADR FIELD FORMATTIN
F8AF: 29 03               AND  #$03       MASK FOR 2-BIT LENGTH
                 *                  (P=1 BYTE, 1=2 BYTE, 2=3 BYTE)
F8B1: 85 2F               STA  LENGTH
F8B3: 98                  TYA             OPCODE
F8B4: 29 8F               AND  #$8F       MASK FOR 1XXX1010 TEST
F8B6: AA                  TAX              SAVE IT
F8B7: 98                  TYA             OPCODE TO A AGAIN
F8B8: A0 03               LDY  #$03
F8BA: E0 8A               CPX  #$8A
F8BC: F0 0B               BEQ  MNNDX3
F8BE: 4A         MNNDX1   LSR  A
F8BF: 90 08               BCC  MNNDX3     FORM INDEX INTO MNEMONIC TAB
F8C1: 4A                  LSR  A
```

157

```
F8C2:  4A          MNNDX2   LSR  A              1) 1XXX1010=>00101XXX
F8C3:  09 20                ORA  #$20           2) XXXYYY01=>00111XXX
F8C5:  88                   DEY                   3) XXXYYY10=>00110XXX
F8C6:  D0 FA                BNE  MNNDX2         4) XXXYY100=>00100XXX
F8C8:  C8                   INY                   5) XXXXX000=>000XXXXX
F8C9:  88          MNNDX3   DEY
F8CA:  D0 F2                BNE  MNNDX1
F8CC:  60                   RTS
F8CD:  FF FF FF             DFB  $FF,$FF,$FF
F8D0:  20 82 F8    INSTDSP  JSR  INSDS1         GEN FMT, LEN BYTES
F8D3:  48                   PHA                 SAVE MNEMONIC TABLE INDEX
F8D4:  B1 3A       PRNTOP   LDA  (PCL),Y
F8D6:  20 DA FD             JSR  PRBYTE
F8D9:  A2 01                LDX  #$01           PRINT 2 BLANKS
F8DB:  20 4A F9    PRNTBL   JSR  PRBL2
F8DE:  C4 2F                CPY  LENGTH         PRINT INST (1-3 BYTES)
F8E0:  C8                   INY                 IN A 12 CHR FIELD
F8E1:  90 F1                BCC  PRNTOP
F8E3:  A2 03                LDX  #$03           CHAR COUNT FOR MNEMONIC PRINT
F8E5:  C0 04                CPY  #$04
F8E7:  90 F2                BCC  PRNTBL
F8E9:  68                   PLA                 RECOVER MNEMONIC INDEX
F8EA:  A8                   TAY
F8EB:  B9 C0 F9             LDA  MNEML,Y
F8EE:  85 2C                STA  LMNEM          FETCH 3-CHAR MNEMONIC
F8F0:  B9 00 FA             LDA  MNEMR,Y          (PACKED IN 2-BYTES)
F8F3:  85 2D                STA  RMNEM
F8F5:  A9 00       PRMN1    LDA  #$00
F8F7:  A0 05                LDY  #$05
F8F9:  06 2D       PRMN2    ASL  RMNEM          SHIFT 5 BITS OF
F8FB:  26 2C                ROL  LMNEM            CHARACTER INTO A
F8FD:  2A                   ROL  A                  (CLEARS CARRY)
F8FE:  88                   DEY
F8FF:  D0 F8                BNE  PRMN2
F901:  69 BF                ADC  #$BF           ADD "?" OFFSET
F903:  20 ED FD             JSR  COUT           OUTPUT A CHAR OF MNEM
F906:  CA                   DEX
F907:  D0 EC                BNE  PRMN1
F909:  20 48 F9             JSR  PRBLNK         OUTPUT 3 BLANKS
F90C:  A4 2F                LDY  LENGTH
F90E:  A2 06                LDX  #$06           CNT FOR 6 FORMAT BITS
F910:  E0 03       PRADR1   CPX  #$03
F912:  F0 1C                BEQ  PRADR5         IF X=3 THEN ADDR.
F914:  06 2E       PRADR2   ASL  FORMAT
F916:  90 0E                BCC  PRADR3
F918:  BD B3 F9             LDA  CHAR1-1,X
F91B:  20 ED FD             JSR  COUT
F91E:  BD B9 F9             LDA  CHAR2-1,X
F921:  F0 03                BEQ  PRADR3
F923:  20 ED FD             JSR  COUT
F926:  CA          PRADR3   DEX
F927:  D0 E7                BNE  PRADR1
F929:  60                   RTS
F92A:  88          PRADR4   DEY
F92B:  30 E7                BMI  PRADR2
F92D:  20 DA FD             JSR  PRBYTE
F930:  A5 2E       PRADR5   LDA  FORMAT
F932:  C9 E8                CMP  #$E8           HANDLE REL ADR MODE
F934:  B1 3A                LDA  (PCL),Y        SPECIAL (PRINT TARGET,
F936:  90 F2                BCC  PRADR4           NOT OFFSET)
F938:  20 56 F9    RELADR   JSR  PCADJ3
F93B:  AA                   TAX                 PCL,PCH+OFFSET+1 TO A,Y
F93C:  E8                   INX
F93D:  D0 01                BNE  PRNTYX         +1 TO Y,X
F93F:  C8                   INY
F940:  98          PRNTYX   TYA
F941:  20 DA FD    PRNTAX   JSR  PRBYTE         OUTPUT TARGET ADR
F944:  8A          PRNTX    TXA                   OF BRANCH AND RETURN
F945:  4C DA FD             JMP  PRBYTE
F948:  A2 03       PRBLNK   LDX  #$03           BLANK COUNT
F94A:  A9 A0       PRBL2    LDA  #$A0           LOAD A SPACE
F94C:  20 ED FD    PRBL3    JSR  COUT           OUTPUT A BLANK
F94F:  CA                   DEX
```

158

```
F950:  D0 F8                BNE  PRBL2          LOOP UNTIL COUNT=0
F952:  60                   RTS
F953:  38          PCADJ    SEC                 0=1-BYTE,1=2-BYTE,
F954:  A5 2F       PCADJ2   LDA  LENGTH           2=3-BYTE
F956:  A4 3B       PCADJ3   LDY  PCH
F958:  AA                   TAX                 TEST DISPLACEMENT SIGN
F959:  10 01                BPL  PCADJ4           (FOR REL BRANCH)
F95B:  88                   DEY                 EXTEND NEG BY DECR PCH
F95C:  65 3A       PCADJ4   ADC  PCL
F95E:  90 01                BCC  RTS2           PCL+LENGTH(OR DISPL)+1 TO A
F960:  C8                   INY                   CARRY INTO Y (PCH)
F961:  60          RTS2     RTS
                   *        FMT1 BYTES:           XXXXXXY0 INSTRS
                   *        IF Y=0                THEN LEFT HALF BYTE
                   *        IF Y=1                THEN RIGHT HALF BYTE
                   *                                   (X=INDEX)
F962:  04 20 54
F965:  30 0D       FMT1     DFB  $04,$20,$54,$
F967:  80 04 90
F96A:  03 22                DFB  $80,$04,$90,$
F96C:  54 33 0D
F96F:  80 04                DFB  $54,$33,$0D,$
F971:  90 04 20
F974:  54 33                DFB  $90,$04,$20,$
F976:  0D 80 04
F979:  90 04                DFB  $0D,$80,$04,$
F97B:  20 54 3B
F97E:  0C 80                DFB  $20,$54,$3B,$
F980:  04 90 00
F983:  22 44                DFB  $04,$90,$00,$
F985:  33 0D C8
F988:  44 00                DFB  $33,$0D,$C8,$
F98A:  11 22 44
F98D:  33 0D                DFB  $11,$22,$44,$
F98F:  C8 44 A9
F992:  01 22                DFB  $C8,$44,$A9,$
F994:  44 33 0D
F997:  80 04                DFB  $44,$33,$0D,$
F999:  90 01 22
F99C:  44 33                DFB  $90,$01,$22,$
F99E:  0D 80 04
F9A1:  90                   DFB  $0D,$80,$04,$
F9A2:  26 31 87
F9A5:  9A                   DFB  $26,$31,$87,$ZZXXXY01 INSTR'S
F9A6:  00          FMT2     DFB  $00            ERR
F9A7:  21                   DFB  $21            IMM
F9A8:  81                   DFB  $81            Z-PAGE
F9A9:  82                   DFB  $82            ABS
F9AA:  00                   DFB  $00            IMPLIED
F9AB:  00                   DFB  $00            ACCUMULATOR
F9AC:  59                   DFB  $59            (ZPAG,X)
F9AD:  4D                   DFB  $4D            (ZPAG),Y
F9AE:  91                   DFB  $91            ZPAG,X
F9AF:  92                   DFB  $92            ABS,X
F9B0:  86                   DFB  $86            ABS,Y
F9B1:  4A                   DFB  $4A            (ABS)
F9B2:  85                   DFB  $85            ZPAG,Y
F9B3:  9D                   DFB  $9D            RELATIVE
F9B4:  AC A9 AC
F9B7:  A3 A8 A4    CHAR1    ASC  ",),#($"
F9BA:  D9 00 D8
F9BD:  A4 A4 00    CHAR2    DFB  $D9,$00,$D8,$
                   *CHAR2:  "Y",0,"X$$",0
                   *        MNEML         IS OF FORM:
                   *        (A)  XXXXX000
                   *        (B)  XXXYY100
                   *        (C)  1XXX1010
                   *        (D)  XXXYYY10
                   *        (E)  XXXYYY01
                   *             (X=INDEX)
F9C0:  1C 8A 1C
F9C3:  23 5D 8B    MNEML    DFB  $1C,$8A,$1C,$
F9C6:  1B A1 9D
```

159

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

```
FB02:  20 56 F9 474            JSR  PCADJ3
FB05:  85 3A    475            STA  PCL
FB07:  98       476            TYA
FB08:  38       477            SEC
FB09:  B0 A2    478            BCS  PCINC2
FB0B:  20 4A FF 479 NBRNCH     JSR  SAVE        NORMAL RETURN AFTER
FB0E:  38       480            SEC                XEQ USER OF
FB0F:  B0 9E    481            BCS  PCINC3      GO UPDATE PC
FB11:  EA       482 INITBL     NOP
FB12:  EA       483            NOP              DUMMY FILL FOR
FB13:  4C 0B FB 484            JMP  NBRNCH        XEQ AREA
FB16:  4C FD FA 485            JMP  BRANCH
FB19:  C1       486 RTBL       DFB  $C1
FB1A:  D8       487            DFB  $D8
FB1B:  D9       488            DFB  $D9
FB1C:  D0       489            DFB  $D0
FB1D:  D3       490            DFB  $D3
FB1E:  AD 70 C0 491 PREAD      LDA  PTRIG       TRIGGER PADDLES
FB21:  A0 00    492            LDY  #$00        INIT COUNT
FB23:  EA       493            NOP              COMPENSATE FOR 1ST COUNT
FB24:  EA       494            NOP
FB25:  BD 64 C0 495 PREAD2     LDA  PADDL0,X    COUNT Y-REG EVERY
FB28:  10 04    496            BPL  RTS2D         12 USEC
FB2A:  C8       497            INY
FB2B:  D0 F8    498            BNE  PREAD2        EXIT AT 255 MAX
FB2D:  88       499            DEY
FB2E:  60       500 RTS2D      RTS
FB2F:  A9 00    501 INIT       LDA  #$00        CLR STATUS FOR DEBUG
FB31:  85 48    502            STA  STATUS        SOFTWARE
FB33:  AD 56 C0 503            LDA  LORES
FB36:  AD 54 C0 504            LDA  LOWSCR      INIT VIDEO MODE
FB39:  AD 51 C0 505 SETTXT     LDA  TXTSET      SET FOR TEXT MODE
FB3C:  A9 00    506            LDA  #$00          FULL SCREEN WINDOW
FB3E:  F0 0B    507            BEQ  SETWND
FB40:  AD 50 C0 508 SETGR      LDA  TXTCLR      SET FOR GRAPHICS MODE
FB43:  AD 53 C0 509            LDA  MIXSET        LOWER 4 LINES AS
FB46:  20 36 F8 510            JSR  CLRTOP        TEXT WINDOW
FB49:  A9 14    511            LDA  #$14
FB4B:  85 22    512 SETWND     STA  WNDTOP      SET FOR 40 COL WINDOW
FB4D:  A9 00    513            LDA  #$00          TOP IN A-REG,
FB4F:  85 20    514            STA  WNDLFT        BTTM AT LINE 24
FB51:  A9 28    515            LDA  #$28
FB53:  85 21    516            STA  WNDWDTH
FB55:  A9 18    517            LDA  #$18
FB57:  85 23    518            STA  WNDBTM        VTAB TO ROW 23
FB59:  A9 17    519            LDA  #$17
FB5B:  85 25    520 TABV       STA  CV          VTABS TO ROW IN A-REG
FB5D:  4C 22 FC 521            JMP  VTAB
FB60:  20 A4 FB 522 MULPM      JSR  MD1         ABS VAL OF AC AUX
FB63:  A0 10    523 MUL        LDY  #$10        INDEX FOR 16 BITS
FB65:  A5 50    524 MUL2       LDA  ACL         ACX * AUX + XTND
FB67:  4A       525            LSR  A             TO AC, XTND
FB68:  90 0C    526            BCC  MUL4        IF NO CARRY,
FB6A:  18       527            CLC                NO PARTIAL PROD.
FB6B:  A2 FE    528            LDX  #$FE
FB6D:  B5 54    529 MUL3       LDA  XTNDL+2,X   ADD MPLCND (AUX)
FB6F:  75 56    530            ADC  AUXL+2,X     TO PARTIAL PROD
FB71:  95 54    531            STA  XTNDL+2,X       (XTND).
FB73:  E8       532            INX
FB74:  D0 F7    533            BNE  MUL3
FB76:  A2 03    534 MUL4       LDX  #$03
FB78:  76       535 MUL5       DFB  #$76
FB79:  50       536            DFB  #$50
FB7A:  CA       537            DEX
FB7B:  10 FB    538            BPL  MUL5
FB7D:  88       539            DEY
FB7E:  D0 E5    540            BNE  MUL2
FB80:  60       541            RTS
FB81:  20 A4 FB 542 DIVPM      JSR  MD1         ABS VAL OF AC, AUX.
FB84:  A0 10    543 DIV        LDY  #$10        INDEX FOR 16 BITS
FB86:  06 50    544 DIV2       ASL  ACL
FB88:  26 51    545            ROL  ACH
FB8A:  26 52    546            ROL  XTNDL       XTND/AUX
```

162

```
FB8C:  26 53    547            ROL  XTNDH         TO AC.
FB8E:  38       548            SEC
FB8F:  A5 52    549            LDA  XTNDL
FB91:  E5 54    550            SBC  AUXL         MOD TO XTND.
FB93:  AA       551            TAX
FB94:  A5 53    552            LDA  XTNDH
FB96:  E5 55    553            SBC  AUXH
FB98:  90 06    554            BCC  DIV3
FB9A:  86 52    555            STX  XTNDL
FB9C:  85 53    556            STA  XTNDH
FB9E:  E6 50    557            INC  ACL
FBA0:  88       558 DIV3       DEY
FBA1:  D0 E3    559            BNE  DIV2
FBA3:  60       560            RTS
FBA4:  A0 00    561 MD1        LDY  #$00        ABS VAL OF AC, AUX
FBA6:  84 2F    562            STY  SIGN          WITH RESULT SIGN
FBA8:  A2 54    563            LDX  #AUXL         IN LSB OF SIGN.
FBAA:  20 AF FB 564            JSR  MD2
FBAD:  A2 50    565            LDX  #ACL
FBAF:  B5 01    566 MD2        LDA  LOC1,X      X SPECIFIES AC OR AUX
FBB1:  10 0D    567            BPL  MDRTS
FBB3:  38       568            SEC
FBB4:  98       569 MD3        TYA
FBB5:  F5 00    570            SBC  LOC0,X      COMPL SPECIFIED REG
FBB7:  95 00    571            STA  LOC0,X        IF NEG.
FBB9:  98       572            TYA
FBBA:  F5 01    573            SBC  LOC1,X
FBBC:  95 01    574            STA  LOC1,X
FBBE:  E6 2F    575            INC  SIGN
FBC0:  60       576 MDRTS      RTS
FBC1:  48       577 BASCALC    PHA              CALC BASE ADR IN BASL,H
FBC2:  4A       578            LSR  A             FOR GIVEN LINE NO.
FBC3:  29 03    579            AND  #$03          0<=LINE NO.<=$17
FBC5:  09 04    580            ORA  #$04        ARG=000ABCDE, GENERATE
FBC7:  85 29    581            STA  BASH          BASH=000001CD
FBC9:  68       582            PLA                AND
FBCA:  29 18    583            AND  #$18          BASL=EABAB000
FBCC:  90 02    584            BCC  BSCLC2
FBCE:  69 7F    585            ADC  #$7F
FBD0:  85 28    586 BSCLC2     STA  BASL
FBD2:  0A       587            ASL  A
FBD3:  0A       588            ASL  A
FBD4:  05 28    589            ORA  BASL
FBD6:  85 28    590            STA  BASL
FBD8:  60       591            RTS
FBD9:  C9 87    592 BELL1      CMP  #$87        BELL CHAR? (CNTRL-G)
FBDB:  D0 12    593            BNE  RTS2B         NO,RETURN
FBDD:  A9 40    594            LDA  #$40        DELAY .01 SECONDS
FBDF:  20 A8 FC 595            JSR  WAIT
FBE2:  A0 C0    596            LDY  #$C0
FBE4:  A9 0C    597 BELL2      LDA  #$0C        TOGGLE SPEAKER AT
FBE6:  20 A8 FC 598            JSR  WAIT          1 KHZ FOR .1 SEC.
FBE9:  AD 30 C0 599            LDA  SPKR
FBEC:  88       600            DEY
FBED:  D0 F5    601            BNE  BELL2
FBEF:  60       602 RTS2B      RTS
FBF0:  A4 24    603 STOADV     LDY  CH          CURSER H INDEX TO Y-REG
FBF2:  91 28    604            STA  (BASL),Y    STOR CHAR IN LINE
FBF4:  E6 24    605 ADVANCE    INC  CH          INCREMENT CURSER H INDEX
FBF6:  A5 24    606            LDA  CH            (MOVE RIGHT)
FBF8:  C5 21    607            CMP  WNDWDTH     BEYOND WINDOW WIDTH?
FBFA:  B0 66    608            BCS  CR            YES CR TO NEXT LINE
FBFC:  60       609 RTS3       RTS                NO,RETURN
FBFD:  C9 A0    610 VIDOUT     CMP  #$A0        CONTROL CHAR?
FBFF:  B0 EF    611            BCS  STOADV        NO,OUTPUT IT.
FC01:  A8       612            TAY              INVERSE VIDEO?
FC02:  10 EC    613            BPL  STOADV        YES, OUTPUT IT.
FC04:  C9 8D    614            CMP  #$8D        CR?
FC06:  F0 5A    615            BEQ  CR            YES.
FC08:  C9 8A    616            CMP  #$8A        LINE FEED?
FC0A:  F0 5A    617            BEQ  LF            IF SO, DO IT.
FC0C:  C9 88    618            CMP  #$88        BACK SPACE? (CNTRL-H)
FC0E:  D0 C9    619            BNE  BELL1         NO, CHECK FOR BELL.
```

```
F9C9:  8A 1D 23 344          DFB  $1B,$A1,$9D,$
F9CC:  9D 8B 1D
F9CF:  A1 00 29 345          DFB  $9D,$8B,$1D,$
F9D2:  19 AE 69
F9D5:  A8 19 23 346          DFB  $19,$AE,$69,$
F9D8:  24 53 1B
F9DB:  23 24 53 347          DFB  $24,$53,$1B,$
F9DE:  19 A1    348          DFB  $19,$A1       (A) FORMAT ABOVE
F9E0:  00 1A 5B
F9E3:  5B A5 69 349          DFB  $00,$1A,$5B,$
F9E6:  24 24    350          DFB  $24,$24       (B) FORMAT
F9E8:  AE AE A8
F9EB:  AD 29 00 351          DFB  $AE,$AE,$A8,$
F9EE:  7C 00    352          DFB  $7C,$00       (C) FORMAT
F9F0:  15 9C 6D
F9F3:  9C A5 69 353          DFB  $15,$9C,$6D,$
F9F6:  29 53    354          DFB  $29,$53       (D) FORMAT
F9F8:  84 13 34
F9FB:  11 A5 69 355          DFB  $84,$13,$34,$
F9FE:  23 A0    356          DFB  $23,$A0       (E) FORMAT
FA00:  D8 62 5A
FA03:  48 26 62 357 MNEMR    DFB  $D8,$62,$5A,$
FA06:  94 88 54
FA09:  44 C8 54 358          DFB  $94,$88,$54,$
FA0C:  68 44 E8
FA0F:  94 00 B4 359          DFB  $68,$44,$E8,$
FA12:  08 84 74
FA15:  B4 28 6E 360          DFB  $08,$84,$74,$
FA18:  74 F4 CC
FA1B:  4A 72 F2 361          DFB  $74,$F4,$CC,$
FA1E:  A4 8A    362          DFB  $A4,$8A       (A) FORMAT
FA20:  00 AA A2
FA23:  A2 74 74 363          DFB  $00,$AA,$A2,$
FA26:  74 72    364          DFB  $74,$72       (B) FORMAT
FA28:  44 68 B2
FA2B:  32 B2 00 365          DFB  $44,$68,$B2,$
FA2E:  22 00    366          DFB  $22,$00       (C) FORMAT
FA30:  1A 1A 26
FA33:  26 72 72 367          DFB  $1A,$1A,$26,$
FA36:  88 C8    368          DFB  $88,$C8       (D) FORMAT
FA38:  C4 CA 26
FA3B:  48 44 44 369          DFB  $C4,$CA,$26,$
FA3E:  A2 C8    370          DFB  $A2,$C8       (E) FORMAT
FA40:  FF FF FF 371          DFB  $FF,$FF,$FF
FA43:  20 D0 F8 372 STEP     JSR  INSTDSP       DISASSEMBLE ONE INST
FA46:  68       373          PLA                  AT (PCL,H)
FA47:  85 2C    374          STA  RTNL          ADJUST TO USER
FA49:  68       375          PLA                  STACK. SAVE
FA4A:  85 2D    376          STA  RTNH            RTN ADR.
FA4C:  A2 08    377          LDX  #$08
FA4E:  BD 10 FB 378 XQINIT   LDA  INITBL-1,X    INIT XEQ AREA
FA51:  95 3C    379          STA  XQT,X
FA53:  CA       380          DEX
FA54:  D0 F8    381          BNE  XQINIT
FA56:  A1 3A    382          LDA  (PCL,X)       USER OPCODE BYTE
FA58:  F0 42    383          BEQ  XBRK          SPECIAL IF BREAK
FA5A:  A4 2F    384          LDY  LENGTH        LEN FROM DISASSEMBLY
FA5C:  C9 20    385          CMP  #$20
FA5E:  F0 59    386          BEQ  XJSR          HANDLE JSR, RTS, JMP,
FA60:  C9 60    387          CMP  #$60            JMP ( ), RTI SPECIAL
FA62:  F0 45    388          BEQ  XRTS
FA64:  C9 4C    389          CMP  #$4C
FA66:  F0 5C    390          BEQ  XJMP
FA68:  C9 6C    391          CMP  #$6C
FA6A:  F0 59    392          BEQ  XJMPAT
FA6C:  C9 40    393          CMP  #$40
FA6E:  F0 35    394          BEQ  XRTI
FA70:  29 1F    395          AND  #$1F
FA72:  49 14    396          EOR  #$14
FA74:  C9 04    397          CMP  #$04          COPY USER INST TO XEQ AREA
FA76:  F0 02    398          BEQ  XQ2             WITH TRAILING NOPS
FA78:  B1 3A    399 XQ1      LDA  (PCL),Y       CHANGE REL BRANCH
FA7A:  99 3C 00 400 XQ2      STA  XQTNZ,Y         DISP TO 4 FOR
```

160

```
FA7D:  88       401          DEY                  JMP TO BRANCH OR
FA7E:  10 F8    402          BPL  XQ1             NBRANCH FROM XEQ.
FA80:  20 3F FF 403          JSR  RESTORE       RESTORE USER REG CONTENTS.
FA83:  4C 3C 00 404          JMP  XQTNZ         XEQ USER OP FROM RAM
FA86:  85 45    405 IRQ      STA  ACC             (RETURN TO NBRANCH)
FA88:  68       406          PLA
FA89:  48       407          PHA                **IRQ HANDLER
FA8A:  0A       408          ASL  A
FA8B:  0A       409          ASL  A
FA8C:  0A       410          ASL  A
FA8D:  30 03    411          BMI  BREAK         TEST FOR BREAK
FA8F:  6C FE 03 412          JMP  (IRQLOC)      USER ROUTINE VECTOR IN RAM
FA92:  28       413 BREAK    PLP
FA93:  20 4C FF 414          JSR  SAV1          SAVE REG'S ON BREAK
FA96:  68       415          PLA                  INCLUDING PC
FA97:  85 3A    416          STA  PCL
FA99:  68       417          PLA
FA9A:  85 3B    418          STA  PCH
FA9C:  20 82 F8 419 XBRK     JSR  INSDS1        PRINT USER PC.
FA9F:  20 DA FA 420          JSR  RGDSP1          AND REG'S
FAA2:  4C 65 FF 421          JMP  MON           GO TO MONITOR
FAA5:  18       422 XRTI     CLC
FAA6:  68       423          PLA                SIMULATE RTI BY EXPECTING
FAA7:  85 48    424          STA  STATUS          STATUS FROM STACK, THEN RTS
FAA9:  68       425 XRTS     PLA                RTS SIMULATION
FAAA:  85 3A    426          STA  PCL             EXTRACT PC FROM STACK
FAAC:  68       427          PLA                  AND UPDATE PC BY 1 (LEN=0
FAAD:  85 3B    428 PCINC2   STA  PCH
FAAF:  A5 2F    429 PCINC3   LDA  LENGTH        UPDATE PC BY LEN
FAB1:  20 56 F9 430          JSR  PCADJ3
FAB4:  84 3B    431          STY  PCH
FAB6:  18       432          CLC
FAB7:  90 14    433          BCC  NEWPCL
FAB9:  18       434 XJSR     CLC
FABA:  20 54 F9 435          JSR  PCADJ2        UPDATE PC AND PUSH
FABD:  AA       436          TAX                  ONTO STACK FOR
FABE:  98       437          TYA                  JSR SIMULATE
FABF:  48       438          PHA
FAC0:  8A       439          TXA
FAC1:  48       440          PHA
FAC2:  A0 02    441          LDY  #$02
FAC4:  18       442 XJMP     CLC
FAC5:  B1 3A    443 XJMPAT   LDA  (PCL),Y
FAC7:  AA       444          TAX                LOAD PC FOR JMP,
FAC8:  88       445          DEY                  (JMP) SIMULATE.
FAC9:  B1 3A    446          LDA  (PCL),Y
FACB:  86 3B    447          STX  PCH
FACD:  85 3A    448 NEWPCL   STA  PCL
FACF:  B0 F3    449          BCS  XJMP
FAD1:  A5 2D    450 RTNJMP   LDA  RTNH
FAD3:  48       451          PHA
FAD4:  A5 2C    452          LDA  RTNL
FAD6:  48       453          PHA
FAD7:  20 8E FD 454 REGDSP   JSR  CROUT         DISPLAY USER REG
FADA:  A9 45    455 RGDSP1   LDA  #ACC            CONTENTS WITH
FADC:  85 40    456          STA  A3L             LABELS
FADE:  A9 00    457          LDA  #ACC/256
FAE0:  85 41    458          STA  A3H
FAE2:  A2 FB    459          LDX  #$FB
FAE4:  A9 A0    460 RDSP1    LDA  #$A0
FAE6:  20 ED FD 461          JSR  COUT
FAE9:  BD 1E FA 462          LDA  RTBL-$FB,X
FAEC:  20 ED FD 463          JSR  COUT
FAEF:  A9 BD    464          LDA  #$BD
FAF1:  20 ED FD 465          JSR  COUT
FAF4:  B5 4A    466          LDA  ACC+5,X
FAF6:  20 DA FD 467          JSR  PRBYTE
FAF9:  E8       468          INX
FAFA:  30 E8    469          BMI  RDSP1
FAFC:  60       470          RTS
FAFD:  18       471 BRANCH   CLC                BRANCH TAKEN,
FAFE:  A0 01    472          LDY  #$01            ADD LEN+2 TO PC
FB00:  B1 3A    473          LDA  (PCL),Y
```

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

```
FD24:  10 F5     766          BPL  KEYIN        LOOP
FD26:  91 28     767          STA  (BASL),Y     REPLACE FLASHING SCREEN
FD28:  AD 00 C0  768          LDA  KBD          GET KEYCODE
FD2B:  2C 10 C0  769          BIT  KBDSTRB      CLR KEY STROBE
FD2E:  60        770          RTS
FD2F:  20 0C FD  771 ESC      JSR  RDKEY        GET KEYCODE
FD32:  20 2C FC  772          JSR  ESC1           HANDLE ESC FUNC.
FD35:  20 0C FD  773 RDCHAR   JSR  RDKEY        READ KEY
FD38:  C9 9B     774          CMP  #$9B         ESC?
FD3A:  F0 F3     775          BEQ  ESC            YES, DON'T RETURN
FD3C:  60        776          RTS
FD3D:  A5 32     777 NOTCR    LDA  INVFLG
FD3F:  48        778          PHA
FD40:  A9 FF     779          LDA  #$FF
FD42:  85 32     780          STA  INVFLG       ECHO USER LINE
FD44:  BD 00 02  781          LDA  IN,X           NON INVERSE
FD47:  20 ED FD  782          JSR  COUT
FD4A:  68        783          PLA
FD4B:  85 32     784          STA  INVFLG
FD4D:  BD 00 02  785          LDA  IN,X
FD50:  C9 88     786          CMP  #$88         CHECK FOR EDIT KEYS
FD52:  F0 1D     787          BEQ  BCKSPC         BS, CTRL-X.
FD54:  C9 98     788          CMP  #$98
FD56:  F0 0A     789          BEQ  CANCEL
FD58:  E0 F8     790          CPX  #$F8         MARGIN?
FD5A:  90 03     791          BCC  NOTCR1
FD5C:  20 3A FF  792          JSR  BELL           YES, SOUND BELL
FD5F:  E8        793 NOTCR1   INX               ADVANCE INPUT INDEX
FD60:  D0 13     794          BNE  NXTCHAR
FD62:  A9 DC     795 CANCEL   LDA  #$DC         BACKSLASH AFTER CANCELLED LIN
FD64:  20 ED FD  796          JSR  COUT
FD67:  20 8E FD  797 GETLNZ   JSR  CROUT        OUTPUT CR
FD6A:  A5 33     798 GETLN    LDA  PROMPT
FD6C:  20 ED FD  799          JSR  COUT         OUTPUT PROMPT CHAR
FD6F:  A2 01     800          LDX  #$01         INIT INPUT INDEX
FD71:  8A        801 BCKSPC   TXA                 WILL BACKSPACE TO 0
FD72:  F0 F3     802          BEQ  GETLNZ
FD74:  CA        803          DEX
FD75:  20 35 FD  804 NXTCHAR  JSR  RDCHAR
FD78:  C9 95     805          CMP  #PICK        USE SCREEN CHAR
FD7A:  D0 02     806          BNE  CAPTST         FOR CTRL-U
FD7C:  B1 28     807          LDA  (BASL),Y
FD7E:  C9 E0     808 CAPTST   CMP  #$E0
FD80:  90 02     809          BCC  ADDINP       CONVERT TO CAPS
FD82:  29 DF     810          AND  #$DF
FD84:  9D 00 02  811 ADDINP   STA  IN,X         ADD TO INPUT BUF
FD87:  C9 8D     812          CMP  #$8D
FD89:  D0 B2     813          BNE  NOTCR
FD8B:  20 9C FC  814          JSR  CLREOL       CLR TO EOL IF CR
FD8E:  A9 8D     815 CROUT    LDA  #$8D
FD90:  D0 5B     816          BNE  COUT
FD92:  A4 3D     817 PRA1     LDY  A1H          PRINT CR,A1 IN HEX
FD94:  A6 3C     818          LDX  A1L
FD96:  20 8E FD  819 PRYX2    JSR  CROUT
FD99:  20 40 F9  820          JSR  PRNTYX
FD9C:  A0 00     821          LDY  #$00
FD9E:  A9 AD     822          LDA  #$AD         PRINT '-'
FDA0:  4C ED FD  823          JMP  COUT
FDA3:  A5 3C     824 XAM8     LDA  A1L
FDA5:  09 07     825          ORA  #$07         SET TO FINISH AT
FDA7:  85 3E     826          STA  A2L            MOD 8=7
FDA9:  A5 3D     827          LDA  A1H
FDAB:  85 3F     828          STA  A2H
FDAD:  A5 3C     829 MOD8CHK  LDA  A1L
FDAF:  29 07     830          AND  #$07
FDB1:  D0 03     831          BNE  DATAOUT
FDB3:  20 92 FD  832 XAM      JSR  PRA1
FDB6:  A9 A0     833 DATAOUT  LDA  #$A0
FDB8:  20 ED FD  834          JSR  COUT         OUTPUT BLANK
FDBB:  B1 3C     835          LDA  (A1L),Y
FDBD:  20 DA FD  836          JSR  PRBYTE       OUTPUT BYTE IN HEX
FDC0:  20 BA FC  837          JSR  NXTA1
```

```
FDC3:  90 E8     838          BCC  MOD8CHK      CHECK IF TIME TO,
FDC5:  60        839 RTS4C    RTS                 PRINT ADDR
FDC6:  4A        840 XAMPM    LSR  A            DETERMINE IF MON
FDC7:  90 EA     841          BCC  XAM            MODE IS XAM
FDC9:  4A        842          LSR  A              ADD, OR SUB
FDCA:  4A        843          LSR  A
FDCB:  A5 3E     844          LDA  A2L
FDCD:  90 02     845          BCC  ADD
FDCF:  49 FF     846          EOR  #$FF         SUB: FORM 2'S COMPLEMENT
FDD1:  65 3C     847 ADD      ADC  A1L
FDD3:  48        848          PHA
FDD4:  A9 BD     849          LDA  #$BD
FDD6:  20 ED FD  850          JSR  COUT         PRINT '=', THEN RESULT
FDD9:  68        851          PLA
FDDA:  48        852 PRBYTE   PHA               PRINT BYTE AS 2 HEX
FDDB:  4A        853          LSR  A              DIGITS, DESTROYS A-REG
FDDC:  4A        854          LSR  A
FDDD:  4A        855          LSR  A
FDDE:  4A        856          LSR  A
FDDF:  20 E5 FD  857          JSR  PRHEXZ
FDE2:  68        858          PLA
FDE3:  29 0F     859 PRHEX    AND  #$0F         PRINT HEX DIG IN A-REG
FDE5:  09 B0     860 PRHEXZ   ORA  #$B0           LSB'S
FDE7:  C9 BA     861          CMP  #$BA
FDE9:  90 02     862          BCC  COUT
FDEB:  69 06     863          ADC  #$06
FDED:  6C 36 00  864 COUT     JMP  (CSWL)       VECTOR TO USER OUTPUT ROUTIN
FDF0:  C9 A0     865 COUT1    CMP  #$A0         DON'T OUTPUT CTRL'S INVERSE
FDF2:  90 02     866          BCC  COUTZ
FDF4:  25 32     867          AND  INVFLG       MASK WITH INVERSE FLAG
FDF6:  84 35     868 COUTZ    STY  YSAV1        SAV Y-REG
FDF8:  48        869          PHA               SAV A-REG
FDF9:  20 FD FB  870          JSR  VIDOUT       OUTPUT A-REG AS ASCII
FDFC:  68        871          PLA               RESTORE A-REG
FDFD:  A4 35     872          LDY  YSAV1          AND Y-REG
FDFF:  60        873          RTS                 THEN RETURN
FE00:  C6 34     874 BL1      DEC  YSAV
FE02:  F0 9F     875          BEQ  XAM8
FE04:  CA        876 BLANK    DEX               BLANK TO MON
FE05:  D0 16     877          BNE  SETMDZ       AFTER BLANK
FE07:  C9 BA     878          CMP  #$BA         DATA STORE MODE?
FE09:  D0 BB     879          BNE  XAMPM          NO, XAM, ADD OR SUB
FE0B:  85 31     880 STOR     STA  MODE         KEEP IN STORE MODE
FE0D:  A5 3E     881          LDA  A2L
FE0F:  91 40     882          STA  (A3L),Y      STORE AS LOW BYTE AS (A3)
FE11:  E6 40     883          INC  A3L
FE13:  D0 02     884          BNE  RTS5         INCR A3, RETURN
FE15:  E6 41     885          INC  A3H
FE17:  60        886 RTS5     RTS
FE18:  A4 34     887 SETMODE  LDY  YSAV         SAVE CONVERTED ':', '+',
FE1A:  B9 FF 01  888          LDA  IN-1,Y         '-', '.' AS MODE.
FE1D:  85 31     889 SETMDZ   STA  MODE
FE1F:  60        890          RTS
FE20:  A2 01     891 LT       LDX  #$01
FE22:  B5 3E     892 LT2      LDA  A2L,X        COPY A2 (2 BYTES) TO
FE24:  95 42     893          STA  A4L,X          A4 AND A5
FE26:  95 44     894          STA  A5L,X
FE28:  CA        895          DEX
FE29:  10 F7     896          BPL  LT2
FE2B:  60        897          RTS
FE2C:  B1 3C     898 MOVE     LDA  (A1L),Y      MOVE (A1 TO A2) TO
FE2E:  91 42     899          STA  (A4L),Y        (A4)
FE30:  20 B4 FC  900          JSR  NXTA4
FE33:  90 F7     901          BCC  MOVE
FE35:  60        902          RTS
FE36:  B1 3C     903 VFY      LDA  (A1L),Y      VERIFY (A1 TO A2) WITH
FE38:  D1 42     904          CMP  (A4L),Y        (A4)
FE3A:  F0 1C     905          BEQ  VFYOK
FE3C:  20 92 FD  906          JSR  PRA1
FE3F:  B1 3C     907          LDA  (A1L),Y
FE41:  20 DA FD  908          JSR  PRBYTE
FE44:  A9 A0     909          LDA  #$A0
FE46:  20 ED FD  910          JSR  COUT
```

```
FC10:  C6 24           BS      DEC  CH          DECREMENT CURSER H INDEX
FC12:  10 E8                   BPL  RTS3        IF POS, OK. ELSE MOVE UP
FC14:  A5 21                   LDA  WNDWDTH     SET CH TO WNDWDTH-1
FC16:  85 24                   STA  CH
FC18:  C6 24                   DEC  CH          (RIGHTMOST SCREEN POS)
FC1A:  A5 22           UP      LDA  WNDTOP      CURSER V INDEX
FC1C:  C5 25                   CMP  CV
FC1E:  B0 0B                   BCS  RTS4        IF TOP LINE THEN RETURN
FC20:  C6 25                   DEC  CV          DECR CURSER V-INDEX
FC22:  A5 25           VTAB    LDA  CV          GET CURSER V-INDEX
FC24:  20 C1 FB        VTABZ   JSR  BASCALC     GENERATE BASE ADDR
FC27:  65 20                   ADC  WNDLFT      ADD WINDOW LEFT INDEX
FC29:  85 28                   STA  BASL        TO BASL
FC2B:  60              RTS4    RTS
FC2C:  49 C0           ESC1    EOR  #$C0        ESC?
FC2E:  F0 28                   BEQ  HOME          IF SO, DO HOME AND CLEAR
FC30:  69 FD                   ADC  #$FD        ESC-A OR B CHECK
FC32:  90 C0                   BCC  ADVANCE       A, ADVANCE
FC34:  F0 DA                   BEQ  BS            B, BACKSPACE
FC36:  69 FD                   ADC  #$FD        ESC-C OR D CHECK
FC38:  90 2C                   BCC  LF            C, DOWN
FC3A:  F0 DE                   BEQ  UP            D, GO UP
FC3C:  69 FD                   ADC  #$FD        ESC-E OR F CHECK
FC3E:  90 5C                   BCC  CLREOL        E, CLEAR TO END OF LINE
FC40:  D0 E9                   BNE  RTS4          NOT F, RETURN
FC42:  A4 24           CLREOP  LDY  CH          CURSOR H TO Y INDEX
FC44:  A5 25                   LDA  CV          CURSOR V TO A-REGISTER
FC46:  48              CLEOP1  PHA              SAVE CURRENT LINE ON STK
FC47:  20 24 FC                JSR  VTABZ       CALC BASE ADDRESS
FC4A:  20 9E FC                JSR  CLEOLZ      CLEAR TO EOL, SET CARRY
FC4D:  A0 00                   LDY  #$00        CLEAR FROM H INDEX=0 FOR REST
FC4F:  68                      PLA              INCREMENT CURRENT LINE
FC50:  69 00                   ADC  #$00        (CARRY IS SET)
FC52:  C5 23                   CMP  WNDBTM      DONE TO BOTTOM OF WINDOW?
FC54:  90 F0                   BCC  CLEOP1        NO, KEEP CLEARING LINES
FC56:  B0 CA                   BCS  VTAB          YES, TAB TO CURRENT LINE
FC58:  A5 22           HOME    LDA  WNDTOP      INIT CURSOR V
FC5A:  85 25                   STA  CV            AND H-INDICES
FC5C:  A0 00                   LDY  #$00
FC5E:  84 24                   STY  CH          THEN CLEAR TO END OF PAGE
FC60:  F0 E4                   BEQ  CLEOP1
FC62:  A9 00           CR      LDA  #$00        CURSOR TO LEFT OF INDEX
FC64:  85 24                   STA  CH          (RET CURSOR H=0)
FC66:  E6 25           LF      INC  CV          INCR CURSOR V(DOWN 1 LINE)
FC68:  A5 25                   LDA  CV
FC6A:  C5 23                   CMP  WNDBTM      OFF SCREEN?
FC6C:  90 B6                   BCC  VTABZ         NO, SET BASE ADDR
FC6E:  C6 25                   DEC  CV          DECR CURSOR V(BACK TO BOTTOM)
FC70:  A5 22           SCROLL  LDA  WNDTOP      START AT TOP OF SCRL WNDW
FC72:  48                      PHA
FC73:  20 24 FC                JSR  VTABZ       GENERATE BASE ADDRESS
FC76:  A5 28           SCRL1   LDA  BASL        COPY BASL,H
FC78:  85 2A                   STA  BAS2L         TO BAS2L,H
FC7A:  A5 29                   LDA  BASH
FC7C:  85 2B                   STA  BAS2H
FC7E:  A4 21                   LDY  WNDWDTH     INIT Y TO RIGHTMOST INDEX
FC80:  88                      DEY                OF SCROLLING WINDOW
FC81:  68                      PLA
FC82:  69 01                   ADC  #$01        INCR LINE NUMBER
FC84:  C5 23                   CMP  WNDBTM      DONE?
FC86:  B0 0D                   BCS  SCRL3         YES, FINISH
FC88:  48                      PHA
FC89:  20 24 FC                JSR  VTABZ       FORM BASL,H (BASE ADDR)
FC8C:  B1 28           SCRL2   LDA  (BASL),Y    MOVE A CHR UP ON LINE
FC8E:  91 2A                   STA  (BAS2L),Y
FC90:  88                      DEY              NEXT CHAR OF LINE
FC91:  10 F9                   BPL  SCRL2
FC93:  30 E1                   BMI  SCRL1       NEXT LINE
FC95:  A0 00           SCRL3   LDY  #$00        CLEAR BOTTOM LINE
FC97:  20 9E FC                JSR  CLEOLZ      GET BASE ADDR FOR BOTTOM LINE
FC9A:  B0 86                   BCS  VTAB        CARRY IS SET
FC9C:  A4 24           CLREOL  LDY  CH          CURSOR H INDEX
FC9E:  A9 A0           CLEOLZ  LDA  #$A0
```

```
FCA0:  91 28           CLEOL2  STA  (BASL),Y    STORE BLANKS FROM 'HERE'
FCA2:  C8                      INY                TO END OF LINES (WNDWDTH)
FCA3:  C4 21                   CPY  WNDWDTH
FCA5:  90 F9                   BCC  CLEOL2
FCA7:  60                      RTS
FCA8:  38              WAIT    SEC
FCA9:  48              WAIT2   PHA
FCAA:  E9 01           WAIT3   SBC  #$01        1.0204 USEC
FCAC:  D0 FC                   BNE  WAIT3       (13+2712*A+512*A*A)
FCAE:  68                      PLA
FCAF:  E9 01                   SBC  #$01
FCB1:  D0 F6                   BNE  WAIT2
FCB3:  60                      RTS
FCB4:  E6 42           NXTA4   INC  A4L         INCR 2-BYTE A4
FCB6:  D0 02                   BNE  NXTA1         AND A1
FCB8:  E6 43                   INC  A4H
FCBA:  A5 3C           NXTA1   LDA  A1L         INCR 2-BYTE A1.
FCBC:  C5 3E                   CMP  A2L
FCBE:  A5 3D                   LDA  A1H           AND COMPARE TO A2
FCC0:  E5 3F                   SBC  A2H
FCC2:  E6 3C                   INC  A1L           (CARRY SET IF >=)
FCC4:  D0 02                   BNE  RTS4B
FCC6:  E6 3D                   INC  A1H
FCC8:  60              RTS4B   RTS
FCC9:  A0 4B           HEADR   LDY  #$4B        WRITE A*256 'LONG 1'
FCCB:  20 DB FC                JSR  ZERDLY        HALF CYCLES
FCCE:  D0 F9                   BNE  HEADR         (650 USEC EACH )
FCD0:  69 FE                   ADC  #$FE
FCD2:  B0 F5                   BCS  HEADR       THEN A 'SHORT 0'
FCD4:  A0 21                   LDY  #$21          (400 USEC)
FCD6:  20 DB FC        WRBIT   JSR  ZERDLY      WRITE TWO HALF CYCLES
FCD9:  C8                      INY                OF 250 USEC ('0')
FCDA:  C8                      INY                OR 500 USEC ('0')
FCDB:  88              ZERDLY  DEY
FCDC:  D0 FD                   BNE  ZERDLY
FCDE:  90 05                   BCC  WRTAPE      Y IS COUNT FOR
FCE0:  A0 32                   LDY  #$32          TIMING LOOP
FCE2:  88              ONEDLY  DEY
FCE3:  D0 FD                   BNE  ONEDLY
FCE5:  AC 20 C0        WRTAPE  LDY  TAPEOUT
FCE8:  A0 2C                   LDY  #$2C
FCEA:  CA                      DEX
FCEB:  60                      RTS
FCEC:  A2 08           RDBYTE  LDX  #$08        8 BITS TO READ
FCEE:  48              RDBYT2  PHA              READ TWO TRANSITIONS
FCEF:  20 FA FC                JSR  RD2BIT        (FIND EDGE)
FCF2:  68                      PLA
FCF3:  2A                      ROL  A           NEXT BIT
FCF4:  A0 3A                   LDY  #$3A        COUNT FOR SAMPLES
FCF6:  CA                      DEX
FCF7:  D0 F5                   BNE  RDBYT2
FCF9:  60                      RTS
FCFA:  20 FD FC        RD2BIT  JSR  RDBIT
FCFD:  88              RDBIT   DEY              DECR Y UNTIL
FCFE:  AD 60 C0                LDA  TAPEIN        TAPE TRANSITION
FD01:  45 2F                   EOR  LASTIN
FD03:  10 F8                   BPL  RDBIT
FD05:  45 2F                   EOR  LASTIN
FD07:  85 2F                   STA  LASTIN
FD09:  C0 80                   CPY  #$80        SET CARRY ON Y-REG.
FD0B:  60                      RTS
FD0C:  A4 24           RDKEY   LDY  CH
FD0E:  B1 28                   LDA  (BASL),Y    SET SCREEN TO FLASH
FD10:  48                      PHA
FD11:  29 3F                   AND  #$3F
FD13:  09 40                   ORA  #$40
FD15:  91 28                   STA  (BASL),Y
FD17:  68                      PLA
FD18:  6C 38 00                JMP  (KSWL)      GO TO USER KEY-IN
FD1B:  E6 4E           KEYIN   INC  RNDL        INCR RND NUMBER
FD1D:  D0 02                   BNE  KEYIN2
FD1F:  E6 4F                   INC  RNDH
FD21:  2C 00 C0        KEYIN2  BIT  KBD         KEY DOWN?
```

```
FE49:  A9 A8     911            LDA  #$A8
FE4B:  20 ED FD  912            JSR  COUT
FE4E:  B1 42     913            LDA  (A4L),Y
FE50:  20 DA FD  914            JSR  PRBYTE
FE53:  A9 A9     915            LDA  #$A9
FE55:  20 ED FD  916            JSR  COUT
FE58:  20 B4 FC  917  VFYOK     JSR  NXTA4
FE5B:  90 D9     918            BCC  VFY
FE5D:  60        919            RTS
FE5E:  20 75 FE  920  LIST      JSR  A1PC      MOVE A1 (2 BYTES) TO
FE61:  A9 14     921            LDA  #$14        PC IF SPEC'D AND
FE63:  48        922  LIST2     PHA              DISSEMBLE 20 INSTRS
FE64:  20 D0 F8  923            JSR  INSTDSP
FE67:  20 53 F9  924            JSR  PCADJ     ADJUST PC EACH INSTR
FE6A:  85 3A     925            STA  PCL
FE6C:  84 3B     926            STY  PCH
FE6E:  68        927            PLA
FE6F:  38        928            SEC
FE70:  E9 01     929            SBC  #$01      NEXT OF 20 INSTRS
FE72:  D0 EF     930            BNE  LIST2
FE74:  60        931            RTS
FE75:  8A        932  A1PC      TXA            IF USER SPEC'D ADR
FE76:  F0 07     933            BEQ  A1PCRTS     COPY FROM A1 TO PC
FE78:  B5 3C     934  A1PCLP    LDA  A1L,X
FE7A:  95 3A     935            STA  PCL,X
FE7C:  CA        936            DEX
FE7D:  10 F9     937            BPL  A1PCLP
FE7F:  60        938  A1PCRTS   RTS
FE80:  A0 3F     939  SETINV    LDY  #$3F      SET FOR INVERSE VID
FE82:  D0 02     940            BNE  SETIFLG     VIA COUT1
FE84:  A0 FF     941  SETNORM   LDY  #$FF      SET FOR NORMAL VID
FE86:  84 32     942  SETIFLG   STY  INVFLG
FE88:  60        943            RTS
FE89:  A9 00     944  SETKBD    LDA  #$00      SIMULATE PORT #0 INPUT
FE8B:  85 3E     945  INPORT    STA  A2L         SPECIFIED (KEYIN ROUTINE)
FE8D:  A2 38     946  INPRT     LDX  #KSWL
FE8F:  A0 1B     947            LDY  #KEYIN
FE91:  D0 08     948            BNE  IOPRT
FE93:  A9 00     949  SETVID    LDA  #$00      SIMULATE PORT #0 OUTPUT
FE95:  85 3E     950  OUTPORT   STA  A2L         SPECIFIED (COUT1 ROUTINE)
FE97:  A2 36     951  OUTPRT    LDX  #CSWL
FE99:  A0 F0     952            LDY  #COUT1
FE9B:  A5 3E     953  IOPRT     LDA  A2L       SET RAM IN/OUT VECTORS
FE9D:  29 0F     954            AND  #$0F
FE9F:  F0 06     955            BEQ  IOPRT1
FEA1:  09 C0     956            ORA  #IOADR/256
FEA3:  A0 00     957            LDY  #$00
FEA5:  F0 02     958            BEQ  IOPRT2
FEA7:  A9 FD     959  IOPRT1    LDA  #COUT1/256
FEA9:  94 00     960  IOPRT2    STY  LOC0,X
FEAB:  95 01     961            STA  LOC1,X
FEAD:  60        962            RTS
FEAE:  EA        963            NOP
FEAF:  EA        964            NOP
FEB0:  4C 00 E0  965  XBASIC    JMP  BASIC     TO BASIC WITH SCRATCH
FEB3:  4C 03 E0  966  BASCONT   JMP  BASIC2    CONTINUE BASIC
FEB6:  20 75 FE  967  GO        JSR  A1PC      ADR TO PC IF SPEC'D
FEB9:  20 3F FF  968            JSR  RESTORE   RESTORE META REGS
FEBC:  6C 3A 00  969            JMP  (PCL)     GO TO USER SUBR
FEBF:  4C D7 FA  970  REGZ      JMP  REGDSP    TO REG DISPLAY
FEC2:  C6 34     971  TRACE     DEC  YSAV
FEC4:  20 75 FE  972  STEPZ     JSR  A1PC      ADR TO PC IF SPEC'D
FEC7:  4C 43 FA  973            JMP  STEP      TAKE ONE STEP
FECA:  4C F8 03  974  USR       JMP  USRADR    TO USR SUBR AT USRADR
FECD:  A9 40     975  WRITE     LDA  #$40
FECF:  20 C9 FC  976            JSR  HEADR     WRITE 10-SEC HEADER
FED2:  A0 27     977            LDY  #$27
FED4:  A2 00     978  WR1       LDX  #$00
FED6:  41 3C     979            EOR  (A1L,X)
FED8:  48        980            PHA
FED9:  A1 3C     981            LDA  (A1L,X)
```

168

```
FEDB:  20 ED FE  982            JSR  WRBYTE
FEDE:  20 BA FC  983            JSR  NXTA1
FEE1:  A0 1D     984            LDY  #$1D
FEE3:  68        985            PLA
FEE4:  90 EE     986            BCC  WR1
FEE6:  A0 22     987            LDY  #$22
FEE8:  20 ED FE  988            JSR  WRBYTE
FEEB:  F0 4D     989            BEQ  BELL
FEED:  A2 10     990  WRBYTE    LDX  #$10
FEEF:  0A        991  WRBYT2    ASL  A
FEF0:  20 D6 FC  992            JSR  WRBIT
FEF3:  D0 FA     993            BNE  WRBYT2
FEF5:  60        994            RTS
FEF6:  20 00 FE  995  CRMON     JSR  BL1       HANDLE CR AS BLANK
FEF9:  68        996            PLA              THEN POP STACK
FEFA:  68        997            PLA              AND RTN TO MON
FEFB:  D0 6C     998            BNE  MON2
FEFD:  20 FA FC  999  READ      JSR  RD2BIT    FIND TAPEIN EDGE
FF00:  A9 16     1000           LDA  #$16
FF02:  20 C9 FC  1001           JSR  HEADR     DELAY 3.5 SECONDS
FF05:  85 2E     1002           STA  CHKSUM    INIT CHKSUM=$FF
FF07:  20 FA FC  1003           JSR  RD2BIT    FIND TAPEIN EDGE
FF0A:  A0 24     1004 RD2       LDY  #$24      LOOK FOR SYNC BIT
FF0C:  20 FD FC  1005           JSR  RDBIT       (SHORT 0)
FF0F:  B0 F9     1006           BCS  RD2         LOOP UNTIL FOUND
FF11:  20 FD FC  1007           JSR  RDBIT     SKIP SECOND SYNC H-CYCLE
FF14:  A0 3B     1008           LDY  #$3B      INDEX FOR 0/1 TEST
FF16:  20 EC FC  1009 RD3       JSR  RDBYTE    READ A BYTE
FF19:  81 3C     1010           STA  (A1L,X)   STORE AT (A1)
FF1B:  45 2E     1011           EOR  CHKSUM
FF1D:  85 2E     1012           STA  CHKSUM    UPDATE RUNNING CHKSUM
FF1F:  20 BA FC  1013           JSR  NXTA1     INCR A1, COMPARE TO A2
FF22:  A0 35     1014           LDY  #$35      COMPENSATE 0/1 INDEX
FF24:  90 F0     1015           BCC  RD3       LOOP UNTIL DONE
FF26:  20 EC FC  1016           JSR  RDBYTE    READ CHKSUM BYTE
FF29:  C5 2E     1017           CMP  CHKSUM
FF2B:  F0 0D     1018           BEQ  BELL      GOOD, SOUND BELL AND RETURN
FF2D:  A9 C5     1019 PRERR     LDA  #$C5
FF2F:  20 ED FD  1020           JSR  COUT      PRINT "ERR", THEN BELL
FF32:  A9 D2     1021           LDA  #$D2
FF34:  20 ED FD  1022           JSR  COUT
FF37:  20 ED FD  1023           JSR  COUT
FF3A:  A9 87     1024 BELL      LDA  #$87      OUTPUT BELL AND RETURN
FF3C:  4C ED FD  1025           JMP  COUT
FF3F:  A5 48     1026 RESTORE   LDA  STATUS    RESTORE 6502 REG CONTENTS
FF41:  48        1027           PHA              USED BY DEBUG SOFTWARE
FF42:  A5 45     1028           LDA  ACC
FF44:  A6 46     1029 RESTR1    LDX  XREG
FF46:  A4 47     1030           LDY  YREG
FF48:  28        1031           PLP
FF49:  60        1032           RTS
FF4A:  85 45     1033 SAVE      STA  ACC       SAVE 6502 REG CONTENTS
FF4C:  86 46     1034 SAV1      STX  XREG
FF4E:  84 47     1035           STY  YREG
FF50:  08        1036           PHP
FF51:  68        1037           PLA
FF52:  85 48     1038           STA  STATUS
FF54:  BA        1039           TSX
FF55:  86 49     1040           STX  SPNT
FF57:  D8        1041           CLD
FF58:  60        1042           RTS
FF59:  20 84 FE  1043 RESET     JSR  SETNORM   SET SCREEN MODE
FF5C:  20 2F FB  1044           JSR  INIT        AND INIT KBD/SCREEN
FF5F:  20 93 FE  1045           JSR  SETVID      AS I/O DEV'S
FF62:  20 89 FE  1046           JSR  SETKBD
FF65:  D8        1047 MON       CLD            MUST SET HEX MODE!
FF66:  20 3A FF  1048           JSR  BELL
FF69:  A9 AA     1049 MONZ      LDA  #$AA      '*' PROMPT FOR MON
FF6B:  85 33     1050           STA  PROMPT
FF6D:  20 67 FD  1051           JSR  GETLNZ    READ A LINE
FF70:  20 C7 FF  1052           JSR  ZMODE     CLEAR MON MODE, SCAN IDX
FF73:  20 A7 FF  1053 NXTITM    JSR  GETNUM    GET ITEM, NON-HEX
FF76:  84 34     1054           STY  YSAV        CHAR IN A-REG
```

169

```
            1055                LDY  #$17      X-REG=0 IF NO HEX INPUT
            1056 CHRSRCH        DEY
            1057                BMI  MON       NOT FOUND, GO TO MON
   FF       1058                CMP  CHRTBL,Y  FIND CMND CHAR IN TEL
            1059                BNE  CHRSRCH
   FF       1060                JSR  TOSUB     FOUND, CALL CORRESPONDING
            1061                LDY  YSAV        SUBROUTINE
   FF       1062                JMP  NXTITM
            1063 DIG            LDX  #$03
            1064                ASL  A
            1065                ASL  A         GOT HEX DIG,
            1066                ASL  A           SHIFT INTO A2
            1067                ASL  A
            1068 NXTBIT         ROL  A2L
            1069                ROL  A2H
            1070                DEX
            1071                BPL  NXTBIT    LEAVE X=$FF IF DIG
   3E       1072 NXTBAS         LDA  MODE
   3F       1073                BNE  NXTBS2
 CA         1074                LDA  A2H,X     IF MODE IS ZERO
 10 F6      1075                STA  A1H,X       THEN COPY A2 TO
 A5 31      1076                STA  A3H,X       A1 AND A3
 D0 06      1077 NXTBS2         INX
 B5 3F      1078                BEQ  NXTBAS
 95 3D      1079                BNE  NXTCHR
 95 41      1080                LDX  #$00      CLEAR A2
 E8         1081 GETNUM         STX  A2L
 F0 F3      1082                STX  A2H
 D0 06      1083 NXTCHR         LDA  IN,Y      GET CHAR
 A2 00      1084                INY
 86 3E      1085                EOR  #$B0
 86 3F      1086                CMP  #$0A
 B9 00 02   1087                BCC  DIG       IF HEX DIG, THEN
 C8         1088                ADC  #$88
 49 B0      1089                CMP  #$FA
 C9 0A      1090                BCS  DIG
 90 D3      1091                RTS
 69 88      1092 TOSUB          LDA  #GO/256   PUSH HIGH-ORDER
 C9 FA      1093                PHA              SUBR ADR ON STK
 B0 CD      1094                LDA  SUBTBL,Y  PUSH LOW ORDER
 60         1095                PHA              SUBR ADR ON STK
 A9 FE      1096                LDA  MODE
 48         1097 ZMODE          LDY  #$00      CLR MODE, OLD MODE
 B9 E3 FF   1098                STY  MODE        TO A-REG
 48         1099                RTS            GO TO SUBR VIA RTS
 A5 31      1100 CHRTBL         DFB  $BC       F("CTRL-C")
 A0 00      1101                DFB  $B2       F("CTRL-Y")
 84 31      1102                DFB  $BE       F("CTRL-E")
 FFC9:  60  1103                DFB  $ED       F("T")
 FFCB:  BC  1104                DFB  $EF       F("V")
 FFCC:  B2  1105                DFB  $C4       F("CTRL-K")
 FFCD:  BE  1106                DFB  $EC       F("S")
 FFCE:  ED  1107                DFB  $A9       F("CTRL-P")
 FFCF:  EF  1108                DFB  $BB       F("CTRL-B")
 FFD0:  C4  1109                DFB  $A6       F("-")
 FFD1:  EC  1110                DFB  $A4       F("+")
 FFD2:  A9  1111                DFB  $06       F("M")  (F=EX-OR $B0+$89)
 FFD3:  BB  1112                DFB  $95       F("<")
 FFD4:  A6  1113                DFB  $07       F("N")
 FFD5:  A4  1114                DFB  $02       F("I")
 FFD6:  06  1115                DFB  $05       F("L")
 FFD7:  95                      DFB  $F0       F("W")
 FFD8:  07                      DFB  $00       F("G")
                                               F("R")
                                               F(":")

 FFE6:  C1  1127                DFB  #TRACE-1
 FFE7:  35  1128                DFB  #VFY-1
 FFE8:  FC  1129                DFB  #INPRT-1
 FFE9:  96  1130                DFB  #STEP2-1
 FFEA:  AF  1131                DFB  #OUTPRT-1
 FFEB:  17  1132                DFB  #XBASIC-1
 FFEC:  17  1133                DFB  #SETMODE-1
 FFED:  2B  1134                DFB  #SETMODE-1
 FFEE:  1F  1135                DFB  #MOVE-1
 FFEF:  83  1136                DFB  #LT-1
 FFF0:  7F  1137                DFB  #SETNORM-1
 FFF1:  5D  1138                DFB  #SETINV-1
 FFF2:  CC  1139                DFB  #LIST-1
 FFF3:  B5  1140                DFB  #WRITE-1
 FFF4:  FC  1141                DFB  #GO-1
 FFF5:  17  1142                DFB  #READ-1
 FFF6:  17  1143                DFB  #SETMODE-1
 FFF7:  F5  1144                DFB  #SETMODE-1
 FFF8:  03  1145                DFB  #CRMON-1
 FFF9:  FB  1146                DFB  #BLANK-1
 FFFA:  03  1147                DFB  #NMI          NMI VECTOR
 FFFB:  59  1148                DFB  #NMI/256
 FFFC:  FF  1149                DFB  #RESET        RESET VECTOR
 FFFD:  86  1150                DFB  #RESET/256
 FFFE:  FA  1151                DFB  #IRQ          IRQ VECTOR
 FFFF:      1152                DFB  #IRQ/256
            1153 XQTNZ          EQU  $3C
```

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

```
FF4C SAV1
FF73 NXTITM
FF98 NXTBAS
FFBE TOSUB
```

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

SYMBOL TABLE (ALPHABETICAL ORDER)

```
003D A1H
FE7F A1PCRTS
0040 A3L
0044 A5L
FBF4 ADVANCE
002A BAS2L
0029 BASH
FD71 BCKSPC
FE00 BL1
FC10 BS
F9BA CHAR2
0024 CH
C059 CLRANO
FC9C CLREOL
FB3C CLRSC3
FDED COUT
FC62 CR
0025 CV
FBA5 ERR
FB97 ESCOLD
F9A6 FMT2
0026 GBASL
FD6A GETLN
FCC9 HEADR
FB19 HLINE
0200 IN
FB82 INSDS1
C000 IOADR
03FE IRQLOC
C000 KBD
0038 KSWL
0400 LINE1
0000 LOCO
FE22 LT2
C053 MIXSET
FBC2 MNNDX2
FF69 MONZ
FAB1 NEWMON
FD5F NOTCR1
FF98 NXTBAS
FD75 NXTCHAR
FA59 OLDBRK
FE97 OUTPRT
```

```
F956 PCADJ3
0095 PICK
F910 PRADR1
F930 PRADR5
FDDA PRBYTE
FDE3 PRHEX
FBDB PRNTBL
0033 PROMPT
03F4 PWREDUP
FF16 RD3
FD35 RDCHAR
FAD7 REGDSP
FF3F RESTORE
004F RNDH
FB7F RTMSKZ
F961 RTS2
003C A1L
003F A2H
0043 A4H
0045 ACC
03F5 AMPERV
FBC1 BASCALC
E000 BASIC
FBD9 BELL1
FE04 BLANK
FD62 CANCEL
002E CHKSUM
FCA0 CLEOL2
C05B CLRAN1
FC42 CLREOP
FB32 CLRSCR
FDF0 COUT1
FEF6 CRMON
FDB6 DATAOUT
FC2C ESC1
FD2F ESC
002E FORMAT
FB56 GBCALC
FFA7 GETNUM
C057 HIRES
FC58 HOME
FB2F INIT
FB8C INSDS2
```

174

```
FEA7 IOPRT1
FA40 IRQ
FD1B KEYIN
002F LASTIN
FE5E LIST
0001 LOC1
FE20 LT
F9C0 MNEML
FBC9 MNNDX3
FF65 MON
03FB NMI
FB94 NOWAIT
FF90 NXTBIT
FFAD NXTCHR
FF59 OLDRST
C064 PADDLO
F95C PCADJ4
FB0E PLOT1
F914 PRADR2
F94A PRBL2
FB1E PREAD
FDE5 PRHEXZ
FBD4 PRNTOP
FD96 PRYX2
FAA6 PWRUP
FCFD RDBIT
FD0C RDKEY
FEBF REGZ
FF44 RESTR1
004E RNDL
FB31 RTS1
FBFC RTS3
FE78 A1PCLP
003E A2L
0042 A4L
FDB4 ADDINP
FB60 APPLEII
FBD0 BASCLC2
E003 BASIC2
FBE4 BELL2
FA4C BREAK
FD7E CAPTST
FF7A CHRSRCH
```

```
FC9E CLEOLZ
C05D CLRAN2
CFFF CLRROM
F836 CLRTOP
FDF6 COUTZ
0037 CSWH
FFBA DIG
FBA5 ESCNEW
FA9B FIXSEV
F847 GBASCALC
FBA9 GETFMT
FEB6 GO
C055 HISCR
FB9B IEVEN
FEBB INPORT
FBD0 INSTDSP
FEA9 IOPRT2
C010 KBDSTRB
FD21 KEYIN2
002F LENGTH
FE63 LIST2
C056 LORES
002E MASK
FA00 MNEMR
FDAD MODBCHK
FE2C MOVE
FAA3 NOFIX
FCBA NXTA1
FFA2 NXTBS2
FBF5 NXTCOL
FCE2 ONEDLY
F954 PCADJ2
003B PCH
F800 PLOT
F926 PRADR3
F94C PRBL3
FB25 PREAD2
FBF9 PRMN2
F944 PRNTX
C070 PTRIG
FCFA RD2BIT
FCEE RDBYT2
FAE4 RDSP1
F938 RELADR
FADA RGDSP1
FB19 RTBL
FBEF RTS2B
FCC8 RTS4B
FE75 A1PC
0041 A3H
0045 A5H
FDD1 ADD
002B BAS2H
FEB3 BASCONT
0028 BASL
```

```
FF3A BELL
03F0 BRKV
F9B4 CHAR1
FFCC CHRTBL
FC46 CLEOP1
C05F CLRAN3
F838 CLRSC2
0030 COLOR
FDBE CROUT
0036 CSWL
FB02 DISKID
FB9B ESCNOW
F962 FMT1
0027 GBASH
FD67 GETLNZ
002C H2
FB1C HLINE1
FA6F INITAN
FE8D INPRT
0032 INVFLG
FE9B IOPRT
FB88 KBDWAIT
0039 KSWH
FC66 LF
002C LMNEM
C054 LOWSCR
C052 MIXCLR
FBBE MNNDX1
0031 MODE
07F8 MSLOT
FD3D NOTCR
FCB4 NXTA4
FAC7 NXTBYT
FF73 NXTITM
FE95 OUTPORT
F953 PCADJ
003A PCL
FD92 PRA1
F92A PRADR4
F948 PRBLNK
FF2D PRERR
F941 PRNTAX
F940 PRNTYX
FAFD PWRCON
FF0A RD2
FCEC RDBYTE
FEFD READ
FA62 RESET
002D RMNEM
FB0C RTMASK
FB2E RTS2D
FDC5 RTS4C
FE17 RTS5
FC2B RTS4
FC76 SCRL1
F879 SCRN2
```

```
C05C SETAN2
FE86 SETIFLG
FE18 SETMODE
FB6F SETPWRC
002F SIGN
0049 SPNT
FE0B STOR
C060 TAPEIN
FEC2 TRACE
FECA USR
FE58 VFYOK
F828 VLINE
FCA8 WAIT
0022 WNDTOP
FEEF WRBYT2
FDA3 XAM8
FB11 XLTBL
0034 YSAV
FC8C SCRL2
FC70 SCROLL
C05E SETAN3
FE80 SETINV
FE84 SETNORM
FB39 SETTXT
FABA SLOOP
0048 STATUS
FBF0 STORADV
C020 TAPEOUT
C050 TXTCLR
03F8 USRADR
FBFD VIDOUT
FC24 VTABZ
FCAA WAIT3
0021 WNDWDTH
FEED WRBYTE
FDC6 XAMPM
0046 XREG
FCDB ZERDLY
FF4C SAV1
FC95 SCRL3
C058 SETAN0
F864 SETCOL
FE89 SETKBD
FAA9 SETPG3
FE93 SETVID
03F2 SOFTEV
FEC4 STEPZ
FFE3 SUBTBL
FB09 TITLE
C051 TXTSET
002D V2
FB78 VIDWAIT
FC22 VTAB
0023 WNDBTM
FED4 WR1
```

SYMBOL TABLE
(NUMERICAL ORDER)

0000	LOCO
0022	WNDTOP
0026	GBASL
002A	BAS2L
002D	V2
002E	FORMAT
0030	COLOR
0034	YSAV
0038	KSWL
003C	A1L
0040	A3L
0044	A5L
0047	YREG
004F	RNDH
03F2	SOFTEV
03FB	NMI
C000	IOADR
C030	SPKR
C053	MIXSET
C057	HIRES
C05B	CLRAN1
C05F	CLRAN3
CFFF	CLRROM
F80C	RTMASK
F826	VLINEZ
F836	CLRTOP
F856	GBCALC
F87F	RTMSKZ
F8A5	ERR
F8C9	MNNDX3
F8F5	NXTCOL
F926	PRADR3
F940	PRNTYX
F94A	PRBL2
F956	PCADJ3
F9A6	FMT2
FA00	MNEMR
FA62	RESET
FAA3	NOFIX
FABA	SLOOP
FAE4	RDSP1
FB11	XLTBL
FB2E	RTS2D
FB4B	SETWND
FB6F	SETPWRC
FB97	ESCOLD
FBD0	BASCLC2
FBF0	STORADV
FC10	BS
FC2B	RTS4
FC58	HOME
FC76	SCRL1
FC9E	CLEOLZ
FCAA	WAIT3
FCC9	HEADR
FCE5	WRTAPE
FCFD	RDBIT
FD2F	ESC
FD62	CANCEL
0001	LOC1
0023	WNDBTM
0027	GBASH
002B	BAS2H
002D	RMNEM
002F	LASTIN
0031	MODE
0035	YSAV1
0039	KSWH
003D	A1H
0041	A3H
0045	A5H
0048	STATUS
0095	PICK
03F4	PWREDUP
03FE	IRQLOC
C000	KBD
C050	TXTCLR
C054	LOWSCR
C058	SETAN0
C05C	SETAN2
C060	TAPEIN
E000	BASIC
F80E	PLOT1
F828	VLINE
F838	CLRSC2
F864	SETCOL
F882	INSDS1
F8A9	GETFMT
F8D0	INSTDSP
F8F9	PRMN2
F92A	PRADR4
F941	PRNTAX
F94C	PRBL3
F95C	PCADJ4
F9B4	CHAR1
FA40	IRQ
FA6F	INITAN
FAA6	PWRUP
FAC7	NXTBYT
FAFD	PWRCON
FB19	RTBL
FB2F	INIT
FB5B	TABV
FB78	VIDWAIT
FB9B	ESCNOW
FBD9	BELL1
FBF4	ADVANCE
FC1A	UP
FC2C	ESC1
FC62	CR
FC8C	SCRL2
FCA0	CLEOL2
FCB4	NXTA4
FCD6	WRBIT
FCEC	RDBYTE
FD0C	RDKEY
FD35	RDCHAR
FD67	GETLNZ
0020	WNDLFT
0024	CH
0028	BASL
002C	H2
002E	MASK
002F	LENGTH
0032	INVFLG
0036	CSWL
003A	PCL
003E	A2L
0042	A4L
0045	ACC
0049	SPNT
0200	IN
03F5	AMPERV
0400	LINE1
C010	KBDSTRB
C051	TXTSET
C055	HISCR
C059	CLRAN0
C05D	CLRAN2
C064	PADDL0
E003	BASIC2
F819	HLINE
F831	RTS1
F83C	CLRSC3
F871	SCRN
F88C	INSDS2
F8BE	MNNDX1
F8D4	PRNTOP
F910	PRADR1
F930	PRADR5
F944	PRNTX
F953	PCADJ
F961	RTS2
F9BA	CHAR2
FA4C	BREAK
FA81	NEWMON
FAA9	SETPG3
FAD7	REGDSP
FB02	DISKID
FB1E	PREAD
FB39	SETTXT
FB60	APPLEII
FB88	KBDWAIT
FBA5	ESCNEW
FBE4	BELL2
FBFC	RTS3
FC22	VTAB
FC42	CLREOP
FC66	LF
FC95	SCRL3
FCA8	WAIT
FCBA	NXTA1
FCDB	ZERDLY
FCEE	RDBYT2
FD1B	KEYIN
FD3D	NOTCR
FD6A	GETLN
0021	WNDWDTH
0025	CV
0029	BASH
002C	LMNEM
002E	CHKSUM
002F	SIGN
0033	PROMPT
0037	CSWH
003B	PCH
003F	A2H
0043	A4H
0046	XREG
004E	RNDL
03F0	BRKV
03F8	USRADR
07F8	MSLOT
C020	TAPEOUT
C052	MIXCLR
C056	LORES
C05A	SETAN1
C05E	SETAN3
C070	PTRIG
F800	PLOT
F81C	HLINE1
F832	CLRSCR
F847	GBASCALC
F879	SCRN2
F89B	IEVEN
F8C2	MNNDX2
F8DB	PRNTBL
F914	PRADR2
F938	RELADR
F948	PRBLNK
F954	PCADJ2
F962	FMT1
F9C0	MNEML
FA59	OLDBRK
FA9B	FIXSEV
FAAB	SETPLP
FADA	RGDSP1
FB09	TITLE
FB25	PREAD2
FB40	SETGR
FB65	STITLE
FB94	NOWAIT
FBC1	BASCALC
FBEF	RTS2B
FBFD	VIDOUT
FC24	VTABZ
FC46	CLEOP1
FC70	SCROLL
FC9C	CLREOL
FCA9	WAIT2
FCC8	RTS4B
FCE2	ONEDLY
FCFA	RD2BIT
FD21	KEYIN2
BD5F	NOTCR1
FD71	BCKSPC
FD75	NXTCHAR
FD92	PRA1
FDB3	XAM
FDD1	ADD
FDED	COUT
FE04	BLANK
FE1D	SETMDZ
FE36	VFY
FE75	A1PC
FE84	SETNORM
FE8D	INPRT
FE9B	IOPRT
FEB3	BASCONT
FEC4	STEPZ
FEED	WRBYTE
FF0A	RD2
FF3F	RESTORE
FF59	OLDRST
FF7A	CHRSRCH
FFA2	NXTBS2
FFC7	ZMODE
FD7E	CAPTST
FD96	PRYX2
FDB6	DATAOUT
FDDA	PRBYTE
FDF0	COUT1
FE0B	STOR
FE20	LT
FE58	VFYOK
FE78	A1PCLP
FE86	SETIFLG
FE93	SETVID
FEA7	IOPRT1
FEB6	GO
FECA	USR
FEEF	WRBYT2
FF16	RD3
FF44	RESTR1
FF65	MON
FF8A	DIG
FFA7	GETNUM
FFCC	CHRTBL
FD84	ADDINP
FDA3	XAM8
FDC5	RTS4C
FDE3	PRHEX
FDF6	COUTZ
FE17	RTS5
FE22	LT2
FE5E	LIST
FE7F	A1PCRTS
FE89	SETKBD
FE95	OUTPORT
FEA9	IOPRT2
FEBF	REGZ
FECD	WRITE
FEF6	CRMON
FF2D	PRERR
FF4A	SAVE
FF69	MONZ
FF90	NXTBIT
FFAD	NXTCHR
FFE3	SUBTBL
FD8E	CROUT
FDAD	MODBCHK
FDC6	XAMPM
FDE5	PRHEXZ
FE00	BL1
FE18	SETMODE
FE2C	MOVE
FE63	LIST2
FE80	SETINV
FE8B	INPORT
FE97	OUTPRT
FEB0	XBASIC
FEC2	TRACE
FED4	WR1
FEFD	READ
FF3A	BELL

```
FECD WRITE
FDB3 XAM
0047 YREG
FFC7 ZMODE
FF4A SAVE
FB71 SCRN
C05A SETAN1
FB40 SETGR
FE1D SETMDZ
FAAB SETPLP
FB4B SETWND
C030 SPKR
FB65 STITLE
FB5B TABV
FFBE TOSUB
FC1A UP
FE36 VFY
FB26 VLINEZ
FCA9 WAIT2
0020 WNDLFT
FCD6 WRBIT
FCE5 WRTAPE
FEB0 XBASIC
0035 YSAV1

SYMBOL TABLE SIZE
2589   BYTES USED
2531   BYTES REMAINING

$LIST 4A
```

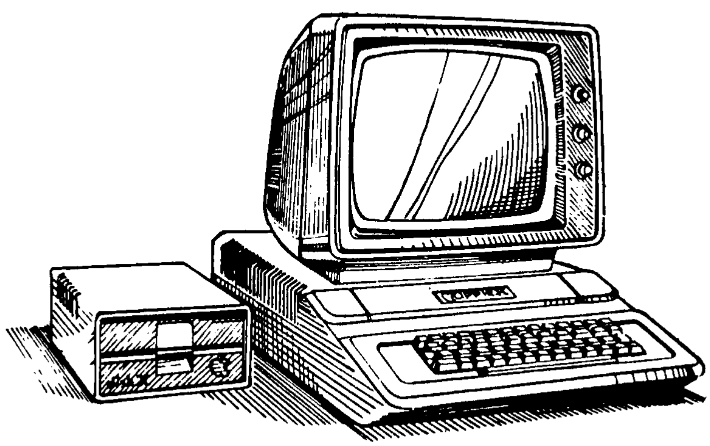
PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

APPENDIX B
BILL OF MATERIALS



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

EFFECTIVITY DATE: 012381 SINGLE LEVEL BILLS

PARENT PART: 606-0148 M UNTESTED A2 STD 48K SYSTEM, RFI UM:
ERC: B SRCE CODE: A TYPE: 1 ABC:

ITEM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER	ERC	DESCRIPTION REMARKS	PR CD	COMM CODE	SRC	TYP	SPR	ABC	PLN	UM
000	606-0116D	0	DWG, ASSY A2 STD RFI	EX		*	7		*	*	EA
003	333-4116	? 2	IC, 16K RAM MRKD "APPLE" (NO BURN)	RL		P	1	P	A	P	EA
004	101-4016	0	RES 1/4W 5% 1 MEG OHM K13	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA
005	820-0044	A	PCB, A2 MAIN LOGIC BD RFI	RP		P	1	P	A	P	EA
006	101-4100	0	RES 1/4W 5% 10 OHM J14	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA
007	101-4101	0	RES 1/4W 5% 100 OHM 4-J13,K14	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA
008	101-4102	0	RES 1/4W 5% 1K OHM F14,A13,B3,2-D1	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA
009	101-4123	0	RES 1/4W 5% 12K OHM 5-K13,B3	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA
010	101-4151	0	RES 1/4W 5% 150 OHM A1	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA
011	101-4152	0	RES 1/4W 5% 1.5K OHM J14	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA
012	101-4202	0	RES 1/4W 5% 2K OHM J14	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA
013	101-4225	0	RES 1/4W 5% 2.2 MEG OHM A13	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA
014	101-4270	0	RES 1/4W 5% 27 OHM B14,K14	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA
015	101-4272	0	RES 1/4W 5% 2.7K OHM J14	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA
016	101-4331	0	RES 1/4W 5% 330 OHM A1	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA
017	101-4335	0	RES 1/4W 5% 3.3 MEG OHM B3	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA
018	101-4470	0	RES 1/4W 5% 47 OHM 2-A1	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA
019	101-4472	0	RES 1/4W 5% 4.7K OHM	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PRINTED 25-JAN-81 02:33 APPLE COMPUTER, INC.

EFFECTIVITY DATE: 012381 S I N G L E L E V E L B I L L S O F

PARENT PART: 606-0148 M UNTESTED A2 STD 48K SYSTEM, RFI UM: EA
ERC: B SRCE CODE: A TYPE: 1 ABC: A

ITEM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER	E R C	DESCRIPTION REMARKS	PR CD	COMM CODE	S R C	T Y P	S P R	A B C	P L N	UM	EXTE QTY PER
020	101-4473	0	F13 RES 1/4W 5% 47K OHM	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
021	109-0001	0	J13 POT, TRIM 200 OHMS 20%	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
022	111-0001	0	J14 RES ARRAY 7 X 1K OHMS	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	3
023	131-5701	0	K13,E11,D11 CAP, 47PF 5% N470 50V	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
024	136-2401	A	H14 CAP, .022UF 10% X7R 50V	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	4
025	135-9101	A	4-H13 CAP,.1UF +80-20% Z5U7Y5V 50V	RP		P	1	P	A	P	EA	45
026	138-0001	M 0	CAP,VARIABLE CERAMIC TRIMMER 5-50PF	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
027	151-5501	B	F14 CHOKE, 27UH 10%	RP		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
029	301-0166	0	H14 IC, 74166	RI		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
030	301-9334	0	A3 IC, 9334	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
031	305-0000	0	F14 IC, 74LS00N	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
032	305-0002	0	A2 IC, 74LS02N	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	4
033	305-0004	0	B13,B14,A12,A14 IC, 74LS04	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
034	305-0008	0	C11 IC, 74LS08	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	2
035	305-0011	0	B11,H1 IC, 74LS11	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
036	305-0020	0	B12 IC, 74LS20	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
037	305-0032	0	D2 IC, 74LS32	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1

EFFECTIVITY DATE: 012381 　　　　S I N G L E L E V E L B I L L S O F M

PARENT PART: 606-0148 　M 　UNTESTED A2 STD 48K SYSTEM, RFI 　UM: EA
ERC: B 　SRCE CODE: A 　TYPE: 1 　ABC: A

ITEM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER	E R C	DESCRIPTION REMARKS	PR CD	COMM CODE	S R C	T Y P	S P R	A B C	P L N	UM	EXTENDED QTY PER
038	305-0051	0	C14 IC, 74LS51	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
039	305-0074	0	C13 IC, 74LS74	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	3
040	305-0138	0	B10,J13,A11 IC, 74LS138	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	4
041	305-0139	0	H2,H12,F12,F13 IC, 74LS139	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
042	305-0151	0	F2 IC, 74LS151	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
043	305-0153	0	A9 IC, 74LS153	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	4
044	305-0161	0	E11,E12,E13,C1 IC, 74LS161	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	4
[illegible]	305-0174	0	D11,D12,D13,D14 IC, 74LS174	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	2
046	305-0194	0	B5,B8 IC, 74LS194	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	3
047	305-0251	0	B4,B9,A10 IC, 74LS251	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
048	305-0257	0	H14 IC, 74LS257	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	5
049	305-0283	0	B6,B7,J1,C12,A8 IC, 74LS283	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
050	307-0086	0	E14 IC, 74S86	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
051	307-0175	0	B2 IC, 74S175	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
052	307-0195	0	B1 IC, 74S195 OR 93S00	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
053	315-8304	0	C2 IC, 8304B 8-BIT TRI-STATE	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
054	315-0897	? 0	H10	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	3

PRINTED 25-JAN-81 02:33 APPLE COMPUTER, INC.

EFFECTIVITY DATE: 012381 S I N G L E L E V E L B I L L S O F

PARENT PART: 606-0148 M UNTESTED A2 STD 48K SYSTEM, RFI UM: EA
ERC: B SRCE CODE: A TYPE: 1 ABC: A

ITEM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER	ERC	DESCRIPTION / REMARKS	PR CD	COMM CODE	SRC	TYP	SPR	ABC	PLN	UM	EXTEND QTY PER
			IC, 8T97 H3,H4,H5									
055	329-0555	0	IC, 555 TIMER B3,A13	RI		P	1	P	B	P	EA	2
056	329-0558	? 0	IC, NE558 H13	RI		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
058	337-6502	? 0	IC/MICROPROCESSOR 6502 H7	RL		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
063	353-0741	? 0	IC, 741CN-8 PIN MINIDIP K13	RI		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
064	371-4148	? 0	DIODE, 1N4148 J13	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
065	372-3904	0	TRANSISTOR, 2N3904 J14,A13,F13	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	3
67	372-4258	0	TRANSISTOR, XX4258 2-A1	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	2
068	376-0003	? 0	TRANSISTOR, MPSA13 J14	RP		P	5	P	B	P	EA	1
069	511-0801	0	SOCKET, IC 8 PIN K13,B3,A13	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	3
070	511-1401	0	SOCKET, IC 14 PIN A2,A11,A12,A14,B2, B10-13,B14,C11,C13, C14,D2,H1,J13	RP		P	1	P	A	P	EA	16
071	511-1601	0	SOCKET, IC 16 PIN A3,A7-A10,B1, B4-B9,C1-C10,C12, D3-D14,E4-E14,F2, F12-14,H2-5,H12-14, J1,J14	RP		P	1	P	A	P	EA	59
072	511-2401	0	SOCKET, IC 24 PIN A5,F3,F5,F6,F8, F9,F11	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	7
073	511-4001	0	SOCKET, IC 40 PIN H7	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
074	513-5001	0	CONNECTOR 50 PIN	RP		P	1	P	A	P	EA	8

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PRINTED 25-JAN-81 02:34 APPLE COMPUTER, INC.

EFFECTIVITY DATE: 012381 S I N G L E L E V E L B I L L S O F M

PARENT PART: 606-0148 M UNTESTED A2 STD 48K SYSTEM, RFI UM: EA
ERC: B SRCE CODE: A TYPE: 1 ABC: A

ITEM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER		ERC	DESCRIPTION REMARKS	PR CD	COMM CODE	SRC	TYP	SPR	ABC	PLN	UM	EXTENDED QTY PER
075	515-0001	?	0	JACK, PHONO RT ANG (MON) NTT 333-15 K14	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
076	515-0002		0	JACK, PHONE 2-K13	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	2
077	515-0054	M	A	CONN, STRAIGHT HEADER 4 PIN			P	*	P	*	P	EA	2
078	515-0053	M	A	CONN, STRAIGHT HEADER 2 PIN			P	*	P	*	P	EA	2
080	519-0001	?	0	CONNECTOR, 6 PIN AMP 9-350258-1 K1	RC		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
081	341-0016	?	0	ROM, UTILITY DO	RL		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
082	000-0000		0	NOT USED THIS ASSEMBLY			D	*	P	B	P	EA	0
083	341-0001	?	0	ROM 16K E0	RL		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
084	341-0002	?	0	ROM 16K E8	RL		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
[illegible]	341-0003	?	0	ROM 16K F0	RL		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
086	341-0004	?	0	ROM 16K F8	RL		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
087	197-0001		B	CRYSTAL, 14.318630 MHZ	RI		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
088	908-0003		1	ADHESIVE, RTV #3145 GRAY	EX		X	1	P	B	P	EA	0.0100
089	341-0036		0	ROM, SPCL A5	RL	1	P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
090	156-0005		A	CHOKE, WIDE BAND RFI TYPE 4-J1,K13	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	5
091	511-2001		0	SOCKET, IC 20 PIN H10	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
092	132-7101		0	CAP, .001UF 20% Z5R 500VDC K3,K4,K5,K6,K8 K9,2-K11	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	8
093	511-1602		A	SOCKET, IC 16 PIN DIP (KEYED) E3	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
094	125-5101		A	CAP, 10UF 16V K1	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

apple computer inc.

REV. 0

BOARD LOCATION	PART DESCRIPTION	APPLE PART #	OTHER LOCATION	SCHEMATIC DESIGNATION
A1 (2)	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C1
A1	330 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4331		R1
A1 (2)	2N4258 Transistor	372-4258		Q1,Q2
A1	Xtal, 14.318630 MHZ	197-0001		
A1 (2)	47 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4470		R2,R4
A1	150 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4151		
A2	Socket 14Pin 143-S3-T	511-1401	A11-12,B2,B10-14,C-11,C13-14 D1-2,E1,F1,H1 J13	
A2	IC 74LS00	305-0000		
A3	Socket 16Pin 163-S3-T	511-1601	A3,A7-10,B1, B4-9,C1-10,C12, D3-14,E2-14,F2, F12-14,H2-5, H10-14,J1,J14	
A3	IC 74166	or 301-0166 305-0166		
A5	Socket 24Pin 246-S4-T	511-2401	A5,F3,F5,F6,F8 F9, F11	
A5	ROM Character Generator	335-2513		
A7	Keyboard Socket	511-1601	B6-7,C12,J1	
A8	IC74LS257	305-0257		
A9	IC 74LS151	305-0151		
A10	IC74LS194	305-0194	B4,B9	
A11	IC74LS74	305-0074	B10,J13	
A12	IC 74LS02	305-0002	B13,B14	
A13	2N3904 Transistor	372-3904	F13,J14	Q5

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

TITLE: APPLE II MOTHERBOARD P/N: 600-0001 REV: ______ Page 1 of 6 apple computer inc. PRE-RELEASE VERSION

BOARD LOCATION	PART DESCRIPTION	APPLE PART #	OTHER LOCATION	SCHEMATIC DESIGNATION
A13	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C4
A13	1K Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4102	F14	R14
A13	2.2M Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4225	K13	R26
A13	IC NE555	329-0555	B3	
A13	Socket 8Pin 083-S3-T	511-0801	B3,K13	
A14	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C12
B1	IC 74LS175	307-0175		
B2	IC 74S86	307-0086		
B3	IC NE555	329-0555	A13	
B3	12K Ohm 1/4W 5%	101-4123	K14	R12
B3	3.3M Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4335		R13
B3	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C15
B4,B9	IC 74LS194	305-0194	A10	
B5,B8	IC 74LS174	305-0174		
B6,B7	IC 74LS257	305-0257		
B10	IC 74LS74	305-0074	A11,J13	
B11	IC 74LS08	305-0008	H1	
B12	IC 74LS11	305-0011		
B13,14	IC 74LS02	305-0002	A12	
B14	27 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4270	K14	R25
B15	Speaker Jack	515-0004		
B15	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
C1	IC 74LS152	305-0153	E11-13	
C2	IC 74LS195	307-0195		

TITLE: APPLE II MOTHERBOARD P/N: 600-0001 REV: Page 2 of 6

apple computer inc.

BOARD LOCATION	PART DESCRIPTION	APPLE PART #	OTHER LOCATION	SCHEMATIC DESIGNATION
C3,C10	RAM 4K or 16K	(4K)333-6604 (16K)333-4116 (16K)333-0416		
C3-C5	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
C7-C9	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
C11	IC 74LS04	305-0004		
C12	IC 74LS257	305-0257	A8,B6-7,J1	
C13	IC 74LS32	305-0032		
C15	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
D1	Memory Select Plug	*	E1,F1	
D2	IC 74LS20	305-0020		
D3-D10	RAM 16K or 4K	(4K)333-6604 (16K)333-4116 (16K)333-0416		
D3-D5	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
D7-D9	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
D10½	1K Ohm Resistor Array	111-0001	E10½,K12	RA02
D11-D14	IC 74LS161	305-0161		
D11,D15	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
E1	Memory Select Block	*	D1,F1	
E2	IC 74LS139	305-0139	F2	
E3-E10	RAM 16K or 4K	(4K)333-6604 (16K)333-4116 (16K)333-0416		
E3-E5	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
E7-E9	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
E10½	1K Ohm Resistor Array	111-0001	D10½,K12	RA03

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

TITLE: APPLE II MOTHERBOARD P/N: 600-0001 REV: ____ Page 3 of 6 apple computer inc. PRE-RELEASE VERSION

BOARD LOCATION	PART DESCRIPTION	APPLE PART #	OTHER LOCATION	SCHEMATIC DESIGNATION
E11	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
E11-E13	IC 74LS153	305-0153		
E14	IC 74LS283	305-0283		
E15	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
F1	Memory Select Plug	*	D1,E1	
F2	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
F2	IC 74LS139	305-0139	E2	
F3	ROM F8	341-0004		
F5	ROM F0	341-0003		
F6	ROM E8	341-0002		
F8	ROM E0	341-0001		
F9				
F11	ROM D0 Programmer's Aid #1	341-0016 (Optional)		
F12-F13	IC 74LS138	305-0138	H2,H12	
F13	2N3904 Transistor	372-3904	A13,J14	Q6
F13½	4.7K Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4472		R27
F14	9334	301-9334		
F15	1K Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4102	A13	R5
F15	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
F15	5-50pf Color Trim Cap	138-0001		C3
H1	IC 74LS08	305-0008	B11	
H2	IC 74LS138	305-0138	F12-F13,H12	
H2	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		

TITLE: APPLE II MOTHERBOARD P/N: 600-0001 REV: ______ Page 4 of 6

apple computer inc.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

BOARD LOCATION	PART DESCRIPTION	APPLE PART #	OTHER LOCATION	SCHEMATIC DESIGNATION
H3-H5	IC 8797	315-0897		
H7	Socket 40Pin 406-S3-7	511-4001		
H7	IC 6502 Microprocessor	337-6502		
H10-H11	IC 8T28	315-0828		
H12	IC 74LS138	305-0138	F12-13,H2	
H13	IC 558	329-0558		
H13 (4)	.22uf Capacitor	133-8401		C5-C7
H13	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C9
H14	IC 74LS251	305-0251		
H15	27uh Choke	151-5501		L1
H15	47pf Capacitor	131-5701		C2
H15	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
J1	IC 74LS257	305-0257	A8,B6-7,C12	
J13 (4)	100 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4101	K14	R20-R23
J13	IC 74LS74	305-0074	A11,B10	
J13 (2)	12K Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4123		R19,R29
J14	MPSA13 Transistor	376-0003		Q4
J14	IN914 Diode	371-0914		CR1
J14	47K Ohm 1/4W 5%	101-4473		R23
J14	Game I/O Socket	511-1601		
J14	Single Pin	515-0005		
J14½	200 Ohm Pot	109-0001		R11
J15	2.7K Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4272		R6

TITLE: APPLE II MOTHERBOARD P/N: 600-0001 REV: Page 5 of 6

apple computer inc.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

BOARD LOCATION	PART DESCRIPTION	APPLE PART #	OTHER LOCATION	SCHEMATIC DESIGNATION
J15	2K Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4202		R8
J15	1.5K Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4152		R7
J15	2N3904 Transistor	372-3904	A13,F13	Q3
J15	10 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4100		R9
K1	Power Supply Socket	519-0001		
K12	1K Resistor Array	111-0001	D10½,E10½	
K13	IC 741C	353-0741		
K13	2.2M Ohm 1/4W 5%	101-4225	A13	R15
K13 (2)	12K Ohm 1/4W 5%	101-4123	B3	R16,R30
K13	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C10
K14	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C11
K14	100 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4101	J13	R18
K14	27 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4270	B14	R25
K14 (2)	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C13,C14
K14	Video O/P Plug	515-0003		
O-7	Connector 50 Pin	513-5001		
Jack (7)	Phono Cassette	515-0002		
Jack	Phone RCA	515-0001		

* Memory Select Plug

16K	16K	16K	600-0078
16K	4K	4K	600-0077
4K	4K	4K	600-0076

TITLE: APPLE II MOTHERBOARD P/N: 600-0001 REV: ____ Page 6 of 6

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

INTED 29-Sep-81 10:40 APPLE COMPUTER, INC.

IVITY DATE: ALL S I N G L E L E V E L B I L L S O F M A

ARENT PART: 605-6116 CHASSIS A2 STD 16K SYSTEM UM: EA FF

ERC: C SRCE CODE: A TYPE: 1 ABC: A FL

#	COMPONENT PART NUMBER		ERC	DESCRIPTION REMARKS	PR CD	SRC	TYP	SPR	ABC	PLN	UM	EXTENDED QUANTITY PER	EC CH
0	605-6116D		2	CHASSIS A2 STD 16K SYSTEM	EX	A	7		*	U	EA	0	3E
1	605-4116		1	ASSY,PCB,TST,MOTHERBD STD 16K A2	2H	A	1	P	A	P	EA	1	41
2	600-0009		B	ASSY, SPEAKER	RM	P	1	P	C	P	EA	1	49
3	699-0027	?	0	POWER SUPPLY,UL APPD ASTEC(AS RECD)	VX	P	1	P	A	P	EA	1	25
4	605-5105	M	B	SUBASSY TST KEYBD AP2 W/ENCODER	VX	A	1	P	A	P	EA	1	6F
5	805-0001		8	BASE, CHASSIS APPLEII	RM	P	1	P	B	P	EA	1	33
6	805-0010		3	STIFFENER, REAR PANEL	EX	P	1	P	C	P	EA	1	C5
7	805-0011		0	BRACKET, MOUNTING APPLEII KEYBOARD	EX	P	1	P	C	P	EA	2	NO
	5-0001		K	HOUSING, PLASTIC APPLE II	RM	P	1	P	B	P	EA	1	72
9	815-0002		8	LID, PLASTIC APPLE II	RM	P	1	P	B	P	EA	1	3E
0	825-0003		0	LABEL, 'VIDEO/CASSETTE IN-OUT'	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1	NO
1	825-0001		B	LABEL, NAMEPLATE APPLEII	EX	P	1	P	C	P	EA	1	8
2	825-0067		1	OBSOLETE LABEL,SER&APPLEII STD(UL)	EX	X	7	P	C	P	EA	1	85-
3	830-0002	?	0	FASTENER, HEAD LOCK 3M#SJ-3308R	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	4	NO
4	830-0003		A	FASTENER, PC BOARD STANDOFF	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	6	63
5	400-3606		A	SCREW, 6-32 X 3/8 FLT HD (CAD)	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	6	5
6	400-3610		A	SCREW, 6-32 X 5/8 FLT HD (CAD)	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1	5
7	844-0001	?	0	SCREW, #4-40 X 3/8 SEMS PAN HD (CD)	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	4	NO
8	844-0004	?	0	SCREW, #6-32 X 3/8 SEMS PAN HD (BK)	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	8	NO
9	850-4605	?	0	SCREW, PHILLIPS UNDERCUT #6 X 5/16	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	6	
0	860-0006	?	0	SPACER, HEX #6-32 X 1/4 (ALUM)	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1	
1	5-0001		0	FEET, RUBBER	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	4	45
2	908-0003		1	ADHESIVE, RTV #3145 GRAY	EX	X	1	P	B	P	EA	0.0400	3C
3	835-0003	?	0	(OBS) REIDENTIFIED SEE 835-0116	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1	I
4	860-0006	?	0	WASHER #6 INTERNAL TOOTH	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1	

PRINTED 29-Sep-81 10:41 APPLE COMPUTER, INC.

EFFECTIVITY DATE: ALL S I N G L E L E V E L B I L L S O

PARENT PART: 603-6116 CHASSIS A2 STD 16K SYSTEM UM: E
ERC: C SRCE CODE: A TYPE: 1 ABC:

ITM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER	ERC	DESCRIPTION REMARKS	PR CD	SRC	TYP	SFR	ABC	PLN	UM	EXTENDED QUANTITY PER
025	860-0007	? 0	WASHER, PLASTIC, .062 THK	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1
026	605-5102	0	TESTED KEYBOARD A2 GREEN	VX	A	5	P	A	P	EA	1
027	825-0004	? 0	LABEL, SERIAL # A2 STD	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1
028	605-5001	0	TESTED 110/220V A2 POWER S.	2M	A	1	P	A	P	EA	1
029	907-0002	0	ADHESIVE, LOCKTITE #430 SUPERBONDER	EX	X	1	P	A	P	EA	0.[illegible]
030	825-0043	0	LABEL, WARNING ASTEC UL P/S	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1
031	944-0057	0	FOAM PAD, SPEAKER	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1
033	000-0000	0	NOT USED THIS ASSEMBLY		D	*	P	D	P	EA	0
034	030-0096	0	OPERATING PROCEDURE, ENCODER BD	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1
035	825-0184	0	LABEL, CSA CERTIFICATION	EX	X	7	P	C	P	EA	0

NOTES:

ECO 352 ADDED ITEMS 4,33
ECO 352 DELETED ITEM 26,7
ECO 352 CHANGED ITEM 18 QTY FROM 12
ECO 352 CHANGED ITEM 20 QTY FROM 4
ECO 364 ADDED ITEM 12
ECO 364 DELETED ITEM 27
ECO 377 ADDED ITEM 22,30,31,3
ECO 377 DELETED ITEM 28,29
ECO 453 CLOSED ITEM 34
ECO 472 ADDED ITEM 35

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

END OF REPORT

PARENT PART: 606-6548 M CHASSIS A2 PLUS 48K SYSTEM RFI UM: EA
ERC: B SRCE CODE: A TYPE: 1 ABC: A

ITEM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER	ERC	DESCRIPTION REMARKS	PR CD	COMM CODE	SRC	TYP	SPR	ABC	PLN	UM	EXTENDED QTY PER
000	606-6116D	A	DWG, CHASSIS ASSY A2 STD SYS RFI	EX		*	7		*	*	EA	0
001	606-4548	M A	TESTED A2 PLUS 48K MOTHERBOARD, RFI	TS		A	1	P	A	P	EA	1
002	600-0009	M B	ASSY, SPEAKER	RM		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
003	699-0048	P 0	POWER SUPPLY, ASTEC (85V - 135V)	VX		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
004	606-5105	M A	TESTED KEYBOARD, A2 RFI	VX		A	1	P	A	P	EA	1
005	810-0055	A	BASE, CHASSIS A2 RFI PAINTED	RM		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
008	810-0360	A	HOUSING, A2 W/EMI PAINTING DETAIL	RM		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
009	810-0359	A	LID, A2 W/EMI PAINTING DETAIL	RM		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
010	825-0003	0	LABEL, "VIDEO/CASSETTE IN-OUT"	EX		X	1	P	B	P	EA	1
011	825-0036	0	NAMEPLATE, APPLEII PLUS	EX		X	1	P	B	P	EA	1
012	825-0068	1	LABEL, SERIAL # APPLE II PLUS (UL)	EX	1	X	7	P	B	P	EA	1
013	830-0002	? 0	FASTENER, HEAD LOCK 3M#SJ-3308R	EX		X	1	P	B	P	EA	4
014	830-0003	? 0	FASTENER RICHCO TCB5-4N	EX		X	1	P	C	P	EA	5
[illegible]	844-0012	0	SCREW, #6-32 X 1/2 PAN HD (BLK)	EX		X	7	P	D	P	EA	4
017	844-0001	? 0	SCREW, #4-40 X 3/8 SEMS PAN HD (CD)	EX		X	1	P	C	P	EA	4
018	844-0004	? 0	SCREW, #6-32 X 3/8 SEMS PAN HD (BK)	EX		X	1	P	C	P	EA	10
021	865-0001	0	FEET, RUBBER	EX		X	1	P	B	P	EA	4
022	908-0003	1	ADHESIVE, RTV #3145 GRAY	EX		X	1	P	B	P	EA	0.0400
030	825-0043	0	LABEL, WARNING ASTEC UL P/S	EX		X	1	P	B	P	EA	1
031	944-0057	0	FOAM PAD, SPEAKER	EX	1	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1
033	805-0058	A	BAR, GROUNDING A2 PCB	RM		P	1	P	C	P	EA	1
035	825-0205	A	LABEL, FCC NON-COMPLIANCE			X	*	P	C	P	EA	1
036	805-0061	A	CLIP, GROUNDING A2 RFI	RM		P	1	P	C	P	EA	2
037	844-0013	0	SCREW, #6-32 X 1/4 SEMS PAN HD (BK)	EX		X	7	S	D	P	EA	5

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Patenitdre swr

PRINTED 10-Jul-81 10:43 APPLE COMPUTER, INC. BML

EFFECTIVITY DATE: ALL S I N G L E L E V E L B I L L S O F M A T E R I A L

DATANETICS

PARENT PART: 605-0117 UNTESTED DC51 DISCRETE KEYBRD UM: EA PROD CODE: UN ECN:

ERC: 0 SRCE CODE: P TYPE: 1 ABC: A PLAN CODE: P DATE:

ITM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER	ERC	DESCRIPTION REMARKS	PR CD	COMM CODE	S RC	T YP	S PR	A BC	P LN	UM	EXTENDED QUANTITY PER	ECN CHG	START DATE	S/N
000	050-0026	0	SCHMTC, APPL ASCII KYBRD	EX		B	7	P	*	U	EA	0	352		
001	519-0019	B	CONN, 25 PIN BOTTOM ENTRY	RC		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1	612	13-Feb-80	
002	605-0119	0	ASSY, KEYCAP SET A2 LPM	WS	1	P	1	P	B	P	EA	1	352	13-Feb-80	
003	705-0004	0	SWITCH DC51-31	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	50	352	13-Feb-80	
004	705-0008	0	RST KY, 9 OZ, #DC51, APPL	EX		X	1	S	B	P	EA	1	352	13-Feb-80	
005	705-0018	0	SWITCH, 3.5 OZ DC51-35	RP		P	1	P	*	P	EA	1	352	13-Feb-80	
006	705-0017	0	SWTCH, PWR LGHT DC51-90 CLLPSD	RP		P	1	P	*	P	EA	1	352	13-Feb-80	
007	815-0061	0	KEY CAP PWR ON INDICATOR	EX		X	1	S	B	P	EA	1	352	13-Feb-80	
008	860-0022	0	WSHR, NYLN .050THK .150D 5/16D	EX		X	1	P	*	P	EA	2	352	13-Feb-80	
009	907-0002	0	ADHSV, LCKTT #430 SPRENDR	EX		X	1	P	C	P	EA	0.0050	352	13-Feb-80	
010	710-0001	0	LAMP 02-1876-01	EX		P	7	P	B	P	EA	1	352	13-Feb-80	

NOTES:

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

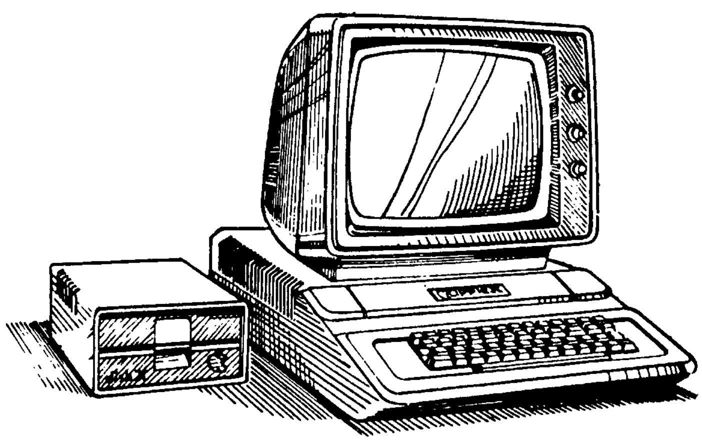
END OF REPORT

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS
LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

APPENDIX C
REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT PROCEDURES



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

22 September 1981

To: Level II Service Managers

From: Jess Pack
Service Engineering

Subj: Service Engineering Pre-Release on the Apple II Keyboards.

Enclosed is the pre-release material on the Keyboard Company produced keyboards for the Apple II. Some of the parts have Apple part numbers, these are indicated with an A preceeding the part number. Part numbers preceeded by a K are keyboard company part numbers.

These part numbers will be on the service cashier up-date for October, use the part number indicated in this material for ordering any piece part for the keyboards.

This package should contain piece part breakdowns on the following:

1. Keyboard Encoder REV C
2. Apple II Alps Switchable (Low Profile Key Caps)
3. Apple II Alps Switchable (Sculptured Key Caps)
4. Apple II Contact Array Keyboard (Low Profile Key Caps)
5. Apple II Contact Array Keyboard (Sculptured Key Caps)

Note: Due to manufacturing changes at the keyboard company many parts are not interchangable. Refer to Service REléase SR2-009.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

17 September 1981

Apple II Switchable Keyboard
Sculptured Key Caps

Keyboard Company

Part Number: 606-0650

Figure	Description	Part Number
1	Key Cap Set AII B&M	A605-0113
2	Adapter, 0 Degree	K815-0013
3	Switch, KBB Alps Reset	K705-0004
4	Header, Right Angle 26 Pin	K519-0003
5	Lamp	K710-0001
6	Adapter Power	K815-0010
7	Plate Sub assembly	K626-4001
8	Stabilizer 8 Position	K810-0014
9	Standoff, Sawge	K810-0008
10	Guide 0 Degree	K815-0005
11	Pivot Stablizer	K815-0014
12	Screw 6-32 Pan Head	K842-0002
13	Richco Fastner	A830-0017
14	Switch, KBB ALPS	A705-0015
15	Power Lens Printed	K816-0119

Part Numbers: "K" Indicates Keyboard company
"A" Indicates Apple MIS

Item 13: Richo fastner is not on illustration, it is used to fasten the external keyboard encoder card to the keyboard.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

17 September 1981

Apple II Switchable Keyboard
B&M Low Profile LKey Caps

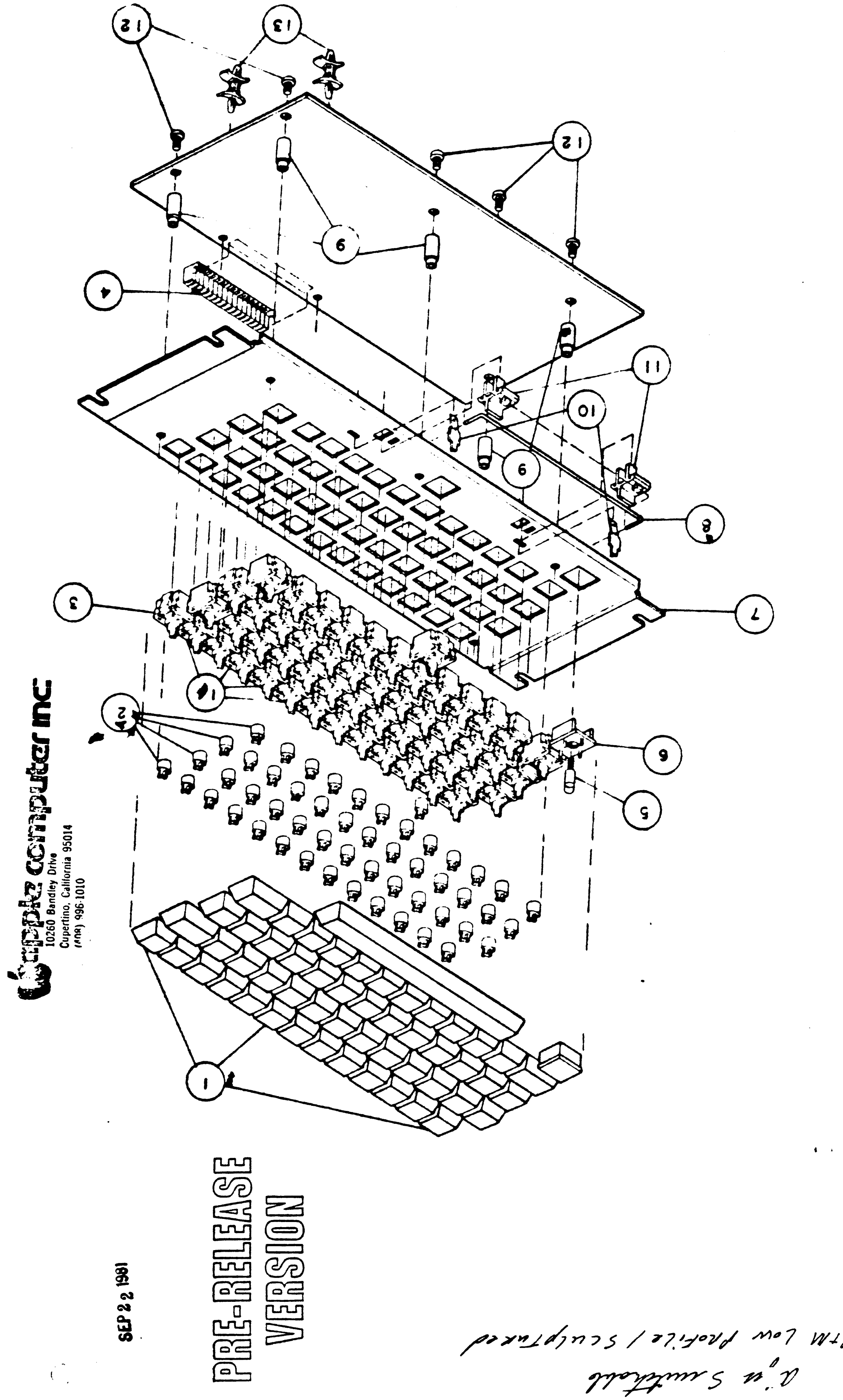
Keyboard Company

Part Number: 605-0118

Figure	Description	Part Number
1	Key Cap Set AII B&M	A605-0119
2	Adapter, 12 Degree	K815-0009
3	Switch, KBB Alps Reset	K705-0004
4	Header, Right Angle 26 Pin	K519-0003
5	Lamp	K710-0001
6	Adapter Power	K815-0010
7	Plate Sub assembly	K626-4001
8	Stabilizer 8 Position	K810-0001
9	Standoff, Sawge	K810-0008
10	Guide 12 Degree	K815-0004
11	Pivot Stablizer	K815-0014
12	Screw 6-32 Pan Head	K842-0002
13	Richco Fastner	A830-0017
14	Switch, KBB ALPS	A705-0015
15	Power Lens Printed	K816-0119

Part Numbers: "K" Indicates Keyboard company
"A" Indicates Apple MIS

Item 13: Richo fastner is not on illustration, it is used to fasten the external keyboard encoder card to the keyboard.


apple computer inc
10260 Bandley Drive
Cupertino, California 95014
(408) 996-1010
PRE-RELEASE
VERSION
SEP 22 1981

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

16 Septembe 1981

Contact Array Keyboard
Sculptured Key Caps

Keyboard Company

Part Number: 606-0649

Item	Description	Part Number
1	Sculptured Key Cap Set	A605-0133
2	Lens Power Printed (all keyboards)	K816-0001
3	Sheild 55 Position AII EMI	A810-0089
4	Keystem, Off-Set	K815-0038
5	Spring Reset Key	K870-0006
6	Stabilizer Bar 8 Position	K810-0011
7	Spring Space Bar	K870-0005
8	Guide Off-Set	K815-0037
9	Lamp	K710-0001
10	Connector 25 Pin	K710-0001
11	PC Board 52 Position	K820-0001
12	Richco Fastner (encoder card)	A830-0016

Item 12: Richco Fastner is not on the Illustration, it is used to fasten the external keyboard encoder to the keyboard.

Note: Service on this board is very limited. The following items are not considered field serviceable and are listed for identification purposes only.

Item	
4	Keystem Off-Set
11	PC Board 52 Position

Item number 3 is the EMI Modification for the Contact Array.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

16 September 1980

Contact Array Keyboard
B&M Low Profied key Caps

Keyboard Company

EMI Untested Contact Array Keyboard Part Number 606-0115
Untested CONTACT Array Keyboard Part Number 605-0115

Figure	Description	Part number
1	Keycap set AII B&M	A605-0119
2	Lens power Printed (all keyboards)	K816-0001
3	Sheild 55 Position AII EMI	A810-0089
4	Keystem 12 Degree	K815-0001
5	Spring Comp, AII Keyboard Reset	A810-0087
6	Space Stabilizer AII Keyboard	A810-0086
7	Spring Comp, AII Keyboard, Space"	A810-0088
8	Guide 12 Deg. AII Array	A815-0381
9	Lamp (AII Array/Switchable)	K710-0001
10	Connector 25 Pin	K519-0002
11	PC Board 52 Pos	K820-0001
12	Richco Fastner (encoder card)	A830-0016

Part Number: "K" Indicates Keyboard Company
"A" Indicates Apple MIS Number

Item 12: Richco Fastner A830-0016 is not on the Illustrstion, it is used to fasten the external keyboard encoder card to the Keyboard.

Note: Service on this board is very limited. The following items are not considered field servicable and are listed for identification purposes only:

Item:

4	Keystem 12 Deg.
11	PC Board 52 Pos.

Item number 3 is the part addition to make the array keyboard EMI.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

16 September 1981

EXTERNAL keyboard Encoder
Apple II

Part Number: 605-0105 REV C (Current Encoder)

location	Description	Apple PT NO.
R8	Resistor 1/4W 5% 510K OHM	101-4514
R5	Resistor 1/4W 5% 1K OHM	101-4102
R4	Resistor 1/4W 5% 220 OHM	101-4221
R7	Resistor 1/4W %5 220K OHM	101-4223
R2,3,6	Resistor 1/4W %5 4.7K OHM	101-4472
R1	Resistor 1/4W 5% 51K OHM	101-4513
R10,5	Resistor 1/4W %5 3K OHM	101-4302
C1	Capacitor 1UF AL ELEC -10%175% 50V	125-4101
C5	Capacitor 47PF 5% N470 50V	131-5701
C2	Capacitor .022UF 20% Y5P 25V	133-2401
C3,4,6,7,8	Capacitor .1UF +80-20% Z5U/Y5V 50V	135-9101
B3,4	IC 74LS00N	305-0000
B5	IC 74LS04	305-0004
B2	IC 555 Timer	329-0555
B6	MB IC KEYBOARD encoder	331-0931
J1	Socket, IC 16 Pin	511-1601
B	Socket, 40 Pin	511-4001
P1	Connector 25 Pin Molex #4030-25AA	519-0022
S1	Switch SLd #M10-0112-045-01-0	705-0013
PCB	PCB Encoder Discrete Keyboard	820-0026

Note:

#1. REV C

Capacitor C8 was added to this version of the Encoder for the Contact Array Keyboard.

#2. REV B / REV A

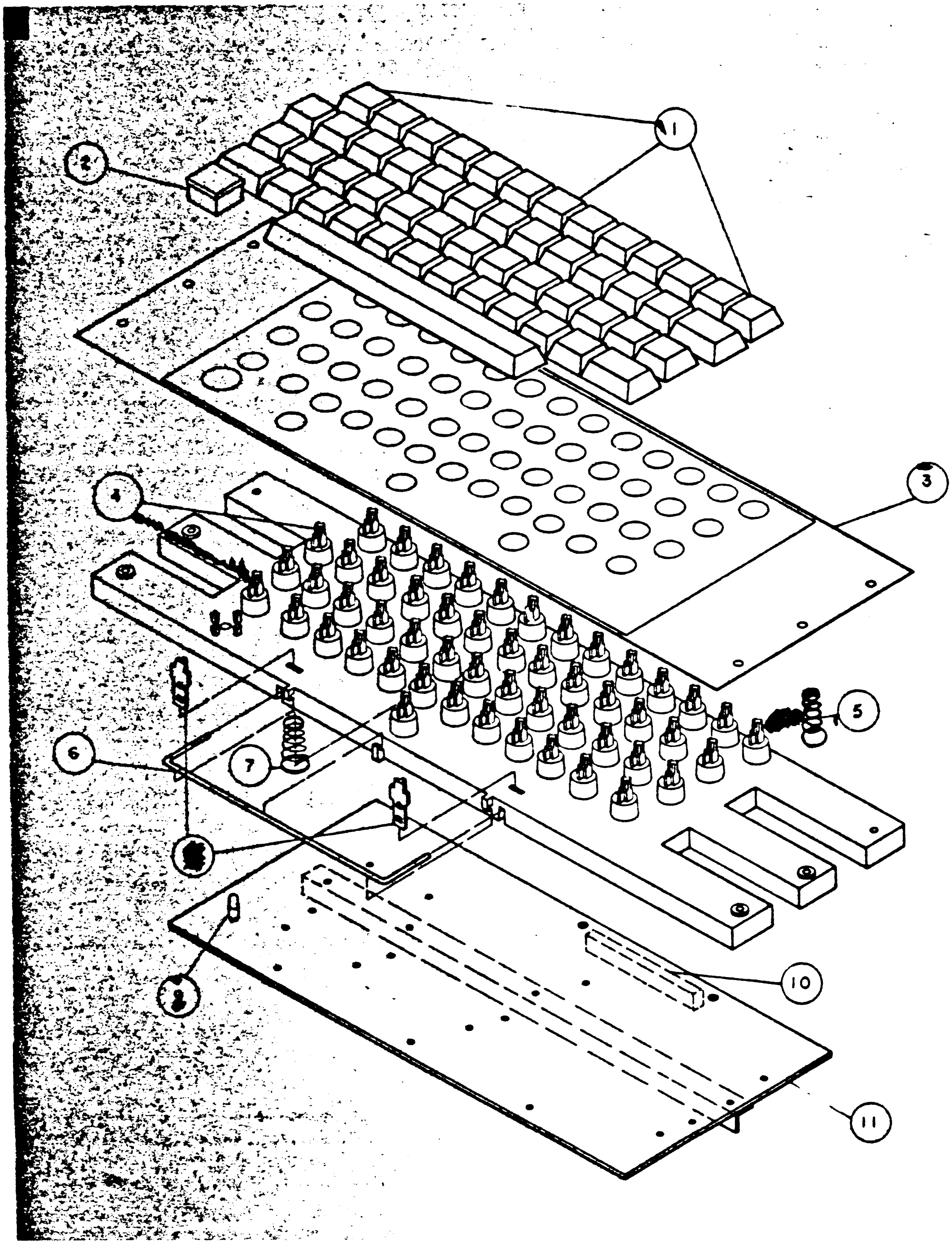
Components are the same as current encoder board, the PCB Traces are different.

CONTACT ARRAY
B+M LOW PROFILE / SCULPTURED

apple computer inc
10260 Bandley Drive
Cupertino, California 95014
(408) 996-1010

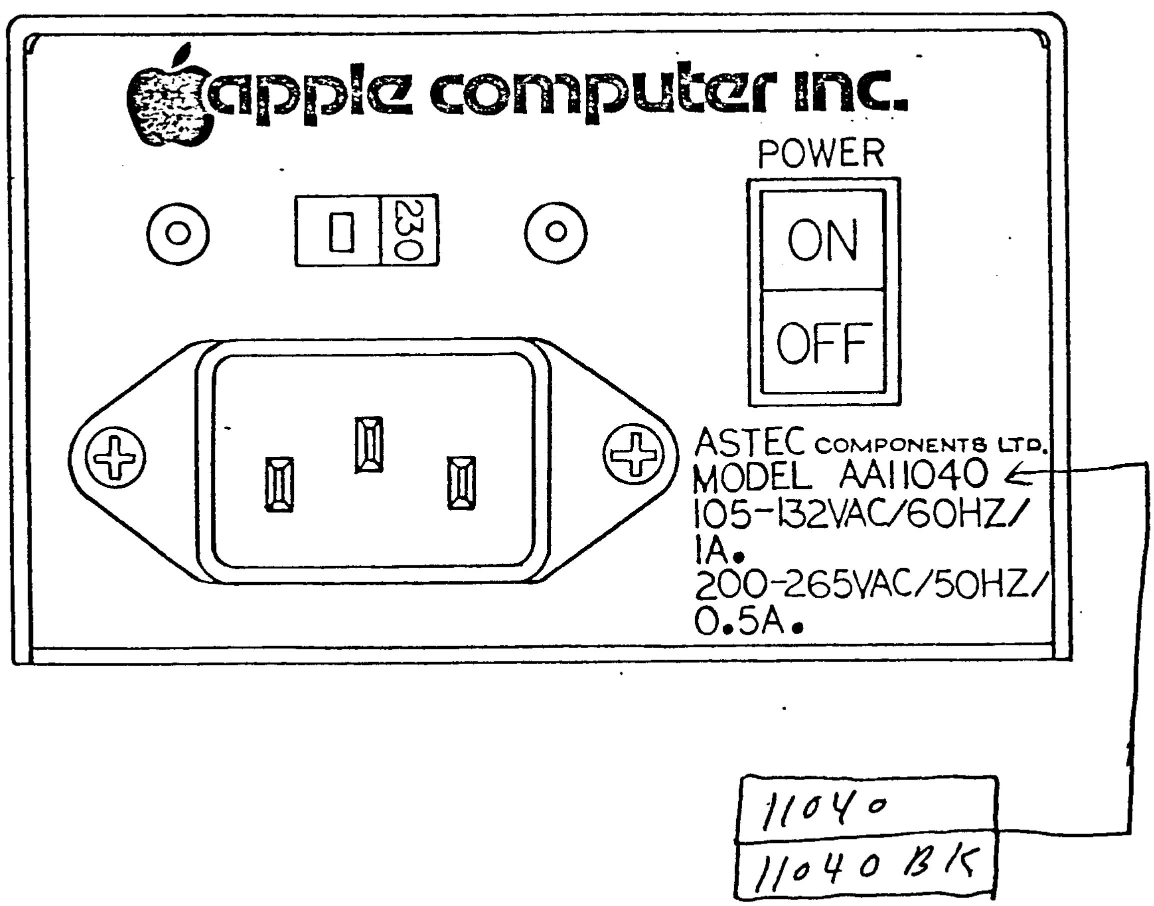
SEP 22 1981

PRE-RELEASE VERSION



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ASTEC POWER SUPPLY



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ASTEC 11040 STANDARD POWER SUPPLY

LOCATION	DESCRIPTION	VENDOR NO.	APPLE P/N
C1	POLYESTER CAPACITOR 0.1 UF 400V	058-10400100	u121-010
C2	ELECTROLYTIC CAPACITOR 47 UF 250V	057-47020040	C
C3	ELECTROYLTIC CAPACITOR 47 UF 250V	057-47020040	C u124-000
C4	ELECTROYLTIC CAPACITOR 47 UF 250V	057-47020040	C
C5	ELECTROYLTIC CAPACITOR 47 UF 250V	057-47020040	C
C6	TANTALUM CAPACITOR 22 UF 16V	072-22600040	u127-000
C7	CERAMIC CAPACITOR 1000 PF 3KV	055-10210001	u132-000
C8	CERAMIC CAPACITOR 0.01 UF 1KV	055-10367325	u132-000
C9	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 1000 UF 10V	057-10220020	C u124-000
C10	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 1000 UF 10V	057-10220020	C
C11	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 330 UF 16V	057-33120080	u124-000
C12	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 220 UF 10V	057-22120060	u124-000
C13	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 1000 UF 10V	057-10220020	u124-000
C14	POLYESTER CAPACITOR 1000 PF 50V	058-10200020	u121-010
C15	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 1000 UF 10V	057-10220020	u124-000
C16	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 220 UF 10V	057-22120060	u124-000
C17	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 680 UF 16V	057-68120010	u124-0005
C18	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 330 UF 16V	057-33120080	u124-000
D1	RECTIFIER RPG10M	226-10400050	u375-001
D2	SILICON DIODE 1N4150	212-10700050	u371-
D3	RECTIFIER RGP10M	226-10400100	u375-0013
D4	RECTIFIER/HEATSINK ASSEMBLY	853-00200020	
D5	RECTIFIER/HEATSINK ASSEMBLY	853-00200020	u375-001
D6	RECTIFIER/HEATSINK ASSEMBLY	853-00200020	
D7	RECTIFIER RGP15B	226-10100040	u375-0015
D8	RECTIFIER RGP10B	226-10400070	u375-0011
D9	SILICON DIODE 1N4150	212-10700050	u371-4150
D10	SILICON DIODE 1N4150	212-10700050	
D11	BLANK		
DB1	BRIDGE RECTIFIER KRP10	226-30500010	u351-000
F1	FUSE 2.75 AMP 250 VOLTS	084-00200040	u740-000
L1	CONTROL CHOKE COIL	328-00150016	u155-000
L2	FILTER CHOKE COIL ASSEMBLY	TF-20100010	u155-000
L3	FILTER CHOKE COIL ASSEMBLY	TF-20100050	u155-000
L4	FILTER CHOKE COIL ASSEMBLY	TF-20100010	u155-000
L5	FILTER CHOKE COIL ASSEMBLY	TF-20100020	u155-000
Q1	TRANSISTOR NPN PE8050	209-11700382	u376-0004
Q2	TRANSISTOR NPN 2SC1358	209-10200020	u376-0005
Q3	TRANSISTOR NPN PE8050	209-11700382	u376-000
Q4	TRANSISTOR PNP PE8550	210-11700322	u376-000
R1	THERMISTER 4R @25 DEG.CEN +-10%	258-40970015	u107-0
R2	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 2.2M +-5%	240-22506033	101-222

"C" COMMON COMPONENT

R3	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 2.2M +-5%	240-22506033	101-2225
R4	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 82R +-5%	240-82006033	101-2820
R5	RESISTOR METAL OXIDE FILM 27R	248-27006052	U107-0009
R6	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 4.7R +-5%	240-47906033	101-2547
R7	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 10R +-5%	240-10006022	401-4272
R8	RESISTOR METAL FILM 0.33R +-5%	247-03386054	U107-0016
R9	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 180R +-5%	240-18106022	101-4181
R10	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 12R +-5%	240-12006022	101-4120
R11	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 470R +-5%	240-47106022	401-4471
R12	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 1K +-5%	240-10206022	C101-4102
R13	BLANK		
R14	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 1K +-5%	240-10206022	C101-410
R15	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 330R +-5%	240-33106022	101-433
R16	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 5.6K +-5%	240-56206022	C101-456
R17	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 27R +-5%	240-27006022	401-4270
R18	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 82R +-5%	240-82006033	101-282
R19	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 1K +-5%	240-10206022	C101-410
R20	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 2.7K +-5%	240-27206022	C101-427
R21	BLANK		
R22	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 100R +-5%	240-10106033	101-2101
R23	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 100R +-5%	240-10106033	
R24	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 390R +-5%	240-39106022	401-4390
SC1	SILICON CONTROL RECTIFIER 2P 05M	227-12500010	U376-0007
T1	POWER TRANSFORMER ASSEMBLY	TF-10200370	U157-0004
T2	CONTROL TRANSFORMER ASSEMBLY	TF-10200200	U157-0005
T3	COMMON MODE TRANSFORMER ASSEMBLY	TF-20200010	U157-0006
Z1	ZENER DIODE 12.2V +-0.2V	222-12295001	U371-0002
Z2	ZENER DIODE 6.8V +-0.2V	222-06895003	U371-0003
VDR1	VARISTOR 260VAC	256-26100014	U377-000
PCB	PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD (NO PART'S)	042-02012202	U820-000
	Switch Rocker		705-0001
CASE	SWITCH (ROCKER TYPE)	278-01200020	705-0023
CASE	AC IMPUT SOCKET (THREE PRONG GROUND)	149-00200010	199-0003
CASE	VOLTAGE SELECTION SWITCH 115/230	283-02200100	[illegible]
(CASE)	BOTTOM PLATE 1.6 AL SHEET	403-03100700	805-001
(CASE)	COVER (TOP) 1.6 AL SHEET	403-03100810	805-000

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ASTEC POWER SUPPLY AA11040B

LOCATION	DESCRIPTION	VENDOR NO.	APPLE P/N
C1	MP CAP 0.1 UF +-20% 250 VAC	068-10400010	u121-0100
C3	CER CAP 2200 PF +-20% 400 VAC	055-22200010	u132-0001
C4	CER CAP 2200 PF +-20% 400 VAC	055-22220001	
C5	ELEC CAP 47 UF +100-10% 250V	057-47020040 C	u124-0001
C6	ELEC CAP 47 UF +100-10% 250V	057-47020040	
C7	ELEC CAP 220 UF +50 -10% 10V	057-22120080	u126-0001
C8	CER CAP 47 PF +-20% 3KV 250	055-47167728	u131-0001
C9	CER CAP 0.01 UF +-20% 1KV 25U	055-10358925	u131-0002
C10	CER CAP 0.01 UF +-20% 1KV 25V	055-10358925	
C11	POLY CAP 0.22 UF +-10% 100V	058-22400120	u119-0001
C12	ELEC CAP 1000 UF +100 -10% 10V	057-10220020 C	u124-0003
C13	ELEC CAP 1000 UF +100 -10% 10V	057-10220020	
C14	ELEC CAP 1000 UF +100 -10% 10V	057-10220020	
C15	ELEC CAP 220 UF +100 -10% 10V	057-22120060 C	u124-0004
C16	ELEC CAP 220 UF +100 -10% 10V	057-22120060 C	
C17	POLY CAP 0.022 UF +-20% 100V	058-22300080	u119-0002
C18	POLY CAP 0.22 UF +-10% 100V	058-22400120	u119-0001
C19	ELEC CAP 1000 UF +100 -10% 10V	057-10220020 C	u124-0003
C20	ELEC CAP 580 UF +100 -10% 16V	057-68120010 C	u124-0005
C21	ELEC CAP 330 UF +100 -10% 16V	057-33120080 C	u124-0002
C22	ELEC CAP 330 UF +100 -10% 16V	057-33120080 C	
C23	CER CAP 0.01 UF +-20% 1KV 25U	055-10368925	u132-0002
C24	ELEC CAP 47 UF +100 -10% 250V	057-47020040 C	u124-0001
C25	ELEC CAP 47 UF +10 -10% 250V	057-47020040 C	
D1	RECTIFIER RPG10A	226-10400050 C	u375-0014
D2	RECTIFIER RPG10M	225-10400100 C	u375-0013
D3	RECTIFIER RPG10M	226-10400100 C	
D4	SILICON DIODE 1N4606	212-10700210	u371-0001
D5	SILICON DIODE 1N4606	212-10700210	
D6	RECTIFIER ASSY	853-00200210	u375-0017
D7	RECTIFIER ASSY	853-00200210	
D8	RECTIFIER ASSY	853-00200210	
D9	RECTIFIER RGPA5B	226-10100040 C	u375-0015
D10	RECTIFER RGP15B	226-10400070 C	u375-0016
D11	SILICON DIODE 1N4606	212-10700210	u371-0001
D12	RECTIIER RGP15B	226-10100040 C	u375-0015
DB1	BRIDGE RECTIFIER KBP10	225-30500010	u351-0001
F1	FUSE 2.75A 125V	084-00200040	u-740-0001
ICI	IC TL431CP/TL431CLP	211-10800100	u-327-0001
L1	CHOKE COIL ASSY	852-20100140	u-155-0001
L2	CHOKE COIL ASSY	852-20100140	
L3	BASE CHOKE 2.2 UH	328-00100030	u-155-0002
L4	CHOKE 1.5 MH (PROPRIETARY)	328-00100010	u-155-0003
L5	CHOKE COIL ASSY	852-10100370	u-155-0004

"C" COMMON COMPONENT

L6	CHOKE COIL ASSY	328-20100010	u155-0005
L7	CHOKE COIL	852-10100490	u155-0006
L8	CHOKE COIL	852-10100490	
Q1	NPN TRANSISTOR 2SD592NC	209-11700400	u376-0001
Q1	NPN TRANSISTOR 2SD467C	209-11700460	(alt)
Q2	NPN TRANSISTOR 2SC1875	209-10200030	u376-0002
Q3	PNP TRANSISTOR 2SB621NC	210 11700330	u376-0003
Q3	PNP TRANSISTOR 2SB561C	210-11700350	(alt)
Q4	PNP TRANSISTOR 2SB621NC	210-11700330	u376-0003
R1	THERMISTOR 4R +-10% OR 5R	258-40970015	u107-b100
R2	RESISTOR METAL FILM 150K +-5% 1/2 W	240-15406033	u107-0001
R3	RESISTOR METAL FILM 150K +-5% 1/2 W	240-15406033	
R4	RESISTOR METAL OXY FILM 27R +-5% 2 W	248-27006063 C	u107-0002
R5	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 1K +-5% 1/2 W	240-10206022 C	101-4102
R6	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 27R +-5% 1/2 W	240-27006022 C	101-4270
R7	RESISTOR CARBON FILM +-5% 1/4W 68R	240-68006022	101-4680
R8	RESISTOR METAL OXY FILM 120R +-5% 1W	248-12106052	u107-0003
R9	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 8.2R +-5% 1/4 W	240-82906022	101-4082
R10	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 10R +-5% 1/4 W	240-10006022 C	101-4100
R11	RESISTOR METAL FILM 0.56 +-5% 1W	247-05686054	u107-0004
R12	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 68R+-5% 1/4W	240-68006022	101-4680
R13	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 270R +-5% 1/2W	240-27106033	101-2271
R14	RESISTOR CARBON FIM D270R +-5% 1/2W	240-27106033	
R15	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 8.2R +-5% 1/2W	240-39106022	101-4082
R16	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 390R +-5% 1/4W	240-39106022 C	101-4390
R17	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 22R +-5% 1/2W	240-22006022	101-4220
R18	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 100R +-5% 1/4W	240-10106022 C	101-4101
R19	RESISTOR CARBON FILM +-5% 1/4W 56R	240-56006022 C	101-4560
R20	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 56R +-5% 1/2W	240-56006022 C	
R21	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 12K +-5% 1/4W	240-12306022	101-4123
R22	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 470R +-5% 1/4W	224-27106022	101-4471
R23	RESISTOR METAL FILM 2.7K +-2% 1/4W	247-27015022	u107-0005
R24	RESISTOR METAL FILM 2.7K +-2% 1/4W	247-27015022	
R25	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 100K +-5% 1/4W	240-10406022	101-4104
R26	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 680R +-5% 1/4W	240-68106022	101-4681
R27	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 1.8K +-5% 1/4W	240-18206022	101-4182
R28	RESISTOR METAL FILM +-5% 1W 1R	247-10086-54	u107-0006
R29	RESISTOR METAL FILM +-5% 1/4W 32R	240-82006033 C	u107-0007
R30	RESISTOR METAL OXY FILM 220R +-5% 1W	248-22106052	u107-0008
R31	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 224 +-5% 1/4W	240-22006022	101-4220
SCR1	SCR C122U/2N695	227-13000010	u372-0001
T1	COMMON MODE TRANSFORMER ASSY	852-20200950	u157-0001
T2	POWER TRANSFORMER ASSY	852-10200940	u157-0002
T3	POWER TRANSFORMER ASSY (SUB)	852-10200680	u157-0003
Z1	ZENER DIODE 9.8V +-0.2V (2K7)	222-98085002	u371-0002
VDR1	VDR 260 VAC	256-26100014 C	u377-0001
CASE	VOLTAGE SELECTION SWITCH 115/230V	283-02200100 C	705-0003

Switch Rocker

				705-0001
CASE	SWITCH ROCKER	278-01200020	C	705-0023
CASE	AC INPUT SOCKET	149-00200010	C	199-0003
CASE	BOTTOM PLATE 1.6 AL SHEET	403-03100700	C	805-0077
CASE	COVER (TOP) 1.6 AL SHEET	403-03100810	C	805-0003

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

apple computer inc.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

MOTHERBOARD REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

REMOVAL

1. Power off the Apple and remove power cord—first from power source and then from rear of Apple housing
2. Remove Apple lid.
3. Turn Apple upside down so keyboard rests on protective foam pad.
4. Remove six flat-head screws from **three outside edges** of flat portion of Apple base (See A1).
5. Remove four round-head screws and lock washers from front of base (See A2).
6. Grasping both base and housing, turn Apple right side up.
7. Gently lift front of housing slightly off base and unplug keyboard connector from location A7 at front of motherboard (See D1).
8. Lift housing off base and set aside.
9. Pinch sides of plug and release power supply plug from location K1 at top of motherboard (See D2).
10. Unplug speaker connector from location B8 on motherboard (See D3).
11. Remove 5/16 inch nut and lockwasher in middle of motherboard (See D4).
12. Push in on flanges with screwdriver or needle-nose pliers to release four stand-offs at corners of board and two stand-offs between I/O connectors 4 and 5. Lift board up and out (See D5).

INSTALLATION

1. Place new motherboard into position over four stand-offs at corners of board and two stand-offs between I/O connectors 4 and 5. Press board down into place (See D5).
2. Install washer and nut in middle of board and tighten just until snug (See D4).
3. Reinstall speaker connector at B8 (See D3).
4. Reinstall power supply plug at K1 (See D2).
5. Place housing over base.
6. Gently lift front of housing slightly off base and reinstall keyboard connector at location A7. Be sure pin 1 of connector aligns with pin 1 of socket (See D1 and D10).
7. Grasping both base and housing, turn Apple upside down so keyboard rests on foam pad.
8. Make sure bent tab at back of base fits into slot in housing; then install lock washers and four round-head screws in front of base (See A2).
9. Install six flat-head screws in **three outside edges** of base (See A1).
10. To finish the procedure, complete these steps:
    a. turn Apple right side up
    b. replace Apple lid
    c. reconnect power cord to Apple.

apple computer inc.

ROM/RAM/741 REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

REMOVAL

1. Power off system and remove power cord—first from power source and then from rear of Apple housing.
2. Remove Apple lid.
3. Locate IC to be removed.
   - Motherboard ROMs (See D6).
   - Motherboard RAMs (See D7).
   - 741 IC (See D12).
   - ROM Card (Applesoft) in I/O connector Ø (See D13).
4. With the special IC extractor, lift out the IC. Use extreme caution when handling the IC to prevent all types of damage—including that caused by static (See D8).

INSTALLATION

1. Identify correct placement of IC by holding it above socket so that:
   a. notch in top of IC is toward **front** of Apple and
   b. dot or dot indentation on top of IC (at pin 1) is next to white dot on board (at pin 1 of socket)—See D9 and D10.
2. Making sure that all pins line up with sockets, press IC firmly into place.
3. To finish the procedure, complete these steps:
   a. reinstall Apple lid
   b. reconnect power cord to Apple.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

apple computer inc.

POWER SUPPLY REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

REMOVAL

1. Power off Apple and remove power cord—first from power source and then from rear of Apple housing.
2. Remove Apple lid.
3. If ROM card is installed in I/O connector Ø next to power supply, remove for easier access.
4. Pinch sides of plug and release power supply plug from location K1 on motherboard (See D2).
5. With the keyboard directly in front of you, turn Apple up onto its left side.
6. Support the power supply unit (See C1) with your left hand and use your right hand to remove the four round-head screws and lock washers on the underside of base (See A3).
7. Turn the Apple back onto its base and lift out power supply unit.

INSTALLATION

1. Place new power supply unit into Apple (See C1).
2. Holding the unit in place and facing the front of the keyboard, turn Apple onto its left side.
3. Support the power supply unit with your left hand and install the four lock washers and round-head screws to hold power unit to base (See A3).
4. Reinstall power supply plug at location K1 (See D2).
5. To finish the procedure, complete these steps:
   a. re-insert ROM card in I/O connector Ø (if removed earlier)
   b. reinstall Apple lid
   c. reconnect power cord to Apple.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

apple computer inc.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

KEYBOARD REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

REMOVAL

1. Power off the system and remove power cord—first from power source and then from rear of Apple housing.
2. Remove Apple lid.
3. Turn Apple upside down so keyboard rests on protective foam pad.
4. Remove six flat-head screws from **three outside edges** of flat bottom of Apple base (See A1).
5. Remove four round-head screws and lock washers from front of base (See A2).
6. Holding both base and housing, turn Apple right side up.
7. Gently lift front of housing slightly up off base and unplug keyboard connector from location A7 at front of motherboard (See D1).
8. Lift housing off base and turn housing upside down onto protective foam pad.
9. Remove four nuts and lock washers (or screws) holding keyboard to housing (See B1).
10. Turn keyboard right side up. Carefully remove cable from top right corner of keyboard (See C6).

INSTALLATION

1. Install keyboard cable to connector at top right corner of replacement keyboard, taking care not to bend pins (See C6).
2. To install replacement keyboard, first check to see if there are two aluminum brackets mounted on inside of housing at sides of keyboard location (See B2).
   - If brackets are pre-installed, go to step 3.
   - If brackets are **not** pre-installed, complete a through c below.
     a) remove four threaded rods (bent screws)
     b) place brackets flat side down on housing
     c) install screws at top and bottom of brackets (See B2)
3. Place new keyboard over bracket stand-offs and install lock washers and screws to hold keyboard to brackets (See B1).
4. Lift housing and place on base.
5. Lift front of housing slightly off base and reinstall keyboard connector at location A7 (See D1).
6. Holding both base and housing, turn Apple upside down so keyboard rests on foam pad.
7. Install four lock washers and round-head screws at front of base (See A2).
8. Install six flat-head screws at **three outside edges** of Apple base (See A1).
9. To finish the procedure, complete these steps:
   a. turn Apple right side up
   b. reinstall Apple lid
   c. reconnect power cord to Apple.

apple computer inc.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ENCODER IC REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

REMOVAL

1. Power off the system and remove power cord—first from power source and then from rear of Apple housing.
2. Remove Apple lid.
3. Turn Apple upside down so keyboard rests on protective foam pad.
4. Remove six flat-head screws from **three outside edges** of flat portion of Apple base (See A1)
5. Remove four round-head screws and lock washers from front of base (See A2)
6. Holding both base and housing, turn Apple right side up.
7. Gently lift front of housing slightly up off base and unplug keyboard connector from location A7 at front of motherboard (See D1).
8. Lift housing off base and turn housing upside down onto protective foam pad.
9. Remove four nuts and lock washers (or screws) holding keyboard to housing (See B1)
10. Turn keyboard right side up on protective foam.
11. Remove encoder IC (See C5) by pulling up on both ends with your thumb and index finger. Use extreme caution to protect the IC from damage, including that caused by static.

INSTALLATION

1. Install replacement encoder, ensuring that pin 1 of IC lines up with pin 1 of socket (See D9 and D10).
2. With keyboard still resting on foam, attach keyboard cable to location A7 on motherboard (See D1).
3. Power on system and run keyboard test again.
   - If test is good, power system off and go to step 4
   - If test fails, power off system and complete these steps:
     a. gently remove cable from top right corner of keyboard (See C6)
     b. obtain replacement keyboard
4. Unplug keyboard connector from location A7 on motherboard (See D1).
5. Reinstall keyboard according to the following instructions:
   - If the test run in step 3 was good and you are reinstalling the same keyboard, place it onto housing and reinstall lock washers and nuts (or screws) (See B1).
   - If the test run in step 3 fails and you are installing a **replacement** keyboard, complete these steps:
     a. Attach keyboard cable to plug at top right corner of keyboard (See C6). Exercise care not to bend pins and be sure plug aligns properly with socket.

(See next page)

apple computer inc.

ENCODER IC REPLACEMENT, continued

b. Check to see if there are two aluminum brackets mounted on inside of Apple housing where keyboard is to be attached (See B2).
   1. If brackets **are pre-installed**, go to step 3 below.
   2. If the brackets **are not pre-installed**, first remove four threaded rods. Then place brackets flat side down on housing and install screws at top and bottom of each bracket in place of rods.
   3. Place new keyboard over bracket stand-offs and install lock washers and screws to hold keyboard to brackets.

6. Lift housing and place on base.
7. Lift front of housing slightly off base and reinstall keyboard connector at location A7 (See D1).
8. Holding both base and housing, turn Apple upside down so keyboard rests on foam pad.
9. Install four lock washers and round-head screws at front of base (See A2).
10. Install six flat-head screws at three outside edges of Apple base (See A1).
11. To finish the procedure, complete these steps:
    a. turn Apple right side up
    b. reinstall Apple lid
    c. reconnect power cord to Apple.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

apple computer inc.

POWER LIGHT BULB REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

REMOVAL

1. Lift off power light cap at bottom left of keyboard (See C2).
2. Lift off shift key cap directly above power light cap for easier access to bulb (See C3).
3. Gently lift light bulb from sockets (See C4).

REPLACEMENT

1. Insert replacement bulb, making sure both wires go into the small sockets (See C4).
2. Reinstall shift key (See C3).
3. Reinstall power light cap (See C2).

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

apple computer inc.

BRIGHTNESS ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURE

If the Apple is connected directly to a monitor and the image on the screen is too dim or too bright, adjust the composite video pot to get optimum clarity.

1. Power off Apple and remove lid.
2. Unplug game paddles if installed at game I/O connector (See D14).
3. Power on Apple.
4. Locate video pot at location J14 directly in back of game I/O plug (See D11). Using your thumb and index finger, turn pot:
   - clockwise to brighten image, or
   - counterclockwise to dim image.

ELIMINATING SPEAKER RESONANCE

If the speaker is resonating at certain tones, install the supplied foam doughnut in accordance with the following instructions.

1. Power off Apple and remove lid.
2. Cut slit in one side of foam doughnut as shown (See F1).
3. Apply Dow Corning Silicone Rubber Sealant to bottom of doughnut and to inside of circular cut-out.
4. Carefully fit cut-out in foam around base of speaker in position shown (See F2). Press down firmly to ensure good contact between foam and Apple base.
5. Allow glue adequate time to dry before testing speaker.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

apple computer inc.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

KEY SWITCH REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

Once you have completed the keyboard diagnostic test and identified the faulty key switch, replace it by following these procedures.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN, MAKE SURE YOU HAVE THE FOLLOWING MATERIALS.

- 60 watt, 700° (F) soldering iron with small, flat tip
- "SOLDAPULLT" solder-sucker, model DS 017
- 60/40 solder for printed circuit boards
- number 1 phillips screw driver

REMOVE KEYBOARD

1. Power off the system and remove power cord—first from power source and then from rear of Apple housing.
2. Remove Apple lid.
3. Turn Apple upside down so keyboard rests on protective foam pad.
4. Remove six flat-head screws from **three outside edges** of flat portion of Apple Base (See A1).
5. Remove four round-head screws and lock washers from front of base (See A2).
6. Holding both base and housing, turn Apple right side up.
7. Gently lift front of housing slightly up off base and unplug keyboard connector from location A7 at front of motherboard (See D1).
8. Lift housing off base and turn housing upside down onto protective foam pad.
9. Remove four nuts and lock washers (or screws) holding keyboard to housing (See B1).

REMOVE KEY SWITCH

1. Turn the keyboard upside down onto protective padding. Note that the printed circuit board has numbers for each key. Check Figure A below to identify the number of the key you want to remove. The "H" key, for instance, is number 34.

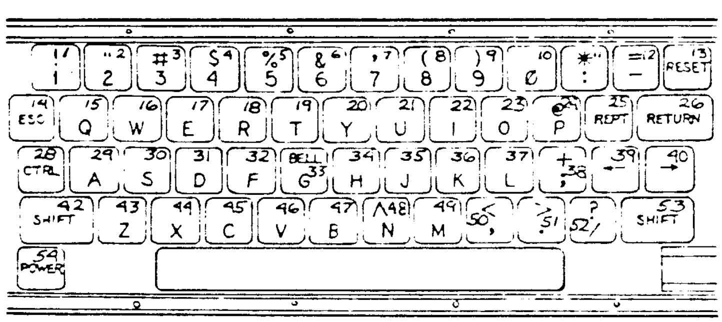


Figure A

apple computer inc.

2. To prepare the solder-sucker, push the plunger down as far as it will go.
3. Heat the soldering iron and make sure it is clean and well-tinned.
4. When the soldering iron is ready, take it in one hand and the solder-sucker in the other as shown in Figure B. Hold the soldering iron at a 45° angle so that one side of the flat tip is firmly in contact with the pin and the other side of the tip is firmly in contact with the pad at the base of the pin. When the solder melts, quickly push the release button or lever of the solder-sucker to pick it up.

CAUTION: DO NOT APPLY THE SOLDERING IRON FOR MORE THAN THREE SECONDS. IT MAY LIFT THE TRACES OFF THE BOARD AND DESTROY

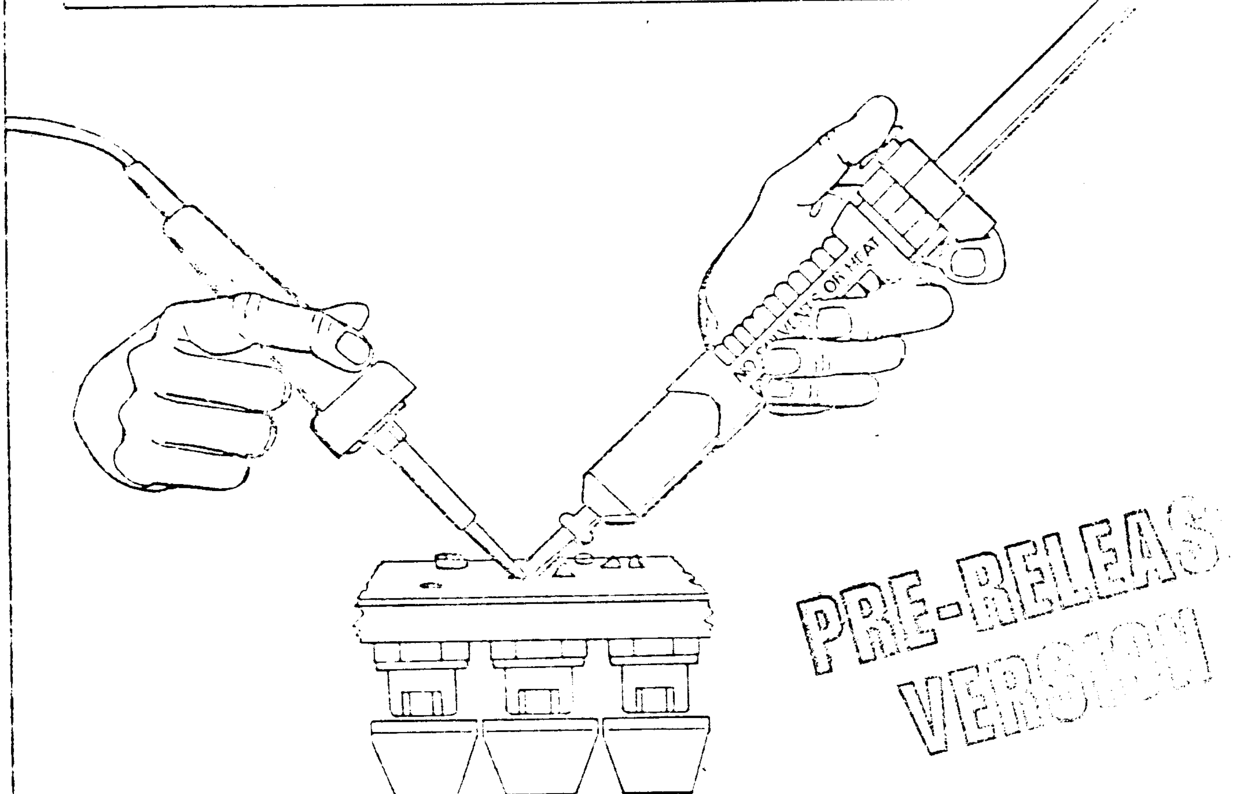


Figure B

5. Repeat this procedure for the second pin, being careful to hold the soldering iron just as before and to observe the 3-second limit.
6. If any solder remains around the base of the pin, or if it was not soldered properly to begin with, apply a little solder to the joint, again placing the flat edges of the iron against both pin and pad. Then repeat step 4 to make sure all solder is removed.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

apple computer inc.

7. Using a number 1 phillips screwdriver, remove the screw holding the key switch to the board.

8. Turn the keyboard right-side up and pull up on the key cap to remove the key switch assembly (see Figure C).

9. Pull the key cap straight up off the key switch and discard the *switch*.

INSTALL REPLACEMENT KEY SWITCH

1. To place cap onto the replacement key switch, hold the switch and cap as shown in Figure C so that:
   - the pins on the bottom of the switch are on the side furthest from you
   - the white top of the switch bends to your **left**
   - the letter on the key cap is at the side of the key on your **right**

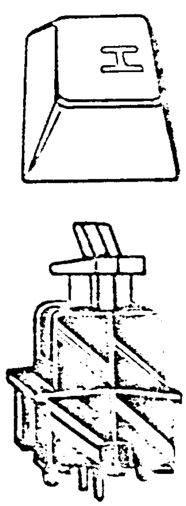


Figure C

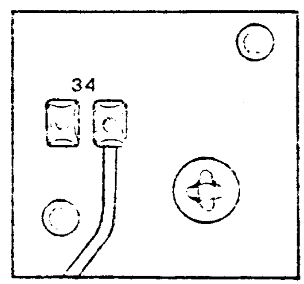


Figure D

2. Insert the key switch into the board so that:
   - the pins go through the feed-through holes
   - the short black plastic placement prongs fit into their holes on the board. (Figure D shows a properly installed switch—from the back side of the board.)

3. Holding the key in place with one hand, turn the keyboard up-side-down onto the pad.

4. Reinstall the screw that holds the key in place.

5. Apply a little solder to the iron. Then, with the flat sides of the iron's tip in contact with both the pin and the pad that surrounds the pin hole, apply the new solder. **Again, be sure that you do not overheat the board!**

6. Check the joint to be sure that the solder has completely filled the hole around the pin and that the solder is built up in a little cone around the pin. If the joint is not filled, apply more solder.

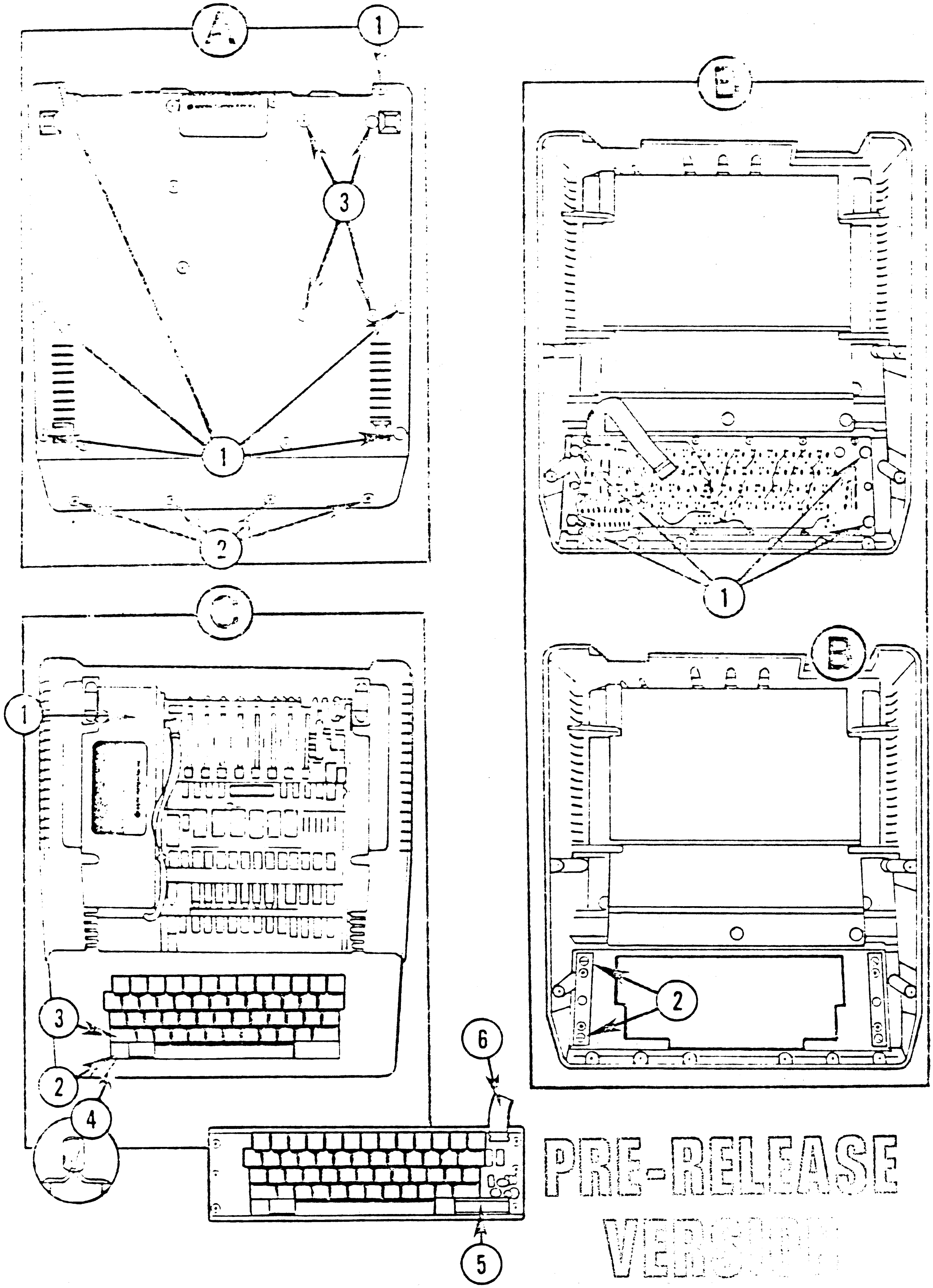
apple computer inc.

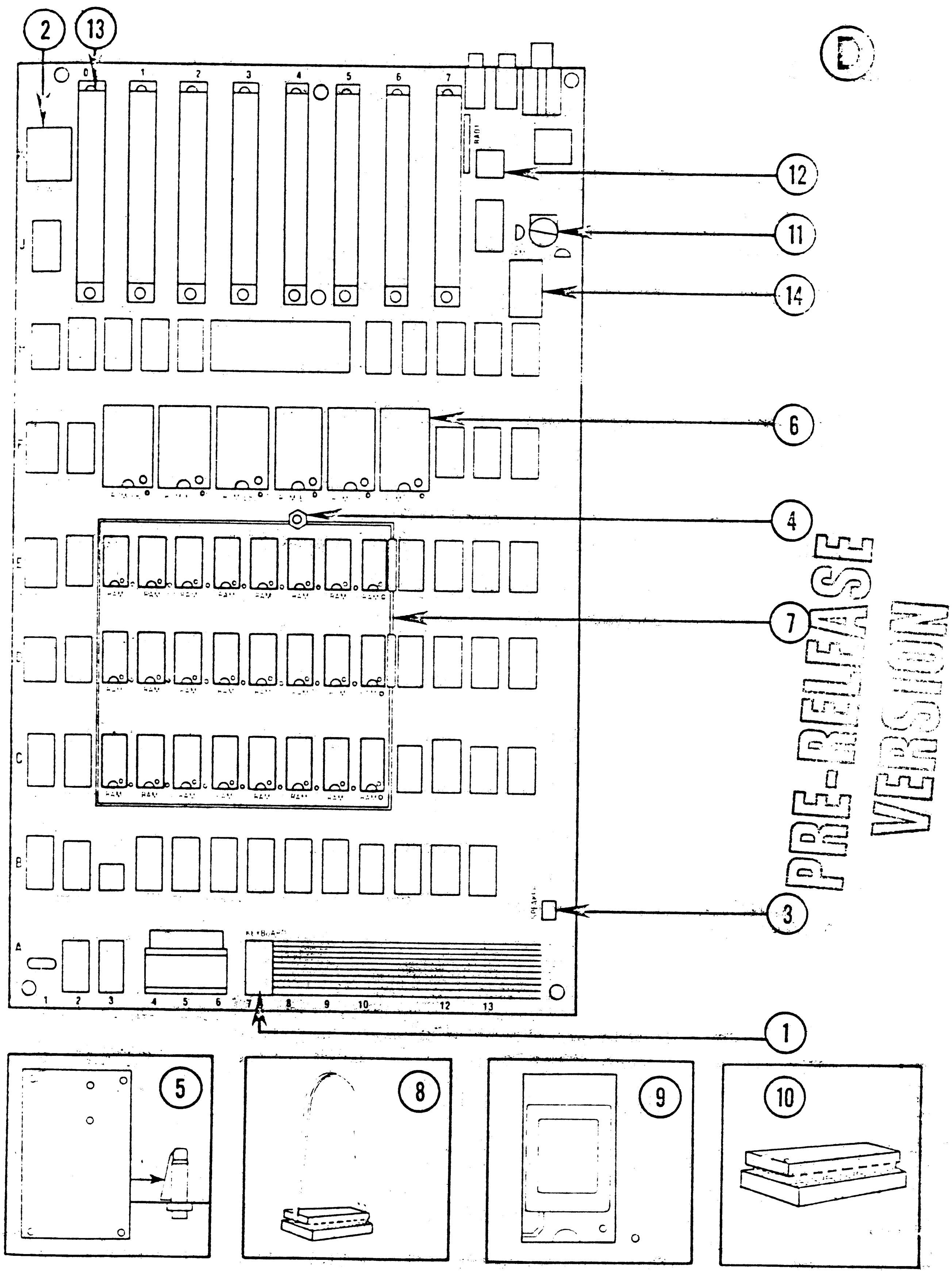
REINSTALL KEYBOARD

1. Reinstall keyboard in housing and tighten nuts with lock washers (or screws).
2. Lift housing and place on base.
3. Lift front of housing slightly off base and reinstall keyboard connector at location A7 (See D1).
4. Holding both base and housing, turn Apple upside down so keyboard rests on foam pad.
5. Install four lock washers and round-head screws at front of base (See A2).
6. Install six flat-head screws at **three outside edges** of Apple base (See A1).
7. To finish the procedure, complete these steps:
   a. turn Apple right side up
   b. reinstall Apple lid
   c. reconnect power cord to Apple

NOTE: SEE SERVICE BULLETIN NUMBER 5 FOR NEW KEYBOARDS.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION


A
1
3
1
2
E
1
B
2
C
1
3
2
4
6
5

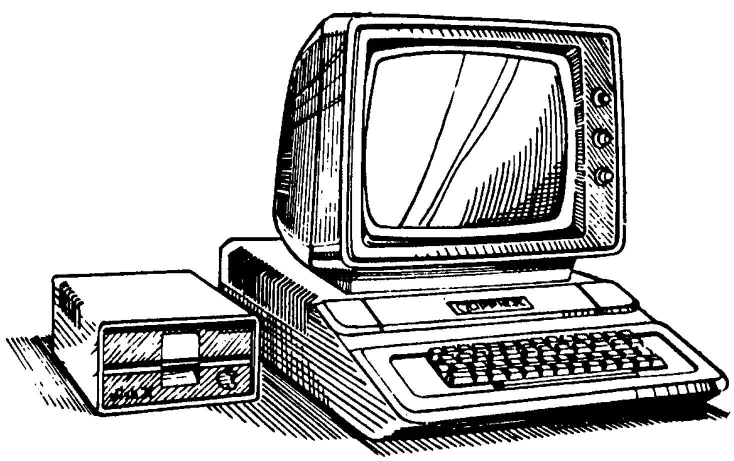

D
PRE-RELEASE VERSION
2
13
12
11
14
6
4
7
3
1
5
8
9
10
KEYBOARD

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS
LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

END OF MANUAL



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)